

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google<sup>TM</sup> books

<https://books.google.com>



NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08176710 9



Miller









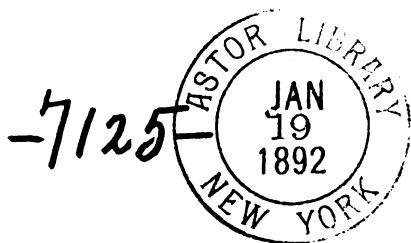
LECTURES  
ON  
THE CONSTITUTION  
OF  
THE UNITED STATES  
BY

SAMUEL FREEMAN MILLER, LL.D.

LATE AN ASSOCIATE JUSTICE OF THE SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES

NEW YORK AND ALBANY  
— BANKS AND BROTHERS, LAW PUBLISHERS  
1891 *M.*

Checked  
May 1913



COPYRIGHT, 1891,  
By BANKS & BROTHERS.

NOV 1891  
JAN 1892  
JAN 1893



THIS POSTHUMOUS WORK  
OF  
**Mr. Justice Miller**  
IS RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED  
TO THE  
CHIEF JUSTICE AND ASSOCIATE JUSTICES  
OF THE  
SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES



## PREFACE.

---

THE late Mr. Justice Miller, at his death, left a carefully prepared manuscript of ten lectures upon the Constitution of the United States, which had been read by him before the students of the Law School of the National University, in the city of Washington, during the winter of 1889 and early spring of 1890. These lectures were accompanied by a series of notes, prepared under his direction.

This material, and two other papers by him on cognate subjects—the first an address before the Alumni of the Law Department of the University of Michigan on the 29th day of June, 1887, entitled, “The Constitution and the Supreme Court of the United States”; the other “An Oration delivered at the one hundredth anniversary of the framing and promulgation of the Constitution in Independence Square, Philadelphia, on the 17th day of September, 1887”—have been placed in my hands for arrangement and publication. The address and the oration were published together under Mr. Justice Miller’s supervision during his lifetime. The ten lectures are now published for the first time.

It will be easily seen that no editing of these papers, in the ordinary sense of that term, was necessary, beyond the care required in order to ensure the exact reproduc-

tion of the thoughts and language of the great judge who has passed away, and the verification of the authorities cited or quoted in the footnotes. The simplicity of style, the directness of statement, the breadth of view, the honesty of purpose, and the discriminating analysis to be found in these papers, must arrest the attention and command the admiration of students of Constitutional History, without extraneous suggestions. I have, accordingly, printed Judge Miller's Lectures as they came to me, and have attached to them the footnotes in the condition in which they were left by him, after properly verifying them.

I have also taken the liberty to add a short note to each of these Lectures, which in each case will explain itself. I have also added a supplemental chapter containing references to minor provisions of the Constitution, not discussed in the Lectures, and an appendix containing (1) a collated copy of the Constitution, with full references to the cases in which it has been construed or discussed; (2) a collated copy of the Articles of Confederation; (3) copies of the Randolph draft for a constitution, and of the Pinckney draft for the same, which were submitted to the convention May 29, 1787, both of which proved to be of substantial use in the discussions which followed in the convention.

I have endeavored to present this work to the profession and the public in a manner worthy of the great judge who has passed away, so far as the limited time given me, and my duties to the court would allow. If there be any serious shortcoming, no one will regret it more than I. It has

been to me a labor of love to follow in the footsteps of one whose great intellect, probity, manliness, and directness of purpose were recognized by the whole nation; whose amiable character was admired by all who knew him; and whose friendship I was permitted to enjoy for nearly a quarter of a century.

Mr. Justice Miller was trained in the school of Chief Justice Marshall. When he died, the bar of the Supreme Court passed a series of resolutions to express their estimate of his character, and of the great value of his services to his country. When these resolutions were presented to that court by the Attorney General of the United States, the Chief Justice, in responding, said:

“When he took his seat, the country was in the throes of internecine conflict; when his eyes closed, it was upon a happy, prosperous, and united people, living under the form of government devised by the fathers, the wisdom of whose fabric the event had vindicated. Great problems crowded for solution: the suspension of the habeas corpus; the jurisdiction of military tribunals; the closing of the ports of the insurrectionary States; the legislation to uphold the two main nerves, iron and gold, by which war moves in all her equipage; the restoration of the predominance of the civil over the military authority; the reconstruction measures; the amendments to the Constitution, involving the consolidation of the Union, with the preservation of the just and equal rights of the States,—all these passed in various phases under the jurisdiction of the court, and he dealt with them with the hand of a master.



“While he took his full share in the consideration of every subject of judicial investigation, notably in reference to some, as, for instance, those pertaining to the public lands, yet he chiefly distinguished himself in the treatment of grave constitutional questions, which brought into play the patience, the intuition, the deliberation, the foresight, the intellectual grasp and the breadth of view which characterize all who have deserved the name of statesman. And, as with private controversies, so with those concerning the public and the Government, he sought to go by the ancient ways and never to incur the curse denounced on him who removeth the landmarks. His style was like his tread, massive but vigorous. His opinions, from his first in the second of Black’s Reports, to his last in the one hundred and thirty-sixth United States, some seven hundred in number (including dissents), running through seventy volumes, were marked by strength of diction, keen sense of justice, and undoubting firmness of conclusion.

“He had that true legal instinct which qualified him to arrive at the very right of a cause and to apply settled principles to its proper disposition; while to courage was joined an integrity and simplicity that always commanded respect and generally carried conviction. Benignant in temperament, and with a heart full of sensibility, his intercourse with his fellows was so cordial and kindly as to endear him to all who came within the sphere of his influence.”

---

To Gherardi Davis, Esq., of the New York bar, I wish to return my thanks for valuable suggestions in the

preparation of these Lectures and Notes for publication; and still more for the full references to decided cases which accompany the copy of the Constitution in the Appendix.

To Hon. J. B. Moore, Assistant Secretary of State, I am indebted for the collated and certified copies of the Constitution, etc., in the Appendix, which cannot but prove interesting to students of constitutional history.

J. C. BANCROFT DAVIS.

WASHINGTON, July 1, 1801.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| I. FRAMING OF THE CONSTITUTION . . . . .               | 1    |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE I. . . . .                          | 35   |
| II. THE PRINCIPLES OF CONSTRUCTION OF THE CONSTITUTION | 59   |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE II. . . . .                         | 117  |
| III. THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH OF THE GOVERNMENT . . .      | 145  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE III. . . . .                        | 177  |
| IV. THE SEPARATE POWERS OF THE SENATE AND THE HOUSE    |      |
| OF REPRESENTATIVES . . . . .                           | 189  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE IV. . . . .                         | 217  |
| V. THE POWER OF TAXATION . . . . .                     | 227  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE V. . . . .                          | 263  |
| VI. NATURALIZATION AND CITIZENSHIP . . . . .           | 275  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE VI. . . . .                         | 297  |
| VII. THE JUDICIAL POWER OF THE UNITED STATES . . .     | 309  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE VII. . . . .                        | 351  |
| VIII. THE SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES . . .     | 373  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE VIII. . . . .                       | 419  |

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| IX. REGULATION OF COMMERCE AMONG THE STATES . . .     | 433  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE IX. . . . .                        | 474  |
| X. THE RIGHT OF TRIAL BY JURY . . . . .               | 485  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE X. . . . .                         | 511  |
| XI. IMPAIRMENT OF THE OBLIGATION OF CONTRACTS . . .   | 523  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE XI. . . . .                        | 566  |
| XII. LIMITATIONS UPON THE POWERS OF STATES . . .      | 573  |
| NOTES UPON LECTURE XII. . . . .                       | 598  |
| XIII. SUPPLEMENTARY: SUBJECTS NOT DISCUSSED ELSEWHERE | 601  |
| APPENDIX I. The Constitution of the United States . . | 681  |
| II. Articles of Confederation — 1777 . . .            | 716  |
| III. Resolutions offered by Mr. Randolph . . .        | 728  |
| IV. The Pinckney Plan . . . . .                       | 732  |
| INDEX . . . . .                                       | 741  |



# TABLE OF CASES

CITED IN LECTURES AND NOTES.

|  | PAGE          |  | PAGE               |
|--|---------------|--|--------------------|
| Ableman v. Booth, 21 How.                      | 98            | Bell Gap Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania, 134 U. S.               | 232                |
| Allen v. Baltimore & Ohio Railroad, 114 U. S.  | 311           | Bennett v. Butterworth, 11 How.                                | 669                |
| Almy v. California, 24 How.                    | 169           |  | 319, 522           |
| American Insurance Co. v. Canter, 1 Pet.       | 511           | Board of Liquidation v. McComb, 92 U. S.                       | 531                |
| Anderson v. Dunn, 6 Wheat.                     | 204           |  | 365, 366           |
| Antoni v. Greenhow, 107 U. S.                  | 769           | Bond v. Brown, 12 How.   | 254                |
| Arkansas Valley Land & Co. v. Mann, 130 U. S.  | 69            |  | 494                |
| Asher v. Texas, 128 U. S.                      | 129           | Bowman v. Chicago & Northwestern Railway Co., 125 U. S.        | 465                |
|  | 270, 475, 483 |  | 425, 474, 477, 483 |
| Austin v. Aldermen, 7 Wall.                    | 694           | Boyce's Executors v. Grundy, 3 Pet.                            | 210                |
|  | 249, 256      |  | 319                |
| Ayers, <i>In re</i> , 123 U. S.                | 443           | Boyd v. United States, 116 U. S.                               | 616                |
| Bain, <i>Ex parte</i> , 121 U. S.              | 1             |  | 647                |
| Baiz, <i>In re</i> , 135 U. S.                 | 403           | Bradwell v. The State, 16 Wall.                                | 180                |
| Baker v. Portland, 5 Sawyer,                   | 566           |  | 660                |
|  | 322           | Brashear v. Mason, 6 How.                                      | 92                 |
| Bank of Commerce v. New York, 2 Black,         | 620           |  | 424                |
|  | 80, 257       | Brimmer v. Rebman, 188 U. S.                                   | 78                 |
| Bank of New York v. Supervisors, 7 Wall.       | 26            |  | 425, 475, 485      |
|  | 258, 266      | Briscoe v. Bank of the Commonwealth of Kentucky, 11 Pet.       | 257                |
| Bank Tax Case, 2 Wall.                         | 200           |  | 583                |
|  | 80, 257       | Bronson v. Kinzie, 1 How.                                      | 311                |
| Banks v. Manchester, 128 U. S.                 | 244           |  | 549                |
| Barbier v. Connolly, 113 U. S.                 | 27            | Brown v. Houston, 114 U. S.                                    | 622                |
| Barney v. Keokuk, 94 U. S.                     | 324           |  | 474, 476           |
| Barron v. Mayor & c. of Baltimore, 7 Pet.      | 243           |  |                    |
|  | 93            | Brown v. Maryland, 12 Wheat.                                   | 419                |
| Bartemeyer v. Iowa, 14 Wall.                   | 21            |  | 80, 268, 462, 591  |
| Basey v. Gallagher, 20 Wall.                   | 670           | Browne v. Strobe, 5 Cranch,                                    | 303                |
| Baylis v. Travellers' Insurance Co., 113 U. S. | 316           |  | 335                |
|  | 494           | Burgess v. Seligman, 107 U. S.                                 | 20                 |
| Beers v. Haughton, 9 Pet.                      | 329           |  | 274, 358           |
|  | 546           | Burrow-Giles Lithographic Co. v. Sarony, 111 U. S.             | 53                 |
|  |               |  | 620                |
|  |               | Butchers' Union Co. v. Crescent City Live Stock Co., 111 U. S. | 746                |
|  |               |  | 567                |
|  |               | Butterworth v. Hoe, 112 U. S.                                  | 50                 |
|  |               |  | 424                |

|   | PAGE                           |   | PAGE                    |
|---|--------------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| Buzard v. Houston, 119 U. S. 347  | 522                            | Cooley v. Port Wardens of Philadelphia, 12 How. 299     | 450, 454, 455, 461, 462 |
| Calder v. Bull, 3 Dall. 386   | 586                            | Cooper Manufacturing Co. v. Ferguson, 113 U. S. 727     | 474, 475, 476           |
| Caldwell v. Texas, 137 U. S. 692  | 672                            | Cooper's Case, 138 U. S. 404                            | 427                     |
| California v. Central Pacific Railroad Co., 127 U. S. 1                     | 266, 425, 474, 480             | Corbin v. Gould, 133 U. S. 308                          | 622                     |
| Callaghan v. Myers, 128 U. S. 617   | 620                            | Corson v. Maryland, 120 U. S. 502                       | 114, 269, 474, 483      |
| Callan v. Wilson, 127 U. S. 540   | 361, 518, 519                  | Cox v. McClenachan, 3 Dall. 478                         | 616                     |
| Callanan v. Judd, 23 Wisconsin, 343   | 313                            | Craig v. Missouri, 4 Pet. 408                           | 524, 581                |
| Calton v. Utah, 130 U. S. 83  | 519                            | Crandall v. Nevada, 6 Wall. 35                          | 80, 260, 454, 462, 463  |
| Canal Co. v. Clark, 13 Wall. 311  | 622                            | Crowley v. Christensen, 137 U. S. 86                    | 475, 483, 674           |
| Cannon v. New Orleans, 20 Wall. 577   | 255, 594                       | Crutcher v. Kentucky, 141 U. S. 47                      | 425                     |
| Cardwell v. American Bridge Co., 113 U. S. 205                              | 474, 478                       | Cummings v. Merchants' National Bank, 101 U. S. 153     | 260                     |
| Cherokee Nation v. Georgia, 5 Pet. 1  | 314, 320, 335, 401             | Cummings v. Missouri, 4 Wall. 277                       | 105, 585                |
| Chew Heong v. United States, 112 U. S. 536                                  | 324                            | Cunningham v. Mason & Brunswick Railroad, 109 U. S. 446 | 365                     |
| Chicago, Burlington &c. Railroad v. Iowa, 94 U. S. 155                      | 397                            | Curran v. Arkansas, 15 How. 304                         | 583                     |
| Chicago & Burlington Railroad v. Guffey, 120 U. S. 569; S. C. 122 U. S. 561 | 265                            | Dartmouth College Case, 4 Wheat. 518                    | 118, 391, 532, 556      |
| Chisholm v. Georgia, 2 Dall. 419  | 62, 77, 83, 331, 379, 423, 652 | Davis v. Gray, 16 Wall. 203                             | 365, 366                |
| Chy Lung v. Freeman, 92 U. S. 275   | 80                             | Decatur v. Paulding, 14 Pet. 497                        | 424                     |
| Civil Rights Cases, 109 U. S. 3   | 656, 657, 659                  | De Chastellux v. Fairchild, 15 Penn. St. 18             | 348                     |
| Clay v. Field, 138 U. S. 464  | 426, 657                       | Delaware Railroad Tax, 18 Wall. 206                     | 262                     |
| Clinton Bridge, 1 Woolworth, 150  | 447                            | Dobbins v. Erie County Commissioners, 16 Pet. 435       | 258, 267                |
| Coe v. Errol, 116 U. S. 517   | 252, 474, 477, 592             | Dodge v. Woolsey, 18 How. 831                           | 89                      |
| Cohens v. Virginia, 6 Wheat. 264  | 76, 98, 317, 318, 335          | Douglass v. County of Pike, 101 U. S. 677               | 274                     |
| Cole v. Cunningham, 133 U. S. 107   | 633                            | Dred Scott v. Sandford, 19 How. 441                     | 83, 114, 408, 405       |
| Cole v. Lagrange, 113 U. S. 1   | 265                            | Duncan, Petitioner, <i>In re</i> , 139 U. S. 449        | 641                     |
| Colson v. Lewis, 2 Wheat. 377   | 334                            | Dunlap v. Black, 128 U. S. 40                           | 424                     |
| Commissioner of Patents v. Whiteley, 4 Wall. 522                            | 424                            | Eagle (The), 8 Wall. 15                                 | 327                     |
| Concord v. Robinson, 121 U. S. 671  | 272                            | Edwards v. Elliott, 21 Wall. 532                        | 498                     |
| Converse, <i>In re</i> , 137 U. S. 624                                      | 659, 664                       | Edwards v. Kearzey, 96 U. S. 595                        | 532, 539                |
| Cook v. United States, 138 U. S. 157  | 361, 425, 520                  |   |                         |

## TABLE OF CASES.

XV

|  | PAGE               |   | PAGE              |
|--|--------------------|---|-------------------|
| Ellenbecker v. Plymouth County,<br>134 U. S. 31          | 674                | Hagar v. Reclamation District, 111<br>U. S. 701                 | 666               |
| Elk v. Wilkins, 112 U. S. 94                             | 280, 662           | Hagood v. Southern, 117 U. S. 52                                | 365               |
| Essex Public Road Board v. Skin-<br>kle, 140 U. S. 334   | 572                | Hall v. De Cuir, 95 U. S. 485                                   | 81                |
| Evansville Bank v. Britton, 105<br>U. S. 322             | 260                | Hamilton v. St. Louis County<br>Court, 15 Missouri, 3           | 60                |
| Fargo v. Michigan, 121 U. S. 330<br>114, 400, 474, 479   |                    | Hans v. Louisiana, 24 Fed. Rep. 55<br>230, 423, 653             |                   |
| Fashion v. Greenhow, 135 U. S. 713                       | 568                | Hans v. Louisiana, 134 U. S. 1<br>330 363                       |                   |
| Fenn v. Holme, 21 How. 481                               | 320                | Hardenburg v. Kidd, 10 California,<br>402                       | 228               |
| Fisher v. Cockrell, 5 Pet. 248                           | 333                | Hardin v. Jordan, 140 U. S. 371                                 | 360               |
| Fisk v. Jefferson Police Jury, 116<br>U. S. 131          | 249, 474, 476, 568 | Hart v. United States, 118 U. S. 62<br>179, 181                 |                   |
| Flanders v. Tweed, 9 Wall. 425                           | 494                | Hauenstein v. Lynham, 100 U. S.<br>483                          | 322               |
| Fleming v. Page, 9 How. 608                              | 264                | Hayburn's Case, 2 Dall. 408                                     | 353               |
| Fletcher v. Peck, 9 Cranch, 87                           | 555                | Head v. Amoskeag Manufacturing<br>Co., 113 U. S. 9              | 667               |
| Foster v. Kansas, 112 U. S. 201                          | 474, 482           | Head Money Cases, 112 U. S. 580<br>264, 323, 324, 474, 481, 644 |                   |
| Foster v. Neilson, 2 Pet. 258                            | 180, 322           | Heine v. Levee Commissioners, 19<br>Wall. 655                   | 228               |
| Freeland v. Williams, 131 U. S. 405                      | 569                | Henderson v. Mayor of New York,<br>92 U. S. 259                 | 80, 269, 461, 463 |
| Gaines v. Thompson, 7 Wall. 347                          | 424                | Henderson's Distilled Spirits, 14<br>Wall. 44                   | 494               |
| Garland, <i>Ex parte</i> , 4 Wall. 333                   | 105, 165           | Hepburn v. Griswold, 8 Wall. 603<br>135, 136, 142, 144          |                   |
| Garnett, Petitioner, <i>In re</i> , 140 U. S.            | 362                | Hine (The) v. Trevor, 4 Wall. 555                               | 112               |
| Genessee Chief (The) v. Fitzhugh,<br>12 How. 443         | 111, 133, 327      | Hinson v. Lott, 8 Wall. 148                                     | 251, 591          |
| Geofroy v. Riggs, 133 U. S. 258                          | 627                | Hipp v. Babur, 19 How. 271                                      | 522               |
| Georgia v. Stanton, 6 Wall. 50<br>315, 347, 424          |                    | Holland v. Challen, 110 U. S. 15                                | 522               |
| Gibbons v. Ogden, 9 Wheat. 1                             | 80,                | Home Insurance Co. v. New York,<br>134 U. S. 594                | 671, 672          |
| 231, 394, 397, 442, 446, 447, 449, 454,<br>459, 462      |                    | Howard v. Bugbee, 24 How. 461                                   | 549               |
| Gilbert v. Priest, 65 Barb. 444                          | 313                | Hucless v. Childrey, 135 U. S. 709                              | 568               |
| Gilman v. City of Philadelphia, 3<br>Wall. 713           | 454, 461, 462      | Hurtado v. California, 110 U. S.<br>516                         | 498               |
| Given v. Wright, 117 U. S. 648                           | 261                | Huse v. Glover, 119 U. S. 543                                   | 255               |
| Gloucester Ferry Co. v. Pennsylvan-<br>ia, 114 U. S. 196 | 474, 475, 476, 481 | Hutchins v. Ring, 1 Wall. 53                                    | 522               |
| Gon-shay-ee's Case, 130 U. S. 343                        | 425                | Hylton v. United States, 3 Dall.<br>171                         | 238, 628          |
| Goodrich v. Guthrie, 17 How. 284                         | 424                | Illinois Central Railroad v. Bos-<br>worth, 133 U. S. 92        | 600               |
| Gordon v. Hobart, 2 Sumner, 401                          | 319                |   |                   |
| Gordon v. Longest, 16 Pet. 97                            | 333, 336           |   |                   |
| Gordon v. United States, 2 Wall.<br>561; 117 U. S. 699   | 339, 349, 355      |   |                   |
| Greenwood v. Freight Co., 105 U. S.<br>13                | 536                |   |                   |
| Guy v. Baltimore, 100 U. S. 434                          | 444                |   |                   |

|  | PAGE               |   | PAGE   |
|--|--------------------|---|--|
| Insurance Co. v. Comstock, 16 Wall. 258                | 497                | Livingston v. Story, 11 Pet. 351                                      | 180  |
| Jackson v. Twentyman, 2 Pet. 136                       | 335                | Loan Association v. Topeka, 20 Wall. 655                              | 104, 105, 231, 243, 246                          |
| Jones v. United States, 137 U. S. 202                  | 371, 372, 624, 639 | Lottawanna (The), 21 Wall. 558  | 132, 134   |
| Justices (The) v. Murray, 9 Wall. 274                  | 493, 498           | Loughborough v. Blake, 5 Wheat. 317                                   | 264  |
| Kauffman v. Wootters, 138 U. S. 285                    | 672                | Louisiana v. Jumel, 107 U. S. 711                                     | 365, 383   |
| Kemmler's Case, 136 U. S. 436                          | 649, 660, 663      | Louisiana v. Mayor of New Orleans, 109 U. S. 285                      | 567  |
| Kendall v. United States, 12 Pet. 524                  | 424                | Louisiana ex rel. Nelson v. St. Martin's Parish, 111 U. S. 716        | 567  |
| Kennard v. Louisiana, 92 U. S. 480                     | 666                | Louisville & Nashville Railroad v. Palmer, 109 U. S. 244              | 266, 566   |
| Kentucky v. Dennison, 24 How. 66                       | 638                | Louisville, New Orleans &c. Railway Co. v. Mississippi, 133 U. S. 587 | 475  |
| Kentucky Railroad Tax Cases, 115 U. S. 321             | 668, 669           | Lyng v. Michigan, 135 U. S. 161                                       | 425  |
| Kidd v. Pearson, 128 U. S. 1                           | 425, 475, 483, 676 | McAlister v. United States, 141 U. S.                                 | 370  |
| Kilbourn v. Thompson, 103 U. S. 168                    | 412, 614           | McCall v. California, 136 U. S. 104                                   | 425, 475, 483                                    |
| Killian v. Ebbingshaus, 110 U. S. 568                  | 522                | McCracken v. Hayward, 2 How. 608                                      | 549  |
| Klein, <i>In re</i> , 1 How. 277                       | 110                | McCulloch v. Maryland, 4 Wheat. 316                                   | 141, 142, 231, 256, 257, 259, 388, 390, 651, 652 |
| Knox v. Exchange Bank, 12 Wall. 379                    | 531                | McElrath v. United States, 102 U. S. 426                              | 494  |
| Knox v. Lee, 12 Wall. 457                              | 136, 187           | McGahey v. Virginia, 135 U. S. 662                                    | 267, 366, 568                                    |
| Knox County Court v. United States, 109 U. S. 229      | 274                | Mackey v. United States, 10 Pet. 340                                  | 130  |
| Kring v. Missouri, 107 U. S. 221                       | 588                | Mackin v. United States, 117 U. S. 348                                | 505  |
| Kunzler v. Kohaus, 5 Hill. 317                         | 110                | Macon County v. Huldekoper, 134 U. S. 383                             | 274  |
| Leeper v. Texas, 139 U. S. 712                         | 664                | Magnolia (The), 20 How. 296   | 327  |
| Legal Tender Cases, 110 U. S. 421                      | 137, 652           | Mahew v. Thatcher, 9 Wheat. 129                                       | 130  |
| Lelsy v. Hardin, 135 U. S. 100                         | 425, 475, 483      | Manning, <i>In re</i> , 139 U. S. 504                                 | 673  |
| Leloup v. Port of Mobile, 127 U. S. 640                | 269, 425, 474, 482 | Marbury v. Madison, 1 Cranch. 137                                     | 384, 387, 424                                    |
| Lent v. Tillson, 140 U. S. 316                         | 664                | Martin v. Hunter's Lessee, 1 Wheat. 304                               | 63, 83, 98, 102, 227, 313, 342                   |
| Lewis v. Cocks, 23 Wall. 466                           | 522                | Mason v. Halle, 12 Wheat. 370   | 546  |
| Lexington (The), 6 How. 344                            | 327                | Mayfield's Case, 141 U. S. 107  | 426  |
| License Tax Cases, 5 Wall. 462                         | 629                |   |  |
| Liggett and Myers Tobacco Co. v. Finzer, 128 U. S. 514 | 622                |   |  |
| Litchfield v. Webster County, 101 U. S. 773            | 365                |   |  |
| Livingston v. Moore, 7 Pet. 469                        | 493                |   |  |

## TABLE OF CASES.

xvii

|  | PAGE               |                                    | PAGE                     |
|--|--------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Maynard v. Hill, 125 U. S. 190             | 355                | Nashville, Chattanooga &c. Railway |                          |
| Memphis & Little Rock Railroad v.          |                    | Co. v. Alabama, 128 U. S. 96       | 425                      |
| Railroad Commissioners, 112                |                    | Natal v. Louisiana, 139 U. S. 621  | 673                      |
| U. S. 609                                  | 266                | Neagle, <i>In re</i> , 135 U. S. 1 | 427                      |
| Menendez v. Holt, 128 U. S. 514            | 622                | Nelson v. St. Martin's Parish, 111 |                          |
| Mercantile Bank v. New York, 121           |                    | U. S. 717                          | 274                      |
| U. S. 138                                  | 267                | New Hampshire v. Louisiana, 108    |                          |
| Merrill v. Monticello, 138 U. S. 673       | 372                | U. S. 76                           | 330, 363, 366, 382       |
| Merryman, <i>Ex parte</i> , Taney's C. Ct. |                    | New Jersey (The), 10 How. 586      | 327                      |
| Decisions, 246                             | 349                | New Jersey v. Wilson, 7 Cranch,    |                          |
| Metropolitan Railroad v. District          |                    | 164                                | 261                      |
| of Columbia, 132 U. S. 1                   | 627                | New Jersey v. Yard, 95 U. S. 104   | 565                      |
| Miller v. Mayor of New York, 107           |                    | New Orleans v. Houston, 119 U. S.  |                          |
| U. S. 385                                  | 327, 474, 478      | 265                                | 265                      |
| Minneapolis & St. Louis Railway            |                    | New Orleans Waterworks v. Lou-     |                          |
| v. Beckwith, 129 U. S. 26                  | 671                | isiana Sugar Refining Co., 125     |                          |
| Minnesota v. Barber, 136 U. S. 313         |                    | U. S. 18                           | 569                      |
|  | 425, 475, 477, 484 | New York v. Connecticut, 4 Dall.   |                          |
| Minor v. Happersett, 21 Wall. 162          | 661                | 4                                  | 314, 382                 |
| Missouri Pacific Railway Co. v.            |                    | Norfolk & Western Railroad Co. v.  |                          |
| Humes, 115 U. S. 512                       | 669                | Pennsylvania, 136 U. S. 114        | 425, 475                 |
| Missouri Pacific Railway Co. v.            |                    | Norris v. Jackson, 9 Wall. 125     | 495                      |
| Mackey, 127 U. S. 205                      | 670                | North Missouri Railroad Co. v.     |                          |
| Mitchell v. Harmony, 13 How. 113           | 626                | Maguire, 20 Wall. 46               | 235                      |
| Mitchell v. Smale, 140 U. S. 406           | 360                | Ogden v. Blackledge, 2 Cranch,     |                          |
| Montault v. United States, 12 How.         |                    | 272                                | 348                      |
| 47   | 130                | O'Reilly v. Morse, 15 How. 62      | 621                      |
| Montello (The), 11 Wall. 411               | 327                | Orleans (The), 11 Pet. 175         | 133, 327                 |
| Moran v. New Orleans, 112 U. S. 69         |                    | Osborn v. Nicholson, 13 Wall. 654  | 657                      |
|  | 80, 474, 480       | Osborn v. United States Bank, 9    |                          |
| Morgan v. Gay, 19 Wall. 81                 | 494                | Wheat. 738                         | 259, 266, 292, 314, 315, |
| Morgan v. Louisiana, 93 U. S. 217          | 266                |                                    | 316, 365, 366            |
| Morgan's Steamship Co. v. Louisi-          |                    | Osborne v. United States, 91 U. S. |                          |
| ana Board of Health, 118 U. S.             |                    | 474                                | 165                      |
| 455  | 255, 474, 480, 594 | Owings v. Speed, 5 Wheat. 420      | 91                       |
| Mormon Church v. United States,            |                    | Pacific Insurance Co. v. Soule, 7  |                          |
| 136 U. S. 1                                | 639, 645           | Wall. 433                          | 238, 629                 |
| Mugler v. Kansas, 123 U. S. 623            | 474,               | Packer v. Bird, 137 U. S. 661      | 360                      |
|  | 483, 675           | Packet Co. v. Catlettsburg, 105    |                          |
| Munn v. Illinois, 94 U. S. 113             | 397, 666           | U. S. 559                          | 255, 454                 |
| Murdock v. City of Memphis, 20             |                    | Packet Co. v. Keokuk, 95 U. S. 80  |                          |
| Wall. 590                                  | 346                |                                    | 254, 594                 |
| Murphy v. Ramsey, 114 U. S. 15             | 645                | Parsons v. Bedford, 3 Pet. 433     | 494, 496                 |
| Nabob of Carnatic v. East India            |                    | Passenger Cases, 7 How. 283        | 80, 269,                 |
| Company, 1 Ves. Jr. 371; S. C.             |                    |                                    | 461, 463                 |
| 2 Ves. Jr. 56                              | 314                | Pawlet v. Clark, 9 Cranch, 292     | 334                      |



|  | PAGE                        |   | PAGE                             |
|--|-----------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| <i>Pelk v. Chicago &amp; Northwestern Railroad</i> , 94 U. S. 164                                  | 397                         | <i>Provident Institution for Savings v. Jersey City</i> , 113 U. S. 506     | 667                              |
| <i>Pembina Mining Co. v. Pennsylvania</i> , 125 U. S. 181  | 425, 663, 669               | <i>Pullman's Palace Car Co. v. Pennsylvania</i> , 141 U. S. 18              | 425                              |
| <i>Penhallow v. Doane</i> , 3 Dall. 54   | 47, 121                     | <i>Pumpelly v. Green Bay Co.</i> , 13 Wall. 166                             | 247                              |
| <i>Penn v. Lord Baltimore</i> , 1 Ves. Sen. 444  | 314                         | <i>Rahrer, Petitioner, In re</i> , 140 U. S. 545                            | 677                              |
| <i>Pennoyer v. McConnaughy</i> , 140 U. S. 1   | 268, 364                    | <i>Railroad Co. v. Husen</i> , 95 U. S. 465                                 | 81, 463, 465                     |
| <i>Pennsylvania v. Wheeling &amp; C. Bridge Co.</i> , 9 How. 647; 11 How. 528; 13 How. 518         | 619                         | <i>Railroad Co. v. McLure</i> , 10 Wall. 511                                | 531                              |
| <i>Pennsylvania v. Wheeling &amp; C. Bridge Co.</i> , 18 How. 421                                  | 619, 620                    | <i>Railroad Co. v. Rock</i> , 4 Wall. 177                                   | 531, 589                         |
| <i>Pennsylvania Railroad Co. v. Miller</i> , 132 U. S. 75  | 425, 570                    | <i>Ratterman v. Western Union Telegraph Co.</i> , 127 U. S. 411             | 269, 425, 474, 482               |
| <i>Pensacola Telegraph Co. v. Western Union Telegraph Co.</i> , 96 U. S. 1                         | 269, 270                    | <i>Rector of Christ's Church v. County of Philadelphia</i> , 24 How. 300    | 262                              |
| <i>People v. Compagnie Générale Transatlantique</i> , 107 U. S. 59                                 | 269, 460                    | <i>Reggie, Ex parte</i> , 114 U. S. 642                                     | 638                              |
| <i>People v. Weaver</i> , 100 U. S. 539  | 259                         | <i>Reynolds v. Stockton</i> , 98 U. S. 145                                  | 645                              |
| <i>Pervear v. Commonwealth</i> , 5 Wall. 475   | 649                         | <i>Reynolds v. Stockton</i> , 140 U. S. 254                                 | 631                              |
| <i>Philadelphia &amp; C. Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania</i> , 122 U. S. 326                         | 80, 269, 400, 425, 474, 478 | <i>Rhode Island v. Massachusetts</i> , 12 Pet. 657                          | 314                              |
| <i>Phillips v. Preston</i> , 5 How. 278  | 494                         | <i>Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District</i> , 120 U. S. 489             | 81, 114, 269, 270, 474, 477, 483 |
| <i>Pickard v. East Tennessee, Virginia &amp; C. Railroad</i> , 130 U. S. 637                       | 266                         | <i>Robinson v. Campbell</i> , 3 Wheat. 211                                  | 319                              |
| <i>Pickard v. Pullman Southern Car Co.</i> , 117 U. S. 34  | 80, 474, 478                | <i>Ross, Petitioner, In re</i> , 140 U. S. 370                              | 370                              |
| <i>Pittsburg &amp; C. Railroad Co. v. Southwestern Pennsylvania Railway Co.</i> , 77 Penn. St. 173 | 246                         | <i>Ross v. Prentiss</i> , 3 How. 771  | 346                              |
| <i>Planter (The)</i> , 7 Pet. 324  | 327                         | <i>Runkle v. United States</i> , 122 U. S. 543                              | 178                              |
| <i>Poindexter v. Greenhow</i> , 114 U. S. 270  | 365, 366                    | <i>Sackett v. Andross</i> , 5 Hill. 327                                     | 110                              |
| <i>Pollard v. Files</i> , 2 How. 591   | 130                         | <i>St. John v. Paine</i> , 10 How. 557                                      | 327                              |
| <i>Pound v. Turck</i> , 95 U. S. 459   | 454                         | <i>St. Louis, Iron Mountain &amp; C. Railway v. Vickers</i> , 122 U. S. 360 | 517                              |
| <i>Powell v. Pennsylvania</i> , 127 U. S. 678  | 659                         | <i>St. Louis v. Rutz</i> , 138 U. S. 226                                    | 360                              |
| <i>Presser v. Illinois</i> , 116 U. S. 252   | 625, 645, 662               | <i>Sands v. Manistee River Improvement Co.</i> , 123 U. S. 288              | 425                              |
| <i>Prigg v. Pennsylvania</i> , 16 Pet. 539   | 403                         | <i>Santa Clara County v. Southern Pacific Railroad Co.</i> , 118 U. S. 394  | 660, 663                         |
|  |                             | <i>Satterlee v. Matthewson</i> , 2 Pet. 413                                 | 348, 537, 588                    |
|  |                             | <i>Scholey v. Rew</i> , 23 Wall. 331  | 264                              |

## TABLE OF CASES.

xix

|                                      | PAGE                    |                                    | PAGE          |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Scotland County v. Hill, 132 U. S.   |                         | Tennessee v. Sneed, 96 U. S.       | 60            |
| 107                                  | 274                     | Terry, <i>Ex parte</i> , 128 U. S. | 289           |
| Scott v. Neely, 140 U. S.            | 106 357, 522            | Terry v. Anderson, 95 U. S.        | 528           |
| Seibert v. Lewis, 122 U. S.          | 284 509                 | Thaw v. Ritchie, 136 U. S.         | 519           |
| Simmons v. Saul, 138 U. S.           | 439 631                 | Thomas Jefferson (The), 10 Wheat.  |               |
| Sinnot v. Davenport, 22 How.         | 227 80                  | 428                                | 111, 133, 327 |
| Sioux City Railway Co. v. Sioux      |                         | Thompson v. Railroad Companies,    |               |
| City, 138 U. S.                      | 98 571                  | 6 Wall. 134                        | 523           |
| Slaughter House Cases, 16 Wall.      |                         | Thompson v. Whitman, 18 Wall.      |               |
| 36                                   | 101, 408, 411, 432, 657 | 457                                | 633           |
| Smith v. Alabama, 124 U. S.          | 465 425,                | Tomlinson v. Branch, 15 Wall.      | 460 365       |
|                                      | 474, 479                | Trade Mark Cases, 100 U. S.        | 82 622        |
| Soon Hing v. Crowley, 113 U. S.      |                         | Transportation Co. v. Parkersburg, |               |
| 703                                  | 659                     | 107 U. S.                          | 691 255       |
| Soulard v. United States, 4 Pet.     |                         | Turpin v. Burgess, 117 U. S.       | 504           |
| 511                                  | 130                     |                                    | 252, 592      |
| South Carolina v. Georgia, 93 U. S.  | 5 423                   | United States v. Arjona, 120 U. S. |               |
| Spencer v. Merchant, 125 U. S.       | 345 670                 | 479                                | 104, 618      |
| Spies v. Illinois, 123 U. S.         | 131 518                 | United States v. Arredondo, 9 Pet. |               |
| Sprague v. Thompson, 118 U. S.       | 90 474                  | 699                                | 313, 322      |
| Springer v. United States, 102 U. S. |                         | United States v. Barlow, 132 U. S. |               |
| 586                                  | 237, 628                | 271                                | 618           |
| State v. Fleming, 7 Humphreys,       |                         | United States v. Battiste, 2 Sum-  |               |
| 152                                  | 348                     | ner. 240                           | 501           |
| State Freight Tax (Case of), 15      |                         | United States v. Chicago, 7 How.   |               |
| Wall. 232                            | 80, 269, 462            | 185                                | 274           |
| State Tonnage Tax Cases, 12 Wall.    |                         | United States v. Clark County, 96  |               |
| 204                                  | 253                     | U. S. 211                          | 274           |
| Steamboat Orleans v. Phœbus, 11      |                         | United States v. Coombs, 12 Pet.   |               |
| Pet. 175                             | 327                     | 72                                 | 133, 327      |
| Stone v. Illinois Central Railroad,  |                         | United States v. Cruikshank, 92    |               |
| 116 U. S.                            | 347 474                 | U. S. 542                          | 521, 662      |
| Stone v. New Orleans & Northeast-    |                         | United States v. Curtis, 4 Mason,  |               |
| ern Railroad, 116 U. S.              | 352 474                 | 232                                | 491           |
| Stoutenburgh v. Hennick, 129 U. S.   |                         | United States v. D'Auterive, 10    |               |
| 141                                  | 425, 475, 483           | How. 609                           | 130           |
| Story v. Livingston, 13 Pet.         | 359 130                 | United States v. Ferreira, 13 How. |               |
| Sturges v. Crowninshield, 4 Wheat.   |                         | 40                                 | 353           |
| 122                                  | 110, 544, 546           | United States v. Holliday, 3 Wall. |               |
| Telegraph Co. v. Texas, 105 U. S.    |                         | 417                                | 470           |
| 460                                  | 81                      | United States v. Howland, 4 Wheat. |               |
| Telephone Cases, 126 U. S.           | 1 621                   | 108                                | 319           |
| Tennessee v. Davis, 100 U. S.        | 257                     | United States v. Jones, 119 U. S.  |               |
|                                      | 321, 336                | 447                                | 355           |
| Tennessee v. Pullman Southern Car    |                         | United States v. Kagama, 118 U. S. |               |
| Co., 117 U. S.                       | 34 80, 474              | 375                                | 402           |

|                                     | PAGE                 |  | PAGE              |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|--|-------------------|
| United States v. King, 7 How.       | 833                  | Vicksburg & Meridian Railroad v.         |                   |
| United States v. Klein, 13 Wall.    | 128                  | Putnam, 118 U. S.                        | 545               |
| United States v. Lee, 106 U. S.     | 196                  | Virginia, <i>Ex parte</i> , 100 U. S.    | 339               |
|                                     | 328, 341, 350        |  | 658, 665          |
| United States v. Louisiana, 123     |                      | Virginia Coupon Cases, 114 U. S.         |                   |
| U. S. 32                            | 264                  | 269                                      | 568               |
| United States v. Macon, 99 U. S.    |                      | Wabash & St. Louis Railway Co.           |                   |
| 582                                 | 274                  | v. Illinois, 118 U. S.                   | 557               |
| United States v. Morris, 1 Curtis,  |                      | 400, 474, 481, 599, 644                  |                   |
| 23                                  | 501                  | Walker v. Sauvinet, 92 U. S.             | 90                |
| United States v. Page, 137 U. S.    |                      |  | 494, 663          |
| 673                                 | 179                  | Wallach v. Van Renswick, 92 U. S.        |                   |
| United States v. Peters, 5 Cranch,  |                      | 202                                      | 600               |
| 115                                 | 127                  | Walling v. Michigan, 116 U. S.           | 446               |
| United States v. Petitt, 114 U. S.  |                      |  | 269, 474, 484     |
| 429                                 | 504, 505             | Walston v. Nevin, 128 U. S.              | 578               |
| United States v. The Pirates, 5     |                      | Ward v. Maryland, 12 Wheat.              | 418               |
| Wheat. 184                          | 623                  | Waring v. Clarke, 5 How.                 | 441               |
| United States v. Railroad Company,  |                      | Washington University v. Rouse, 8        |                   |
| 17 Wall. 322                        | 265                  | Wall. 439                                | 562               |
| United States v. Rauscher, 119      |                      | Watson v. Mercer, 8 Pet.                 | 88                |
| U. S. 407                           | 323, 325             | Welton v. Missouri, 91 U. S.             | 275               |
| United States v. Reese, 92 U. S.    |                      |  | 80, 269, 462, 464 |
| 214                                 | 679, 680             | Western Union Telegraph Co. v.           |                   |
| United States v. Rice, 4 Wheat.     |                      | Alabama, 132 U. S.                       | 472               |
| 246                                 | 264                  |  | 269, 425,         |
| United States v. Rillieux, 14 How.  |                      |  | 475, 482          |
| 189                                 | 130                  | Western Union Telegraph Co. v.           |                   |
| United States v. Schurz, 102 U. S.  |                      | Pendleton, 122 U. S.                     | 347               |
| 878                                 | 386, 424             |  | 81,               |
| United States v. Shive, 1 Baldwin,  |                      |  | 474, 482          |
| 510                                 | 501                  | Western Union Telegraph Co. v.           |                   |
| United States v. Turner, 11 How.    |                      | Texas, 105 U. S.                         | 460               |
| 663                                 | 130                  |  | 463, 466          |
| United States v. Wilson, 7 Pet.     | 150                  | Weston v. Charleston, 2 Pet.             | 449               |
| United States v. Yale Todd, 13 How. |                      |  | 258,              |
| 52, note                            | 353                  |  | 259, 266          |
| University v. People, 99 U. S.      | 309                  | Wheaton v. Peters, 8 Pet.                | 591               |
| Van Brocklin v. Tennessee, 117      |                      | Wheeler v. Jackson, 137 U. S.            | 245               |
| U. S. 151                           | 266                  |  | 271, 571          |
| Vanhorne's Lessee v. Dorrance, 2    |                      | Wheeling &c. Bridge Co. v. Bel-          |                   |
| Dall. 304                           | 67, 71, 98, 191, 349 | mont Bridge Co., 138 U. S.               | 287               |
| Veazie Bank v. Fenno, 8 Wall.       | 533                  | Whitehead v. Shattuck, 138 U. S.         |                   |
|                                     | 238, 629             | 146                                      | 522               |
| Vicksburg &c. Railroad Co. v.       |                      | Willamette Iron Bridge Co. v.            |                   |
| Dennis, 116 U. S.                   | 665                  | Hatch, 125 U. S.                         | 1                 |
|                                     | 262                  |  | 474, 478          |
|                                     |                      | William Wells, <i>Ex parte</i> , 18 How. |                   |
|                                     |                      | 307                                      | 165               |
|                                     |                      | Williams v. Conger, 125 U. S.            |                   |
|                                     |                      | 397                                      | 517               |

# TABLE OF CASES.

XXI

|   | PAGE          |   | PAGE     |
|---|---------------|---|----------|
| Williamson v. New Jersey, 130           |               | Woodruff v. Trapnall, 10 Wall. 190        | 583      |
| U. S. 189                               | 266           | Worcester v. Georgia, 6 Pet. 515          | 401      |
| Willson v. Blackbird Creek Marsh        |               | Wurts v. Hoagland, 114 U. S. 606          | 667      |
| Co., 2 Pet. 245                         | 399, 454, 461 | Yarbrough, <i>Ex parte</i> , 110 U. S. 65 | 680      |
| Wilson, <i>Ex parte</i> , 114 U. S. 417 |               | Yazoo & Mississippi Valley Rail-          |          |
|   | 504, 505      | road v. Thomas, 132 U. S. 174             | 266      |
| Wilson v. Gaines, 108 U. S. 417         | 266           | Yerger, <i>Ex parte</i> , 8 Wall. 85      | 344      |
| Wisconsin Central Railroad v.           |               | Yick Wo v. Hopkins, 118 U. S. 356         |          |
| Price, 133 U. S. 496                    | 266           |   | 660, 662 |
| Woodruff v. Parham, 8 Wall. 123         | 251,          | York v. Texas, 137 U. S. 15               | 672      |
|   | 463, 591      |   |          |



## I.

### THE FRAMING OF THE CONSTITUTION.<sup>1</sup>

---

WE are met here to commemorate an event in our progress, in many respects inferior to none in importance in our own history or in the history of the world. It is the formation of the Constitution of the United States, which, on this day, one hundred years ago, was adopted by the Convention which represented the *people* of the United States, and which was then signed by the delegates who framed it, and published as the final result of their arduous labors,—of their most careful and deliberate consideration,—and of a love of country as unmixed with selfishness as human nature is capable of.

In looking at the names of those who signed the instrument, our sentiment of pious reverence for the work of their hands hardly permits us

---

<sup>1</sup> This paper, which leads up to the Lectures delivered by Mr. Justice Miller before the classes in the Law School, is in substance the oration which he delivered on the 17th of September, 1887, at Philadelphia at "the celebration of the one hundredth anniversary of the framing and promulgation of the Constitution." Only such passages are omitted as treat of matters which are again discussed in the Lectures.

LECTURE I.  
Introductory.

to discriminate by special mention of any. But it is surely not in bad taste to mention that the name of George Washington is there as its first signer, and as president of the convention; the man of whom it was afterwards so happily declared by the representatives of a grateful people, that he was "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." He was the first man selected to fill the Chief Executive office of President created by the Constitution; and James Madison, another name found in the list of signers, filled the same office.

James Wilson, of Pennsylvania, John Blair, of Virginia, and John Rutledge, of South Carolina, were made justices of the court established by that instrument, with a large view, among its other functions, of expounding its meaning. With no invidious intent it may be here said that one of the greatest names in American history — Alexander Hamilton — is there as representing alone the important State of New York; his colleagues from that State having withdrawn from the convention before the final vote on the Constitution. Nor is it permissible, standing in this place and in this connection, to omit to point to the name of Benjamin Franklin, the venerable philosopher and patriot; of Robert Morris, the financier of the Revolution; and of Gouverneur Morris, the brilliant scholar and profound statesman.

It is necessary to any just appreciation of the Constitution, whose presentation for acceptance to the people of the United States a hundred

years ago on this day we commemorate, that some statement of its origin, and of the causes which led to it, should be made. The occasion requires that this shall be brief.

LECTURE I.  
Introductory.

The war of seven years, which was waged in support of the independence of these States, former provinces of Great Britain,—an independence announced by the Declaration of July 4, 1776, already referred to,—the war which will always be known in the history of this country as the war of the Revolution, was conducted by a union of those States under an agreement between them called Articles of Confederation. Under these articles each State was an integer of equal dignity and power in a body called the Congress, which conducted the affairs of the incipient nation. Each of the thirteen States which composed this confederation sent to Congress as many delegates as it chose, without reference to its population, its wealth, or the extent of its territory; but the vote upon the passage of any law, or resolution, or action suggested, was taken by States, the members from each State, however numerous or however small, constituting one vote, and a majority of these votes by States being necessary to the adoption of the proposition.

Articles of Con-  
federation.

The most important matters on which Congress acted were but little else than recommendations to the States, requesting their aid in the general cause. There was no power in the Congress to raise money by taxation. It could declare by way of assessment the amount each

Weakness of  
Congress under  
them.



**LECTURE I.**  
**Weakness of**  
**Congress under**  
**them.**

State should contribute to the support of the Government, but it had no means of enforcing compliance with this assessment. It could make requisitions on each State for men for the army which was fighting for them all, but the raising of this levy was wholly dependent upon the action of the States respectively. There was no authority to tax, or otherwise regulate, the import or export of foreign goods, nor to prevent the separate States from taxing property which entered their ports, though the property so taxed was owned by citizens of other States.

The end of this war of the Revolution, which had established our entire independence of the crown of Great Britain, and which had caused us to be recognized theoretically as a member of the family of nations, found us with an empty treasury, an impaired credit, a country drained of its wealth and impoverished by the exhaustive struggle. It found us with a large national debt to our own citizens and to our friends abroad, who had loaned us their money in our desperate strait; and worst of all, it found us with an army of unpaid patriotic soldiers who had endured every hardship that our want of means could add to the necessary incidents of a civil war, many of whom had to return penniless to families whose condition was pitiable.

For all these evils the limited and imperfect powers conferred by the Articles of Confederation afforded no adequate remedy. The Congress, in which was vested all the authority that those articles granted to the General Govern-

ment, struggled hopelessly and with constant failure from the treaty of peace with England, in 1783, until the formation of the new Constitution. Many suggestions were made for enlarging the powers of the Federal Government in regard to particular subjects. None were successful, and none proposed the only true remedy, namely, authority in the National Government to enforce the powers which were entrusted to it by the Articles of Confederation, by its own immediate and direct action on the people of the States.

LECTURE I.  
Weakness of  
Congress under  
them.

It is not a little remarkable that the suggestion which finally led to the relief, without which as a nation we must soon have perished, strongly supports the philosophical maxim of modern times,—that of all the agencies of civilization and progress of the human race, commerce is the most efficient. What our deranged finances, our discreditable failure to pay our debts, and the sufferings of our soldiers could not force the several States of the American Union to attempt, was brought about by a desire to be released from the evils of an unregulated and burdensome commercial intercourse, both with foreign nations and between the several States.

Causes which  
led to a change.

After many resolutions by State legislatures which led to nothing, one was introduced by Mr. Madison into that of Virginia, and passed on the twenty-first day of February, 1786, which appointed Edmund Randolph, James Madison Jr., and six others, commissioners, “to meet such commissioners as may be appointed by other

Action of Vir-  
ginia.

LECTURE I.  
Action of Vir-  
ginia.

States in the Union, at a time and place to be agreed, to take into consideration the trade of the United States; to examine the relative situation and trade of the said States; to consider how far a uniform system in their commercial regulations may be necessary to their common interest and their permanent harmony."

The Annapolis  
Convention.

This committee was directed to transmit copies of the resolution to the several States, with a letter requesting their concurrence, and proposing a time and place for the meeting. The time agreed upon was in September, 1786, and the place was Annapolis. Nine States appointed delegates, but those of five States only attended. These were New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Delaware. Four other States appointed delegates who, for various reasons, did not appear, or came too late. Of course such a convention as this could do little but make recommendations. What it did was to suggest a convention of delegates from all the States, "to devise such further provisions as might appear to be necessary to render the Constitution of the Federal Government adequate to the exigencies of the Union." It also proposed that whatever should be agreed upon by such a convention should be reported to Congress, and confirmed by the legislatures of all the States.

Congress reluc-  
tant to act.

This resolution and an accompanying report were presented to Congress, which manifested much reluctance and a very unreasonable delay in acting upon it, and a want of any earnest

approval of the plan. But the proceedings of the Annapolis convention had been laid before the legislatures of the States, where they met with a more cordial reception, and the action of several of them in approving the recommendation for a convention, and appointing delegates to attend it, finally overcame the hesitation of Congress. That body, accordingly, on the 21st of February, 1787, resolved that, in its opinion, "it was expedient that on the second Monday in May next, a convention of delegates, who shall have been appointed by the several States, be held at Philadelphia, for the sole and express purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation; and reporting to Congress and the several legislatures such alterations and provisions therein as shall, when agreed to in Congress, and confirmed by the States, render the Federal Constitution adequate to the exigencies of government and the preservation of the Union."

LECTURE I.  
Congress reluctant to act.

It acts favorably.

On the day thus recommended, — May 14th, — delegates from Virginia and Pennsylvania met and adjourned from day to day until the 25th, during which period delegates from other States made their appearance. On that day the delegates of seven States, duly appointed, being present, the convention was organized by the election of General Washington as its president, at the suggestion of Franklin. On the 28th the representation in the convention was increased to nine States; and on the 29th Edmund Randolph, delegate from Virginia, and governor of that State, inaugurated the work of the conven-

The Convention meets.

LECTURE I.  
The Convention  
meets.

It frames the  
Constitution.

tion by a speech in which he presented an outline of a constitution for its consideration.

From this time on, the convention labored assiduously and without intermission, until, on the seventeenth day of September, one hundred years ago, it closed its work by presenting a completed instrument, which, being subsequently ratified by the States, became the Constitution of the United States of America.

Rhode Island not  
represented.

All the States except Rhode Island were finally represented in the convention and took part in framing the instrument, a majority of the delegates of each State assenting to it. That State sent no delegate to the convention; and when the Constitution was presented to it for ratification no convention was called for that purpose until after it had gone into operation as the organic law of the National Government. It was two years before she accepted it and became in reality a State of the Union.

Reasons for it.

It is a matter for profound reflection by the philosophical statesman, that, while the most efficient motive in bringing the other States into this convention was a desire to amend the situation in regard to trade among the States, and to secure a uniform system of commercial regulation, as necessary to the common interest and permanent harmony, the course of Rhode Island was mainly governed by the consideration that her superior advantages of location, and the possession of what was supposed to be the best harbor on the Atlantic coast, should *not* be subjected to the control of a Congress which

was by that instrument expressly authorized LECTURE I.  
Reasons for it.  
 “to regulate commerce with foreign nations and among the several States,” and which also declared that “no preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another, nor any vessel bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.”

That the spirit which actuated Rhode Island still exists, and is found in other States of the Union, may be inferred from the fact that at no time since the formation of the Union has there been a period when there were not to be found in the statute-books of some of the States acts passed in violation of this provision of the Constitution, imposing taxes and other burdens upon the free interchange of commodities, discriminating against the productions of other States, and attempting to establish regulations of commerce, which the Constitution says shall only be done by the Congress of the United States.

During the session of the Supreme Court which ended in May last<sup>1</sup> no less than four or five decisions of the highest importance were rendered, declaring statutes of as many different States to be void, because they were forbidden by this provision of the Federal Constitution.

We need not here pursue the detailed history The Constitution  
accepted. of the ratification and adoption of the Constitution by the States. The instrument itself, and the resolution of Congress submitting it to the

---

<sup>1</sup> October Term, 1886. 118 U. S.—122 U. S.

LECTURE I.  
The Constitution  
accepted.

States, both provided that it should go into operation when adopted by nine States. Eleven of them accepted it in their first action in the matter. North Carolina delayed a short time, and Rhode Island two years later changed her mind; and thus the thirteen States which had united in the struggle for independence became a nation under this form of government.

And transmitted  
to Congress.

Let us consider now the task which the convention undertook to perform, the difficulties which lay in its way, and the success which attended its efforts. In submitting to Congress the result of their labors, the convention accompanied the instrument with a letter signed under its authority by its president, and addressed to the President of Congress. Perhaps no public document of the times so short, yet so important, is better worth consideration than this letter, dated September 17, 1787. From it I must beg your indulgence to read the following extracts:—

“SIR:—We now have the honor to submit to the consideration of the United States in Congress assembled that Constitution which has appeared to us the most advisable. The friends of our country have long seen and desired that the power of making war, peace, and treaties, that of levying money and regulating commerce, and the correspondent executive and judicial authorities, should be fully and effectually vested in the general government of the Union; but the impropriety of delegating such extensive trusts to one body of men” (meaning

Congress) "is evident. Hence results the necessity of a different organization. It is obviously impracticable in the federal government of these States to secure all the rights of independent sovereignty to each, and yet provide for the interests and safety of all." Again: —

LECTURE I.  
And transmitted  
to Congress.

"In all our deliberations on this subject we kept steadily in view that which appears to us the greatest interest of every true American, — *the consolidation of our Union*, in which is involved our prosperity, felicity, safety, perhaps our national existence. This important consideration, seriously and deeply impressed on our minds, led each State in the convention to be less rigid on points of inferior magnitude than might otherwise be expected; and thus the Constitution which we now present is the result of a spirit of amity, and of that natural deference and concession which the peculiarity of our political situation rendered indispensable."

The instrument framed under the influence of these principles is introduced by language very similar. The opening sentence reads: "We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America."

This Constitution has been tested by the experience of a century of its operation, and in the light of this experience it may be well

Opposition to it.



LECTURE I.  
Opposition to it.

to consider its value. Many of its most important features met with earnest and vigorous opposition. This opposition was shown in the convention which presented it, and the conventions of the States called to ratify it. In both, the struggle in its favor was arduous and doubtful, the opposition able and active.

Objections urged  
against it.

Perhaps the wisdom of this great instrument cannot be better seen than by reconsidering at this time some of the most important objections then made to it. One of these which caused the opposition of several delegates in the Constitutional Convention, and their refusal to sign it, was the want of a well-defined bill of rights. The royal charters of many of the colonies, and the constitutions adopted by several States after the revolt, had such declarations, mainly assertions of personal rights and of propositions intended to give security to the individual in his right of person and property against the exercise of authority by governing bodies of the State. The Constitution was not void of such protection. It provided for the great writ of *habeas corpus*, the means by which all unlawful imprisonments and restraints upon personal liberty had been removed in the English and American courts since Magna Charta was proclaimed; and it declared that the privilege of that writ should not be suspended, unless in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety should require it. The Constitution also declared that no *ex post facto* law or bill of attainder should be passed by Congress; and

no law impairing the obligation of contracts by any State. It secured the trial by jury of all crimes within the State where the offence was committed. It defined treason so as to require some overt act, which must be proved by two witnesses, or confessed in open court, for conviction.

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

It can hardly be said that experience has demonstrated the sufficiency of these for the purpose which the advocates of a bill of rights had in view, because, upon the recommendation of several of the States made in the act of ratifying the Constitution, or by legislatures at their first meeting subsequently, twelve amendments were proposed by Congress, ten of which were immediately ratified by the requisite number of States, and became part of the Constitution within two or three years of its adoption.

In the presentation and ratification of these amendments, the advocates of a specific bill of rights, and those who were dissatisfied with the strong power conferred on the Federal Government, united; and many statesmen who leaned to a strong government for the nation were willing, now that the Government was established, to win to its favor those who distrusted it by the adoption of these amendments. Hence a very slight examination of them shows that all of them are restrictions upon the power of the General Government, or upon the modes of exercising that power, or declarations of the powers remaining with the States and with the people. They establish certain private rights of

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

persons and property which the General Government may not violate. As regards these last, it is not believed that any acts of intentional oppression by the Government of the United States have called for serious reprehension; but, on the contrary, history points us to no government in which the freedom of the citizen and the rights of property have been better protected and life and liberty more firmly secured.

As regards the question of the relative distribution of the powers necessary to organized society, between the Federal and State governments, more will be said hereafter.

As soon as it became apparent to the convention that the new government must be a nation, resting for its support upon the people over whom it exercised authority, and not a league of independent States, brought together under a compact on which each State should place its own construction, the question of the relative power of those States in the new government became a subject of serious difference. There were those in the convention who insisted that in the legislative body, where the most important powers must necessarily reside, the States should, as in the Articles of Confederation, stand upon a perfect equality, each State having but one vote; and this feature was finally retained in that part of the Constitution which vested in Congress the election of the President, when there should be a failure to elect by the electoral college in the regular mode prescribed by that instrument. The contest in the conven-

tion became narrowed to the composition of the Senate, after it had been determined that the legislature should consist of two distinct bodies, sitting apart from each other, and voting separately. One of these was to be a popular body, elected directly by the people at short intervals. The other was to be a body more limited in numbers, with longer terms of office; and this, with the manner of their appointment, was designed to give stability to the policy of the Government, and to be in some sense a restraint upon sudden impulses of popular will.

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

With regard to the popular branch of the legislature, there did not seem to be much difficulty in establishing the proposition, that in some general way each State should be represented in it in proportion to its population, and that each member of the body should vote with equal effect on all questions before it. But when it was sought by the larger and more populous States, as Virginia, Pennsylvania, and Massachusetts, to apply this principle to the composition of the Senate, the resistance of the smaller States became stubborn, and they refused to yield. The feeling arising under the discussion of this subject came nearer causing the disruption of the convention than any which agitated its deliberations. It was finally settled by an agreement that every State, however small, should have two representatives in the Senate of the United States, and no State should have any more; and that no amendment of the Constitution should deprive any State of its equal suf-

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

frage in the Senate without its consent. As the Senate has the same power in enacting laws as the House of Representatives, and as each State has its two votes in that body, it will be seen that the smaller States secured, when they are in a united majority, the practical power of defeating all legislation which was unacceptable to them.

What has the experience of a century taught us on this question? It is certainly true that there have been many expressions of dissatisfaction with the operation of a principle which gives to each of the six New England States, situated compactly together, as much power in the Senate in making laws, in ratifying treaties, and in confirming or rejecting appointments to office, as is given to the great State of New York, which, both in population and wealth, exceeds all the New England States, and nearly if not quite equals them in territory.

But if we are to form an opinion from demonstrations against, or attempts to modify, this feature of the Constitution, or any feature which concerns exclusively the functions of the Senate, we shall be compelled to say that the ablest of our public men, and the wisdom of the nation, are in the main satisfied with the work of the convention on this point after a hundred years of observation. And it is believed that the existence of an important body in our system of government, not wholly the mere representative of population, has exercised a wholesome conservatism on many occasions in our history.

Another feature of the Constitution which met with earnest opposition was the vesting of the executive power in a single magistrate. While Hamilton would have preferred a monarch, with strong restriction on his authority, like that in England, he soon saw that even his great influence could not carry the convention with him. There were not a few members who preferred in that matter the system of a single body (as the Congress) in which should be reposed all the power of the nation, or a council, or executive committee, appointed by that body and responsible to it. There were others who preferred an executive council of several members, not owing its appointment to Congress.

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

It was urged against our Constitution by many liberty-loving men, both in the convention and out of it, that it conferred upon the executive, a single individual, whose election for a term of four years was carefully removed from the direct vote of the people, powers dangerous to the existence of free government. It was said that with the appointment of all the officers of the Government, civil and military, the sword and the purse of the nation in his hands, the power to prevent the enactment of laws to which he did not assent, — unless they could be passed over his objection by a vote of two-thirds in each of the two legislative houses, — and the actual use of this power for four years without interruption, an ambitious man, of great personal popularity, could establish his power dur-

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

ing his own life and transmit it to his family as a perpetual dynasty.

Perhaps of all objections made to important features of the Constitution this one had more plausibility, and was urged with most force. But if the century of our experience has demonstrated anything, it is the fallacy of this objection and of all the reasons urged in its support.

The objection that the electoral college was a contrivance to remove the appointment of the President from the control of popular suffrage, was, if it had any merit, speedily overcome without any infraction of the Constitution by the democratic tendencies of the people. The electors composing the college, who, it was supposed, would each exercise an independent judgment in casting his vote for President, soon came to be elected themselves on distinct pledges made beforehand, that they would vote for some person designated as a popular favorite for that office. So that at the present time the electors of each State, in sending to the capital their votes for President, do but record the instruction of a majority of the citizens voting in that State. The term of four years for the Presidential office is not now deemed too long by any one, while there are many who would desire that it should be made longer, say seven or ten years.

The power of appointment to office requires the consent of the Senate to its exercise; and that body has asserted its right of refusing that assent so courageously and so freely, that there

can be no real fear of its successful use by the President in a manner to endanger the liberty of the country, unless the Senate itself shall be utterly corrupted. Nor can the means for such corruption be obtained from the public treasury, unless Congress in both branches shall become so degenerate as to consent to such use.

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

Nor have we had in this country any want of ambitious men, who have earnestly desired the Presidency, or, having it once, have longed for a continuation of it at the end of the lawful term. And it may be said that it is almost a custom when a President has filled his office for one term acceptably, that he is to be re-elected, if his political party continues to be a popular majority. Our people have also shown the usual hero-worship of successful military chieftains, and rewarded them by election to the Presidency. In proof of this it is only necessary to mention the names of Washington, Jackson, Harrison, Taylor, and Grant. In some of them there has been no want of ambition, nor of the domineering disposition, which is often engendered by the use of military power. Yet none of these men have had more than two terms of the office. And though a few years ago one of the most largely circulated newspapers of the United States wrote in its paper day after day articles headed "Cæsarism," charging danger to the republic from one of its greatest benefactors and military chiefs, it excited no attention but derision, and deserved no other.



LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

There is no danger in this country from the power reposed in the Presidential office. There is, as sad experience shows, far, far more danger from nihilism and assassination, than from ambition in our public servants.

So far have the incumbents of the Presidency, during the hundred years of its history, been from grasping, or attempting to grasp, powers not warranted by the Constitution, and so far from exercising the admitted power of that office in a despotic manner, that a candid student of our political history during that time cannot fail to perceive that no one of the three great departments of the Government — the Legislative, the Executive, and the Judicial — has been more shorn of its just powers, or crippled in the exercise of them, than the Presidency.

In regard to the function of appointment to office, — perhaps the most important of the executive duties, — the spirit of the Constitution requires that the President shall exercise freely his best judgment and follow his most sincere conviction in selecting proper men.

It is undeniable that for many years past, by the gradual growth of custom, it has come to pass that in the nomination of officers by the President, he has so far submitted to be governed by the wishes and recommendations of interested members of the two Houses of Congress, that the purpose of the Constitution in vesting this power in him, and the right of the public to hold him personally responsible for each and every appointment he makes, are largely defeated. In

other words, the great principle lying at the foundation of all free governments, that the legislative and executive departments shall be kept separate, is invaded by the participation of members of Congress in the exercise of the appointing power.

LECTURE I.  
Objections urged  
against it.

History teaches us in no mistaken language how often customs and practices, which were originated without lawful warrant and opposed to the sound construction of the law, have come to overload and pervert it; as commentators on the text of Holy Scripture have established doctrines wholly at variance with its true spirit.

Without considering many minor objections made to the Constitution during the process of its formation and adoption, let us proceed to that one which was the central point of contest then, and which, transferred to the question of construing that instrument, has continued to divide statesmen and politicians to the present time.

The convention was divided in opinion between those who desired a strong national government, capable of sustaining itself by the exercise of suitable powers, and invested by the Constitution with such powers, and those who, regarding the Articles of Confederation as a basis, proposed to strengthen the General Government in a very few particulars, leaving it chiefly dependent on the action of the States themselves for its support and for the enforcement of its laws.

Let us deal tenderly with the Articles of Confederation. We should here, on this glorious

Weakness of the  
Articles of  
Confederation.

LECTURE I.  
Weakness of the  
Articles of  
Confederation.

anniversary, feel grateful for any instrumentality which helped us in the days of our earliest struggle. Very few are now found to say anything for these Articles, yet they constituted the nominal bond which held the States together during the war of independence. It must be confessed that the sense of a common cause and a common danger probably did more to produce this united effort than any other motives. But the Articles served their purpose for the occasion; and though, when the pressure of imminent danger was removed, they were soon discovered to be a rope of sand, let them rest in a peaceful, honorable remembrance.

Federal and State-  
Right principles  
of Construction.

Between those who favored a strong government of the Union and those who were willing to grant it but little power at the expense of the States, there were various shades of opinion; and while it was the prevailing sentiment of the convention that "the greatest interest of every true American was the consolidation of the Union," there were many who were unwilling to attain this object by detaching the necessary powers from the States and conferring them on the National Government.

These divergent views had their effect, both in the constitutional convention and in those held for its ratification. Around this central point the contention raged, and it was only by compromises and concessions, dictated by the necessity of each yielding something for the common good,—so touchingly mentioned in the letter of the convention to Congress,—that

the result was finally reached. The patriotism and the love of liberty of each party were undisputed. The anxiety for a government which would best reconcile the possession of powers essential to the State governments with those necessary to the existence and efficiency of the government of the Union, was equal; and the long struggle since the adoption of the Constitution, on the same line of thought, in its construction, shows how firmly these different views were imbedded in our political theories.

LECTURE I.  
Federal and State  
Right principles  
of Construction.

The party which came to be called the party of State's Rights has always dreaded that the alleged supremacy of the national power would overthrow the State governments, or control them to an extent incompatible with any useful existence. Their opponents have been equally confident that powers essential to the successful conduct of the General Government, which either expressly or by implication are conferred on it by the Constitution, were denied to it by the principles of the State's Right party. The one believed in danger to the States, from the theory which construed with a free and liberal rule the grants of power to the General Government, and the other believed that such a construction of the Constitution was consistent with the purpose and spirit of that instrument, and essential to the perpetuity of the nation.

If experience can teach anything on the subject of theories of government, the late civil war teaches unmistakably that those who believed the source of danger to be in the strong powers

LECTURE I.  
Federal and State  
Right principles  
of Construction.

of the Federal Government were in error, and that those who believed that such powers were necessary to its safe conduct and continued existence were in the right. The attempted destruction of the Union by eleven States, which were part of it, and the apparent temporary success of the effort, were undoubtedly due to the capacity of the States under the Constitution for concerted action, by organized movements, with all the machinery ready at hand to raise armies and establish a central government. And the ultimate failure of the attempt is to be attributed with equal clearness to the exercise of those powers of the General Government, under the Constitution, which were denied to it by extreme advocates of State Rights. And that this might no longer be matter of dispute, three new amendments to the Constitution were adopted at the close of that struggle, which, while keeping in view the principles of our complex form of State and Federal government, and seeking to disturb the distribution of powers among them as little as was consistent with the wisdom acquired by a sorrowful experience, confer additional powers on the government of the Union, and place additional restraints upon those of the States. May it be long before such an awful lesson is again needed to decide upon disputed questions of constitutional law.

It is not out of place to remark that, while the pendulum of public opinion has swung with much force away from the extreme point of State's Right doctrine, there may be danger of

its reaching an extreme point on the other side. **LECTURE I.**  
 In my opinion, the just and equal observance of **Federal and State**  
 the rights of the States, and of the General Gov- **Right principles**  
 ernment, as defined by the present Constitution, **of Construction.**  
 is as necessary to the permanent prosperity of  
 our country, and to its existence for another  
 century, as it has been for the one whose close  
 we are now celebrating.

Having considered the objections originally **Division of**  
 made to this great work, in the light of its oper- **powers into legis-**  
 ation for a century, what shall we say of it in **lative, executive,**  
 regard to those great features which were more **and judicial.**  
 generally acceptable? The doctrine of Montes-  
 quieu, then in the height of his influence, that  
 the powers essential to all governments should be  
 distributed among three separate bodies of magis-  
 tracy, — namely, legislative, executive, and judi-  
 cial, — was, as Madison affirms in number XLVII  
 of the *Federalist*, recognized by the convention  
 as the foundation of its labors. The apparent  
 departure from that principle in making the  
 Senate a participant in the exercise of the ap-  
 pointing power, and the treaty-making power,  
 works well, because the initiative remains with  
 the Executive. The power of that body to try  
 impeachments of public officers for high crimes  
 and misdemeanors, a function essentially judi-  
 cial, while it has not produced any substantial  
 injury, has, perhaps, operated as a safety-valve  
 in cases of great popular excitement. As an  
 efficient remedy, it must be conceded to be a  
 failure.

But the harmony and success with which the

LECTURE I.  
Division of  
powers into legis-  
lative, executive,  
and judicial.

three great subdivisions of the organized government of the Constitution have co-operated in the growth, prosperity, and happiness of this great people, constitute the strongest argument in favor of the organic law, which governs them all. It is the first successful attempt, in the history of the world, to lay the deep and broad foundations of a government for millions of people and an unlimited territory, in a single written instrument, framed and adopted in one great national effort.

This instrument comes nearer than any of political origin to Rousseau's idea of a society founded on social contract. In its formation, States and individuals, in the possession of equal rights, — the rights of human nature common to all, — met together and deliberately agreed to give up certain of those rights to government for the better security of others; and that there might be no mistake about this agreement it was reduced to writing, with all the solemnities which give sanction to the pledges of mankind.

Other nations speak of their constitutions, which are the growth of centuries of government, and the maxims of experience, and the traditions of ages. Many of them deserve the veneration which they receive; but a constitution, in the American sense of the word, as accepted in all the States of North and South America, means an instrument in writing, defining the powers of government, and distributing those powers among different bodies of magistrates for their more judicious exercise. The

Constitution of the United States not only did this as regards a national government, but it established a federation of many States by the same instrument, in which the usual fatal defects in such unions have been corrected with such felicity, that during the hundred years of its existence the union of the States has grown stronger, and has received within that Union other States exceeding in number those of the original federation.

LECTURE I.  
Division of  
powers into legis-  
lative, executive,  
and judicial.

It is not only the first important written constitution found in history, but it is the first one which contained the principles necessary to the successful confederation of numerous powerful States. I do not forget, nor do I mean to disparage, our sister, the federal republic of Switzerland: but her continuance as an independent power in Europe is so largely due to her compact territory, her inaccessible mountains, her knowledge of the necessity of union to safety, and the policy of her powerful neighbors which demands of each other the recognition of her rights, that she hardly forms an exception. Switzerland stands to-day—so may she ever stand—as the oldest witness to the capacity of a republican federation of States for sound government, for the security of freedom, and resistance to disintegrating tendencies. When we consider the results of confederation in the Olympic Council, and the Achaian League of ancient history, and in modern times in the States of Holland and the old German Empire, we must admit that the United States

The success of the  
new form of  
government.



LECTURE I.  
The success of the  
new form of  
government.

present the most remarkable, if not the only successful, happy, and prosperous, federated government of the world.

The growth of  
the United States.

Let us consider for a moment the evidence of this. When the Constitution was finally ratified, and Rhode Island also accepted it, the Government was composed of thirteen States. It now numbers thirty-eight. The inhabited area of those States was found between the Allegheny Mountains and the Atlantic Ocean, a region which, when we now look over a map of the United States, seems to be but the eastern border of the great republic. Its area now includes all the territory between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans,—a distance of over three thousand miles east and west,—and between the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes on the north and the Gulf and States of Mexico on the south. Besides these thirty-eight States, the remainder of this immense region is divided into eight Territories, with an organized government in each, several of which are ready to be admitted into the Union as States, under a provision of the Constitution on that subject, and in accordance with the settled policy of the nation.

The thirteen States which originally organized this Government had a population believed to be, in round numbers, three millions, many of whom were slaves. To-day it seems probable that sixty millions are embraced in the United States, in which there breathes no soul who owns any man master.

I have already suggested the impoverished

condition of the country at the close of the Revolutionary war. To-day I do not hesitate to make the assertion, that if you count only that which is real wealth, and not accumulated capital in the shape of evidences of debt,—which is but a burden upon such property,—I mean, if you count lands and houses and furniture, and horses and cattle and jewels,—all that is tangible and contributes to the comfort and pleasure of life,—the United States to-day is the wealthiest country upon the face of the globe, and is the only great government which is so rapidly paying off its national debt that it is begging its creditors to accept their money not yet due, with a reasonable rebate for interest.

LECTURE I.  
The growth of  
the United States.

Under the Government established by this Constitution we have, in the century which we are now overlooking, had three important wars, such as are always accompanied by hazardous shocks to all governments. In the first of these we encountered the British Empire, the most powerful nation then on the globe,—a nation which had successfully resisted Napoleon, with all the power of Europe at his back. If we did not attain all we fought for in that contest, we displayed an energy and courage which commanded for us an honorable stand among the nations of the earth.

In the second,—the war with Mexico,—while our reputation as a warlike people suffered no diminution, we made large accessions of valuable territory, out of which States have been since made members of the Union.

LECTURE I.  
The growth of  
the United States.

The last war, — the recent civil war, — in the number of men engaged in it, in the capacity of the weapons and instruments of destruction brought into operation, and in the importance of the result to humanity at large, must be esteemed the greatest war that the history of the world presents. It was brought about by the attempt of eleven of the States to destroy the Union. This was resisted by the Government of that Union under the powers granted to it by the Constitution. Its results were the emancipation of three millions of slaves, the suppression of the attempt to dis sever the Union, the resumption of an accelerated march in the growth, prosperity, and happiness of this country. It also taught the lesson of the indestructibility of the Union, of the wisdom of the principles on which it is founded, and it astonished the nations of the world and inspired them with a respect which they had never before entertained for our country.

I venture to hope that, with the earnest gaze of the wisest and ablest minds of the age turned with profound interest to the experiment of the federative system, under our American Constitution, it may suggest something to relieve the nations of Europe from burdens so heavy that if not soon removed they must crush the social fabric. Those great nations cannot go on forever adding millions upon millions to their public debts, mainly for the support of permanent standing armies, while those armies make such heavy drafts upon the able-bodied men whose

productive industry is necessary to the support of the people and of the government.

LECTURE I.  
The growth of  
the United States.

I need not dwell on this unpleasant subject further than to say that these standing armies are rendered necessary by the perpetual dread of war with neighboring nations.

In the principles of our Constitution by which the autonomy and domestic government of each State are preserved, while the supremacy of the General Government at once forbids wars between the States, and enables it to enforce peace among them, we may discern the elements of political forces sufficient for the rescue of European civilization from this great disaster.

Do I claim for the Constitution, whose creation we celebrate to-day, the sole merit of the wonderful epitome which I have presented to you of the progress of this country to greatness, to prosperity, to happiness, and to honor? Nay, I do not; though language used by men of powerful intellect and great knowledge of history might be my justification if I did.

Mr. Bancroft, the venerable historian, who has devoted a long and laborious life to a history of his country that is a monument to his genius and his learning, says of the closing hours of the convention: "The members were awe-struck at the result of their counsels; the Constitution was a nobler work than any one of them believed possible to devise." And he prefaces the volume of his invaluable history of the formation of the Constitution with a sentiment of Mr. Gladstone, the greatest living statesman of England, who

LECTURE I.  
The growth of  
the United States.

said: "As the British constitution is the most subtle organism which has proceeded from progressive history, so the American Constitution is the most wonderful work ever struck off at a given time by the brain and purpose of man."

And while I heartily indorse this, and feel it impossible to find language in which to express my admiration and my love for the Constitution of the United States, and my profound belief that the wisdom of man, unaided by inspiration, has produced no writing so valuable to humanity, I should fail of a most important duty if I did not say on this public occasion, that no amount of wisdom in a constitution can produce wise government, unless there is a suitable response in the spirit of the people.

The Anglo-Saxon race, from whom we inherit so much that is valuable in our character, as well as our institutions, has been remarkable in all its history for a love of law and order. While other peoples, equally cultivated, have paid their devotion to the man in power, as representative of the law which he enforces, the English people, and we their descendants, have venerated the law itself, looking past its administrators, and giving our allegiance and our obedience to the principles which govern organized society. It has been said that a dozen Englishmen or Americans, thrown on an uninhabited island, would at once proceed to adopt a code of laws for their government, and elect the officers who were to enforce them. And certainly this proposition

is borne out by the early history of our emigrants to California, where every mining camp organized into a political body, and made laws for its own government, which were so good that Congress adopted them until they should be repealed or modified by statute.

LECTURE I.  
The growth of  
the United States.

I but repeat the language of the Supreme Court of the United States when I say that in this country the law is supreme. No man is so high as to be above the law. No officer of the Government may disregard it with impunity. To this inborn and native regard for law, as a governing power, we are indebted largely for the wonderful success and prosperity of our people, for the security of our rights; and when the highest law to which we pay this homage is the Constitution of the United States, the history of the world has presented no such wonder of a prosperous, happy civil government.

Let me urge upon my fellow-countrymen, and especially upon the rising generation of them, to examine with careful scrutiny all new theories of government and of social life, and if they do not rest upon a foundation of veneration and respect for law as the bond of social existence, let them be distrusted as inimical to human happiness.

And now let me close this address with a quotation from one of the ablest jurists and most profound commentators upon our laws, — Chancellor Kent. He said, fifty years ago: "The Government of the United States was created by the free voice and joint will of the people of

Conclusion.

**LECTURE I.**  
**Conclusion.**

America for their common defence and general welfare. Its powers apply to those great interests which relate to this country in its national capacity, and which depend for their stability and protection on the consolidation of the Union. It is clothed with the principal attributes of sovereignty, and it is justly deemed the guardian of our best rights, the source of our highest civil and political duties, and the sure means of our national greatness."

## NOTES UPON LECTURE I.

---

THE Constitution of the United States, like all systems of government which are permanent, had its origin in the history and necessities of the people through whose instrumentality and for whose benefit it was formed. Driven by those necessities, the people of the United Colonies assumed and exercised the national powers of a federative government, before any written charter was made. The very Act of Separation assumes this fact. It is not the Declaration of thirteen individual States, but of "the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled."

LECTURE I.  
The Constitution  
the outcome of  
previous history.

In Colonial days more than one effort had been made to secure a local union of Colonies in different parts of the country. These doubtless contributed more or less to the desire for unity and nationality which eventually found expression in the Constitution.<sup>1</sup>

In 1765 an American Congress assembled at New York, but it was a deliberative body only, with no governmental functions, and no powers, executive or legislative. On the 5th of Sep-

---

<sup>1</sup> Bancroft's History of the United States, Last Revision, vol. 1, pp. 291, 292; 2 Ib. pp. 74, 75; 6 Ib. pp. 7, 8.



## LECTURE I.

tember, 1774, the first Continental Congress met in Philadelphia. When it adjourned it provided for a second Congress to meet in Philadelphia in the following May. Before that time arrived the battles of Lexington and Concord had taken place.

The Congress of  
1775 exercises  
National powers.

This outbreak of a state of war found in each Colony or Province an organized government with separate functions, exercising a limited sovereignty under the king of Great Britain. Many of the broader powers and functions of National Sovereignty, which the Constitution now places in the government of the United States, then resided in the British king and Parliament. When British sovereignty fell, such powers were assumed and exercised, without question, by the Congress of the United Colonies, before the United States existed as an independent nation; months before the Articles of Confederation were agreed to; years before they became operative by receiving the assent of all the States. They were never enjoyed or exercised by the States separately; and consequently, as an historic fact, independently of theory, they could not have been retained when the States conferred upon the general Government other enumerated powers in the Articles of Confederation.

The United States  
becomes a nation.

Unconsciously to themselves the people of the United States were absorbed into a new nationality by the very fact of their combined resistance to Great Britain. They carried on war; they officered and maintained armies; they

commissioned vessels of war; they borrowed money and issued evidences of debt therefor; they created prize courts; they acquired territory and determined what the nature of its civilization should be; they made treaties with foreign powers; and in many ways, both before and after the adoption of the Articles of Confederation, they exercised the highest powers of sovereignty.

LECTURE I.  
The United States  
becomes a nation.

This Congress was both the Executive and the Legislature of the Nation. It was the body which framed the Articles of Confederation, and many of its members were also in the Convention which framed the Constitution of the United States. Unless that Constitution is to be construed theoretically, and without regard to the incidents of the national history of which it was the outcome, a knowledge of what that Congress did, derived from historical investigation, must help us in comprehending what sort of a government the framers of the Constitution intended to establish. To cover this whole ground would be to write the legislative history of those eventful fourteen years. I select from all its legislation three subjects: 1, The Appellate Prize Courts; 2, The Treaties negotiated with Foreign Powers; 3, The acquisition of the territory to the northwest of the Ohio, and the exclusion of slavery from it.

### 1. *Appellate Prize Courts of the Revolution.*

Soon after hostilities began, representatives of the United Colonies assembled together in

Appellate Prize  
Courts of the  
Revolution.

LECTURE I.  
Appellate Prize  
Courts of the  
Revolution.

Philadelphia with the purpose of consulting and legislating for the common good. Union existed, though without written charter, and with no means of preventing dissolution. The first object of the Continental Congress, after the battles of Lexington and Concord, was to put a force in the field which would enable the commander-in-chief to hold the enemy in check. But it was soon discovered, in practice, that there was another element in the contest for which no provision, adequate or otherwise, had been made, and which Congress had, perhaps, not taken into consideration.

The people living in the eastern part of Massachusetts, which was then the theatre of war, were to a large extent sailors or fishermen; or in some other way they got their living or their recreation out of maritime pursuits. The commerce of Boston, Providence, New York, and other ports was carried on under the British flag, with British money, to transport British goods. This was an invitation to a maritime people to engage in a maritime war against the enemy's commerce. The invitation was immediately accepted.

Colonial Admiralty Courts.

Vessels, captured from time to time, were brought into such Massachusetts ports as were not in the enemy's possession; but it was found that no court existed with competent jurisdiction to adjudge them to be lawful prize. The admiralty colonial courts, such as they were, existed under authority derived from a royal commission. This was, of course, not available to

the seamen of Massachusetts in the summer of 1775.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE I.  
Colonial  
Admiralty  
Courts.  
Massachusetts  
Admiralty  
Courts.

To meet this emergency, the Council and House of Representatives of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, on the 1st of November, 1775, enacted a statute which is said to be "remarkable as having been the first which was passed by any of the Colonies for fitting out vessels of marque and reprisal, and for establishing a court to try and condemn the captured vessels of the enemy."<sup>2</sup> The act divided the State into three districts, in each of which it established a Maritime Court, with jurisdiction over prizes, but differing from the Admiralty Court known in International Law, by permitting the facts to be found by a jury.<sup>3</sup> Boston, being occupied by the enemy, was not included in this division; but when the enemy retired, the districts were reorganized, and an appeal was given to the Continental Congress in cases

---

<sup>1</sup> "In each one of the royal colonies in America, as in each of the other colonies of Great Britain, the commission issued to the royal governor usually invested him with the powers of a vice-admiral. . . . Cases of capture arising in the Colonies had naturally gone to these courts. But the vice-admiralty courts were rapidly destroyed by the Revolution. Where the governor had acted as judge, he was now in flight. . . . Nor could judges sit by virtue of commissions from King George to give judgment respecting prizes captured from him. The vice-admiralty courts continued in existence in those places only which were occupied by royal forces." — *The Predecessor of the Supreme Court*, by J. F. Jameson, Ph.D., being Essay 1 in *Essays in the Constitutional History of the United States in the Formative Period*, p. 5, edited by Professor Jameson.

<sup>2</sup> 3 Sparks' Washington, 154, n.

<sup>3</sup> Act of November 1, 1775. Acts and Resolutions of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, vol. 5, p. 436.

LECTURE I.  
Massachusetts  
Admiralty  
Courts.

of vessels fitted out at the charge of the United Colonies.

This act apparently came at once into the hands of General Washington. On the 11th day of the same November in which it was enacted, he sent a copy of it to the President of Congress, and suggested that such a court should "be established by authority of Congress, to take cognizance of prizes made by the Continental vessels," adding, "whatever the mode is which they are pleased to adopt, there is an absolute necessity of its being speedily determined on."

Action of  
Washington.

Congress becomes  
an Appellate  
Court in Prize  
Cases.

This letter was, on its receipt, referred to a committee, who on the 23d of the same November, brought in their report. After a debate running over parts of the following two days, a series of resolutions, appended to the report, was adopted and passed. These resolutions authorized the capture of prizes on the high seas; legalized those already made; settled a rate of distribution of prize money (a settlement which was afterwards modified); provided that suits for condemnation should be commenced in the first instance in Colonial Courts, and, further, contained the following section respecting appeals:

"6. That in all cases an appeal shall be allowed to the Congress, or such person or persons as they shall appoint for the trial of appeals, provided the appeal be demanded within five days after definitive sentence, and such appeal be lodged with the Secretary of Congress within

forty days afterwards, and provided the party appealing shall give security to prosecute the said appeal to effect; and in case of the death of the Secretary during the recess of Congress, then the said appeal to be lodged in Congress within twenty days after the meeting thereof."

LECTURE I.  
Congress becomes  
an Appellate  
Court in Prize  
Cases.

When Washington learned of this action, he wrote to the President of Congress: "The resolves relating to captures made by Continental armed vessels only want a court established for trial to make them complete. This, I hope, will soon be done, as I have taken the liberty to urge it often to the Congress."

This suggestion of Congress was responded to sooner or later by all the Colonies and States except New York, whose maritime counties were in the possession of the enemy from the autumn of 1776 until the close of the war. A detailed account of this legislation will be found in the Appendix to Volume 131 of the United States Reports. It is sufficient here to say that all the States except New York created prize courts, and gave an appellate jurisdiction to Congress from their judgments; but in nearly or quite every one, provision was made for a trial of the facts by a jury, from which great trouble arose, as we shall see hereafter.

The Colonies  
confer Appellate  
Prize Jurisdiction  
on Congress.

The State Courts, organized under these several statutes, evidently had plenty to do. Of their decisions one hundred and nine were reviewed in the appellate tribunals created by Congress. The origin of two of these cases is not known. Three came from New Hampshire; twenty-six

Decisions of the  
Appellate Prize  
Courts.

**LECTURE I.**  
**Decisions of the**  
**Appellate Prize**  
**Courts.**

from Massachusetts; ten from Rhode Island; sixteen from Connecticut; fourteen from New Jersey; eleven from Pennsylvania; five from Delaware; four from Maryland; two from Virginia; twelve from North Carolina; two from South Carolina; and two from Georgia. The first appeal was decided September 9, 1776; the last judgment was rendered May 3, 1787.

Some applications were made to Congress to take original jurisdiction in such cases; but with one exception it refused. Its appellate jurisdiction was exercised at first through special committees, and, later, by a general committee, who soon came to be styled Commissioners. This committee was constantly changing its members, so that it was rarely that two cases were heard by the same committee.

**Articles of Con-**  
**federation**  
**adopted.**

The Articles of Confederation were moving along side by side with these proceedings. They were adopted in November, 1777, and by May 5, 1779, had received the assent of all the States except Maryland, which wisely held back to secure that settlement of the public lands which was eventually made. That State gave its assent in March, 1781.

Before such consent was given a question arose which showed how important it was that a court of appeals in prize cases should be established on a proper basis.

**Case of the**  
**Active.**

An armed vessel, commissioned by the State of Pennsylvania, captured on the high seas a vessel called the *Active*, sailing from Jamaica

to New York; took it into Philadelphia; and caused it to be libelled in the State Court of Admiralty there. A trial was had by jury, whose verdict was as follows: "One fourth of the net proceeds of the sloop Active and her cargo to the first claimants; three fourths of the net proceeds of the said sloop and her cargo to the libellant and the second claimant as per agreement between them." Judgment was entered on the verdict, from which an appeal was taken to the Commissioners.

LECTURE I.  
Case of the  
Active.

The Commissioners, after hearing, reversed the judgment, and directed the court below to issue process commanding the marshal to sell the sloop and her cargo, and to pay the residue remaining after payment of costs, charges, and expenses to the appellants.

The judge of the State Court of Admiralty declined to execute this mandate, on the ground that, under the Pennsylvania Statute creating the court, the jury were to pass upon the facts, and that the reversal above, being a reversal of their verdict, was beyond the competence of the court. Thereupon General Benedict Arnold, who was in command in Philadelphia, wrote to the Commissioners of Appeal that the judge below was "about getting possession of the money with the avowed and declared purpose of standing out obstinately against any orders that may be given. He has issued his orders to the marshal to deliver the amount of sales to him, which is to be done by appointment at nine o'clock to-morrow morning, and posi-



LECTURE I.  
Case of the  
Active.

tively declares that no order of the Court of Appeals shall take it out of his hands or be obeyed." He added: "Such a daring attempt as this to evade the justice of the Superior Court, at a time too when the matter is under consideration, will, I doubt not, apologize for my troubling you with a request to meet this evening at such time and place as you may think proper in order to determine upon what process shall issue at so early an hour to-morrow morning as will tend to the carrying into execution the decree above."

The Commissioners met, as suggested, and issued the proposed injunction which was served on the marshal early on the morning of January 4, while the money was still in his possession; but he deposited it in the court below notwithstanding the injunction, and so made return. The Commissioners, "being unwilling to enter upon any proceedings for contempt, lest consequences might ensue at this juncture dangerous to the public peace of the United States," laid the matter before Congress, which passed the following resolutions:—

Resolutions of  
Congress.

"*Resolved*, That Congress, or such person or persons as they appoint to hear and determine appeals from the Courts of Admiralty, have necessarily the power to examine as well into decisions on facts as decisions on the law, and to decree finally thereon, and that no finding of a jury in any court of admiralty, or court for determining the legality of captures on the high seas, can or ought to destroy the right of appeal

and the reëxamination of the facts reserved to Congress :

LECTURE I.  
Resolutions of  
Congress.

“That no act of any one State can or ought to destroy the right of appeal to Congress in the sense above declared :

“That Congress is by these United States invested with the supreme sovereign power of war and peace :

“That the power of executing the law of nations is essential to the sovereign supreme power of war and peace :

“That the legality of all captures on the high seas must be determined by the law of nations :

“That the authority ultimately and finally to decide in all matters and questions touching the law of nations does reside and is vested in the sovereign supreme power of war and peace :

“That a control by appeal is necessary in order to compel a just and uniform execution of the law of nations :

“That the said control must extend as well over the decisions of juries as judges in courts for determining the legality of captures on the sea ; otherwise the juries would be possessed of the ultimate supreme power of executing the law of nations in all cases of captures, and might at any time exercise the same in such manner as to prevent a possibility of being controlled ; a construction which involves many inconveniences and absurdities, destroys an essential part of the power of war and peace entrusted to Congress, and would disable the Congress of the United States from giving

LECTURE I.  
Resolutions of  
Congress.

satisfaction to foreign nations complaining of a violation of neutralities, of treaties, or other breaches of the law of nations, and would enable a jury in any one State to involve the United States in hostilities; a construction which for these and many other reasons is inadmissible:

“That this power of controlling by appeal the several admiralty jurisdictions of the States has hitherto been exercised by Congress by the medium of a committee of their own members:

“*Resolved*, That the committee before whom was determined the appeal from the Court of Admiralty for the State of Pennsylvania, in the case of the sloop *Active*, was duly constituted and authorized to determine the same.”

This disposed of the case, so far as Congress was concerned. It had a subsequent history, however, which is related in the foot-note.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> After the payment of the money into court, the marshal, by direction of the court, paid it to the Treasurer of the State, he giving a bond of indemnity to the judge. The State neglecting or declining to indemnify the Treasurer, that officer kept possession of it until his death. It was invested in loan office certificates which, after his death, passed to his personal representatives. The owners under the decree of the Congressional Court brought suit in admiralty, after the Constitution came into force, against these representatives. The District Court adjudged that the libellants were entitled to the certificates, with the interest upon them which had been collected. The State of Pennsylvania then set up title to the certificates. In a statute, the preamble to which set up this title and set forth the Eleventh Amendment to the Constitution, and that the suit was in reality one against the State, it was enacted that the executors should pay the money into the State Treasury, and that the Governor should take such steps as he might deem necessary to protect the rights of the State. The District Judge under these circumstances declined to issue process to enforce the decree in favor of the claimants. They applied to the Supreme Court of the United States for a writ of mandamus.

Notwithstanding its action in this case, it was not until January 15th, 1780, that Congress resolved "that a court be established for the trial of all appeals from the Courts of Admiralty in these United States, in cases of capture, to consist of three judges appointed and commissioned by Congress, either two of whom, in the absence of the other, to hold the said court for the despatch of business; that the said court appoint their own register; that the trials therein be according to the usage of nations, and not by jury;" and "that the said judges hold their first session as soon as may be at Philadelphia, and afterwards at such times and places as they shall judge most conducive to the public good, so that they do not at any time sit further eastward than Hartford in Connecticut, or southward than Williamsburg in Virginia."

LECTURE I.  
Court of Appeals  
established.

On the 24th day of the following May Congress gave to this court the name of the Court of Appeals in Cases of Capture; and after that time, no appeal that had been properly taken in a State Court, reached the Appellate Court through the action of Congress. That body acted in a few cases, but only to give the court

---

An alternative writ was issued, to which the judge made return, setting out the material facts, and saying that, deeming it best not to embroil the government of the United States with the State of Pennsylvania, until the Supreme Court should have had an opportunity to pass upon the question, he had acted as he did in order to enable it to do so. On the authority of *Penhallow v. Doane*, 3 Dall. 54, which will be referred to more particularly in the note to Lecture II, *post*, the court ordered the District Court to enforce its judgment. This was eventually done, after some difficulty.

LECTURE I.  
Court of Appeals  
established.

a jurisdiction which it could not take under the general law.

In July, 1785, the war being over, Congress refused to continue to grant salaries to these judges. The next year it voted a *per diem* pay while on duty, together with travelling expenses. Thus the predecessor of the Supreme Court of the United States, called into existence by a great public necessity, sank away as the necessity diminished, and finally ceased to exist; and when, in a few years, the new Constitution was made, its framers, learning wisdom from the past, gave to the new Federal Judiciary not only an appellate, but an original and exclusive jurisdiction in Admiralty.

## 2. *Treaties negotiated by the Continental Congress.*

Congress prepares  
a general form  
for treaties of  
amity and com-  
merce.

Five days after the passage of the resolutions inviting the several Colonies to create Courts of Admiralty, and creating a Tribunal for Appeals in Prize Cases, Congress, on the 29th of November, 1775, took another step, in a different direction, which resulted in a still more marked assertion of a federal control over matters which up to that time had been entirely within local disposition. It appointed a "Committee of Secret Correspondence," to correspond with friends of the Colonies in other parts of the world, and to ascertain, if possible, "whether, if the colonies should be forced to form themselves into an independent State, France . . . would enter into any treaty of alliance with

them for commerce or defence, or both." This resulted in the adoption by Congress, in September following, of a plan for a treaty to be proposed to the King of France.<sup>1</sup> This plan contemplated that the Federal Government, which for yet two years was to exist without the adoption of any written Articles of Confederation by the States, should assume and exercise the following important powers:—

LECTURE I.  
Congress prepares a general form for treaties of amity and commerce.

Article 1 provided that Frenchmen should "pay no other duties or imposts in the ports of the United States "than the natives thereof," and that they might enjoy all "the rights, liberties, privileges, immunities, and exemptions in trade, navigation, and commerce, in passing from one part thereof to another, and in going to and from the same, from and to any part of the world," which the natives enjoyed. This proposed surrender to the Federal Government by the States of their right of control in this respect was practically carried into effect in the Treaty of Commerce of 1778 with France (Art. III);<sup>2</sup> in the Treaty of 1782 with Netherlands (Art. II);<sup>3</sup> in the Treaty of 1783 with Sweden (Art. III);<sup>4</sup> and in the Treaty of 1785 with Prussia (Art. II).<sup>5</sup>

General provisions contained in that form.

By Article 5 of the plan the United States were to engage to protect and defend all vessels and effects belonging to French subjects, and to endeavor to recover and restore them, if taken within the jurisdiction of the United

<sup>1</sup> 2 Secret Journals of Congress: Foreign Affairs, 7.

<sup>2</sup> 8 Stat. 14.    <sup>3</sup> 8 Stat. 32.    <sup>4</sup> 8 Stat. 62.    <sup>5</sup> 8 Stat. 84.

LECTURE I.  
General provisions contained  
in that form.

States or any of them. This provision is found in Article VI of the Treaty of Commerce of 1778 with France;<sup>1</sup> in Article V of the Treaty of 1782 with Netherlands;<sup>2</sup> and partially, in Article VII of the Treaty of 1785 with Prussia.<sup>3</sup>

Droit d'aubaine.

The *droit d'aubaine*, a right claimed by most sovereigns of that time to confiscate to their own use the succession of an unnaturalized foreigner dying within their dominions, and which Montesquieu styled "an absurd right,"<sup>4</sup> Congress, in its plan for a treaty, asked the king of France to abandon. Article II of the Treaty of Commerce of 1778,<sup>5</sup> as negotiated, complied with this request, but accompanied it with a declaration that Frenchmen should "enjoy on their part, in all the dominions of the said States, an entire and perfect reciprocity relative to the stipulations contained in the present article." The Treaty of 1782 with the Netherlands (Art. VI<sup>6</sup>) gave, in the place of this abandonment, the right to the Dutch foreigner residing in the United States, to dispose of his property there by testament, donation, or otherwise; the right to receive the succession *ab intestato*, in case there was no will; and the right for a guardian or tutor to a minor, to act in his behalf in receiving, keeping, and alienating his property. This precedent was followed in

<sup>1</sup> 8 Stat. 16.

<sup>2</sup> 8 Stat. 34.

<sup>3</sup> 8 Stat. 86.

<sup>4</sup> "Les droits insensés d'aubaine et de naufrage." *Esprit des Lois*, xxi, 17.

<sup>5</sup> 8 Stat. 18.

<sup>6</sup> 8 Stat. 36.

the Treaty of 1783 with Sweden (Art. VI);<sup>1</sup> LECTURE I.  
and in the Treaty of 1785 with Prussia (Art X).<sup>2</sup> Droit d'aubaine.

In many other respects these several treaties, Other provisions made before the adoption of the Constitution, in these treaties. and largely upon the suggestions in the plan of Congress which was promulgated before the Articles of Confederation were adopted, secured the assent of the contracting parties to important principles, some of which were not then universally recognized as constituting part of the public law which should govern the intercourse of nations with each other.<sup>3</sup>

The evils of war were lessened by agreements that, in case it should break out, time should be given to the citizens of each, in the territories of the other, to close their business and remove their properties;<sup>4</sup> or that, should differences arise, resort should not be had to force until a friendly application should be made for an arrangement.<sup>5</sup>

A restraint was imposed upon private war by provisions forbidding the citizens of either Power to accept commissions or letters of marque from enemies of the other Power when at war;<sup>6</sup> and the acceptance of such commissions

<sup>1</sup> 8 Stat. 64.

<sup>2</sup> 8 Stat. 88.

<sup>3</sup> See *Treaties and Conventions between the United States and other Powers*, ed. 1889, p. 1221: introductory note.

<sup>4</sup> France, 1778, Art. 20, 8 Stat. 24; Netherlands, 1782, Art. 18, 8 Stat. 42; Sweden, 1783, Art. 22, 8 Stat. 72; Prussia, 1785, Art. 23, 8 Stat. 94.

<sup>5</sup> Morocco, 1787, Art. 24, 8 Stat. 104.

<sup>6</sup> France, 1778, Art. 21, 8 Stat. 24; Netherlands, 1782, Art. 19, 8 Stat. 44; Sweden, 1783, Art. 23, 8 Stat. 74; Prussia, 1785, Art. 20, 8 Stat. 94.



LECTURE I.  
Other provisions  
in these treaties.

or letters was declared to be an act of piracy, which placed the offender beyond the claim of national protection.

The right of neutrals to carry on and maintain their commerce on the high seas in time of war was recognized.<sup>1</sup> Articles contraband of war were defined and limited;<sup>2</sup> and in the Treaty with Prussia it was even agreed that no articles should be so deemed contraband as to bring about confiscation and loss of property to individuals.<sup>3</sup> And it was further agreed that free ships should make free goods;<sup>4</sup> that neutral goods found in an enemy's ship should not be confiscated if they had been put aboard before the declaration of war, or within such short period thereafter that ignorance of a state of war might fairly be implied.<sup>5</sup>

Precise rules were laid down to be observed in visiting neutral vessels on the high seas,<sup>6</sup> and humane regulations were made respecting vessels on which articles contraband of war should be discovered.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> France, 1778, Art. 23, 8 Stat. 24; Sweden, 1783, Art. 7, 8 Stat. 64; Prussia, 1785, Art. 12, 8 Stat. 90.

<sup>2</sup> France, 1778, Art. 24, 8 Stat. 26; Netherlands, 1782, Art. 24, 8 Stat. 46; Sweden, 1783, Arts. 9, 10, 8 Stat. 64, 66.

<sup>3</sup> Prussia, 1785, Art. 13, 8 Stat. 90.

<sup>4</sup> France, 1778, Arts. 23, 24; Sweden, 1783, Art. 7, 8 Stat. 64; Prussia, 1785, Art. 12, 8 Stat. 90.

<sup>5</sup> France, 1778, Art. 14, 8 Stat. 20; Netherlands, 1782, Art. 12, 8 Stat. 40; Sweden, 1783, Art. 14, 8 Stat. 68.

<sup>6</sup> France, 1778, Arts. 12, 25, 27; Netherlands, 1782, Arts. 10, 20, 25, 26; Sweden, 1783, Arts. 11, 12, 24, 25; Prussia, 1785, Arts. 14, 15.

<sup>7</sup> France, 1778, Art. 13; Netherlands, 1782, Art. 11; Sweden, 1783, Art. 13; Prussia, 1785, Art. 13.

These early treaties thus uniformly asserted the nationality of the United States not only in their dealings with foreign powers, but in their relations with the several States. The favored nation clause put Prussia on the best footing in the ports of Charleston, Boston, Philadelphia, and New York, no matter what the Legislatures of South Carolina, Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, or New York might say. Aliens were permitted to hold personal property and dispose of it by testament, donation, or otherwise, and the exaction of State dues in excess of those exacted from citizens of the State in like cases were forbidden. The right was secured to aliens to frequent the coasts of each and all the States, and to reside and trade there. Resident aliens were assured against State legislation to prevent the exercise of liberty of conscience and the performance of religious worship; and when dying, they were guaranteed the right of decent burial and undisturbed rest for their bodies.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE I.  
Effect of all these provisions upon State Independence.

In 1784 sundry letters from Ministers of the United States in Europe having been referred to a special committee, of which Mr. Jefferson was chairman, Congress, on the recommendation of that committee, by a vote of eight States to two, resolved to instruct their Ministers "that these United States be considered, in all such treaties, and in every case arising under them,

Jefferson's Consular Convention with France.

---

<sup>1</sup> Netherlands, 1782, Art. 4, 8 Stat. 34; Sweden, 1783, Art. 5, 8 Stat. 62; Prussia, 1785, Art. 11, 8 Stat. 90.

LECTURE I.  
Jefferson's Consu-  
lar Convention  
with France.

as one Nation, upon the principles of the Federal Constitution.”<sup>1</sup>

At one time a postal convention was contemplated between France and the United States. A scheme was submitted by the French minister, which Jay answered by a counter proposal;<sup>2</sup> but nothing came of it.

In 1788 Mr. Jefferson, as Minister of the United States in France, concluded a Consular Convention with that power, which went still further. It authorized French Consuls, in certain cases, to administer upon the estates of their deceased countrymen in the several States; to exercise police powers over French vessels in American ports; to arrest officers or crews of such vessels; to require the courts, at a time when no Federal Courts existed, to aid them in the arrest of deserters; and it clothed them with authority, as judges, to decide all differences and disputes arising between their countrymen and the United States.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 3 Secret Journals of Congress, 453.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Diplomatic Correspondence, 1783-89, pp. 185, 201.

<sup>3</sup> Consular Convention of 1788 with France, Arts. 5, 8, 9, 12. In his autobiography Mr. Jefferson gives an account of this convention: “A consular convention had been agreed on in 1784 between Dr. Franklin and the French Government, containing several articles so entirely inconsistent with the laws of the several States, and the general spirit of our citizens, that Congress withheld their ratification, and sent it back to me, with instruction to get those articles expunged, or modified so as to render them compatible with our laws. The minister unwillingly released us from these concessions which, indeed, authorized the exercise of powers very offensive in a free State. After much discussion, the convention was reformed, in a considerable degree, and was signed by the Count Montmorin and myself on the 14th of November,

It so happened that this treaty, although negotiated and signed before the Constitution took effect, had not been ratified when Washington took the oath of office. On the 11th of June, 1789, it was laid before the Senate, for its constitutional action, being the first foreign treaty upon which that body passed. The Secretary of State — then styled Secretary for Foreign Affairs — appeared before the Senate and explained its provisions; and it was unanimously ratified by men, many of whom were fresh from the Convention which framed the Constitution.

LECTURE I.  
Jefferson's Consular Convention with France.

That instrument gives to the President power to make treaties by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. This power was conferred, with full knowledge of this repeated exercise by the Continental Congress of its treaty-making power in limitation and curtailment of the power of the States. This may fairly be regarded as a contemporaneous construction of the Constitution by those who framed it.

### 3. *The Northwest Territory.*

In the acquisition of the territory northwest of the Ohio, and in the legislation which excluded slavery from it, and which provided for its future admission into the Union, as it should become settled, the Congress of the Confederation

The cession of the Northwestern territory, and the passage of the Ordinance of 1787.

---

1788; not, indeed, such as I would have wished, but such as could be obtained with good humor and friendship." — 1 Jefferson's Works, 85.

LECTURE I.  
The cession of  
the Northwestern  
territory, and the  
passage of the  
Ordinance of 1787.

exercised one of the highest attributes of sovereignty in a matter in which no individual State took a separate part. It was the *United States* of America which accepted the deeds of cession, and which thereby acquired a Colonial Empire. In the words of the Legislature of Maryland, enacted before the cession was made, "the sovereignty over the Western territory was vested in the United States as one undivided and independent nation."<sup>1</sup> As such it accepted the cession on the 1st of March, 1784; and as such, on the 13th day of July, 1787, it enacted the Ordinance under which five States (Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin, and Michigan) were gradually settled and admitted to the Union. One will search the Articles of Confederation in vain to find authority for such an exercise of power. On the contrary, the Eleventh Article, providing that "Canada, acceding to this confederation, and joining in the measures of the United States, shall be admitted into, and entitled to all the advantages of this Union; but no other Colony shall be admitted into the same, unless such admission be agreed to by nine States," may be cited argumentatively against such authority.

The powers assumed by the Congress of the Confederation, in enacting the Ordinance of 1787, are now conferred upon Congress by the third section of the Fourth Article of the Constitution.

---

<sup>1</sup> 6 Bancroft's Hist. U. S., last revise, 104.

Thus it is seen that the Statesmen in the Continental Congress felt that they formed part of a National Government, ruling, in its proper sphere, over a Federation of United States, and exercising powers to which each of those States must of necessity be subordinate. The action of Washington, in 1775, in asking Congress to establish Prize Courts with original jurisdiction; the resolutions of Congress in January, 1779, above quoted, regarding prizes and Prize Courts; the action of Congress in the negotiation of the several treaties above referred to, all negotiated without assent of the States, either previously given or subsequently obtained, except as given in the Articles of Confederation as to such as were negotiated after they were agreed to; the assumption of colonial jurisdiction by Congress, and the exclusion of slavery from the acquired territory, all point in this direction.

The simple truth is, that the United States, under the Articles of Confederation, like the United Colonies after the battle of Lexington, existed as a Sovereign Power from the necessities of the emergency. The Colonies were compacted together by the blows of a common enemy. The semi-legislative body, which took the name of Congress, was forced, from the necessities of the case, to assume and exercise Executive Powers which no Colony had ever possessed or exercised. It found precedent for this in English history; and it followed the lines of the race to which its members mainly belonged. In studying the ante-Constitutional

LECTURE I.  
Résumé.

LECTURE I.  
Resumé.

history of the United States, we may often find Congress weak in action, but never irresolute or weak in asserting its Federal powers. Before the Declaration of Independence it claimed and exercised the National Powers which until then had been wielded by the king of Great Britain. When that Declaration was proclaimed, it pressed this claim with stronger emphasis, if not with better right. This power it handed over to the government of the Confederation, which was in fact the Congress itself; and that government, in its turn, deposited the power in the new Union, as defined by the Constitution. It is true that in the interim between the ratification of the Treaty of Peace, and the adoption of the Constitution, there was a time when the desire for union weakened. After all these powers had been claimed and exercised by Congress, after the war was over and success had been achieved and acknowledged, there came a day of reckoning, when the debts incurred in prosecuting the war had to be faced and provided for. There then came a short hour when the enemies of the Union had some reason to look for success; when its friends, in their confidential correspondence, could only hope that this "epidemic frenzy"<sup>1</sup> would subside. That day passed away when the Constitution was adopted.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hamilton to Washington, September 30, 1783. 1 Hamilton's Works, 402, 403.

## II.

### THE PRINCIPLES OF CONSTRUCTION OF THE CONSTITUTION.<sup>1</sup>

---

IF we desire to consider the subject of constitutional law, to obtain some idea as to what is meant by that phrase, and to examine the elementary doctrines which underlie all written constitutions, we can select no better text than the Constitution of the United States. It is of all existing foundations of civil government the most important, as well as the best which the wisdom of man has yet devised,<sup>2</sup> and its con-

LECTURE II.  
Different forms of  
civil government.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the manuscript notes left by Mr. Justice Miller, this was Lecture I of the lectures delivered by him before the classes of the University Law School. It was delivered January 24th, 1890.

<sup>2</sup> Freeman gives four commonwealths which have most perfectly realized the Federal idea in history.

1. The Achaian League, in the latter days of ancient Greece, whose most flourishing period comes within the third century. (B.C. 281-146.)

2. The Confederation of the Swiss Cantons, which, with many changes in extent and constitution, has endured since the thirteenth century. (A.D. 1291.)

3. The Seven United Provinces of the Netherlands, whose union arose in the war of independence against Spain, and lasted in a republican form till the French Revolution. (A.D. 1579-1795.)

4. The United States of America. History of Federal Government, p. 5.

Jefferson wrote soon after the formation of the Constitution:  
"The example of changing a constitution by assembling the wise



LECTURE II.  
Different forms of  
civil government.

sideration will most clearly and forcibly suggest those general principles upon which not only the institutions, but the preservation and well-being of all constitutional governments depend.

It is first of all necessary to have a clear idea of what is meant by the word "constitution" as applied to the various forms of civil government, before entering upon the rules for the construction and application of its provisions or an exposition of constitutional law. As was well said by Judge Bates, afterwards Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of Missouri, in an argument before that court in the case of *Hamilton v. St. Louis County Court*,<sup>1</sup> "it is easier to tell what a constitution is not, than to tell what it is." As a constitution has relation to the form of a government and to the mode in which its powers are to be exercised, let us consider briefly the nature of the elementary forms under which it can be organized. These are primarily of three kinds, into which both reason and authority agree that all forms of government may be reduced, namely, a monarchy, a democracy, and an aristocracy.<sup>2</sup>

---

men of the state, instead of assembling armies, will be worth as much to the world as the former examples we had given them. The Constitution too, which was the result of our deliberations, is, undoubtedly, the wisest ever yet presented to men." 3 Works, 12.

The basis of the English constitution, the capital principle on which all others depend, is that the legislative power belongs to Parliament alone; that is to say, the power of establishing laws and of abrogating, changing, or explaining them. De Lolme, *Constitution of England* (London, 1834), p. 49.

<sup>1</sup> 15 Missouri, 3, 13.

<sup>2</sup> Writers have divided governments into various classes. The most usual division is into monarchy, aristocracy, and democracy.

A pure monarchy means a despotism, a gov-<sup>LECTURE II.</sup>ernment where the supreme power is lodged in <sup>A pure monarchy.</sup> the hands of one man, a monarch, an autocrat, or whatever else he may be called, who, in his own discretion, discharges all the functions of the executive, legislative, and judicial departments of the government. He decides controversies between private individuals, makes the laws by which their determination is to be controlled, and executes his own decrees.

A pure democracy is one in which every trans-<sup>A pure democ-</sup>action of common interest and private justice is <sup>racy.</sup> brought before the entire body of the people, and they determine what shall be done in the premises; the government "of the people, by the people, for the people." They make and administer the law, they hear and decide cases, and they execute their judgments.

A pure aristocracy is a form of government <sup>A pure aristoc-</sup>in which these powers are held and exercised <sup>racy.</sup> by a few favored individuals, a limited number of prominent men who have become such by their greater wealth or power, or by inheritance.

I am not aware that there exists at this day <sup>Examples of these</sup>in any civilized country a pure example of either <sup>forms.</sup>

---

Grimke, *Nature and Tendency of Free Institutions*, 7. (Ed. Cincinnati, 1848.)

Freeman says, "A more philosophical division perhaps is that which does not look so much to the nature of the hands in which supreme power is vested, as to the question whether there is any one body or individual which can fairly be called supreme. This is the division of monarchies, aristocracies, and democracies respectively, into absolute and constitutional examples of their respective classes." *History of Federal Government*, p. 15. See Calhoun's *Works*, vol. 1, pp. 28, 34.

LECTURE II.  
Examples of these  
forms.

of these forms of government. The Chinese monarchy is a close approximation to a pure type, Russia is known as an "absolute monarchy," and the history of Athens and Rome shows the former existence there of a near approach to a pure democracy. Perhaps the purest example of an aristocracy was the Venetian Government, which was successfully carried on for a long time, and attained great power. In a modified form an aristocracy may be said to govern to-day in England, but it is united with a monarchy.<sup>1</sup> Indeed, all modern governments in civilized countries are combinations and modifications of these three forms.

The United States  
a combination of  
the best in each.

The United States is a wonderful illustration of their harmonious combination, preserving for the benefit of the people most of the advantages and the best points inherent in each system. We have an executive who is not hereditary, but elective; a legislative body elected by the people; and a judicial body separated from and which may be said to be independent of the other two.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> As described by Sir William Blackstone and his followers, the British is a despotic government. It is a government without a people. In that government, as so described, the sovereignty is possessed by the Parliament. In the Parliament, therefore, the supreme and absolute authority is vested: in the Parliament resides that uncontrollable and despotic power which in all governments must reside somewhere. The constituent parts of the Parliament are the King's Majesty, the Lords Spiritual, the Lords Temporal and the Commons. The king and these three estates together form the great corporation or body politic of the kingdom. . . . What, then, or where, are the people? Nothing! Nowhere! They are not so much as even the baseless fabric of a vision. From legal contemplation they totally disappear. Mr. Justice Wilson, in *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419, 462.

<sup>2</sup> "There are two classes of Federal Commonwealths. 1. The

The term "constitution" may be applied, not improperly, to the guiding principles underlying all these varying forms of government, whether they are, or are not, established by any written instrument.<sup>1</sup> No doubt an intelligent Russian

LECTURE II.  
What a constitution is.

system of Confederate States, where the central power deals only with the State governments. 2. The composite State, where the central power acts directly on citizens." Freeman, History of Federal Government, 11. To the latter class the United States belongs, or as expressed in the language of Mr. Justice Johnson: "To me the Constitution appears, in every line of it, to be a contract, which in legal language may be denominated tripartite. The parties are the people, the States, and the United States." *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304, 373.

<sup>1</sup> The word "constitution" in the time of the Roman Empire signified a collection of laws or ordinances made by the emperor. It is so used in the early history of English law; as, the Constitution of Clarendon. In its modern use it has been restricted to those rules which concern the political structure of society. *Encyclopædia Britannica*, tit. Constitution.

A constitution is the fundamental law of a free country, which characterizes the organism of the country and secures the rights of the citizen and determines his main duties as a freeman. Bouvier's Law Dictionary.

The body of fundamental laws, as contained in written documents or established by prescriptive usage, which constitutes the form of government for a nation, State, community, association, or society; as, "The constitution of the United States," "The British constitution." (*Roman Law*.) Decrees of regular authorities, particularly of the emperors. Worcester's Dictionary.

The principles or fundamental laws which govern a State or other organized body of men, and are embodied in written documents, or implied in the institutions and usages of the country or society; organic law. Webster's Dictionary.

"There is one great and happy feature in the Constitution of the United States"; "provision is made for the admission of new States upon equal terms with the old ones. For Europe there remained the sad necessity of revolution. For America, the gates of revolution are shut and barred and bolted down, never again to be thrown open; for it has found a legal and peaceful way to introduce every amelioration." Bancroft's History of the Constitution, 1st. ed. vol. 2, p. 334.

France had no parliamentary machinery for effecting desired or

LECTURE II.  
What a constitution is.

might speak of the constitution of the Russian monarchy, by which he would mean that there were certain limitations upon the power of his sovereign, that there were certain privileges pertaining to the nobility which could not be invaded, that the serfs which belonged to the crown having been emancipated, no power could reinstate the old order of things. These invisible unwritten barriers, surrounding the action of the despot, are comprehended under this use of the word "constitution."<sup>1</sup> No doubt an educated Turk might allude to the constitution of the Turkish Government, by which he would mean

---

needful changes in its constitution, so that the right of revolution, as it was called, became a necessity on the part of those who conceived that they embodied and were in a position to express the popular will.

<sup>1</sup> "Quodcumque ergo imperator per epistolam constituit, vel cognoscens decrevit, vel edicto præcepit, legem esse constat; hæ sunt quæ constitutiones appellantur. Justinian, Inst. Lib. I, tit. 2, pl. 6.

The French "Charte" is the most remarkable of the European constitutions. Like the Magna Charta it was wrested from the king; it was not the act of a popular convention. It is said to be a settled maxim in France that it can never be altered. See Grimke on Nature and Tendency of Free Institutions, p. 129.

Jameson, in his work on Constitutional Conventions, divides political constitutions with reference to the mode in which they originated into two classes, accumulated or cumulative and enacted. p. 75. Those of ancient Rome and England belong to the first class. The Reform Act is considered by the English as much a portion of the constitution as trial by jury, or the representative system, which have never been enacted, but correspond to what Cicero calls *leges natæ*, or "grown law." To the second class belong the Federal constitution and those of the several States; that is, they were at a certain time and by a certain authority enacted as the fundamental law of the body politic. Encyclopædia Americana, tit. Constitution; Hallam's Constitutional History of England; Shepherd's Constitutional Text-Book; Elliot's Debates on the Federal Constitution.

that the sultan was bound to administer justice, and that he was under many restrictions as to the counsellors with whom he must surround himself as well as to the methods by which he should administer the affairs of the kingdom.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE II.  
What a constitution is.

We are all familiar with the frequent allusions made by English statesmen to the British Constitution, which are repeated by every writer on the subject in that country. And they mean what they say; they have in their sense a constitution; that is to say, they have for hundreds of years had a monarchy in which the powers of the sovereign have been confined within very narrow limits, much more restricted in many respects than those confided to the President of the United States under our Constitution. So that the term "constitutional government" has come to be generally used in contradistinction to absolutism. Their judiciary is also independent of the law-making power, which is a parliament composed of the House of Lords and the Commons, the latter of which is elective. It is much older than ours, having begun to exist in times when statesmen were not much accustomed to frame exact definitions; but if the great length of its duration and the admiration

British constitution.

---

<sup>1</sup> Some English writers speak of the constitution of the Turkish Empire. See Hallam's Constitutional History of England.

The emperor of China is bound by ancient laws and customs, and could scarcely, without danger, if he would, disregard the advice or remonstrances of his ministers or the boards of administration. American Cyclopædia, tit. China.

A collection of ecclesiastical regulations appeared in the fourth century, attributed to the apostles, but generally supposed to be spurious, known as "apostolical constitutions."

LECTURE II.  
British constitution.

A constitution is a written instrument, as understood in America.

of the English people for it, together with their earnest belief in its value and perpetuity, are evidences of its worth, then it is clear that they have a good constitution.<sup>1</sup>

But in America when we speak of a constitution, we refer to a written instrument, one in which the powers granted and duties imposed by it are reduced to writing.<sup>2</sup> The earliest con-

---

<sup>1</sup> It was during the thirteenth century that first appeared with distinctness that Constitution which has ever since, through all changes, preserved its identity; of which all the other free constitutions in the world are copies, and which, in spite of some defects, deserves to be regarded as the best under which any great society has ever yet existed during many ages. . . . Yet the present Constitution is to the one of five hundred years ago what the tree is to the sapling, what the man is to the boy. The alteration has been great. . . . A constitution of the Middle Ages was not like one of the eighteenth or nineteenth century, created entire by a single act, and fully set forth in a single document. Macaulay's History of England, vol. 1, pp. 16-28.

The English Constitution is largely unwritten, using the word as we do of unwritten law; its rules are found in no written document, but depend on precedent modified by a constant process of interpretation. See *Encyclopædia Britannica*, tit. Constitution. De Lolme says it has, like that of most countries of Europe, grown out of occasion and emergency, and its earliest history is involved in obscurity.

Mr. Gladstone has said with admirable force, "As the British Constitution is the most subtle organism which has proceeded from progressive history, so the American Constitution is the most wonderful work ever struck off at a given time by the brain and purpose of man."

<sup>2</sup> In American constitutional law, the word "constitution" is used in a restricted sense, as implying the written instrument agreed upon by the people of the Union, or any one of the States, as the absolute rule of action and decision for all departments and officers of the government, in respect to all points covered by it; which must control until it shall be changed by the authority which established it, and in opposition to which any act or any regulation of any such department or officer, or even of the people themselves, will be altogether void. Cooley's Constitutional Limitations, 8.

stitutions for the government of the ancestors of the people who now constitute the United States were the charters of the Colonies; and although those charters were but grants of liberties, rights, and powers from the home government, not in all cases well defined, yet they were reduced to writing under the seal of the kingdom to which they were tributary, and constituted the foundation and the formal statement of the principles on which the colonies administered their own domestic affairs and permitted the officers of the parent government to assist in that administration. They undoubtedly contributed very largely towards the education of the people in those days in ideas of constitutional liberty; and they were in many respects much superior to the much vaunted British Constitution, because they contained limitations upon the legislative power which were not found in the usages of the English Government.<sup>1</sup> They

LECTURE II.

A "constitution" is a written instrument, as understood in America.

Colonial charters.

<sup>1</sup> In England there is no written constitution, no fundamental law, nothing visible, nothing real, nothing certain, by which a statute can be tested. In America the case is widely different. Every State in the Union has its constitution reduced to a written exactitude and precision. *Vanhorne's Lessee v. Dorrance*, 2 Dall. 304, 308.

The power of the sovereign, "though ample, was limited by three great constitutional principles, so ancient that none can say when they began to exist; so potent that their natural development, continued through many generations, has produced the order of things under which we now live. First, the king could not legislate without the consent of his Parliament. Secondly, he could impose no taxes without the consent of his Parliament. Thirdly, he was bound to conduct the executive administration according to the laws of the land, and, if he broke those laws, his advisers and his agents were responsible." Macaulay's *History of England*, vol. 1, p. 29.

The principles embodied in the Acts of Settlement and the Bill of Rights are the basis of the English Constitution. De Lolme.



LECTURE II.  
Colonial charters.

also contained assertions of individual rights, which were not always fully acknowledged, and thus not only contributed in that way to educate the people in a knowledge of their rights and of the just powers of the government, but also taught them the necessity and propriety of having such rights and powers fixed by a written instrument.<sup>1</sup>

Previous attempts  
at written consti-  
tutions.

There have been other written constitutions besides these. Solon drew up a body of laws for the Athenian State, and Lycurgus one for Sparta. Some of the governments of Europe have attempted to formulate such instruments.<sup>2</sup> Comprehensive laws or decrees have been called constitutions, and France may be instanced as a country which has had something which has

<sup>1</sup> The general principles which are the groundwork of modern constitutions, — principles which were imperfectly known in Europe, and not completely triumphant even in Great Britain, in the seventeenth century, — were all recognized and determined by the laws of New England: the intervention of the people in public affairs, the free voting of taxes, the responsibility of authorities, personal liberty, and trial by jury, were all positively established without discussion. De Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, vol. 1, p. 22 (ed. N. Y. 1838).

<sup>2</sup> Ten or twelve European States have adopted written constitutions, but they have been the gift of some self-constituted lawgiver, or imposed by bodies of men who very imperfectly represented the supreme authority of the State. None of them rest upon the same firm foundation as ours, the sovereignty of the people. A written constitution, emanating from the popular will, while the government was still a monarchy or aristocracy in character, would be a solecism in politics. Neither form could survive the adoption of such an instrument. If not immediately annihilated, they must speedily have fallen into decay. See Grimke on *Nature and Tendency of Free Institutions*, pp. 124–128.

The present constitution of Switzerland dates from 1874, on the basis of the previous one of 1848.

been called such, from the day that Louis XVI was overthrown to the present hour.<sup>1</sup> Every successive government established its written constitution, and the French people have had in that length of time enough such documents to supply the nations of the earth; most of them probably good ones if they had been able to successfully put them into practice. It is unnecessary here to recall the history of that country; how with every change in the course of its affairs they abolished the previous constitution and established a new one, until thinking people began to doubt their capacity for self-government.

LECTURE II.  
Previous attempts  
at written consti-  
tutions.

Spain followed France in this course, and although it did not become republican until within a very recent period, yet under French influence its people wrung from Ferdinand and Charles written constitutions, and such an instrument they have had from that hour to this. They have, however, frequently risen in rebellion to

---

<sup>1</sup> Napoleon I styled himself Emperor of the French "by the grace of God and the Constitution of the Empire."

De Tocqueville, in his *Democracy in America*, says, p. 140: "In France the constitution is the first of laws"; and on p. 189: "It is, or is supposed to be, immutable, and the received theory is that no power has the right to change any part of it"; and again, p. 288: "As the king, the peers, and the deputies all derive their authority from the constitution, these three persons united cannot alter a law by virtue of which alone they govern. Out of the pale of the constitution they are nothing."

Charles VII was the first French king who attempted to form a code for the entire kingdom. Several of his successors had the same idea. One was prepared and published in 1629, but many important chapters were added before it assumed the form in which, as the Code of Louis XV, it represents the status of French jurisprudence at the time of the Revolution.

LECTURE II.  
Previous attempts  
at written consti-  
tutions.

overthrow their monarch and get another constitution, so that none of them have been permanent or very enduring.<sup>1</sup> It is with sorrow, and regret also that we see their descendants on this side of the Atlantic, Spanish republicans they call themselves, evince scarcely more respect for written constitutions than the country from which they originally came.<sup>2</sup>

So that it is evident that something more than a written constitution is essential to the safety and perpetuity of any government, and that is, a due reverence by the people for it and for their laws. All the instruments in the world, though they were written in letters of gold upon the most imperishable tablets, will be but as ropes of sand if the people themselves have no respect for law or for those who administer it.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> But however imperfect European constitutions in their practical enforcement may have been, they work a great advance in government, not only as an open recognition of certain general principles in favor of liberty, but as a definite application of them. See Grimke on Nature and Tendency of Free Institutions, p. 129.

"A written constitution never adds to, but always takes away from, the power which has previously been exercised." Ib.

<sup>2</sup> The precedent of Federal union given by the English settlements in North America has been followed, though as yet with little success or credit, by several of the republics which have arisen among the ruins of Spanish dominion in the same continent. Freeman, History of Federal Government, 7.

<sup>3</sup> A nation may establish a system of free government, but without the spirit of municipal institutions it cannot have the spirit of liberty. De Tocqueville, vol. 1, p. 42 (ed. N. Y. 1838). "The Federal form of government is no panacea for all human ills; a well-planned constitution at home is no guarantee for wise or honorable conduct in foreign affairs," and will not hinder among the people the development of the characteristic virtues and vices of a Democratic Federation. Freeman on Federal Government, 325, 326.

The formation of a written constitution is one of the most decisive steps which has been made toward the establishment of free

A constitution, in the American sense of the word, is a written instrument by which the fundamental powers of the government are established, limited, and defined, and by which these powers are distributed among several departments, for their more safe and useful exercise, for the benefit of the body politic. A search for a more satisfactory definition has been in vain, but this language, perhaps, fairly expresses the meaning of the term in this country.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE II.  
Definition of a  
constitution.

institutions. It implies the exercise of reflection in its highest degree, an ability to frame the most comprehensive rules, and to make application of them to the actual affairs of men. . . . The constitutions of antiquity confounded what we would characterize as political ordinances with the acts of ordinary legislation. This was the case in the code of the Roman decemvirs, and it was equally so in the systems introduced by the Athenian and Spartan lawgivers. Grimke on Free Institutions, Book II, c. I.

<sup>1</sup> What is a constitution? It is the form of government, delineated by the mighty hand of the people, in which certain first principles of fundamental laws are established. The Constitution is fixed and certain; it contains the permanent will of the people, and it is the supreme law of the land; it is paramount to the will of the legislature, and can be revoked and altered only by the authority that made it. The life-giving principle and the death-dealing stroke must proceed from the same hand. . . . In short, the Constitution is the sun of the political system, around which the legislative, executive, and judicial bodies revolve. Whatever may be the case in other countries, yet in this there can be no doubt that every act of the legislature repugnant to the Constitution is absolutely void. *Vanhorne's Lessee v. Dorrance*, 2 Dall. 308.

It is not, however, the origin of private rights, nor the foundation of laws, nor the beginning of a community. It is not the cause, but the consequence of personal and political freedom. It declares those natural and fundamental rights of individuals, for the security and common enjoyment of which governments are established. It is, in a word, the form and framework of political government, devised for the protection of the people, the instrument of their convenience, and is always a limitation upon the governing powers exercised by their agents.

It has been defined to be a system of law established by the sovereign power of a State for its own guidance.

LECTURE II.  
The Constitution  
of the United  
States.

Not everything in detail that a government may do can be embraced in a written document; that would fill a volume like the statutes; but the fundamental principles by which it is to be carried on and maintained are established by it.<sup>1</sup> Certain great powers are specifically granted, but at the same time certain restrictions are thrown around their exercise which are essential under our form of government to the rights of the States, and to the rights of individuals. For example, a person's property cannot be taken for public use without due course of law and just compensation; his life or liberty cannot be taken from him without a fair trial before a court of competent jurisdiction;<sup>2</sup> he shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime was committed; he shall be confronted with the witnesses against him, shall have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and shall also have the assistance of counsel for his defence.<sup>3</sup> These are some of the rights defined and secured to those who live under the protection of the Constitution of the United States.

This is a very remarkable instrument in many particulars. Perhaps no more important writing exists in the world to-day, affecting its prosperity and the happiness of its people, outside of

---

<sup>1</sup> In no written constitution which ever existed has there been defined or delegated to officials all the latent powers which lie dormant in every nation, boundless in extent and incapable of definition.

<sup>2</sup> Constitution, Fifth Amendment.

<sup>3</sup> Constitution, Sixth Amendment.

those which are of a religious character. It is, and has been for many years, the subject of perpetual exegesis by all the lawyers and courts of this country, representing millions of inhabitants, great and diverse interests, and very extensive business relations, all of which are more or less affected by its provisions. All the previous instruments known in this country and in the history of its Colonies, such as the charters already referred to, were granted by the ruler or sovereign, and were designed to confer certain rights and regulate the relations of the subjects with their monarch. But this instrument comes from a very different source. It is one in which the people themselves have undertaken to frame an organic law governing the relations of the whole people, as well as of the individual States, to the Federal Government, and to prescribe in many cases the limits and rules of private and personal rights. It is the fundamental law pursuant to which the government is permanently organized and conducted.<sup>1</sup> Such a document, framed and put into written language, judiciously operative upon the affairs which it is intended to govern, is a rare thing in the history of the world; and it may be said with safety that none has ever been constructed by the wisdom or in-

LECTURE II.  
The Constitution  
of the United  
States.

---

<sup>1</sup> Federal Government may be said to be essentially a compromise between two opposite political systems; an intermediate step. In its most perfect form two requisites have been suggested: the complete independence of each member of the Union in all matters concerning that member only, and that all must be subject to a central power in those matters concerning the whole body of members collectively.

LECTURE II.  
The Constitution  
of the United  
States.

genuity of man so well adapted to the ends it was intended to subserve, or so successful in the execution of those purposes.<sup>1</sup> It is, therefore, a subject unique in that respect, to which attention is here invited.

This, like all other instruments, when it becomes the subject of comment and construction, must necessarily be looked at in the light of its origin, the purposes which it was intended to accomplish, as well as the evils which it was intended to remedy. A volume would hardly be sufficient to give a complete history of the Constitution of the United States. It will be impossible here to give more than a brief outline of some of the principal reasons for its adoption.

Causes which led  
to its adoption.

It may, in a word, be said that this Constitution arose out of the condition in which the people of the United States found themselves at the close of the Revolutionary War. Having established their independence of the government of Great Britain, and been recognized as one of the family of nations, they soon found that the compact under which they had successfully achieved that independence, namely, the Articles of Confederation, was utterly inefficient and incompetent to answer the purpose of binding them

---

<sup>1</sup> The examples of Federal constitutions which history supplies are scattered over widely distant ages and countries; they are found among nations widely differing from one another in the amount of their political advancement and general civilization. . . . There is what may be called a certain Federal ideal, which has sometimes been realized in its full, or nearly its full, perfection, while other cases have shown only a more or less remote approximation to it. Freeman on Federal Government, 2.

together and conducting the new nation on its pathway to future usefulness.<sup>1</sup> Its defects were many and obvious.<sup>2</sup>

LECTURE II.  
Causes which led  
to its adoption.

It was found that the Colonies, as they had been previously called, had never really been independent States or Nations. They had been subjects of Great Britain, governed by charters from the Crown, or organized under certain commissions or grants by letters patent, and submitting very largely to the legislation of the English Parliament until certain questions connected with taxation caused them to rebel, not against the king, but against those laws as oppressive and unjust. In the effort at resistance

<sup>1</sup> Madison said: "The close of the war brought no cure for the public embarrassments. The States, relieved from the pressure of foreign danger, and flush with the enjoyment of independent and sovereign power, instead of a diminished disposition to part with it, persevered in omissions and in measures incompatible with their relations to the Federal Government, and with those among themselves." 5 Elliot's Debates, 112.

<sup>2</sup> The first number of the *Federalist* opens with the statement: "After full experience of the inefficacy of the existing Federal Government, you are invited to deliberate upon a New Constitution for the United States of America"; and in No. 15 the author says, "It may perhaps be asked what need there is of reasoning or proof to illustrate a position [the insufficiency of the present Confederation to the preservation of the Union] which is neither controverted nor doubted; to which the understandings and feelings of all classes of men assent; and which, in substance, is admitted by the opponents as well as by the friends of the New Constitution? It must in truth be acknowledged, that however these may differ in other respects, they in general appear to harmonize in the opinion that there are material imperfections in our national system, and that something is necessary to be done to rescue us from impending anarchy. . . . Each State, yielding to the persuasive voice of immediate interest or convenience, has successively withdrawn its support, till the frail and tottering edifice seems ready to fall upon our heads, and to crush us beneath its ruins."



LECTURE II.  
Causes which led  
to its adoption.

they had united together in a body to make the struggle successful; so that, although being a government or nation when they became free, each individual Colony had never been at any time a separate and independent State, and yet none of them recognized any supremacy in any other State. The question was, how much should they grant or yield to the common government which they were about to form in the common interest of self preservation; for it was soon discovered that the one which had carried them through the war, in the paroxysm of patriotism necessary for self-defence, was incapable of carrying on a successful government after that impulse was gone.<sup>1</sup>

One of the most pressing evils to be remedied by the reorganization of the Central Government was in relation to the collection of revenues for its support, for it had been found that taxes could not be successfully collected for that purpose.<sup>2</sup> Its only reliance during the Revolution-

<sup>1</sup> "The radical infirmity of the Articles of Confederation was the dependence of Congress on the voluntary and simultaneous compliance with its requisitions by so many independent communities, each consulting more or less its particular interests and convenience, and distrusting the compliance of the others." Mr. Madison: 5 Elliot's Debates, 112.

<sup>2</sup> The requisitions of Congress under the Confederation were as constitutionally obligatory as the laws enacted by the present Congress. That they were habitually disregarded is a fact of universal notoriety. *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264, 388.

Among the debilities of the government of the Confederation, no one was more distinguished or more distressing than the utter impossibility of obtaining from the States the moneys necessary for the payment of debts, or even for the ordinary expenses of the government. Jefferson's Works, vol. 1, p. 82.

The great office of the Confederation was to demonstrate to the

ary War and down to the year 1789, when the present form of government was fully organized, was by a call or request upon the States for their proportion of the amount necessary for its support.<sup>1</sup> Even during the pendency of the war such calls were responded to very feebly and unequally, and hence that war was fought on credit, leaving an immense debt to be paid at its close. After the enthusiasm of the war had died away, and the independence of the Colonies had been conceded, it was still more difficult to obtain funds in that way, and there was no relief to be had through taxation of the people by the General Government.<sup>2</sup>

Another evil was, that, although it had come to be recognized as one of the nations of the earth, this so-called Central or General Government had no sufficient powers conceded to it by the States in order to properly conduct its affairs with foreign governments. It had no capacity

---

people of the American States the practicability and necessity of a more perfect union. 1 Curtis' Const. 150.

<sup>1</sup> To the purposes of public strength and felicity that Confederacy was totally inadequate. A requisition on the several States terminated its legislative authority. Executive or judicial authority it had none. *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419, 463.

<sup>2</sup> April 5, 1784, Mr. Jefferson, as chairman of a grand committee, made a report upon the arrears of interest on the public debt, in which he refers to the requisitions that have been made upon the various States, and complains that the payments have been small and slow. Journal of Congress, vol. 9, p. 103.

Madison uses the following terse language, February 25, 1787: "Our situation is every day becoming more and more critical. No money comes into the Federal treasury; no respect is paid to Federal authority; and people of reflection unanimously agree that the existing Confederacy is tottering to its foundation." 5 Elliot's Debates, p. 106.

LECTURE II.  
Causes which led  
to its adoption.

**LECTURE II.**  
**Causes which led**  
**to its adoption.**

to make treaties, except on a limited class of subjects. It had no means to raise armies and navies, or to pay the national debt; and no one could tell how far each State could itself negotiate with other nations, or how soon they would be subjected, as were the Grecian republics in the days of the Amphictyonic councils,<sup>1</sup> to the influence of other nations who might approach any one of them for the purpose of inducing it to withdraw from the Union.

But perhaps of all the causes which contributed to the formation of the new Constitution, one of the most effective, like some little fretful thing that seems unimportant but which perpetually annoys you, was the condition of their foreign commerce<sup>2</sup> as well as the trade between the

---

<sup>1</sup> The Amphictyons, or association of neighboring tribes or cities, were the germ of one of the strongest bonds of union by which the Greek tribes were held together. *American Cyclopædia*, tit. Amphictyons.

The council not a Federal Government, a union not of cities, but of tribes. See Freeman on Federal Government, p. 123, for a full history of its origin and character.

"Philip of Macedon by his intrigues and bribes won over to his interests the popular leaders of several cities; by their influence and votes gained admission into the Amphictyonic council; and by his arts and his arms made himself master of the Confederacy." *The Federalist*, No. 18.

<sup>2</sup> The want of a power to regulate commerce is one of the defects which renders the existing Federal system unfit for the administration of the affairs of the Union. There is no object that more strongly demands a Federal superintendence. . . . The interfering and unneighborly regulations of some States, contrary to the true spirit of the Union, have, in different instances, given just cause of umbrage and complaint to others; and it is to be feared that examples of this nature, if not restrained by a national control, would be multiplied and extended till they became not less serious sources of animosity and discord, than injurious impediments to the intercourse between the different parts of the Confederacy. *The Federalist*, No. 22.

different States.<sup>1</sup> The States being practically independent of each other had the power of taxing all goods which passed through their borders or entered their ports. The little State of Rhode Island had in Newport one of the most important ports of entry upon the Atlantic coast, and by levying taxes on importations was getting rich at the expense of its neighbors in the confederacy of States.<sup>2</sup> The port of Charleston bore the same relation to the southern part of the country, and the port of Norfolk held a like position with reference to Virginia and Maryland.<sup>3</sup>

LECTURE II.  
Causes which led  
to its adoption.

---

<sup>1</sup> "We are uncertain whether the States generally will come into the proposition of investing Congress with the regulation of their commerce. Massachusetts has passed an act, the first object of which seems to be to retaliate on the British commercial measures, but in the close of it they impose double duties on all goods imported in bottoms not owned wholly by citizens of our States. New Hampshire has followed the example. This is much complained of here, and will probably draw retaliatory measures from the states of Europe, if generally adopted in America, or not corrected by the States which have adopted it." Jefferson's Works, vol. 1, p. 475.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Hamilton said, February 19, 1783: "The true objection on the part of Rhode Island was the interference with the impost, with the opportunity afforded by their situation of levying contributions on Connecticut, etc., which received foreign supplies through the ports of Rhode Island: that the true objection on the part of Virginia was her having little share in the debts due from the United States to which the impost would be applied." 5 Elliot's Debates, 52.

<sup>3</sup> "The other source of dissatisfaction was the peculiar situation of some of the States, which, having no convenient ports for foreign commerce, were subject to be taxed by their neighbors, through whose ports their commerce was carried on. New Jersey, placed between Philadelphia and New York, was likened to a cask tapped at both ends; and North Carolina, between Virginia and South Carolina, to a patient bleeding at both arms. The Articles of Confederation provided no remedy for the complaint, which pro-

LECTURE II.  
Causes which led  
to its adoption.

But that was not all. The trade between the States was heavily taxed, in pursuance of a policy by which each endeavored to lay the burden of raising its revenues upon the others. This has been one of the most difficult things to correct, and efforts in that direction have been made against the attempts to accomplish this object, which have been persistently pursued up to the present time.<sup>1</sup> Many cases have come

---

duced a strong protest on the part of New Jersey, and never ceased to be a source of dissatisfaction until the new Constitution superseded the old." Madison in 5 Elliot's Debates, 112.

<sup>1</sup> Statute of New York granting exclusive navigation of waters within the State. *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 9 Wheat. 1.

Statute of Maryland requiring license to sell imported goods. *Brown v. Maryland*, 12 Wheat. 419; *Ward v. Maryland*, 12 Wall. 418.

Statute of Missouri, requiring a like license. *Welton v. Missouri*, 91 U. S. 275.

Statute of California imposing a tax upon bills of lading for gold or silver carried out of the State. *Almy v. California*, 24 How. 169.

Statute of Alabama providing for the registration of the names of steamboat owners, etc. *Sinnot v. Davenport*, 22 How. 227.

Statutes of New York and Massachusetts imposing taxes on alien passengers arriving in ports of those States. *Passenger Cases*, 7 How. 283; *Henderson v. Mayor of New York*, 92 U. S. 259.

Statute of California imposing like taxes. *Chy Lung v. Freeman*, 92 U. S. 275.

Statute of New York taxing banks. *Bank of Commerce v. New York City*, 2 Black, 620; *Bank Tax Case*, 2 Wall. 200.

Statute of Nevada levying a capitation tax upon passengers carried out of the State. *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35.

Statute of Pennsylvania imposing tax upon articles brought into or carried out of the State. *Case of State Freight Tax*, 15 Wall. 232; *Philadelphia Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 122 U. S. 326.

Statute of Tennessee imposing a license or privilege tax on sleeping-cars. *Pickard v. Pullman Southern Car Co.*, 117 U. S. 84; *Tennessee v. Same*, 117 U. S. 61.

Statute of Louisiana imposing a license tax on boats. *Moran v. New Orleans*, 112 U. S. 69.

before the Supreme Court of the United States involving this question, where State laws of this character have been held to be invalid because in conflict with the constitutional power of Congress to alone regulate commerce of that nature.<sup>1</sup> Notwithstanding for nearly one hundred years we have had in the Federal Constitution the declaration that Congress shall have power to regulate commerce among the several States, there are at this hour upon the statute books of almost every State laws violating that provision ; and there is no doubt that if that clause were removed to-morrow, this Union would fall to pieces, simply by reason of the struggles of each State to make the property owned in other States pay its expenses. It was this tendency of each State to support its Government out of taxes levied upon the property of other States, or on

LECTURE II.  
Causes which led  
to its adoption.

---

Statutes regulating delivery of telegraphic despatches in other States. *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Pendleton*, 122 U. S. 347 ; *Telegraph Co. v. Texas*, 105 U. S. 460.

Statute of Missouri prohibiting bringing certain cattle into the State. *Railroad Co. v. Husen*, 95 U. S. 465.

Statute of Louisiana regulating transportation of passengers, without distinction of race or color. *Hall v. De Cuir*, 95 U. S. 485.

Statute of Tennessee taxing drummers. *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489. [Cases reviewed.]

Statute of Illinois regulating rates of railroad transportation. *Wabash & St. Louis Railway Co. v. Illinois*, 118 U. S. 557. [Cases reviewed.]

<sup>1</sup> Even with this explicit declaration it was yet difficult for men trained, as were the older lawyers during the early part of this century, to concede the supreme power of Parliament over and above any court in the land ; — that any law passed by the legislative and approved by the executive branches of the government could be set aside upon the mere opinion or judgment of a judicial tribunal. For this there was no precedent in ancient or modern history.

LECTURE II.  
Causes which led  
to its adoption.

the produce or merchandise which must go through one State to another, that more than any other one thing compelled the formation of the present Constitution.<sup>1</sup>

An understanding  
of these causes a  
key to its con-  
struction.

The importance of a clear understanding of these reasons, which were so cogent in its formation, is quite apparent. A very useful key to the construction of a statute or a constitution is to inquire what was the evil to be removed, and what remedy did the new instrument propose; so that when any question arises requiring a judicial construction of any of its clauses, it is important to go back and ascertain the evil that was intended to be remedied.

The Articles of Confederation by which the Colonies were bound together were but a rope of sand; the nation was such only in name.<sup>2</sup> To make it such in reality, this was the problem

---

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Van Buren said, as early as 1826, in the Senate of the United States: "There are few States in the Union upon whose acts the seal of condemnation has not from time to time been placed by the Supreme Court. The sovereign authorities of Vermont, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, Missouri, Kentucky, and Ohio, have in turn been rebuked and silenced by the overruling authority of this court." 4 Elliot's Debates, 486.

<sup>2</sup> The day is at length arrived when dangers and distresses have opened the eyes of the people, and they perceive the want of a common head to draw forth in some just proportion the resources of the several branches of the Federal union. They perceive that the deliberative powers exercised by States individually over the acts of Congress must terminate in the common ruin; and the Legislatures, however reluctantly, must resign a portion of their authority or cease to be Legislatures. Letter of James Duane to Washington, January 29, 1781; see 1 Bancroft's History of the Constitution, 283 (orig. ed.).

Hamilton wrote: "The Union has neither troops, nor treasury, nor government."

which confronted the founders of this Government, and they came to their work of framing its organic law, with a full view of its importance and the evils to be remedied. They determined that this instrument which they framed should be no such feeble tie. They were instituting a government for the common defence and the general welfare, and they, therefore, no longer spoke of the States individually, who might struggle with each other,<sup>1</sup> but they said: "We, the people of the United States, do ordain this instrument to be our Constitution."<sup>2</sup> It was then that a nation was born.<sup>3</sup>

LECTURE II.  
An understanding  
of these causes a  
key to its con-  
struction.

---

<sup>1</sup> The great and radical vice in the construction of the existing Confederation is in the principle of LEGISLATION FOR STATES OR GOVERNMENTS, in their CORPORATE OR COLLECTIVE CAPACITIES, and as contradistinguished from the INDIVIDUALS of which they consist. The Federalist, No. 15.

The decay and failure of the Confederation is graphically described in Curtis' Constitution.

<sup>2</sup> This preamble is constantly referred to by statesmen and jurists, to aid in expounding its provisions. *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 474; 2 Curtis' History of Constitution, pp. 372-376.

It is the essence and epitome of the whole instrument by which this government is ordained and created, and its purposes, authority, and duty established. Farrar's Constitution, sec. 5.

The Constitution of the United States was ordained and established, not by the States in their sovereign capacity, but emphatically, as the preamble of the Constitution declares, by "the people of the United States." Story, J., in *Martin v. Hunter's Lessees*, 1 Wheat. 326.

<sup>3</sup> The new government was not a mere change in dynasty, or in a form of government leaving the nation or sovereignty the same, and clothed with all the rights, and bound by all the obligations of the preceding one. But when the present United States came into existence under the new government, it was a new political body, a new nation, then for the first time taking its place in the family of nations. Chief Justice Taney, in *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 441.



LECTURE II.  
Characters of the  
framers.

Of course, when the delegates from the various States all came together, they must have had among them a great deal of discussion about the philosophy of government. Probably no nation, or people, as young as ours then was, ever had so many men thoroughly versed in that direction, or so many who had given vigorous, educated, and trained attention to that science, as were to be found in this country at that time.<sup>1</sup> And, fortunately, society was then in a condition when personal aspirations and malign influences were not, and probably could not be, brought to bear, from the fact that the wisest and best men were sent forward from the various communities to participate in the work of the constitutional convention. In that we have reaped the benefit of the good fortune of our ancestors.

The United States  
not a democracy.

It has been common to designate our form of government as a democracy, but in the true sense in which that term is properly used, as defining a government in which all its acts are

---

<sup>1</sup> The convention that formed the Constitution was composed of fifty-five members. It was a body of great and disinterested men, competent, both morally and intellectually, to the work assigned to them. . . . There was certainly a remarkable amount of talent and intellectual power in that body. There were men in that assembly, who, for genius, for statesmanship, and for profound speculation in all that relates to the science of government, the world has never seen overmatched, and they were, happily, the most marked in that assembly for their comprehensive patriotism, their justice, their unselfishness and magnanimity.

Mr. Choate said in 1858 in a lecture on Jefferson, Burr, and Madison: "I dwell on that time from 1780 to 1789 because that was our age of civil greatness. Then first we grew to be one. In that time our nation was born."

performed by the people, it is about as far from it as any other of which we are aware. As has already been said, a pure democracy is almost unknown, from the difficulty of having all the people participate in the functions of government, which include not only the processes of making the laws, but also the administration of them. Such was that of Athens,<sup>1</sup> the only highly civilized form of democracy that ever existed, where people from the streets, who could gather in the public places of that city, met and decided lawsuits, questions of the right of property, of the life or death of individuals, of the election, punishment, or censure of their officers, of the proprietorship of land, or of making war or preserving peace. This may have seemed well in theory, but history shows that it resulted in a scene of perpetual turmoil. There was little security to life or liberty when the best men in the community were compelled to drink the deadly hemlock, or were banished from their homes. Their intellect was stimulated, and they prized human effort directed in the channels of imagination, of science, and of literature, but it was still far from being a place where personal rights were respected, or

LECTURE II.  
The United States  
not a democracy.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Athenian republic, the most democratic of the Greek states, when the population and suffrage were most extended, 317 B. C., but 21,000 were entitled to vote out of more than 500,000. . . . Real democracy was first put in practice by the New England Colonies, and to this day the most perfect examples are the New England towns, where the whole adult male population assemble together and decide by their votes their own public affairs. American Cyclopædia, tit. Democracy.

LECTURE II.  
The United States  
not a democracy.

where any man of modern times would have been willing to make his home.

But our forefathers did not adopt any of the forms referred to. They had suffered from the evils of a monarchical as well as an aristocratical system; for England was, a century ago, more of an aristocracy than anything else. A pure democracy was neither possible nor desirable; but still they determined that the people should be felt in the direction of public affairs, and so they constructed what may be called a composite government, a representative republican government, one in which the powers that belong to all sovereignties were divided and placed in different depositories.

Division of  
powers.

The proper division of these powers is of the greatest importance, and they were wisely distributed by the framers of the Constitution among the three branches which have come to be recognized in all good governments as essential to a proper balance of their functions,—the executive, the legislative, and the judicial. The legislative branch enacts the law, the executive enforces it, and the judicial interprets its provisions, both as regards public and private rights, as between the citizens themselves and as between them and the Government of the United States.

This, then, is the Constitution of the United States. It establishes these powers, defines and limits them. It distributes them among these three departments, and then confines them to their proper scope and field of action, in order that there may be a useful and safe administra-

tion for the benefit of all the people, for whom all governments are instituted.

LECTURE II.  
Division of  
powers.

You will observe, however, that the lines that mark that division are not perfect. Perhaps it is impossible that they should be; it may be desirable that they should be more perfect than they are. As regards the executive, for instance, the powers which properly belong to that branch of the government are not completely vested in the President, for we find that the Senate is required to give its assent to all treaties made by the President before they can be operative. The Senate is also required to confirm all nominations to the higher offices before they become valid appointments.<sup>1</sup> So that these two great duties, of making appointments to office and making treaties, which are usually classed as executive functions of the Government, are to some extent divided in their exercise, as well as in the forms necessary to give them efficacy, between the President, who is the Executive, and the Senate of the United States, which is one of the branches of the legislative department.

So, also, in regard to declaring war and making peace, which in most other countries are held to be exclusively executive functions, and which even under the popular government of Great Britain remains in the Crown alone, they are, under our system, participated in by both the executive and legislative branches.<sup>2</sup> The

---

<sup>1</sup> Constitution, Art. 2, sec. 2, par. 2.

<sup>2</sup> The great disadvantage of the Swiss Confederation was in the power which the cantons formerly had of levying war against each

LECTURE II.  
Division of  
powers.

Constitution says that Congress shall have power to declare war ;<sup>1</sup> the President takes part in that matter only as he is a part of the latter. The laws are required to be signed by him, and it is, therefore, evident that the legislative branch is not entirely separate from the executive, but that it thus becomes an integral part of that department of the Government. If, on the contrary, he does not see fit to sign the bills which have been passed by the Congress, he usually sends them back to the body in which they originated with his reasons and objections thereto. It then requires a two-thirds vote of both branches of the Legislature to enact them into laws over such veto.<sup>2</sup> It is, therefore, apparent that the power of legislation is not confided wholly to the legislative branch of the government.

Perhaps the judicial power is left more nearly intact in the hands of the judiciary than any of the others, but it is not wholly so. The power of framing impeachments and trying them, which is eminently a judicial function, as much so as it is to indict a man and try him for murder, belongs wholly and exclusively to the two branches of the legislative department. The

---

other, and of resisting the Central Government in its method of conducting the foreign policy of the country. This was, however, remedied in the present constitution, which gives the control of the army, foreign affairs, and settlements between cantons, and the management of the police and post-offices, to the Federal Assembly. This body represents all the cantons, and consists of two chambers.

<sup>1</sup> Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 8, par. 11.

<sup>2</sup> Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 7, par. 2.

House of Representatives formulates the charges **LECTURE II.**  
or indictment, and the Senate tries and deter- **Division of**  
mines them.<sup>1</sup> **powers.**

But, after all, those are only exceptions, and it remains true that, for general and most useful purposes, the best feature of our Constitution is that it does make this substantial separation of power among these three departments.

These departments, under our form of government, are co-ordinate in dignity. Neither of them is intended, by the theory of our Constitution, to be subjected to the other. The President cannot be compelled to make a treaty, or to appoint anybody to office that he does not wish to. The Legislature cannot be compelled to pass any laws, and it alone can exercise that function. The judiciary alone can construe them, when enacted, and enforce them by proper judgments of the various courts. Mr. Justice Wayne has advanced this idea in very appropriate terms.<sup>2</sup> "The departments of the Government are legislative, executive, and judicial. They are co-ordinate in degree to the extent of the powers delegated to each of them. Each in the exercise of its power is independent of the other, but all rightfully done by either is binding upon the others. The Constitution is supreme over all of them, because the people who ratified it have made it so."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 2, par. 5 ; Art. 1, sec. 3, par. 6.

<sup>2</sup> *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331, 347.

<sup>3</sup> Whenever the political laws of the United States are to be discussed, it is with the doctrine of the sovereignty of the people that we must begin. De Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, vol. 1, p. 36 (ed. N. Y. 1838).

LECTURE II.  
Objections to the  
Constitution when  
promulgated.

When the Constitution was first framed, it was received by a great many thinking people with much distrust. An examination of the history of the proceedings of the conventions of the States, which were called to ratify and confirm that instrument, and without which it would have had no efficacy, will show that it was fiercely assailed, and that in the debates in regard to its adoption in several of the States the issue was for a long time doubtful.<sup>1</sup> It is well, perhaps, to consider some of the objections to it in the light of a century's experience.<sup>2</sup>

One of the greatest was that it conferred too much power upon the Central or Federal Government, and that it curtailed too largely the powers of the States. It will be remembered that the Colonies had just been emancipated from the parent government. They had worked together but a short time, and that not very

---

<sup>1</sup> Washington wrote to Patrick Henry, September 24, 1787: "I wish the Constitution which is offered had been more perfect; but it is the best that could be obtained at this time, and a door is opened for amendments hereafter. The political concerns of this country are suspended by a thread. The convention has been looked up to by the reflecting part of the community with a solicitude which is hardly to be conceived; and if nothing had been agreed on by that body, anarchy would soon have ensued, the seeds being deeply sown in every soil." Bancroft's History of the Constitution, vol. 2, p. 231.

<sup>2</sup> Richard Henry Lee published a series of papers called "Letters from the Federal Farmer," in which the chief objections to the new constitution were stated: that it created a national legislature where the votes were to be, not by States, but by individuals, whose salaries were to be paid out of the general treasury, thus making them independent of their own States, and that they had an unlimited power of taxation; that too much power was given to the Federal judiciary; that an oath of allegiance was required to the Federal Government, and that no Bill of Rights was included in it.

harmoniously. Each man felt that his own State was more to him, and that he had a larger interest in it than he had in the welfare of all the others, and it is one of the most creditable as well as remarkable things that the superior discernment and influence of a few great minds could overcome these strong prejudices, and so crystallize the wise provisions of the Constitution into a new form of government, which has proved so harmonious in its action and permanent in its character. Several of the States expressed their dissatisfaction by proposing amendments, under the provision in the instrument therefor, and within two years after it was ratified,<sup>1</sup> Congress passed and referred to the different States twelve amendments,<sup>2</sup> ten of

LECTURE II.  
Objections to the  
Constitution when  
promulgated.

The amendments.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Constitution went into operation March 4, 1789. *Owings v. Speed*, 5 Wheat. 420.

<sup>2</sup> The first and second articles, of the twelve proposed and passed, were never ratified. The first is interesting in view of the recent strictures, in the press and elsewhere, upon the unwieldy character of the present House of Representatives, which now consists of 325 members and 8 delegates. [Since this note was written the number has been increased to 356.] The unratified articles are as follows:

1. After the first enumeration required by the first article of the Constitution, there shall be one representative for every 20,000 until the number shall amount to 100, after which the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress that there shall not be less than 100 representatives, nor less than one representative for every 40,000 persons, until the number shall amount to 200; after which the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress that there shall not be less than 200 representatives, nor more than one representative for every 50,000 persons.

2. No law varying the compensation for the services of senators and representatives shall take effect until an election of representatives shall have intervened. See Appendix to Annals of 1st Congress, vol. 2, pp. 1984-5; also Hickey's Constitution, p. 35, note.



LECTURE II.  
The amendments.

which were ratified finally by the requisite number to make them a part of the Constitution. These were soon followed by two others, the eleventh and twelfth, after the ratification of which it remained unchanged for a period of more than sixty years.<sup>1</sup>

The objections to  
the Constitution.

In those amendments, if they are carefully examined, may be plainly seen this distrust of the power of the Central Government,<sup>2</sup> and this

<sup>1</sup> At the first Congress after the organization of the Government, the House proposed seventeen amendments to the Constitution. These were by the Senate reduced to twelve, and they were then submitted to the States.

At various times between November, 1789, and March, 1790, ten of these amendments were ratified by the Legislatures of the following States: New Jersey, North Carolina, Maryland, New Hampshire, Delaware, South Carolina, New York, and Pennsylvania; one less than three-fourths of the twelve States then in the Union. *Annals of 1st Congress*, vol. 2, Appendix. In May, 1790, Rhode Island came into the Union, and in June her Legislature ratified, but as there were now thirteen States, three-fourths had not yet given their assent. Subsequently Vermont was admitted, and in November, 1791, ratified the amendments; but there were now fourteen States, and the requisite number had not been obtained. But in December of the same year, Virginia, one of the original twelve, gave in her adhesion, and thus the ten amendments became a part of the Constitution. *Annals 2d Congress*, pp. 54, 75. These were the first ten amendments now in the Constitution, and were declared in force December 15, 1791.

The eleventh was proposed by Congress, March 5, 1794, and declared in force January 8, 1798; the twelfth, proposed December 12, 1803, and proclaimed September 25, 1804; the thirteenth, proposed February 1, 1865, and proclaimed December 18, 1865; the fourteenth, proposed June 16, 1866, proclaimed July 20, 1868; and the fifteenth, proposed February 26, 1869, and proclaimed March 30, 1870.

It was mainly through the efforts of Mr. Madison, who proposed and advocated them, that the first ten amendments were passed through Congress. 2 *Story on the Constitution*, sec. 303, note.

<sup>2</sup> As showing the diversity of opinion existing at the time the Constitution was finally ratified, it may be worthy of note that two

desire to protect the States from being overwhelmed and annihilated by its exercise. The contest has continued to the present time. It would be well for the country if it could be said that it had been settled by the results of the recent war, but while it has undergone considerable discussion, it has not been finally determined. It is sufficient to say here, although others may disagree with this conclusion, that the experience of a century under the Government as it was then organized has shown that the danger to its perpetuity and to the people of this country did not lie in the aggrandizement of the central authority, but rather in the power that remained in the several States.

LECTURE II.  
The objections to  
the Constitution.

Another objection, second in importance in The executive.

---

hundred and one amendments were proposed in one form or another by the different States in the course of their action upon its ratification. Of course many of them referred to substantially the same matter of grievance.

"It is universally understood, it is a part of the history of the day, that the great revolution which established the Constitution of the United States was not effected without immense opposition. Serious fears were extensively entertained that those powers which the patriot statesmen, who then watched over the interests of our country, deemed essential to union, and to the attainment of those invaluable objects for which union was sought, might be exercised in a manner dangerous to liberty. In almost every convention by which the Constitution was adopted, amendments to guard against the abuse of power were recommended. These amendments demanded security against the apprehended encroachments of the General Government—not against those of the local governments. In compliance with a sentiment thus generally expressed, to quiet fears thus extensively entertained, amendments were proposed by the required majority in Congress, and adopted by the States. These amendments contain no expression indicating an intention to apply them to the State governments. This court cannot so apply them." Chief Justice Marshall in *Barron v. Mayor and Council of Baltimore*, 7 Pet. 243, 250.

**LECTURE II.**  
**The executive.**

the minds of those who were not favorable to the Constitution as it was submitted for ratification, was that too much power was lodged in the executive office.<sup>1</sup> It was said to be inconsistent with the genius of the Government which they were establishing, that any one man should exercise the extraordinary authority which that instrument vested in the President of the United States; that the appointment of all the officers of the Federal Government, the distribution of all its patronage, and the control of its army and navy, would, in process of time, enable some man to build up a power that could not be resisted. It was argued that some one would arise who, by that power and with that inclination, would destroy the really democratic features of our government, and finally establish a monarchy in its place.

This belief, though natural enough at that time, was a very great mistake. The nearer we approach to individual responsibility in the executive, the nearer will it come to perfection. It is my deliberate opinion that, of all the three branches which have been discussed, the execu-

---

<sup>1</sup> "It will always be far more easy for the State governments to encroach upon the national authorities, than for the National Government to encroach upon the State authorities. The proof of this proposition turns upon the greater degree of influence which the State governments, if they administer their affairs with uprightness and prudence, will generally possess over the people; a circumstance which at the same time teaches us, that there is an inherent and intrinsic weakness in all Federal constitutions, and that too much pains cannot be taken in their organization, to give them all the force which is compatible with the principles of liberty." *The Federalist*, No. 17.

tive has been in time, under the construction given to the Federal Constitution and its practical administration, most shorn of the powers granted to it thereby. The President of the United States for the first forty or fifty years did practically nominate all public officers; he selected his cabinet himself, and personally made other appointments, although possibly a few private friends, and occasionally a member of Congress or two, may have made suggestions. But within the memory of many men now living the time arrived when the President (as the gentleman who travelled around the world with General Grant reports him as saying) only registered the edicts of members of Congress in making appointments to office; that is to say, in the function about which the Executive is mainly employed, he has become subservient to the legislative branch of the Government. This objection, therefore, has proved to be without foundation, and is not now seriously considered by thoughtful men. Of all the delusive ideas, or fallacies, that ever entered anybody's brain, the most unfounded is this—that any President can ever make himself a perpetual dictator, either in our time and generation or in those which are to come.

But the branch of the Government which has grown the most, and which a sagacious man might perhaps have foreseen would so expand, is the legislative.<sup>1</sup> Coming more immediately, as it

<sup>1</sup> It is without doubt absolutely necessary for securing the constitution of a State to restrain the executive power; but it is still

LECTURE II.  
The Congress.

does, from the people, at least one branch of it, and representing a constituency who look to it as representing them in all their legislation, much is tolerated in it which would not be tolerated in the executive or judicial departments; because the people reason that if their representatives do badly during their present terms they may be turned out at the next election, and they are not, therefore, afraid that they will very greatly exceed their powers.

Weakness of the  
judicial branch.

The judicial branch is the weakest of all.<sup>1</sup> It has no army. It has no navy, and it has no purse. It has no officers, except its marshals, and they are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate. They are the officials to whom its processes are sent, but they may be removed at any time by the Executive. The clerks whom the judges are permitted in some form or another to appoint, have salaries and compensations regulated by the legislature; and a clerk who may receive \$20,000 or more in fees must pay all but \$3500 of such receipts into the Treasury of the United States.<sup>2</sup> It is then, so far as the ordinary forms of power are

---

more necessary to restrain the legislative. De Lolme, *Constitution of England*, London, 1834, p. 190.

Montesquieu said that the English constitution would perish when the legislative power becomes more corrupt than the executive.

<sup>1</sup> Montesquieu says: "The judiciary is the weakest of the three departments of the government."

<sup>2</sup> No clerk of a district or circuit court shall be allowed to retain fees, over and above necessary office expenses, in excess of \$3500 per annum, [Rev. Stat. sec. 839,] except in California, Oregon, and Nevada, \$7000 [sec. 840].

concerned, by far the feeblest branch or department of the Government. It must rely upon the confidence and respect of the public for its just weight and influence, and it may confidently be asserted that neither the country, the people, nor the other branches of the government, have ever been found wanting in that respect or confidence. It is one of the best tributes which can be paid to the American nation, a tribute which it deserves above all others even of Anglo-Saxon descent, and one which can be paid to no other race, that it always submits to the law as expounded by its judiciary. Under all the excitements of bitter contests, involving great financial interests, power, position, and even political existence, in fact everything which could be properly brought within its judicial cognizance, the people have always felt that their interests were safely intrusted to its charge. There has never been a grander phenomenon witnessed in the history of any country than that which occurred some years since in the State of Maine, when a body calling itself a legal legislature, and claiming to be an authorized government, quietly laid down its functions and dispersed at the mere opinion of a court that it had no rightful existence.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE II.  
Weakness of the  
judicial branch.

---

<sup>1</sup> In 1879 there arose a controversy between the Fusionists and the Republicans in the State of Maine, which was hotly contested, and the feeling became exceedingly intense and bitter on both sides. The decision of the Supreme Court of the State of Maine, by which the organization of the Legislature by the Republicans was sustained, was rendered on the 16th of January, 1879. See full history of the origin and conclusion of the difficulty in Appleton's *Annual Cyclopædia*, 1879-80.

LECTURE II.  
Difficulties of  
interpretation.

Executive construction sometimes necessary.

Of course there are nice questions constantly arising between these various departments of the Government as to the strict lines of demarcation which separate one from the other, and they are frequently of great importance. The fundamental principles by which the various powers of the Government are distributed among them are laid down in the Constitution, which it is the duty of the courts to construe,<sup>1</sup> whenever it shall come before them in a fair judicial proceeding, and they can construe it in no other way. It is a mistake to suppose that the special function for which the Supreme Court of the United States was created was to interpret and construe that instrument. It is, certainly, the special function of the courts to construe it in a judicial proceeding, with parties properly before them; but it is equally the duty of each member of Congress, as well as of the Executive, to make that construction for himself when he is called upon to act, within the sphere of his duty, upon any matter involving a question of constitutional law. It is also true that such member or Executive is bound to consider that in the execu-

---

<sup>1</sup> It has been often decided that the Supreme Court is the final arbiter of the meaning of the Constitution. This question has been very fully examined in the cases of *Vanhorne's Lessee v. Dorrance*, 2 Dall. 304; *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304; *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264; *Ableman v. Booth*, 21 How. 506.

Story, in his treatise on the Constitution, after discussing the question of who is final judge or interpreter in constitutional controversies, says that the appropriate conclusion is that the judicial department of the United States is, in the last resort, the final expositor of the Constitution, as to all questions of a judicial nature.

tion of the law, as between such parties, all other branches of the Government must yield to the interpretation declared by the courts; yet, when the question is addressed to his conscience as to whether he can vote for a proposed measure, or sign a certain bill which is presented to him, it is for him to decide, with the best light that he can obtain, whether the matter is within the constitutional power of the body of which he is a member.

LECTURE II.  
Executive construction sometimes necessary.

It will thus be seen how difficult it is to get a settled construction of this great instrument; and, since every branch of the Government, when called upon to act originally, is bound to act on the judgment which it forms of its own powers, it is not hard to understand the reason why the exact relations of the States to the Federal Government should still, in many instances, remain an open and undecided question. We are, however getting a body of decisions which have become recognized principles. These interpretations of our organic law have been more often made by the judicial branch than by all the others, although largely by them as well, and have been very clearly brought out in the light of the events which have arisen to test it. For example, many points, in regard to which a construction was put upon it during the late insurrection, as to the powers that could be exercised in such an emergency by the President, by the War Department, by the Legislature, or by the Judiciary, all underwent a severe and thorough investigation, and such construction was thus

Judicial interpretation should be sustained.



LECTURE II.  
Judicial interpretation should be sustained.

practically tested. No man can say that all of the many decisions have been correct; but yet it must, in the light of any impartial mind, be clear that we are completing a construction of our Constitution, and are deciding a great many things with regard to it which will remain forever.

Principles of interpretation.

It is very desirable that this should be so. All loose methods of construing authority are dangerous, as well as all such as are too limited to serve the purposes for which they were intended. The Constitution must be looked at in the light of the ends it was designed to accomplish, having in view the evils it was intended to remedy and the benefits it was to exert. We must examine it in the light of the fact that we were a dissolving people, which it was designed anew to bind together in a relation which should continue forever; that the Confederation was rapidly falling to pieces for want of power to protect itself;<sup>1</sup> and that one of the main purposes of

---

<sup>1</sup> Upon the report, February 21, 1787, by a majority of one, that the Confederation needed amendments, and the proposed convention was the most eligible means of effecting them, many members of the Congress considered it a deadly blow to the existing Confederation, others as a harbinger of a better one. All agreed and owned that the Federal Government, in its existing shape, was inefficient, and could not last long. 5 Elliot's Debates, 96.

"The adoption of the first eleven amendments to the Constitution, so soon after the original instrument was accepted, shows a prevailing sense of danger at that time from the Federal power. And it cannot be denied that such a jealousy continued to exist with many patriotic men until the breaking out of the late Civil War. It was then discovered that the true danger to the perpetuity of the Union was in the capacity of State organizations to combine and concentrate all the powers of the States and of contiguous States for a determined resistance to the General Government.

this instrument was to give to the Central Government that power. It must not be forgotten that the Confederacy, or the government that existed under the Articles of Confederation, could only request the States to do a great many things necessary in order to maintain and carry on the Federal Government successfully, and that it was desirable to give the new one the power of operating directly upon the people without going through the instrumentality of the States. We must consider that under the old order of things the laws were enacted to take effect through the action of the State legislatures,<sup>1</sup> which ineffective and circuitous method was to give way to the direct legislation of Congress; so that the action of the legislative branch, and concurrently with it the decisions of the judiciary, should act immediately upon the people themselves, without the consent, and even against the wishes, of the States, if it were necessary.

LECTURE II.  
Principles of interpretation.

---

Unquestionably, this has given great force to the argument, and added largely to the number of those who believe in the necessity of a strong National Government." *Slaughter-House Cases*, 16 Wall. 36, 82.

<sup>1</sup> The taxes for paying the proportion needful for charges of war and other expenses for the common defence, or general welfare, were to be "laid and levied by the authority and direction of the Legislatures of the several States." Articles of Confederation, VIII.

The Articles of Confederation were entirely without any provision for enforcing the measures which they authorized Congress to adopt for the general welfare of the Union. . . . The sole means it gave to Congress of supplying the treasury of the United States was to vote what sum was wanted, and call upon the Legislature of each State to pay in its proportion within a given time. Curtis' Constitution.

LECTURE II.  
Principles of interpretation.

All these things are to be considered when it is sought to determine the force and effect of any of its provisions. Like a remedial statute, or a contract between individuals, it must be construed in the light of the times in which it was made, with reference to the evils to be remedied, the good to be effected, and, above all, in the light of the idea that it was made to create a perpetual government of the people, among the people, and by the people.<sup>1</sup>

Another canon of construction which must not be overlooked has reference to the fundamental nature of the novel government which was erected, very much in the nature of an experiment,<sup>2</sup> by the Colonies when they severed the ties which bound them to England. The Federal Government which they founded is one of conceded or granted powers. The State governments are governments authorized to exercise all the powers not prohibited by the Federal Gov-

---

<sup>1</sup> The Constitution was for a new government, organized with new substantive powers, and not a mere supplementary charter to a government already existing. The Confederation was a compact between States, and its structure and powers were wholly unlike those of the National Government. The Constitution was an act of the people of the United States to supersede the Confederation, and not be ingrafted on it, as a stock through which it was to receive life and nourishment. Story, J., in *Martin v. Hunter's Lessees*, 1 Wheat. 332.

<sup>2</sup> A constitution adopted with great opposition, the subject of the gravest difference of opinion among the wisest men on its most material points, was quite as likely to fail as its predecessor, the Articles of Confederation, had failed. The field was absolutely untried. Never before had there been such a science in the world as the law of a written constitution of a government. Address of Hon. Edward J. Phelps, in 1879, before the American Bar Association.

ernment or by the Constitution of the United States.<sup>1</sup> There is a corresponding difference in construction, therefore, and this difference pervades the Federal and State constitutions throughout the entire catalogue of their powers and the limitations thereon. These need too extended an examination to be considered here, but will be treated under their appropriate heads.

Lecture II.  
Principles of interpretation.

One illustration of the different nature of the powers of the State and Federal Governments is in the authority to punish offences. A State legislature can declare any act of an individual deemed by it to be detrimental to the public good to be an offence, and can prescribe for it a punishment. Whatever that body may conceive to be injurious to the general welfare they can forbid, and if it is done they can punish the infraction of their law by a penalty. But the Federal Government can only punish offences against the powers which it exercises. Having exclusive control of the carrying of the mail,<sup>2</sup> it can punish persons unlawfully interfering therewith in any way. With the power to coin money it has also been given the power to punish the counterfeiting of that coin. Having authority to borrow funds for its needs, it can issue bonds therefor, and can punish the counterfeiters of those bonds, as well as those who

Difference between State and Federal Governments.

---

<sup>1</sup> The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people. Amendment X.

<sup>2</sup> Congress shall have the power to establish post-offices and post-roads. Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 8, par. 7.

LECTURE II.  
Difference be-  
tween State and  
Federal Govern-  
ments.

put them in circulation.<sup>1</sup> But the national authority has no power to punish murder or theft in general, because that is within the province of the individual States.

The General Government can levy taxes, but they must be for a defined purpose, such as the payment of the public debt, or of the army and navy of the United States. It has no right to raise money by taxation for religious purposes, or for a thousand things on account of which States may impose taxes and collect them of the people. It has no such power, because, as has already been intimated, it is not granted by the Constitution.<sup>2</sup>

Constitutional  
limitation of  
power.

There is no part of the great system of constitutional law in which modern improvements have been greater, and have more steadily progressed in a proper direction, than in that of limitations upon the powers of the legislative and the executive branches of the government.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Congress shall have power to borrow money on the credit of the United States. Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 8, par. 2. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States. Id. par. 6.

It is within the constitutional powers of Congress to enact laws to provide for the punishment of the offence of counterfeiting notes of a foreign bank or corporation. *United States v. Arjona*, 120 U. S. 479.

Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts, and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States. Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 8, par. 1.

<sup>2</sup> There can be no lawful tax which is not laid for a public purpose. See cases cited; *Loan Association v. Topeka*, 20 Wall. 655, 664.

<sup>3</sup> The theory of our governments, State and National, is opposed to the deposit of unlimited power anywhere. The executive, the

Both the Federal and the State constitutions of this country are full of them.<sup>1</sup> Under the boasted constitution of Great Britain there are many instances in which a man has been condemned to death by its Parliament without any reference to any statute or law existing at the time authorizing such a proceeding. By virtue of the omnipotent power reposed in the king and the Parliament of that country a man might lose his life, his property be taken from him, and his blood become so attainted that even his children could not inherit it.<sup>2</sup>

Our constitutions are limited in many such respects. No government in this country would undertake to deprive a man of his liberty or property, much less his life, without the authority of an already existing law.<sup>3</sup> So in regard to

---

legislative, and the judicial branches of these governments are all of limited and defined powers. *Loan Association v. Topeka*, 20 Wall. 655, 668.

<sup>1</sup> "The Executive, in our governments, is not the sole, it is scarcely the principal, object of my jealousy. The tyranny of the Legislatures is the most formidable dread at present, and will be for many years." Letter of Jefferson to Madison, March 15, 1789; Jefferson's Works, vol. 3, p. 5.

<sup>2</sup> See the instance of attainder of Lord Seymour, in 1548-9, whom according to the policy of that age the Duke of Somerset thought it necessary to crush by a bill of attainder. He was in his turn also prosecuted in the same manner within a few months after the execution of his victim. Hallam's Constitutional History of England, vol. 1, p. 39 (London, 1855). See also the attainder of the Earl of Strafford by the Long Parliament in 1640. 2 Ib. 103. Bills of attainder were by no means uncommon in England, especially under Henry VIII.

The subject of bills of attainder is discussed at length, both in the opinion of the court and the dissent thereto, in *Cummings v. Missouri*, 4 Wall. 277, and *Ex parte Garland*, 4 Wall. 333.

<sup>3</sup> No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed by

**LECTURE II.**  
Constitutional  
limitation of  
power.

private property taken for public uses. All governments exercise this right; but while it is done by others without any fixed rule in regard to compensation, all of our constitutions, both Federal and State, provide that private property shall not be so taken without just compensation.<sup>1</sup> Indeed, the tendency of all changes in constitutional governments, both in this country and in all others where sound principles of political economy are taught and discussed, is to the further protection of private rights as against the governing power, which represents the entire body politic.

Extension of the  
suffrage.

There is another change going on in this country, which, whether it shall turn out to be so worthy of praise or not, remains for time to settle; that is, the tendency to popularize suffrage and to extend the elective principle to a vast number of offices not formerly within its purview. But it is difficult to believe that, in

---

Congress (Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 9, par. 3), or by a State (Art. 1, sec. 10, par. 1).

No State shall make or enforce any law that shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States, nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws. Constitution, Amendment XIV, sec. 1.

Nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation. Amendment V.

<sup>1</sup> In nearly all of the constitutions of the various States of the Union provision has been made substantially of this character, and in most cases in the exact language of the Federal Constitution. It usually occurs in what is designated as the Bill of Rights prefatory to the main body of the instrument. See *Charters and Constitutions of the United States* (Ben: Perley Poore, Washington, 1878), containing the complete texts of all the constitutions of the States.

any country where the people are governed by laws made by legislatures, the basis upon which the representation stands can be too large. It may, however, be doubted whether the elective principle can safely be applied to that class of officers, especially the judicial, whose duty it is to enforce the laws.

The importance of a thorough knowledge of constitutional law to those who propose hereafter to practise the profession of the law in this country can hardly be exaggerated. The time has been, and until very recently, that a lawyer might attain a great practice and a very high reputation in the State courts, and some of the first reputations in the country have been so made, without ever having practised at all in the Federal courts, or having his attention called, except perhaps incidentally, to this subject, or the matters we have been discussing. But that period in the history of the country has passed. The time has come when the Constitution and laws of the United States are not the mere theoretical object of the thoughts of the statesman, the lawyer, or the man of affairs; for the operations of its Government now reach to the recesses of every man's business, and force themselves upon every man's thoughts.

The history of the events which led to the recent War of the Rebellion, and of the times subsequent thereto, taught the people of this country, in a manner which it is to be hoped will never again be necessary, that this Government within its sphere is supreme, and that its

LECTURE II.  
Extension of the  
suffrage.

A knowledge of  
the Constitution  
essential to a  
lawyer.



LECTURE II.  
A knowledge of  
the Constitution  
essential to a  
lawyer.

sphere is a very extensive and pervading one. Leaving out of the question now all that took place under the period of reconstruction, many other matters have come into play in the operations of the Federal Government which were previously almost unknown.

An illustration of this is to be seen in the internal revenue system, under which, during the years immediately succeeding the Rebellion, almost every species of property, occupation, and pursuit, and many things which had scarcely acquired the name of property or occupation, were taxed by the Federal Government to pay the interest and principal of the debt incurred in that war, as well as for the expenses of the Government, largely increased by its operations. Those statutes, and the taxes which were laid under them, even if everybody was willing to submit to them cheerfully, required construction. They were new to the country. When the laws were put into operation the officers themselves were frequently very much perplexed to know what they meant, and the Government, desiring that no person should be injured, was ready, and afforded opportunities, to have the laws tested by courts of justice. A man had but to pay his taxes, and take an appeal to the commissioner who had supervision of those matters. If he failed there he could sue the man who collected them, and recover if they were illegally assessed. The number of suits growing out of this class of cases was immense, and has been so ever since the internal revenue system was es-

established. The list of articles subject to taxation has been very largely decreased, but it is probable that a very large sum, possibly approaching one hundred millions of dollars, which sum has been largely exceeded every year since the establishment of the present system in 1863, will always be raised annually in this country by the taxation imposed by the Federal Government on spirits, tobacco, and malt liquors.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE II.  
A knowledge of  
the Constitution  
essential to a  
lawyer.

But it is not only when a suit is brought, or is to be brought, that the lawyer is called upon to understand these things, or to give counsel in regard to this jurisdiction and these laws. He is very often consulted as to what a party should do where no suit is contemplated. Neither is this knowledge necessary or useful only in the large business centres; but the system permeates the entire country, so that the remotest village lawyer may be called upon to advise upon questions of constitutional or statutory construction, or as to the manner in which the laws are enforced by the officials charged with that duty.

It may also be noted that the bankruptcy laws have greatly modified the existing system of enforcing contracts or collecting debts, in the case of persons who fail to meet their engagements, or to pay for want of ability to do

---

<sup>1</sup> For annual statistics of internal revenue receipts of the United States from March 4, 1789, to June 30, 1886, see Spofford's *American Almanac*, 1887.

Many decisions of controverted questions on this subject, which were referred to the Attorney General of the United States, are collated in the *Digest of Opinions of Attorney General*, tit. *Internal Revenue*.

LECTURE II.  
A knowledge of  
the Constitution  
essential to a  
lawyer.

so. Those laws are administered under Federal statutes, and not only under an act of Congress, but under the rules of practice prescribed and adopted for the courts of the United States.<sup>1</sup> The lawyer who does not know when a man has committed an act of bankruptcy, or who does not know how to institute a proceeding in such a court, can hardly expect to receive a full share of practice in any community.

In addition to this the admiralty jurisdiction of the Federal courts has, within the last few years, by constructions placed upon it by those courts, received an immense increase in its extent. Down to 1851 it was held to be limited in fact to the seaboard, if not actually to the sea. It extended no further on the rivers

---

<sup>1</sup> Congress shall have power . . . to establish . . . uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States. Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 8, par. 4.

See acts of April 4, 1800, 2 Stat. 19, c. 19; December 19, 1803, 2 Stat. 248, c. 6; August 19, 1841, 5 Stat. 440, c. 9; and March 2, 1867, 14 Stat. 517, c. 176. A State may, however, pass a bankrupt law, provided there is no act of Congress conflicting with it. *Sturges v. Crowninshield*, 4 Wheat. 122.

As to what is a bankruptcy, see opinion of Judge Catron delivered in the Circuit Court *In re Klein*, 1 How. 277. The whole subject was elaborately considered by the Supreme Court of New York in *Kunzler v. Kohaus*, 5 Hill, 317, and *Sackett v. Andross*, 5 Hill, 327.

By the act of Congress, approved June 7, 1878, 20 Stat. 99, c. 160, the bankruptcy law of 1867, 14 Stat., 517, c. 176, and all supplementary acts, incorporated in the Revised Statutes, sections 4972 to 5132, were repealed, to take effect September 1, 1878. Pending cases were not, however, affected. A strong effort has been made to secure another national act of a similar character, and one has been past the Senate, but failed of action in the House.

For rules of court in bankruptcy, see *Desty's Federal Procedure*, p. 337.

than the tide ebb and flowed. But the Supreme Court of the United States has since decided that it extended to all navigable streams; that it was a system of laws intended to have operation upon the interests of navigation; that whether it took place upon salt or fresh water was entirely immaterial, and that the Constitution of the United States, when it declared that the Federal courts should have jurisdiction in admiralty, meant that they should have jurisdiction in all that class of cases which heretofore had been called admiralty cases, whether they grew out of salt water transactions or of engagements and acts upon fresh water.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE II.  
A knowledge of  
the Constitution  
essential to a  
lawyer.

The decision of this principle has made the subject of questions concerning the carrying trade by steamboats upon our rivers and lakes one of much interest to every lawyer throughout the great interior of this country. Every steamboat becomes, in regard to suits concerning its transactions or its contracts, as well as in regard to torts committed by its officers, subject to the admiralty jurisdiction of the courts of the United States. By an act of Congress passed in the earliest history of the country, where the action is, strictly speaking, an admiralty case; that is, one known and recognized

---

<sup>1</sup> In the case of *The Thomas Jefferson*, 10 Wheat. 428, it was decided that the jurisdiction of the courts of admiralty in the United States was limited to the ebb and flow of the tide; but in *The Genesee Chief v. Fitzhugh*, 12 How. 443, it was held that it was not limited to the tide waters, but extends to all public navigable lakes and rivers where commerce is carried on between different States, or with a foreign nation. See Notes upon this Lecture.

LECTURE II.  
A knowledge of  
the Constitution  
essential to a  
lawyer.

as belonging to the ancient jurisdiction of admiralty in England and on the Continent, the Federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction, and it cannot be exercised by the State courts.<sup>1</sup> If a lawyer, therefore, expects to have a large practice in any part of the country now, he must know something of admiralty law and its jurisdiction and application.

General considerations.

It is evident, therefore, that the discussion of the principles which have been outlined has something more than a mere theoretical value, not only to every lawyer, but to every citizen living under the authority and protection of a constitutional government. Questions of constitutional law, especially in regard to the Constitution of the United States, have become matters of common occurrence in the courts. Whether it is that the Congress of the United States has taken a more liberal view of its powers than formerly, or whether it is that the people are more disposed to question the exercise of its powers, may be open to question, but certain it is that hardly any act of that body in modern times can be brought to bear upon an individual, to which he is reluctant to assent, that he does not attempt to raise the question of its constitutional power to pass it. Our books of reports, both State and Federal, are thus filled

---

<sup>1</sup> The original jurisdiction in admiralty exercised by the District Courts, was regulated by the act of September 24, 1789, 1 Stat. 73, c. 20, and enlarged by the act of February 26, 1845, 5 Stat. 726, c. 20. It is exclusive in those courts, not only of other Federal courts, but of the State courts also. *The Hine v. Trevor*, 4 Wall. 555, 569.

with decisions upon questions of constitutional law.

LECTURE II.  
General considerations.

With the rapid progress of this country in wealth, and its growth in population and power, it is but natural that there should be a great increase in litigation. Out of the multiplication of corporations of all kinds, and the changes in the methods for the transportation of persons and property, which have taken place within a few years, have arisen a vast number of suits before almost entirely unknown, involving also new principles of construction and application.

The Federal Government is exercising to some extent its powers over this subject of transportation, under the clause of the Constitution of the United States which declares that Congress shall have the right to regulate commerce with foreign nations, with the Indian tribes, and among the several States.<sup>1</sup> State legislatures are constantly enacting laws for the promotion of their purposes, for the raising of money, or for the protection of what they consider their individual rights, which are supposed to be in conflict with this right of Congress to regulate commerce among the States; and the Supreme Court of the United States has been flooded in recent years with questions concerning the power of the States to pass laws regarding tax-

Interstate commerce.

---

<sup>1</sup> Congress shall have power to regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes. Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 8, par. 3.

See "an act to regulate commerce," generally known as the Interstate Commerce Act, approved February 4, 1887, 24 Stat. 379, c. 104.

LECTURE II.  
Interstate com-  
merce.

The Thirteenth,  
Fourteenth, and  
Fifteenth Amend-  
ments.

ation, and other matters supposed to infringe upon the rights of individuals as citizens of the Federal Government.<sup>1</sup>

By the recent amendments to the Constitution, adopted since the War of the Rebellion ended,<sup>2</sup> new questions of constitutional law, involving the relations sustained by the Federal Government to the States and their people, have been raised, and are constantly arising, which require attentive consideration. A mass of people, several millions in number, who were not theretofore citizens of the United States, have been made such by those amendments. That class of people who were declared by the *Dred Scott* decision,<sup>3</sup> in 1856, to have no rights

---

<sup>1</sup> The cases on this subject are so numerous that attention need now only be directed to several of the most recent, in which the previous decisions and history of the matter are referred to.

Interstate commerce cannot be taxed at all by a State. *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489.

A prosecution of a citizen and resident of New York for selling by sample in the State of Maryland without a license held to be constitutional under the commerce clause of the Federal Constitution. *Corson v. Maryland*, 120 U. S. 502.

A State statute, which levies a tax upon the gross receipts of railroads for the carriage of freight and passengers into, out of, or through the State, is a tax upon commerce among the States, and therefore void. *Fargo v. Michigan*, 121 U. S. 230.

See also very full reference to previous cases and authorities in *Wabash, St. Louis & Pacific Railway Co. v. Illinois*, 118 U. S. 557.

Mr. Garfield said in the House of Representatives: "Chief Justice Marshall, that great judge who found the Constitution paper, and made it a power, who found it a skeleton, and clothed it with flesh and blood. By his wisdom and genius, he made it the potent and beneficent instrument for the government of a great nation." Record, 46 Congress, p. 2390.

<sup>2</sup> Amendments XIII, XIV, and XV.

<sup>3</sup> *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393.

which a white man was bound to respect, have come to have all the legal or civil rights which a white man has.

LECTURE II.  
The Thirteenth,  
Fourteenth, and  
Fifteenth Amend-  
ments.

Attorneys and courts are frequently called upon to construe the Constitution of the United States, and the laws passed in pursuance thereof, as well as to determine questions of the conflict of State constitutions and laws therewith. Any lawyer may at any time be called upon to advise about all of these questions which have been so briefly suggested, and to put in operation the machinery of the law of the Federal Government for the protection of the rights of his client. No branch of the law is of more importance to the counsellor, the statesman, or the citizen, than a thorough acquaintance with the Constitution and laws of the Federal Government, as they are administered, and as they affect the rights of the people.

In this connection may be appropriately cited the words of Chancellor Kent, one of the most able and accomplished writers upon legal topics that this country ever produced, which, delivered a half century ago, derive added force from the great historical events which have occurred since he passed away.

“The Government of the United States was erected by the free voice and joint will of the people of America for their common defence and general welfare. Its powers apply to those great interests which relate to this country in its national capacity, and which depend for their stability and protection on the consolida-



LECTURE II.  
The Thirteenth,  
Fourteenth, and  
Fifteenth Amend-  
ments.

tion of the Union. It is clothed with the principal attributes of political sovereignty, and it is justly deemed the guardian of our best rights, the source of our highest civil and political duties, and the sure means of national greatness." <sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Kent's Commentaries, 201.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE II.

---

FROM the very beginning of the Government there have been two theories for the construction of the Constitution. The thorough-going Federalist on the one hand, insists that it must be construed with reference to the circumstances which made it necessary, and with a just conception of the objects which its framers desired to accomplish by it. Hence he contends that the delegated powers are to be construed liberally, and that implied powers are to be assumed when necessary to fully carry delegated powers into effect. On the other hand, the strict States' rights man plants himself upon the Tenth Amendment, as the people's contemporaneous construction, and contends that the National Government is a government with delegated powers only, and that the Instrument of delegation should be construed strictly.

LECTURE II.  
Federal and  
States' rights the-  
ories of construc-  
tion.

If I understand the views of Justice Miller, while his personal sympathies were undoubtedly in the main with the Federalists, he belonged to neither school. He was of the opinion that the powers of the Central Government are, in the end, practically to be settled by the judiciary; and that judicial decisions upon constitutional questions are entitled to the respect which those

Weight to be  
given to judicial  
construction.

LECTURE II.  
Weight to be  
given to judicial  
construction.

decisions receive in questions of law. Although he admits that the Executive must act according to its own light when new questions arise, he inclines to the view that, under the Constitution, the Supreme Court is the proper interpreter of that instrument; and that its interpretation, especially when repeatedly given, ought to have controlling weight.

It may be objected to this theory that the judiciary has been at different times, on both sides of many questions of constitutional law; as for instance on the constitutional limits of admiralty jurisdiction, and on the constitutionality of the Legal Tender Act. Nevertheless it must be true that a power of authoritative interpretation is lodged somewhere. We have seen in the outcome of the doctrine first announced in the *Dartmouth College Case*,<sup>1</sup> how a theory of construction, novel when propounded, may, as time rolls on, commend itself and be universally accepted. Judicial interpretation can become necessary or possible only when private interests are in litigation; but when the same question often recurs, and is as often decided in the same way, an accepted rule of construction comes at last into force. It is in the courts alone that opportunity is given for such repeated consideration and reconsideration of a constitutional question; and hence their decisions should have persuasive weight.

Prior to the adoption of the Constitution,

---

<sup>1</sup> 4 Wheat. 518.

there being no Federal judiciary (with the exception of the Prize Courts), Congress itself set the limit to its own powers by its executive and legislative acts. In the Note to Chapter I, taking as a starting-point the fact that the Constitution was the historic outcome of various efforts at nationality during preceding years, an attempt was made to learn from history what construction Congress at that time put upon its own powers. We saw it forced by necessity to assume functions of sovereignty which had dropped from the hands of the king of Great Britain, and to exercise them repeatedly and without question prior to the adoption of any Articles regulating the relations between it and the individual States. We saw Congress, after the adoption of those Articles, receive the cession of an empire, and determine the character of its civilization, without having received in the Articles authority to do so. These exercises of sovereign power, growing out of the necessities of the people of the whole United States, were unquestioned when made, and have not been doubted since. The most extreme Federalist must admit, however, that such a rule of construction is loose and dangerous, and that it should be resorted to only in case of necessity.

The Constitution gave to the people a judiciary to protect it against an abuse of its powers by either co-ordinate branch of the Government, on the one hand; and, on the other hand, to recognize as just and constitutional an exercise of power assailed as unconstitutional.

LECTURE II.  
Weight to be  
given to judicial  
construction.

LECTURE II.  
Weight to be  
given to judicial  
construction.

Although the Supreme Court of the United States has become one of the recognized great law courts of the world, whose decisions on questions of law, civil and international, are everywhere regarded with the highest respect, it is not too much to say that its greatest and its most important work has been done in the settlement of disputed points of constitutional law. Persons not familiar with its reports have little conception of the amount of time, of labor, and of thought which has been expended upon this subject.

Out of the mass of decisions, running through one hundred and forty volumes, I select four subjects as specially illustrating the fundamental principle of construction which appears to have prevailed throughout the hundred years. The first of these cases related to the Appellate Prize Courts of the Revolution, and the judgment was rendered in the early part of the first quarter of the century. The second subject was the acquisition of Louisiana, which was sustained judicially in the second quarter. The third relates to admiralty jurisdiction, which was extended by the legislature, and the extension judicially sustained, in the third quarter. The fourth is the legislation making the promises of the United States a legal tender, which was finally sustained by the Supreme Court near the close of the fourth quarter of the century.

### 1. *The Judgments of the Appellate Prize Courts.*

The validity of these judgments came before the court at the February Term, 1795,<sup>1</sup> on the following facts. In April, 1776, Congress agreed upon a form of commission to commanders of private vessels of war, and such a commission was issued to Joshua Stackpole of New Hampshire, as commander of the *McClary*. In October, 1777, while in command of that vessel, he captured the brigantine *Susanna* on the high seas, and carried her into the port of Portsmouth for condemnation as lawful prize. The legislature of New Hampshire had, on the 3d of July, 1776, created a Prize Court, with a right of appeal to the Continental Congress when the capture was made by an "armed vessel fitted out at the charge of the United Colonies," and in other cases to the Superior Court of the State. Congress had, as we have already seen, taken appellate jurisdiction in many such cases before the date of the capture.

The *Susanna* and her cargo were libelled in the Maritime Court of New Hampshire, and condemned as lawful prize and ordered to be sold. An appeal to Congress was claimed from this decree and was refused. The claimants then took an appeal to the Superior Court of New Hampshire, which was granted, and the judgment below was affirmed there. The claimants took an appeal to Congress from this judgment, which was not allowed; but they

LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confederation.

<sup>1</sup> *Penhallow v. Doane*, 3 Dall. 54.

LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confederation.

nevertheless lodged their petition there in October, 1778, within the prescribed time, asking Congress to hear the appeal. Congress decided, after discussion, to take jurisdiction; and, after hearing the parties, reversed the judgment of the court below in September, 1783.

After the organization of the Federal judiciary under the Constitution, the representatives of these appellants instituted proceedings in admiralty in the District Court of the United States in New Hampshire to enforce the judgment of the Appellate Court, citing in the owners of the *McClary*; and, as the result of the proceedings, the libellants obtained a judgment for upwards of \$38,000. This was the case brought for review to the Supreme Court by writ of error. It is plain that it involved the question of the jurisdiction of the Court of Appeals over the appeal in October, 1778, when the petition of the appellant was presented. Judgment was announced January 24, 1795, the judges delivering their opinions *seriatim*. The court consisted of Mr. Jay, Chief Justice (who was absent); Mr. Cushing of Massachusetts; Mr. Wilson of Pennsylvania; Mr. Blair of Virginia; Mr. Iredell of North Carolina; and Mr. Paterson of New Jersey. Mr. Paterson, Mr. Blair, and Mr. Wilson were members of the convention which framed the Constitution.

Mr. Justice Paterson, speaking first, divided the question of the jurisdiction of the Appellate Prize Court into two branches; (1) acts done before the adoption of the Articles of Confederation in 1781; (2) acts done after that time.

In respect of the first he said: "The powers of Congress were revolutionary in their nature, arising out of events, adequate to every national emergency, and co-extensive with the object to be attained. Congress was the general, supreme, and controlling council of the nation, the centre of union, the centre of force, and the sun of the political system. To determine what their powers were, we must inquire what powers they exercised. Congress raised armies, fitted out a navy, and prescribed rules for their government; Congress conducted all military operations, both by land and sea; Congress emitted bills of credit, received and sent ambassadors, and made treaties; Congress commissioned privateers to cruise against the enemy, directed what vessels should be liable to capture, and prescribed rules for the distribution of prizes. These high acts of sovereignty were submitted to, acquiesced in, and approved of by the people of America. . . . There was but one war, and one sovereign will to conduct it. The danger being imminent and common, it became necessary for the people or Colonies to coalesce and act in concert in order to divert or break the violence of the gathering storm; they accordingly grew into union, and formed one great political body, of which Congress was the directing principle and soul."

LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confederation.

On the second point he said: "The Court of Appeals, in September, 1783, decided upon the point of jurisdiction, either directly or incidentally; for, after a full hearing, they decreed that the sentences passed by the superior and inferior



LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confederation.

courts of New Hampshire should be reversed and annulled, and the property be restored. This decree, being made by a court constitutionally established, of competent authority and the highest jurisdiction, is conclusive and final."

Mr. Justice Iredell said: "When acts were passed by the Parliament of Great Britain, which were thought unconstitutional and unjust, and when every hope of redress by separate applications appeared desperate, there was conceived the noble idea, which laid the foundation of the present independence and happiness of this country, (though independence was not then in contemplation,) of forming a common council to consult for the common welfare of the whole, so far as an opposition to the measures of Great Britain was concerned. . . . Each province appointed as many or as few deputies as it pleased, at its own discretion, which was not objected to, because the members of Congress did not vote individually, but the votes given in Congress were by provinces, as they afterwards were, (subsequent to the Declaration of Independence, and until the present Constitution of the United States was formed,) by States. The powers of Congress, at first, were indeed little more than advisory; but, in proportion as the danger increased, their powers were gradually enlarged, either by express grant, or by implication arising from a kind of indefinite authority, suited to the unknown exigencies that might arise. That an undefined authority is dangerous, and ought to be intrusted as cautiously as

possible, every man must admit; and none could take more pains than Congress for a long time did, to get their authority regularly defined by a ratification of the Articles of Confederation. But that, previously thereto, they did exercise, with the acquiescence of the States, high powers of what I may, perhaps, with propriety, for distinction call external sovereignty is unquestionable. . . . Whether among these powers comprehended within their general authority, was that of instituting courts for the trial of all prize causes, was a great and awful question; a question that demanded deep consideration, and not perhaps susceptible of an easy decision. That in point of prudence and propriety, it was a power most fit for Congress to exercise, I have no doubt. I think all prize causes whatsoever ought to belong to the national sovereignty. . . . This is a consideration of no small weight to induce an inference that they actually possessed it when their powers were so indefinite, and when it seems to have been the sense of all the States that Congress should possess all the incidents to external sovereignty."

LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confederation.

Mr. Justice Blair said: "The immediate question is, whether Congress had a right to exercise, by themselves, by their committees, or by any regular court of appeals by them erected, an appellate jurisdiction, to affirm or reverse a sentence of a State court of admiralty, in a question whether prize or no prize. If they possessed such an authority, it must be derivative, and its source, either mediately or immediately, the will of the

LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confederation.

people. Usurpation can give no right. . . . They raised an army; they appointed a commander-in-chief with other general and field officers; they modelled the army, disposed of the troops, emitted bills of credit, pledged the confederated Colonies for the redemption of them, and, in short, acted in all respects like a body completely armed with all the powers of war; and at all this I find not the least symptom of discontent among all the confederated States, or the whole people of America; on the contrary, Congress were universally revered, and looked up to as our political fathers and the saviours of their country. . . . I am therefore of opinion that those acts of New Hampshire which restrain the jurisdiction of Congress, being contrary to the legitimate powers of Congress, can have no binding force; and that, under the authority of Congress, an appeal will lay from the courts of admiralty of that State to the court of Commissioners of Appeals."

Mr. Justice Cushing said: "I concur with the rest of the court, that the Court of Appeals, being a court under the Confederation of 1781 of all the States, and being a court for 'determining finally appeals in all cases of capture,' and so being the highest court, the dernier resort of all such cases, their decision upon the jurisdiction and upon the merits of the cause, having heard the parties by their counsel, must be final and conclusive. . . . As to the original question of the powers of Congress respecting captures . . . I have no doubt of the sovereignty

of the States, saving the powers delegated to Congress, being such as were 'proper and necessary' to carry on, unitedly, the common defence in the open war that was waged against this country, and in support of their liberties, to the end of the contest."

LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confederation.

As we have already seen,<sup>1</sup> this unanimous ruling, although the different judges reached their conclusions by different methods of reasoning, was followed by the court fourteen years later, Mr. Chief Justice Marshall giving the opinion.<sup>2</sup>

Thus it was determined, as an historic fact, that in 1779 Congress had the power to create a Prize Court with jurisdiction over judgments of State courts, even in violation of the laws of a State, provided the subject of the judgment was national in character; and that rights of property acquired under this legislation were to be upheld by courts of the United States existing under the Constitution, and to be protected by its civil authorities. The court practically adopted the language of the Resolutions of Congress passed in 1779, at a time when no power had been conferred upon it by a written instrument, that "Congress or such person or persons as they appoint" "have *necessarily* the power" to exercise full appellate jurisdiction in such cases, and that "no act of any one State can or ought to destroy" it. Here was first announced,

<sup>1</sup> See *ante*, p. 46.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. Peters*, 5 Cranch, 115.

LECTURE II.  
Action of the  
Supreme Court on  
the judgments of  
the Prize Courts  
of the Confedera-  
tion.

and in the most concrete form, that doctrine of implied powers, which has had so great influence in shaping the destinies of the United States.

## 2. *The Acquisition of Louisiana.*

Acquisition of  
Louisiana.

Mr. Jefferson, under whom the acquisition was made, held views on its constitutionality which are well known. He said: "This treaty must, of course, be laid before both Houses, because they have important functions to exercise respecting it. They, I presume, will see their duty to their country in ratifying and paying for it, so as to secure a good which would otherwise probably be never again in their power. But I suppose they must then appeal to *the nation* for an additional article to the Constitution, approving and confirming an act which the nation had not previously authorized. The Constitution has made no provision for our holding foreign territory, still less for incorporating foreign nations into our Union. The Executive, in seizing the fugitive occurrence which so much advances the good of their country, have done an act beyond the Constitution."<sup>1</sup>

On the 30th of the same month he wrote to Mr. Lincoln, the Attorney General, who had given an opinion favorable to the constitutionality of the measure, that "the less that is said about any constitutional difficulty the better. Congress should do what is necessary *in silence*."

---

<sup>1</sup> Jefferson to Breckenridge, August 12, 1803. 4 Jefferson's Works, 500.

I find but one opinion as to the necessity of shutting up the country for some time.”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE II.  
Acquisition of  
Louisiana.

Mr. Gallatin, however, who was the Secretary of the Treasury at that time, was of a different opinion. He said: “Does any constitutional objection really exist? . . . To me it would appear, (1) that the United States, as a nation, have an inherent right to acquire territory; (2) that whenever that acquisition is by treaty, the same constituted authorities, in whom the treaty-making power is vested, have a constitutional right to sanction the acquisition.”<sup>2</sup>

The average view of the Federalists is probably expressed by Josiah Quincy, then a member of Congress: “The clause in the Constitution giving the power to Congress to admit into the Union other States, had unquestionably sole reference to the admission of States within the limits of the original territory of the United States. No original document, argument, or treatise, at the time of the formation of the Constitution, can be adduced to give color to the opinion that it was intended to extend to territories then belonging to foreign powers, beyond the limits of the original thirteen States. Mr. Jefferson himself was so convinced of this fact, that he declared, previous to the purchase of Louisiana, that it could not be done, except by receiving the sanction of the several States, without a violation of the Constitution. . . .

---

<sup>1</sup> 4 Jefferson's Works, 505.

<sup>2</sup> Gallatin to Jefferson, January 13, 1803. 1 Gallatin's Works, 112.

LECTURE II.  
Acquisition of  
Louisiana.

"Notwithstanding the perfect conviction of his own mind on this point, as he unequivocally declared (a fact well known at that time and subsequently publicly demonstrated), he yielded to the solicitations and influence of his partisans, silenced his conscientious scruples, and, holding in his hand the omnipotence of the present party power, consented to give his sanction to the violation of the Constitution by admitting Louisiana into the Union, without receiving or asking the consent of the several States."<sup>1</sup>

Congress adopted Mr. Gallatin's theory of construction rather than that of Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Quincy. On the 31st October, 1803,<sup>2</sup> it authorized the President to take possession of the ceded territory, and extended the laws of the United States over it; on the 20th February, 1811,<sup>3</sup> it passed an enabling act, under which Louisiana was, on the 8th April, 1812, admitted into the Union.<sup>4</sup> This treaty, and these laws, and individual rights created under them, have been recognized by the Supreme Court.<sup>5</sup>

In thus construing the Constitution, the statesmen of 1802 only followed in the footsteps of the statesmen of 1787, who accepted the cession

---

<sup>1</sup> Life of Josiah Quincy, 91.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Stat. 245.

<sup>3</sup> 2 Stat. 641.

<sup>4</sup> 2 Stat. 701.

<sup>5</sup> *Maheux v. Thatcher*, 6 Wheat. 129; *Soulard v. United States*, 4 Pet. 511; *Lirington v. Story*, 9 Pet. 632; *Livingston v. Story*, 11 Pet. 351; *Story v. Livingston*, 13 Pet. 350; *United States v. D'Auterive*, 10 How. 609; *Montault v. United States*, 12 How. 47; *United States v. Rillieux*, 14 How. 180; *United States v. King*, 7 How. 833; *United States v. Turner*, 11 How. 663; *Mackey v. United States*, 10 Pet. 340; *Pollard v. Files*, 2 How. 591; *Foster v. Neilson*, 2 Pet. 253.

of the Northwest Territory. The question and the doubt with Louisiana grew out of the silence of the Constitution; but the Articles of Confederation were equally silent. Nor could the fact that, in the one case, the cession was made by individual States of the Union, and, in the other, by a Foreign Power, affect the nature of the constitutional question. In the one case Congress, and in the other the Executive, assumed that the power of such acquisition was impliedly given to a sovereign, though not in terms delegated; and in each case the action has been approved by the people and sustained by the courts.

LECTURE II.  
Acquisition of  
Louisiana.

The acquisition of Florida<sup>1</sup> followed that of Louisiana. Texas came next, but by a different process. It was admitted as a State while still foreign territory.<sup>2</sup> The cession of California<sup>3</sup> by treaty, and then of Alaska<sup>4</sup> followed. Meanwhile a treaty of the United States gave to Great Britain<sup>5</sup> a tract of territory claimed by the State of Maine; and another treaty gave to the same power<sup>6</sup> a large tract claimed by the United States in the Northwest and on the shores of the Pacific.

In *American Insurance Co. v. Canter*,<sup>7</sup> Chief Justice Marshall, delivering the opinion of the

<sup>1</sup> Treaty of February 22, 1819, with Spain. 8 Stat. 252.

<sup>2</sup> 5 Stat. 797.

<sup>3</sup> Treaty with Mexico, February 2, 1848. 9 Stat. 922.

<sup>4</sup> Treaty with Russia, March 30, 1867. 15 Stat. 539.

<sup>5</sup> Treaty with Great Britain, August 9, 1842. 8 Stat. 572.

<sup>6</sup> Treaty with Great Britain, June 15, 1846. 9 Stat. 869.

<sup>7</sup> 1 Pet. 511, 542.



LECTURE II.  
Acquisition of  
Louisiana.

court, said: "The Constitution confers absolutely on the Government of the Union, the powers of making war and of making treaties; consequently that Government possesses the power of acquiring territory, either by conquest or by treaty. The usage of the world is, if a nation be not entirely subdued, to consider the holding of conquered territory as a mere military occupation, until its fate shall be determined at the treaty of peace. If it be ceded by the treaty, the acquisition is confirmed, and the ceded territory becomes a part of the nation to which it is annexed. . . . The same act which transfers their country, transfers the allegiance of those who remain in it."

3. *Extension of the Admiralty Jurisdiction of the Courts of the United States.*

Admiralty jurisdiction over interior waters.

The second section of the Third Article of the Constitution provides that the judicial power shall extend "to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction."

The Supreme Court has held that this language referred to the general system of maritime law which was familiar to the lawyers and statesmen of the country when the Constitution was adopted.<sup>1</sup> In an early case, admiralty jurisdiction was invoked in Kentucky, to enforce a claim of a hand for wages earned on a steamboat running from a port in Kentucky up the river Missouri; but the court said: "In the

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Lottawanna*, 21 Wall. 558.

great struggles between the courts of the common law and the admiralty, the latter never attempted to assert any jurisdiction except over maritime contracts; . . . nor could it rightfully exercise any jurisdiction, except in cases where the service was substantially performed, or to be performed, upon the sea, or upon waters within the ebb and flow of the tide.<sup>1</sup> This was affirmed and reasserted by the court.<sup>2</sup> And it can hardly admit of a doubt that the framers of the Constitution by the term 'admiralty,' understood admiralty as its jurisdiction was defined by English law; and that the adjective 'maritime' related to tidal waters."

LECTURE II.  
Admiralty jurisdiction over interior waters.

As the commerce of the lakes and internal rivers expanded, it was found that the admiralty and maritime jurisdiction as thus settled and defined, did not meet the necessities of the country. Congress accordingly, on the 26th of February, 1845, passed an act "extending the jurisdiction of the District Courts to certain cases upon the lakes and navigable waters connecting the same."<sup>3</sup> The court, at December Term, 1851, held this statute to be within the constitutional power of Congress.<sup>4</sup> It said, among other things: "The only objection made to this jurisdiction is that there is no tide in the lakes or the waters connecting them; and it is said that the admiralty and maritime jurisdic-

<sup>1</sup> *The Thomas Jefferson*, 10 Wheat. 428.

<sup>2</sup> *American Ins. Co. v. Canter*, 1 Pet. 511; *The Orleans*, 11 Pet. 175; *United States v. Coombs*, 12 Pet. 72.

<sup>3</sup> 5 Stat. 726, c. 20.

<sup>4</sup> *The Genesee Chief*, 12 How. 443.

LECTURE II.  
Admiralty jurisdiction over interior waters.

tion as known and understood in England and this country at the time the Constitution was adopted, was confined to the ebb and flow of the tide. . . . In England, undoubtedly, the writers upon the subject, and the decisions in its courts of admiralty, always speak of the jurisdiction as confined to tide water. . . . At the time the Constitution of the United States was adopted, and our courts of admiralty went into operation, the definition which had been adopted in England was equally proper here. In the old thirteen States, the far greater part of the navigable waters are tide waters. . . . It is evident that a definition that would at this day limit public rivers in this country to tide-water rivers is utterly inadmissible. . . . The lakes and the waters connecting them are undoubtedly public waters, and we think are within the grant of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction in the Constitution of the United States."

Twenty-two years later the court, speaking of this, said that the court had "felt itself at liberty to recognize the admiralty jurisdiction as extending to localities and subjects which were prohibited to it in England, but which fairly belong to it on every ground of reason when applied to the peculiar circumstances of this country."<sup>1</sup> The most extreme States' right theorist cannot doubt that this decision was in accordance with the true interests — it is not too strong to say the absolute necessities — of the nation.

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Lottawanna*, 21 Wall. 558.

#### 4. *The Legal Tender Decisions.*

By the act of February 25, 1862, 12 Stat. 345, c. 33; the joint resolution of January 17, 1863, 12 Stat. 822; and the act of March 3, 1863, 12 Stat. 709, c. 73, all passed during the civil war, Congress made provisions for issues of the notes of the United States, to be a legal tender, receivable in payment of private debts. It was further provided that these notes, as they should come into the treasury, might be reissued from time to time, and, if mutilated so as to be unfit for use, might be replaced by a new issue.

LECTURE II.  
Legal tender  
decisions.

At December Term, 1869, this provision was pronounced to be unconstitutional by a majority of the court.<sup>1</sup> The opinion was delivered by Chief Justice Chase, Justices Nelson, Clifford, and Field concurring in the opinion and judgment, and Justice Grier concurring in the judgment. Justice Miller delivered a dissenting opinion, in which Justices Swayne and Davis concurred.

The majority did not doubt the power to issue notes which should become a currency in circulation: its doubt was "as to the power to declare a particular class of these notes to be a legal tender in payment of preëxisting debts." On this point they said: "We confess ourselves unable to perceive any solid distinction between such an act and an act compelling all citizens to accept, in satisfaction of all contracts for money, half, or three-quarters, or any other proportion less than the whole, of the value actually due

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 8 Wall. 603.

LECTURE II.  
Legal tender  
decisions.

according to their terms. It is difficult to conceive what act would take private property without process of law if such an act would not. We are obliged to conclude that an act making mere promises to pay dollars, a legal tender in payment of debts previously contracted, is not a means appropriate, plainly adapted, really calculated to carry into effect any express power vested in Congress; that such an act is inconsistent with the spirit of the Constitution, and that it is prohibited by the Constitution."

The dissenting opinion said: "The legal tender clauses of the statutes under consideration were placed emphatically, by those who enacted them, upon their necessity to the further borrowing of money and maintaining the army and navy. . . . The history of that gloomy time, not to be readily forgotten by the lover of his country, will forever remain, the full, clear, and ample vindication of the exercise of this power by Congress. . . . Undoubtedly it is a law impairing the obligation of contracts made before its passage; but, while the Constitution forbids States to pass such laws, it does not forbid Congress."

At December Term, 1870, the question came again before the court,<sup>1</sup> when the decision in *Hepburn v. Griswold* was reversed. The opinion of the court, concurred in by Justices Swayne, Davis, and Miller, was delivered by Mr. Justice Strong. Mr. Justice Bradley delivered a concur-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Knox v. Lee*, 12 Wall. 457.

ring opinion. Chief Justice Chase delivered a dissenting opinion in which Justice Nelson concurred. Justice Clifford and Justice Field each delivered a dissenting opinion.

LECTURE II.  
Legal tender  
decisions.

The question was again before the court at December Term, 1883, when the decision in *Knox v. Lee* was reaffirmed, Justice Field being the only dissenting judge.<sup>1</sup>

By an act passed in 1875, "to provide for the resumption of specie payments,"<sup>2</sup> Congress had directed that these notes as retired should be cancelled. By the act of May 31, 1878,<sup>3</sup> it terminated such retirement, and directed the reissue of such notes when paid into the treasury. The court, in its opinion, delivered by Justice Gray, Justice Field only dissenting, said: "A constitution, establishing a frame of government, declaring fundamental principles, and creating a national sovereignty, and intended to endure for ages and to be adapted to the various crises of human affairs, is not to be interpreted with the strictness of a private contract. The Constitution of the United States, by apt words of designation or general description, marks the outlines of the powers granted to the national Legislature; but it does not undertake, with the precision and detail of a code of laws, to enumerate the subdivision of those powers, or to specify all the means by which they may be carried into execution. . . . The words 'to

---

<sup>1</sup> *Legal Tender Cases*, 110 U. S. 421.

<sup>2</sup> 18 Stat. 296, c. 15.

<sup>3</sup> 20 Stat. 87, c. 146.

LECTURE II.  
Legal tender  
decisions.

borrow money,' as used in the Constitution, to designate a power vested in the National Government, for the safety and welfare of the whole people, are not to receive that limited and restricted interpretation and meaning which they would have in a penal statute, or in an authority conferred, by law or by contract, upon trustees or agents for private purposes. . . . Congress has the power to issue the obligations of the United States in such form, and to impress upon them such qualities as currency for the purchase of merchandise and the payment of debts, as accord with the usage of sovereign governments. The power, as incident to the power of borrowing money and issuing bills or notes of the Government for money borrowed, of impressing upon those bills or notes the quality of being a legal tender for the payment of private debts, was a power universally understood to belong to sovereignty, in Europe and America, at the time of the framing and adoption of the Constitution of the United States. The governments of Europe, acting through the monarch or the legislature, according to the distribution of powers under their respective constitutions, had and have as sovereign a power of issuing paper money as of stamping coin."

Although this carefully considered decision put at rest further judicial discussion of the question, it has not passed unquestioned by those who deny that the Constitution gives such a power to Congress. The opponents put their case on the ground that the question was directly

before the Convention and fully discussed there ; and that the Convention, with full knowledge of what it was doing, refused to grant the power to Congress. Consequently, they say, no such power can be implied. This contention is maintained by Mr. Bancroft in a pamphlet entitled "A Plea for the Constitution," published in 1886, the latest original work of his long life. He sums up the historical argument thus :—

"Madison, agreeing with the journal of the convention, records that the grant of power to emit bills of credit was refused by a majority of more than four to one. Eleven men took part in the discussion ; and every one of the eleven, whether he spoke for or against the grant of the power, Gouverneur Morris, Pierce Butler, James Madison, Nathaniel Gorham, George Mason, John F. Mercer, Oliver Ellsworth, Edmund Randolph, James Wilson, George Reed, and John Langdon, each and all, understood the vote to be a denial to the Legislature of the United States of the power to emit paper money. . . . The evidence is perfect ; no power to emit paper money was granted to the Legislature of the United States.

"By refusing to the United States the power of issuing bills of credit, the victory over paper money was but half complete. The same James Wilson who, twelve days before, with Oliver Ellsworth had taken a chief part in refusing to the United States the power to emit paper money, and the same Roger Sherman who, in 1752, had put forth all his energy to break up

LECTURE II.  
Legal tender  
decisions.



LECTURE II.  
Legal tender  
decisions.

paper money in Connecticut, jointly took the lead. The first draft of the Constitution had forbidden the States to emit bills of credit without the consent of the Legislature of the United States; on the 28th of August they jointly offered this motion: 'No State shall coin money, nor emit bills of credit, nor make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts,' making the prohibition absolute. Roger Sherman, animated by zeal for the welfare of the coming republic of countless millions, exclaims in the debate: 'This is the favorable crisis for crushing paper money.' His word was the will of the convention, and the States, by a majority of eight and a half against one and a half—that is, by more than five to one—forbade the State, under any circumstances, to emit bills of credit. This is the way in which our Constitution shut and barred the door against paper money, and crushed it.

"Nothing is wanting to the perfect strength of the truth that the Constitution put an end to paper money in all the United States, and in all the several States."

It is of little consequence, however, on which side the truth of this historical issue lies. The court of final resort has settled that this great power exists in Congress, not by special grant, but as a necessary adjunct of sovereignty; just as the Congress of the Confederation, and the Supreme Court held as to Prize Courts. This has been done after a fluctuation of opinion, running through a series of years. If judicial

determination of a question, over which the court has jurisdiction, is to have any weight, the point must be regarded as settled. Those who are opposed to the issue of such paper must endeavor to convert Congress to their way of thinking.

LECTURE II.  
Legal tender  
decisions.

The Supreme Court has often had occasion to consider the subject of these implied powers. Its decisions, as a whole, are substantially in harmony with each other. In the opinion of Chief Justice Marshall in *McCulloch v. Maryland*, it is said : —

“This Government is acknowledged by all to be one of enumerated powers. The principle that it can exercise only the powers granted to it, would seem too apparent to have required to be enforced by all those arguments, which its enlightened friends, while it was depending before the people, found it necessary to urge ; that principle is now universally admitted. But the question respecting the extent of the powers actually granted, is perpetually arising, and will probably continue to arise, so long as our system shall exist. In discussing these questions, the conflicting powers of the General and State governments must be brought into view, and the supremacy of their respective laws, when they are in opposition, must be settled.

“If any one proposition could command the universal assent of mankind, we might expect it would be this, that the Government of the Union, though limited in its powers, is supreme within its sphere of action. This would seem to result,

LECTURE II.  
Implied powers.

necessarily, from its nature. It is the government of all; its powers are delegated by all; it represents all, and acts for all. Though any one State may be willing to control its operations, no State is willing to allow others to control them. The nation, on those subjects on which it can act, must necessarily bind its component parts."

"We admit, as all must admit, that the powers of the Government are limited, and that its limits are not to be transcended. But we think the sound construction of the Constitution must allow to the national legislature that discretion, with respect to the means by which the powers it confers are to be carried into execution, which will enable that body to perform the high duties assigned to it in the manner most beneficial to the people. Let the end be legitimate, let it be within the scope of the Constitution, and all means which are appropriate, which are plainly adapted to that end, which are not prohibited, but consist with the letter and spirit of the Constitution, are constitutional."<sup>1</sup>

In *Hepburn v. Griswold*, Chief Justice Chase, referring to these words of Chief Justice Marshall, said: "The rule for determining whether a legislative enactment can be supported as an exercise of an implied power, was stated by Chief Justice Marshall, speaking for the whole court in the case of *McCulloch v. The State of Maryland*, and the statement then made has ever since been accepted as a correct exposition

---

<sup>1</sup> *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 318, 406, 421.

of the Constitution. His words were these : LECTURE II.  
 ‘Let the end be legitimate, let it be within the Implied powers.  
 scope of the Constitution, and all means which  
 are appropriate, which are plainly adapted to  
 that end, which are not prohibited, but consist  
 with the letter and spirit of the Constitution,  
 are constitutional.’ And, in another part of  
 the same opinion, the practical application of  
 this rule was thus illustrated. ‘Should Con-  
 gress, in the execution of its powers, adopt  
 measures which are prohibited by the Con-  
 stitution, or should Congress, under the pretext  
 of executing its powers, pass laws for the accom-  
 plishment of objects not intrusted to the Gov-  
 ernment, it would be the painful duty of this  
 tribunal, should a case requiring such a decision  
 come before it, to say that such an act was not  
 the law of the land. But where the law is not  
 prohibited, and is truly calculated to effect any  
 of the objects intrusted to the Government, to  
 undertake here to inquire the degree of its neces-  
 sity, would be to pass the line which circum-  
 scribes the judicial department, and tread on  
 legislative ground.’

“It must be taken, then, as finally settled, so  
 far as judicial decisions can settle anything,  
 that the words, ‘all laws necessary and proper  
 for carrying into execution,’ powers expressly  
 granted, or vested, have, in the Constitution, a  
 sense equivalent to that of the words, laws, not  
 absolutely necessary, indeed, but appropriate,  
 plainly adapted to constitutional and legitimate  
 ends ; laws not prohibited, but consistent with

LECTURE II.  
Implied powers.

the letter and spirit of the Constitution; laws really calculated to effect objects intrusted to the Government.”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 8 Wall. 603, 614, 615.

### III.

## THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH OF THE GOVERNMENT.<sup>1</sup>



CONSTITUTION, ARTICLE II, SECTION 1. The execu- LECTURE III  
tive Power shall be vested in a President of the United  
States of America. He shall hold his Office during  
the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice-  
President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as  
follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the  
Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors,  
equal to the whole Number of Senators and Repre-  
sentatives to which the State may be entitled in the  
Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Per-  
son holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the  
United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

The Electors shall meet in their respective states,  
and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President,  
one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of  
the same state with themselves; they shall name in  
their ballots the person voted for as President, and  
in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-Presi-  
dent, and they shall make distinct lists of all per-  
sons voted for as President, and of all persons voted  
for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for  
each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and  
transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the  
United States, directed to the President of the Senate;  
— The President of the Senate shall, in presence of  
the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the  
certificates and the votes shall then be counted;—

---

<sup>1</sup> This is Lecture II of the Lectures delivered before the classes  
of the University Law School.

## LECTURE III.

The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed ; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President ; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.<sup>1</sup>

The Congress may determine the Time of chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes ; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President ; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty-five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

In Case of the Removal of the President from

---

<sup>1</sup> This paragraph contains the text of the Twelfth Amendment, which was a substitution for the original clause in the Constitution, and came into force in 1804.

Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties, of the said Office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation, or Inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services a Compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation : —

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION 2. The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States when called into the actual Service of the United States ; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any Subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law : but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the



## LECTURE III.

Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

SECTION 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers ; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice-President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

## The Executive.

You are all familiar with the main principle of all written constitutions in the American form of government, that the powers of government are reposed in three distinct and separate bodies of magistracy. These are, the legislative or law making power, the executive or law enforcing power, and the judiciary, which construes the laws and administers the rights of citizens as among themselves, and as they relate to contests with the Government.

For the subject matter of the present lecture I have selected that part of the Constitution of the United States which is devoted to the executive branch. This is found in Article Two of that instrument. The first and second paragraphs of the first section are as follows :

“1. The Executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four

years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows : LECTURE III.  
The Executive.

“2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of Electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives, to which the State may be entitled in the Congress : but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit, under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.”

In 1804 the Twelfth Amendment, the text of which will be found at the head of this lecture, was adopted, and substituted in the place of the third paragraph of Article II.

The manner of electing the President of the United States was a subject of very grave consideration in the Convention which framed the Constitution, and several propositions which had apparently at one time the sanction of a majority of that body were changed and modified before the final adoption of the rule here stated. As originally adopted, and as it now exists, it was supposed that the body of electors interposed between the State legislatures and the presidential office would exercise a reasonable independence and fair judgment in the selection of the chief Executive of the National Government, and that thus the evil of a President selected by immediate popular suffrage on the one side, and the opposite evil of an election by the direct vote of the States in their legislative bodies on the other, would both be avoided. A very short experience, however, demonstrated that these

**LECTURE III.**  
**The Executive.**

electors, whether chosen by the legislatures of the States, as they were originally, or by the popular suffrage of each State, as they have come to be now, or by limited districts in each State, as was at one time the prevailing system, are always but the puppets selected under a moral restraint to vote for some particular person who represented the preferences of the appointing power, whether that was the legislature, or the more popular suffrage by which the legislature itself was elected. So that it has come to pass that this curious machinery is only a mode of casting the vote, to which a State is entitled in the election of President, in favor of that candidate who is the favorite of the majority of the people, entitled to vote for the more popular branch of the State legislature in each State.

This system has given rise on more than one occasion to serious difficulties in ascertaining who has been really elected President, and seems, if it ever had any useful purpose, to have long become an obstruction and a stumbling-block in the way of some sounder and wiser system. A change has often been talked of and canvassed in Congress and in the public journals, but the difficulty of agreeing on any other system, which Congress may present as an amendment to the Constitution, has thus far led to the failure of all attempts to make such change.

I do not propose to take up any more of your time by a discussion of the manner of electing the President.

The experience of nearly a hundred years of government under this Constitution has produced in the minds of many thinking men and able statesmen a belief that the term of four years prescribed for the office of President is too short. The great disturbance of public tranquillity produced by the recurring election of a President once in four years, the enormous patronage which belongs to the presidential office, stimulating all the activities, and many of the most evil passions, of the human heart, and the fact that this struggle, owing to the shortness of the period between one election and another, is always going on more or less by way of preparation for that event, leaving the public mind at no time open to that calmness which is necessary to a just consideration and appreciation of the measures of government policy which ought to influence their votes, are strong arguments for this belief. As we shall see hereafter, it is the duty of the President to suggest to the legislative body and recommend for their consideration measures of public policy which must more or less affect the prosperity and happiness of the entire people. If he were assured, by the length of the period for which he would hold the office, of a sufficient time in which his measures, if enacted, could be fairly judged on their merits, or his recommendations, whether enacted or not, could have the just estimation of the public sentiment, that independence and faithful expression of his convictions, which can only make such recommendations useful, would have

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.

**LECTURE III.**  
**The Executive.**

a fair support in these considerations; while, if he be desirous of a re-election, as has proved to be almost universal, or if having no desire for re-election he has that reasonable wish to retire with a favorable estimate of his conduct, which is natural to all men, he would be much influenced by these considerations to recommend that which was policy rather than that which was wise, and to frame his conduct in accordance with his view of what the public would say at the time, rather than what might be their estimate, after a long and calm consideration.

In opposition to these views it has been urged that a President elected for a long period would, by the use of the patronage at his disposal, by the arts of the politician and the great influence which he would be enabled to exert over the popular voice by the exercise of power for a lengthened period, always be able to secure a re-election; and it would be in the end equivalent to holding the office for life. Probably some period longer than four years and shorter than ten would be found to remove the principal objections to the present short term without incurring the dangers incident to a longer one.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> It was at first proposed to make the term of office of the Executive seven years, and it so stood in the first draft of the Constitution. This was, however, altered upon the report of a committee by a vote of ten States against one fixing the period at four years, which was finally adopted.

It was also, at one time, proposed to fix the term of the Executive during good behavior, and this was supported by Madison, Jay, and Hamilton, among others, although the latter afterward changed his views somewhat. See 2 Story, Constitution, sec. 1436 (4th ed.), 281 and note.

The qualifications which make a person eligible to the office of President are found in paragraph four of the first section of this article, which reads as follows:—

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Qualifications.

“No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.”

In regard to this nothing more need be said on this occasion.

In order to secure his freedom of action and independence of the legislative branch of the Government, paragraph six provides for his compensation or salary in the following language:

“The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.”

This provision, in some respects similar to Salary.

Jefferson, in 1813 wrote as follows: “I am for responsibilities at short periods, seeing neither reason nor safety in making public functionaries independent of the nation for life, or even for a long term of years. On this principle I prefer the Presidential term of four years, to that of seven years, which I myself had at first suggested, annexing to it, however, ineligibility forever after; and I wish it were now annexed to the second quadrennial election of President.” 6 Jefferson's Works, 213.

**LECTURE III.**  
**The Executive.**  
**Salary.**

that in regard to the judges, is a wise one. They exempt the two other branches of the Government, the executive and the judicial, from an undue control by the legislative branch, which has the power of the administration of the finances of the Government, the appropriation of money to pay for its expenses, and the regulation of the salaries of all officers. It thus secures, so far as a fixed compensation can do it, the independence of these two other departments.<sup>1</sup>

**Powers of the**  
**President.**

In the second and third sections of this article we find the definition of the powers, duties, and obligations of the President of the United States. They read as follows: —

“SECTION 2. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion,

---

<sup>1</sup> The difference between the provision, in this regard, to the President and that in regard to the judges of the United States courts is this: the salary of a judge cannot be diminished during the continuance of his office; that of the President can be neither increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected. This provision is construed as applicable only to the term in which the law is enacted making the increase. On the 3d of March, 1873, Congress, by the Legislative, Executive, and Judicial Appropriation Act, passed that day, 17 Stat. 485, c. 226, provided for a general increase of salaries, including the salaries of the President and the Justices of the Supreme Court. President Grant approved the bill. His first term of office expired the next day, and he at once entered upon his second term. On the 20th of January, 1874, Congress repealed so much of this act “as provide for the increase of the compensation of public officers and employes, whether members of Congress, delegates, or others, except the President of the United States and the Justices of the Supreme Court.”

in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Powers of the  
President.

“He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

“The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

“SECTION 3. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he



LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Powers of the  
President.

shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed and shall commission all of the officers of the United States."

Appointments to  
office.

A critical examination of the powers thus conferred on the President would hardly justify the jealousy and dread which many of the wisest statesmen of the period of the formation of the Constitution entertained on that subject. With the exception that he shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and of the militia of the several States when called into the actual service of the United States,<sup>1</sup> and the power of appointment to office, there is little to justify such fear; and when we consider that Congress alone can declare war, and thus put the commander-in-chief in a position for any dangerous use of the military arm of the Government, that the co-operation of the Senate is necessary to the appointment of all the other officers of the army and navy below the President, that the consent of that body is essential to the confirmation of all the civil officers which the President may nominate or appoint, and that the appointment of the largest body of these officers may, by an act of Congress, be taken away from the President and vested in the courts of law or

---

<sup>1</sup> The question was raised during the War of 1812 whether the right to command the militia could be delegated by the President when they were called into the public service. President Washington, however, called out the militia during the Pennsylvania insurrection of 1794, and they acted under the orders of the governor of Virginia, to whom the chief command was given during his absence. Rawle on the Constitution, 193.

heads of departments, there would seem to be but little reason to dread an undue exercise of the grant of power to the President, under this provision of the Constitution.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Appointments to office.

The experience of a century of the operations of the Government has shown that, while the growth of the country in territory, in population, in wealth, and in power has added largely to the patronage of the Executive in the way of appointments to office and to the importance of those offices, and while the frequent accession of successful and popular military chiefs to the Presidency, some of whom were men of arbitrary disposition, and well inclined to the exercise of all the power which the Constitution gave them, and who have shown in every instance a disposition for a continuance in power by seeking or accepting a re-election, there has never been the slightest danger to the liberties of the country, or of an overthrow of the existing institutions, or of any material infraction of the general principles of constitutional government from this quarter. In fact, of all the three branches of the constitutional government of the United States, the Executive has been the most crippled, confined, and limited in its practical use, during the period mentioned of the power really conferred on it.

The power of appointment to office, which was originally considered the great source of danger, has, by a practice not to be commended, and at variance with the letter and spirit of the Constitution, been largely controlled in the hands of the President by the two branches of the

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Appointments to  
office.

Legislature. The exercise of this restraint by the Senate, in its right to refuse its consent to nominations made to it by the President, is not to be complained of. It is a power which the Constitution reposes in that body and which though often used with a disposition to conform to the wishes of individual members of the Senate (called "the courtesy of the Senate"), rather than looking to the public good and the fitness of the nominee, has, perhaps, on the whole been exercised with prudence and forbearance. But the disposition of the members of the House of Representatives, in which senators have often joined, to impose their individual wishes upon the President as entitled to paramount weight in his selection for appointments to office, stands on no such favorable foundation, and the pressure from this source, which has unfortunately been submitted to by successive Presidents, has almost passed into an informal rule of action, — a rule which has encroached upon the powers clearly committed by the Constitution to the President, and which, when submitted to, tends to destroy the exercise of that sound judgment and freedom of choice which that instrument, for wise purposes, intended to repose in the President. Indeed, if there is any wisdom in the fundamental proposition of constitutional law, that the functions of the executive, legislative, and judicial bodies should be kept separate, that wisdom is most manifest in the provision which is intended to repose exclusively in the President the power of appointment

to office, except so far as the consent of the Senate may be required. The interference of the more popular branch of the legislative body in this function, and the great influence which it has acquired, and which the members use as a means of political influence to secure their own re-election, is a pernicious practice and at war with the manifest purpose of the Constitution.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Appointments to office.

Perhaps the third clause of the second section, in regard to the power of the President to fill vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, has given rise in recent years to more controversy than any other, and is the one as to which the executive power has been more frequently charged with a purpose to exceed its just limits than any other.<sup>1</sup> The question of the right of removal from office, and the conditions under which it may be exercised by the President alone, has been a much controverted matter from the beginning of the Government to the present time; and when the legislative body, and especially the Senate, have been of the opposite party in politics to the President, it has given rise to considerable controversy. It may be considered as settled, however, by the practice of the Government, and by a fair construction of the Constitution, that the President has, especially in the recess of the Senate, the right to remove any officer whose appointment is dependent upon the Executive. But since this provision of the Constitution requires that the

Power to fill  
vacancies during  
recess of Senate.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Note at the end of this Lecture.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Power to fill  
vacancies during  
recess of Senate.

commissions granted by the President in the recess of the Senate shall expire at the end of the next session, and the implication is still stronger that appointments made while the Senate is in session must be then submitted to it for its consent, there would seem to be no question that the President should, when these commissions are granted during its recess, notify the Senate of the removal which he has made, and of the appointment by which he has filled the office. And there can be as little doubt that, unless the Senate consents to the new appointment, or to some other new appointment, during its session next succeeding the removal, this action of the Senate must be construed as a disapproval by that body of the removal of the officer, or of the person who has been nominated to fill the place.

The tenure of  
office law.

In the unfortunate event of the President and the Senate being unable to agree upon any other person than the original incumbent to fill the vacancy, before the end of the session of the Senate, it has been insisted by many statesmen, and particularly by members of the Senate, that this operates as a restoration of the officer removed to the place which he held. The tenure of office law, passed by the Congress of the United States over the veto of President Johnson, is framed upon this principle. So far at least was this principle acted on, that the President could not, after the adjournment of the Senate, to whom such nomination had been or should have been made, fill the office with any

other person ; but, in the language of that act, "such office shall remain in abeyance, without any salary, fees, or emoluments attached thereto, until the same shall be filled by appointment by and with the advice and consent of the Senate."

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
The tenure of  
office law.

This statute has not been received with entire satisfaction by considerate statesmen and constitutional lawyers. It was made in the heat of ill-feeling, as a curb upon President Johnson, during his long and bitter controversy with both branches of Congress, which ultimately led to the preferring of articles of impeachment against him by the House of Representatives, and to a protracted trial upon the same.

This perhaps is not the time nor the place to express my opinion upon the nature of that controversy : but I think it clear that, while the right of removal remains in the President, he can put no one in the place thus made vacant for a longer period than the end of the next succeeding session of the Senate ; and that, whether by failure to nominate some person to fill the place during that session of the Senate, or by the refusal of the Senate to give its assent to such nomination, the office is, at the end of that session, vacant ; and that an effort of the President to keep in office the man of his choice by reappointment under such circumstances is, at least in spirit, a violation of the Constitution. The functions of the President and of the Senate in relation to appointments to office are so clearly stated in the Constitution that it would not seem to be necessary that any question

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
The tenure of  
office law.

should arise about it. The initiative is with the President, the right to nominate and refer that nomination to the Senate is with him, and the Senate can have no right to dictate to him whom he shall nominate. Their right is one of approval or disapproval. When they have exercised that right, the President has as little authority to make other efforts to impose the same nominee upon the Senate, or to continue him in office, as that body would have to interfere with the President's choice among all eligible persons to such office. Hence any attempt, by giving the commission to the same person who had been rejected by the Senate, after the expiration of its session, or to renominate the same person to the Senate after its rejection during the same session, is equally opposed to the spirit, if not to the letter of the Constitution, and to the just right of either the President or the Senate to exercise the functions and powers which the Constitution confers upon either of them.

Commander-in-  
chief.

The power of the President as commander-in-chief of the army and navy has in practice never been exercised by the President's taking immediate command of the army or the navy during the existence of actual hostilities; so that, in that sense, no President has ever been commander-in-chief when the army immediately confronted an enemy. Such authority as the President has exercised under this constitutional provision has been almost exclusively through the Secretary of War and the Secretary of the Navy, offices created among others by an act of the first ses-

sion of the Congress, which distributed the exercise of the executive functions among several departments, at the head of each of which was placed a minister, called usually a "Secretary." And so strong and prominent to the public eye has been the control of these secretaries in the operations of the army and navy, in the few wars of an important character which we have had during the existence of the government, that the influence of the President in the actual movements of the army and navy has been hardly perceptible. Whether in case a war should occur during a period when the incumbent of the executive office is a man who has had experience in the command of armies, and with a good military reputation, it would be judicious for him to place himself at the head of the army, or to conduct its campaigns, or to be present and directing in battle, or whether public sentiment would tolerate such a course of action, is extremely doubtful.

In the recent Civil War, which, if we look to the number of men engaged in it, or to the number destroyed by it, or to the magnitude of the resources brought to bear in its prosecution on both sides, or to the destructive power of armaments and weapons, or the advanced skill of the military art, is perhaps the greatest war that history has to describe, the Secretary of War looms up as a figure whose importance as regards the successful issue of that war is hardly exceeded, if it be equalled, by any person holding any office or command in the armies of the

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Heads of departments.



LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Heads of departments.

United States. Indeed, the name of Edwin M. Stanton, who, though a civilian and until the period of the war a private citizen, will go down to posterity as the great war minister of the greatest war in the world's history.

In all this, however, the secretaries of the War Department, as also the heads of all the other departments, are but executive ministers and agents, discharging the functions of the executive office, under the control and with the consent of the President. How far President Lincoln actually interposed his own will and his own judgment in the conduct of this war will perhaps never be fully known, though it is well understood that on many important occasions, and in great emergencies, he enforced his judgment in many ways; mainly, however, in displacing commanders of large armies and appointing others, until success established his own confidence and the confidence of the public in a few great military leaders.

Pardons.

One of the powers intrusted to the President by this second section is that of granting reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment. This useful power could nowhere be more appropriately lodged than with the chief executive officer of the Government. It is one which does not affect the public generally, and by reason of the limited criminal jurisdiction of the Government of the United States does not call for much comment of a public character. It is derived from the history of our British ances-

tors; and, in the absence of any more particular definition of it than is found in this short sentence of the Constitution, so far as it has become the subject of public discussion or of judicial decision, reliance has been had mainly upon the nature and character of the power as exercised by the Crown of Great Britain. The power, therefore, in this general sense is almost unlimited; is vested exclusively in the President; and is not subject to the interference of Congress.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Pardons.

It has been officially decided that it may be exercised as well before the trial as after conviction.<sup>2</sup> It also includes the power to commute sentences.<sup>3</sup> It may be granted upon conditions.<sup>4</sup> This grant of power carries with it the power to release from fines, penalties, and forfeitures which accrue from the offence.<sup>5</sup>

An act of Congress which attempted to destroy the effect of a pardon by the President of persons engaged in the rebellion, who were claimants in the courts of the United States, under the Captured and Abandoned Property Act, was held by the Supreme Court to be unconstitutional.<sup>6</sup> The original act, which authorized per-

---

<sup>1</sup> A pardon reaches both the punishment prescribed for the offence and the guilt of the offender; and when the pardon is full it releases the punishment and blots out of existence the guilt, so that in the eye of the law the offender is as innocent as if he had never committed the offence. *Ex parte Garland*, 4 Wall. 333, 380.

<sup>2</sup> 6 Opinions Attorneys General, 20.

<sup>3</sup> *Ex parte William Wells*, 18 How. 307.

<sup>4</sup> *United States v. Wilson*, 7 Pet. 150, 161.

<sup>5</sup> *Osborn v. United States*, 91 U. S. 474.

<sup>6</sup> *United States v. Klein*, 13 Wall. 128.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Pardons.

sons whose property had been seized as captured and abandoned during the war, and sold, and the proceeds paid into the treasury, to make a claim for it in the Court of Claims and recover the money, required that proof should be made that the claimant had been loyal to the Government during the war. The Supreme Court had in a case previous to this declared that the pardon of the President dispensed with the necessity of this proof of loyalty. To counteract the effect of this decision Congress, on the 12th of July, 1870,<sup>1</sup> enacted that such proof of loyalty was necessary to the recovery in the Court of Claims, irrespective of the effect of any executive proclamation, pardon, amnesty, or other act of condonation or oblivion. The Supreme Court held that this statute was designed to destroy the effect which the Constitution of the United States intended to give to a pardon by the President, and thus infringed the constitutional power of the Executive. The court uses the following language:—

“Now it is clear that the Legislature cannot change the effect of such a pardon any more than the Executive can change a law. Yet this is attempted by the provision under consideration. The court is required to receive special pardons as evidence of guilt and to treat them as null and void. It is required to disregard pardons granted by proclamation on condition, though the condition has been fulfilled, and to deny them their legal effect. This certainly

---

<sup>1</sup> 16 Stat. 235, c. 251.

impairs the executive authority and directs the court to be instrumental to that end."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Pardons.

The wisdom of exempting cases of impeachment from this pardoning power in the hands of the President will be very obvious when we come to consider that the main object of the impeachment is to remove the person from office; and that this right of removal would exist in the President without the necessity of impeachment; and that, in all cases, the officer impeached, except it be the President himself, is one who, if he belong to the executive branch of the government, is exercising power under the control of the President, and whom the President may for many reasons be willing to protect from punishment by his pardon.

The power of the President to make treaties, in which the concurrence of two-thirds of the senators present when the treaty is voted on shall be necessary, is one which is essentially of an executive character, and which can only be wisely executed under the control of the executive head of the Government. The requirement of two-thirds of the Senate for the final ratification of such treaty made by the President, or his ministers, shows the jealousy of the influence of foreign nations in our domestic policy which was so prevalent at the time the Constitution was adopted. This was evidenced in other respects; as in the forbidding of the acceptance of titles

Power to make  
treaties.

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 *United States v. Klein*, 13 Wall. 128, 148. This general doctrine is subject to some limitations and restrictions. See Note at the end of this Lecture.

**LECTURE III.**  
**The Executive.**  
**Power to make**  
**treaties.**

of nobility by any officer of the Federal Government, or of any presents. This jealousy, which at the time of the formation of the Constitution, in the weakness of our Government, seems justifiable, has perhaps long passed away since the Government has grown so wealthy and powerful, and its offices so valuable; and it is impossible to conceive now of an officer of the Government being in any way bribed or influenced by considerations of honor or profit, coming from other nations, to disregard the interests of his own Government by favoring the conflicting interests of any foreign government.

A question of some interest has arisen in regard to the power of the President and the Senate to make a treaty with a foreign nation which shall be, according to the declaration of the Constitution, the supreme law of the land, in cases to which, by other provisions of the Constitution, it would seem that the concurrence of the House of Representatives is essential to the making of a valid law. This question, which has occasionally vexed the legislative bodies of both Houses of Congress from the beginning of the Government, but in regard to which any serious difficulty has been averted by the wisdom and forbearance of the House of Representatives, is too large to be entered upon on this occasion, and is perhaps too complex to justify your serious consideration of it at this time.<sup>1</sup>

Duty to communi-  
 cate information  
 to Congress.

The duty of the President under section three, to give to Congress information of the State of

---

<sup>1</sup> See Note at the end of this Lecture.

the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient, is one of very great importance. In the early history of the Government this duty was generally performed by a personal interview between the Executive and the two Houses of Congress, assembled to listen to him; but since Mr. Jefferson's time, whose skill and facility in composition induced him to discharge this function by written messages to Congress, this course has been invariably followed. Very few public events are looked to with more interest by the people at large, as well as all those engaged in the administration of the Government, than the annual message which the President sends to Congress at the beginning of each session. These messages are generally considered as defining the policy of the Executive in regard to the administration of public affairs falling within this branch of the Government, as also with regard to such legislation as he thinks the good of the country requires at the hands of Congress. These messages have had a varying degree of power in the influence which they have exerted upon the legislation of Congress. In years past the recommendations of the President were held to represent the opinions of the political party by whom he was elected, and of which he was the recognized leader, and to have almost a controlling influence over the members of that party in the two branches of the Legislature. So that, in those times, a recommendation of the President in regard to a matter of

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Duty to communicate information to Congress.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Duty to communi-  
cate information  
to Congress.

political policy, when the two Houses of Congress were in accord with him in party politics, was almost omnipotent. In more recent years the frequent recurrence of the fact that a majority of the Senate might be found on one side of such party divisions, and of the House of Representatives on the other, has tended very much to diminish the influence of such Presidential recommendations, as well as the constantly recurring fact that, in regard to such measures the President does not represent in all instances the entire or unanimous opinion of his own party, in which in one House or the other there may be divisions on such subjects.

Power to call  
extra sessions of  
Congress.

The power of the President to convene both Houses, or either of them, on extraordinary occasions, has been rarely exercised, and certainly has not been abused during the history of the Government. The principal exercise of this power has been in proclamations by which the President has called the Senate together at the close of a session of Congress, for the purpose of considering appointments to office, and sometimes treaties.

As to the general provisions that he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, any comment which would be useful would extend this lecture beyond the limit which necessity imposes.

The only other provision of this Second Article of the Constitution to which I deem it necessary to call your attention, is found in section four, which declares : —

“The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office, on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.”

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Impeachment.

The general principles on which an impeachment of any officer of the Government may be conducted is prescribed by other provisions of the Constitution. The substance of them is that the House of Representatives, acting in the character of a grand inquest of the nation, may frame and prefer articles of impeachment, constituting the charges on which he shall be tried before the Senate. These articles are delivered to the Senate, which, by the other provisions of the Constitution, shall make arrangements for the trial. At the trial, by an exceptional provision of the Constitution in regard to the President when he is impeached, the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States shall preside; which is not required or permitted in the impeachment of any other officer of the Government. The conviction of the party tried in any such impeachment can only be declared by a vote of two-thirds of the senators, and judgment only extends to removal from office, and a disqualification of the person convicted from holding any other office of honor or profit under the Government of the United States.

In the history of the Government under the Constitution, but a single effort to impeach a President has ever been made. The case of President Johnson, against whom the House



**LECTURE III.**  
**The Executive.**  
**Impeachment.**

preferred articles of impeachment, was tried in 1868, and the prosecution failed of conviction on any of the specifications charged against him. Whatever may have been the justice of the charges made against President Johnson, looking back as we now do with much of the asperity of the time at which it took place removed, it may safely be said that the failure to convict him was mainly to be attributed to the belief in the minds of many senators that the charges, if true, were not of a character for which impeachment is provided in the Constitution, and not from a want of belief in the truth of some of those charges. It may also be said that, in view of the invitation which a successful result in that effort to convict and remove him would have held out in future times to exasperated majorities in the legislative body, opposed to the President and his manner of exercising the functions with which he is charged by the Constitution, to get rid of a President against whom such personal hostility existed, the country is fortunate in the fact that the great impeachment failed. A certain degree of security in the stability of his power for the short period for which he is elected is absolutely essential to the successful and conscientious discharge of executive duties by the President; and the easy exercise of the power of impeachment and a frequent recurrence to it might impress upon him, if the causes of impeachment were not of the profoundest gravity, a hesitation and a want of courage in the conscientious discharge of his duties which

would be in many cases disastrous to the public service.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Impeachment.  
Veto power.

There remains to be considered a very important duty imposed upon the President by the Constitution, by which in effect he becomes a part of the legislative power of the nation. This is to be found in paragraph two, of section seven of the first Article, and is commonly called the veto power. It reads as follows : —

“Every bill, which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States ; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House, respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress, by their adjourn-

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Veto power.

ment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law." <sup>1</sup>

Of the wisdom of this part of the Constitution, it is not my purpose to speak. Upon each occasion of its exercise the anger of those who have supported the measure which the President disapproves has been aroused, and ill-natured and inconsiderate remarks upon such occasions would lead to the belief that this provision is very generally disliked; but after all, the infrequency of its exercise, and the wisdom with which it has generally been done, has led to its approval by wise and considerate men not influenced by passion, and its tolerance by the public has grown with the increasing years of the existence of the Government.

In fact, there are those who are anxious for an amendment to the Constitution by which the President may be permitted to exercise this veto power, in regard to specific items or parts of a bill presented to him without being compelled to approve or reject the bill as a whole, while there are objectionable parts in it which could be separated and disapproved by him.<sup>2</sup> Such is the constitution of the State of New York in regard to the power of the governor; and other States have recently adopted the same principle.

It has been contended that the only proper occasion for the President to deny his approval by a message to Congress, refusing to sign a bill, is, when the bill is not in his judgment

---

<sup>1</sup> See Note at the end of this Lecture.

<sup>2</sup> *Ib.*

within the constitutional power of the Legislature. In such case it has been thought to be his duty to interpose his objection, and the doctrine has been advanced with much earnestness, that on no other account is he justified in setting up his opposition to the more popular legislative branch of the Government.

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Veto power.

This view, however, has not been accepted in modern times, and Presidents within the last thirty or forty years have apparently exercised the veto power with as much freedom in regard to questions of mere expediency and wisdom of legislation, as of constitutional invalidity. Undoubtedly there is a just medium on this subject, and it is probable that a sound view would be that the occasion which requires or justifies the President in returning without his approval a bill passed by both Houses of Congress, with his objections thereto, should be of a grave and serious character, and the measure itself one of much public importance. There remains to the President, in all cases, the alternative of declining to sign, and failing to veto a bill, and thus permitting it by the lapse of ten days, without any action on his part, to become a law of the land upon the sole responsibility of its passage by the Senate and House of Representatives. This has been done occasionally by Presidents, and it is rather curious that of the many bills presented to the Executive for his approval, of the propriety of which he must have serious doubts and in regard to which he might be unwilling to

LECTURE III.  
The Executive.  
Veto power.

interpose this power reposed in him alone, he has so seldom resorted to the expedient of inaction, leaving the responsibility with the legislative branch proper of the Government.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE III.

---

### 1. *The Appointing Power.*

The difficulty in regard to appointments which Judge Miller suggests, began in the very beginning of the new government. At an early day in his first term Washington wrote to a friend who had solicited an office for another: "From the moment when the necessity had become more apparent, and, as it were, inevitable, I anticipated, with a heart full of distress, the ten thousand embarrassments, perplexities, and troubles, to which I must again be exposed in the evening of a life already nearly consumed in public cares. Among all these anxieties, I will not conceal from you, I anticipated none greater than those which were likely to be produced by applications for appointments to the different offices which would be created under the new government. Nor will I conceal that my apprehensions have already been but too well justified. Scarcely a day passes in which applications of one kind or another do not arise; insomuch that, had I not early adopted some general principles, I should before this time have been wholly occupied in this business. As it is, I have found the number of answers

LECTURE III.  
Appointing  
power.

LECTURE III.  
Appointing  
power.

which I have been necessitated to give in my own hand, an almost insupportable burden to me.<sup>1</sup>"

2. *Appointments to Vacancies during the Recess.*

Vacancies during  
the recess.

A question has been made as to the power of the President to fill an office during the recess of Congress, which was created by the legislative body at its session immediately before that recess. In practice this has been frequently done; and the better opinion would seem to be that it has been rightfully done.

3. *Heads of Executive Departments.*

Heads of Execu-  
tive Departments.

"There can be no doubt that the President, in the exercise of his executive power under the Constitution, may act through the head of the appropriate executive department. The heads of departments are his assistants in the performance of his executive duties, and their official acts, promulgated in the regular course of business, are presumptively his acts. That has been many times decided by this court."<sup>2</sup>

But when the action required of the President is judicial in character, not administrative, as when the duty is imposed upon him of reviewing the proceedings of Courts Martial, he must himself consider the proceedings laid before him, and decide personally whether they ought to be carried into effect.<sup>3</sup> But this judgment, although

<sup>1</sup> Sparks's Life of Washington, 454.

<sup>2</sup> *Runkle v. United States*, 122 U. S. 543, 557.

<sup>3</sup> *Ib.*

his personal act in fact, and not presumptively, need not be attested by his sign manual, in order to be effective.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE III.  
Heads of Executive Departments.

#### 4. *Pardons.*

In *Hart v. United States* the effect of a pardon on the right to sue in the Court of Claims was again before the court. Hart, who was a resident in Texas, joined the insurgents in April, 1861, "and then and afterwards furnished them with supplies, money, and means of transportation to carry on their invasion and campaign into New Mexico. On the 3d of November, 1865, the President granted to him a full pardon and amnesty for all offences committed by him, arising from participation, direct or implied, in the rebellion. Hart claimed certain sums as due to him for flour, corn, and forage delivered to the United States before April 13, 1861, and certain sums for flour, corn, and forage delivered after that date."

"The Court of Claims applied to those demands of the claimant which accrued before April 13, 1861, the provisions of joint resolution No. 46, approved March 2, 1867, 14 Stat. 571, now embodied in section 3480 of the Revised Statutes, forbidding the payment of claims against the United States, 'which accrued or existed prior to the thirteenth day of April, A.D. eighteen hundred and sixty-one, in favor of any person who promoted, encouraged, or in any

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Page*, 137 U. S. 673, 678, by Chief Justice Fuller.



LECTURE III.  
Pardons.

manner sustained the late rebellion,' etc., and further providing that no pardon should 'authorize the payment of such account, claim, or demand, until this resolution is modified or repealed.'

"It was urged before the Court of Claims that the pardon and amnesty granted by the President to Hart on the 3d of November, 1865, 'for all offences committed by him arising from participation, direct or implied, in the rebellion,' operated to set aside the provisions of the joint resolution as to him and his claims. The court held otherwise. Its view was that Hart was guilty of numerous acts for which he could, on conviction, have been punished in his person and his property, and that the pardon freed him from liability for those offences; that his disability to receive from the United States a debt due to him was not a consequence attached to or arising out of any such offence; that it grew out of the fact, stated in the joint resolution, that he had been a public enemy; that every disability which a state of war imposed upon him was removed by the cessation of the war; that it needed no pardon to effect that result; that, as the pardon conferred upon him no new right, so the joint resolution did not take from him anything which the pardon had conferred; that it did not, like the legislation considered in *United States v. Klein*, 13 Wall. 128, attempt to prescribe to the judiciary the effect to be given to a pardon, in regard to a matter to which the pardon extended, but merely forbade certain debts to be paid, un-

til Congress should otherwise order; and that a creditor of the United States can only be paid in accordance with the provision of the Constitution (Art. I, sec. 9, subd. 7), which declares that 'no money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law.' . . . We are of opinion that the judgment of the Court of Claims was right."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE III.  
Pardons.

#### 5. *Treaties providing for payment of moneys.*

Whether a treaty, providing for the payment of money by the United States, makes it obligatory upon Congress to pass the necessary appropriation, is a question that has been more than once mooted.

Treaties providing for payment of moneys.

When the treaty of 1794 with Great Britain, known as Jay's Treaty, was sent to the House by President Washington, that body, on the motion of Mr. Edward Livingston, asked the President to transmit to it a copy of the instructions to Mr. Jay, and of the correspondence and documents relating to the treaty. This motion was resisted by the Federalists, on the ground that the treaty had become the supreme law, and that the House had no jurisdiction over a question which had been settled elsewhere under the Constitution. Notwithstanding the opposition the resolution was adopted. In reply the President said: "Having been a member of the General Convention, and knowing the principles upon which the Constitution was formed, I have

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hart v. United States*, 118 U. S. 62, 64, 65, 66.

**LECTURE III.**  
**Treaties providing for payment of moneys.**

ever entertained but one opinion on this subject, and from the first establishment of this Government to this moment, my conduct has exemplified that opinion; that the power of making treaties is exclusively vested in the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and that every treaty so made and promulgated thenceforward becomes the law of the land. . . . As, therefore, it is perfectly clear to my understanding that the assent of the House of Representatives is not necessary to the validity of a treaty; as the treaty with Great Britain exhibits in itself all the objects requiring legislative provision, and on these the papers called for can throw no light, and as it is essential to the due administration of the Government that the boundaries fixed by the Constitution between the different departments should be preserved — a just regard to the Constitution and to the duty of my office, under all the circumstances of this case, forbid a compliance with your request.”<sup>1</sup>

The House replied to this by resolving that when it made application to the Executive for information it was not necessary “that the purpose for which such information may be wanted, or to which the same may be applied, should be stated in the application.”<sup>2</sup> This may have been the work of Madison, who wrote Jefferson, “The absolute refusal was as unexpected as the tone

---

<sup>1</sup> Annals 1st Session, 4th Congress, 761, 762.

<sup>2</sup> Annals 1st Session, 4th Congress, 771, 772.

and tenor of the message are improper and indelicate.”<sup>1</sup> After a long and animated debate, the House resolved, by a vote of 51 to 48, that legislation ought to be had for carrying the treaty into effect.<sup>2</sup>

LECTURE III.  
Treaties providing for payment of moneys.

Similar questions came up in 1803, when Mr. Jefferson asked appropriations for carrying out the treaty for the purchase of Louisiana. Congress granted the money.<sup>3</sup>

In 1816 the Senate passed an act to carry into effect the commercial convention of 1815, with Great Britain. The substance of this act was that so much of any existing act as might be contrary to the provisions of the convention should be deemed and taken to be of no effect. The House passed an act, reënacting, *seriatim*, the provisions of the treaty. Each body refused to recede. The Senate maintained that, as the treaty was operative of itself, the act should be declaratory only. The House contended that legislation was necessary. A committee of conference was appointed, Rufus King being chairman on the part of the Senate and John Forsyth on the part of the House. The principle of the settlement was thus stated to the House by Forsyth: “Your committee understood the committee of the Senate to admit the principle contended for by the House, that whilst some treaties might not require, others may require legislative provision to carry them into effect; that the decision of the question how far such

<sup>1</sup> Madison to Jefferson, April 4, 1796. <sup>2</sup> Madison's Writings, 89.

<sup>3</sup> Annals 1st Session, 4th Congress, 1291.

<sup>4</sup> 2 Wharton's Int. Dig. 19.

LECTURE III.  
Treaties provid-  
ing for payment  
of moneys.

provision was necessary must be founded upon the peculiar character of the treaty itself."<sup>1</sup> The bill agreed upon was enacted.<sup>2</sup>

In 1843 a commercial treaty was concluded with the German States containing provisions in regard to rates of duties. The Senate Committee on Foreign Relations made an adverse report on the ground of the "want of constitutional competency" to make it; and the Senate laid the subject indefinitely on the table. Mr. Calhoun, then Secretary of State, said: "If this be a true view of the treaty-making power, it may be truly said that its exercise has been one continual series of habitual and uninterrupted infringements of the Constitution. From the beginning, and throughout the whole existence of the Federal Government, it has been exercised constantly on commerce, navigation, and other delegated powers."<sup>3</sup>

The subject was again before Congress when the bill making appropriations for the purchase of Alaska was under consideration. It was elaborately discussed in the House. In the end that body accepted a report from a conference committee containing a resolution with a preamble reciting that "the stipulations of the treaty cannot be carried into full force and effect, except by legislation to which the consent of both Houses is necessary."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Introductory note, *Treaties and Convention of the United States with other powers*, orig. ed. p. 944.

<sup>2</sup> 3 Stat. 255, c. 22.

<sup>3</sup> 2 Wharton's Int. Dig. 20, 21.

<sup>4</sup> Introductory note, *Treaties and Conventions*, orig. ed. p. 944. See also 2 Wharton's Int. Dig. 21.

6. *Opinions by Heads of Departments.*

Such opinions have been required in two notable instances.

LECTURE III.  
Opinions by heads  
of departments.

In April, 1793, President Washington sent a circular letter to each member of his cabinet stating that "the posture of affairs in Europe, particularly between France and Great Britain, places the United States in a delicate situation, and requires much consideration as to the measures which it will be proper for them to observe in the war between those powers." He asked to have the questions considered preparatory to a meeting the next day, when he should expect to receive "the result of their reflections."<sup>1</sup> Thirteen questions were enclosed<sup>2</sup> relating to the issue of a proclamation of neutrality, to the then relations between France and the United States, and to the binding force of treaties with France concluded during the War of the Revolution.

Mr. Jefferson has left an account of the meeting of the cabinet in which these questions were answered *seriatim* and individually.<sup>3</sup> "It was determined by all, on the first question, that a proclamation shall issue, forbidding our citizens to take part in any hostilities on the seas, with or against any of the belligerent powers; and warning them against carrying to any such powers any of those articles deemed contraband, according to the modern usage of nations; and

---

<sup>1</sup> 10 Sparks' Washington, 337.

<sup>2</sup> 10 Sparks' Washington, 533.

<sup>3</sup> 9 Jefferson's Works, 142.

LECTURE III.  
Opinions by heads  
of departments.

enjoining them from all acts and proceedings inconsistent with the duties of a friendly nation towards those at war. On the second question, 'Shall a minister from the Republic of France be received?' it was unanimously resolved that he shall be received. The remaining questions were postponed for further consideration."<sup>1</sup>

In August, 1873, this constitutional power was again exercised by President Grant. He sent to each member of his cabinet seven questions on the subject of expatriation, and received letters in reply from all. With his annual message to Congress on the following December he transmitted this correspondence, saying: "I invite the earnest attention of Congress to the existing laws of the United States respecting expatriation and the election of nationality by individuals. . . . Persons who have never resided within the United States have been enabled to put forward a pretension to the protection of the United States against the claim to military service of the government under whose protection they were born and have been reared. In some cases even naturalized citizens of the United States have returned to the land of their birth, with intent to remain there, and their children, the issue of a marriage contracted there after their return, and who have never been in the United States, have laid claim to our protection when the lapse of many years had imposed upon them the duty of military service to the only government which had ever known them personally.

---

<sup>1</sup> 10 Sparks' Washington, 534.

. . . For my own guidance, in determining such questions, I required (under the provisions of the Constitution) the opinion in writing of the principal officer in each of the executive departments upon certain questions relating to this subject. The result satisfies me that further legislation has become necessary. I therefore commend the subject to the careful consideration of Congress, and I transmit herewith copies of the several opinions of the principal officers of the executive departments, together with other correspondence and pertinent information on the same subject.”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE III.  
Opinions by heads  
of departments.

7. *Power to approve an act after the adjournment of Congress.*

On the 3d of March, 1863, Congress passed “an act to provide for the collection of abandoned property, and for the prevention of frauds in insurrectionary districts within the United States.” On the 4th of March that Congress was adjourned *sine die* under the Constitution, and that act had not received the signature of the President. On the 12th of the same March (within the ten days) President Lincoln signed it, and it was printed with the other acts of that Congress.<sup>2</sup>

Approval of an  
act of Congress  
after its adjourn-  
ment.

Under its operation a large amount of property came into the possession of the Executive; but it was not thought wise to attempt to administer upon it in the courts, without a recognition by the law-making power, which

<sup>1</sup> Foreign Relations, 1873, pp. vi, vii, 1185.    <sup>2</sup> 12 Stat. 820, c. 120.



LECTURE III.  
Approval of an  
act of Congress  
after its adjourn-  
ment.

should practically amount to its reënactment. Accordingly Congress, on the 20th of July, 1864, passed "an act in addition to the several acts concerning commercial intercourse between loyal and insurrectionary States, and to provide for the collection of captured and abandoned property, and the prevention of frauds in States declared in insurrection. This statute practically reënacted the previous act with amendments, and thus disposed of the difficulty."<sup>1</sup>

### 8. *Partial Veto.*

Partial veto.

President Grant, in his annual message of December 1, 1873, recommended the adoption of an amendment to the Constitution, "To authorize the Executive to approve of so much of any measure passing the two Houses of Congress as his judgment may dictate, without approving the whole; the disapproved portion or portions to be subjected to the same rules as now, to wit, to be referred back to the House in which the measure or measures originated, and, if passed by a two-thirds vote of the two Houses, then to become a law without the approval of the President." He added: "I would add to this a provision that there should be no legislation by Congress during the last twenty-four hours of its sitting, except upon vetoes, in order to give the Executive an opportunity to examine and approve or disapprove bills understandingly." Congress took no action on this recommendation.

---

<sup>1</sup> 13 Stat. 375, c. 225.

## IV.

# THE SEPARATE POWERS OF THE SEN- ATE AND THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES.<sup>1</sup>

---

ARTICLE I, SECTION 5. Each House shall be the JUDGE OF the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two-thirds, expel a Member.

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one-fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 2, PARAGRAPH 5. The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 7. All Bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives;

---

<sup>1</sup> This is Lecture III of the Lectures delivered before the classes of the University Law School.

## LECTURE IV.

but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

**EXTRACT FROM THE TWELFTH AMENDMENT.** The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

**ARTICLE I, SECTION 3, PARAGRAPHS 4, 5 and 6.** The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President pro tempore, in the Absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two-thirds of the Members present.

**ARTICLE II, SECTION 4.** The President, Vice-President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

**ARTICLE II, SECTION 2, PARAGRAPH 2.** He [the President] shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and

Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, **LECTURE IV.** other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law : but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

Of the powers conferred upon the General Congress. Government by the Constitution of the United States much the most important are those given to the legislative body. Many if not nearly all of the powers of the executive and judicial branches of the Government are regulated in the manner of their exercise by the laws enacted by this body, called the Congress.<sup>1</sup> It is made to consist of two branches, the Senate and the House of Representatives; and there is confided to the President a limited right to control the action of these two Houses by the exercise of the veto power. Each House of Congress has

---

<sup>1</sup> In England, from whence most of our legal principles and legislative notions are derived, the authority of Parliament is transcendent and has no bounds. . . . It can change and create afresh even the constitution of the kingdom and of Parliament itself. It can, in short, do everything that is not naturally impossible. *Vanhome's Lessee v. Dorrance*, 2 Dall. 304, 307.

It is a fundamental principle with English lawyers, that Parliament can do everything except making a woman a man, or a man a woman. De Lolme, *Constitution of England*, p. 135.

The first meeting of the Commons in a separate body, as an independent branch of Parliament, was in 1306, the 34th year of Edward I. Prior to this time they had met with the nobles and the clergy and had been outvoted, but they thenceforth assumed the power to act independently upon proposed legislation, and especially in the enactment of tax laws. This was the beginning of the growth of the dominant influence of the House of Commons in the English Government of to-day.

**LECTURE IV.**  
**Congress.**

certain powers of its own which it exercises independently of the other, and it is to these that I propose to call your attention.

Article I, section 5, declares that:—

“Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each House may provide.

“Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

**Separate powers**  
**of each House.**

“Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and, from time to time, publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

“Neither House during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.”

**Qualifications of**  
**members.**

It will be observed that while these provisions give to each House the same powers, and impose upon each the same limitations, they are to be exercised separately and independently. “Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns,

and qualifications of its own members." This provision necessarily refers all contested elections, and all questions about the eligibility of members of Congress, to the House to which they belong; but it seems from the experience of the past to have been one of those principles adopted from the English House of Commons which has not worked well with our institutions, and which the House of Commons itself has been compelled to abandon. Contested elections are now by the law of England tried before the judiciary, and the judgment of the court is conclusive upon the subject. It is conceded on all hands that justice is in this way more nearly administered with accuracy, than it was under the former system. Both in that country and this under the former method the result of a contested election has been very generally forecast by a knowledge of the relations of the parties contesting to the political majority or minority of the House in which the contest is carried on. As this is a constitutional provision, however, there exists no power in the legislature, without an amendment of that instrument, to refer these contested cases to the judiciary. The increasing number of contested election cases arising out of frauds supposed to be perpetrated at the elections themselves, the investigation of which is always difficult, and the uncertainty of a fair and impartial decision by the Senate or House before whom the matter may come, render it very doubtful whether the entire provision on this subject is of any value.

LECTURE IV.  
Qualifications of  
members.

**LECTURE IV.**  
**Qualifications of**  
**members.**

Very few controversies, if any, have arisen in either body concerning the qualifications of its members. It was at one time a question somewhat mooted whether the States could add to the qualifications which the Constitution has prescribed for members of the Senate or the House of Representatives; but it is now conceded that these must be determined by the Constitution alone, because, although it may be conceivable that Congress might make some conditions or limitations concerning the eligibility of its members, it has not been done, and the constitutional qualifications alone regulate that subject.

**Power to compel**  
**attendance.**

The power to compel the attendance of absent members is one which unfortunately it is often necessary to call into operation. In the House of Representatives the "call of the House," which is the phrase for the method used in compelling each member to be present, is one which in every session is frequently resorted to, and is always tedious and almost fruitless in its results. The stately Senate resorts to this measure more rarely, but it has been found occasionally necessary, even there. The penalties for such absence have in practice usually amounted to nothing; the absentees are generally brought in, under the custody of the sergeant-at-arms, and make an apology which is accepted.

**Rules.**

The provision that each House may determine the rules of its proceedings has led to the adoption of two systems, differing widely from each other, in each of the bodies. The main basis,

however, on which those rules have been constructed is Jefferson's Manual, a work prepared by him mainly from the historical precedents in the English House of Commons. These rules have become by many changes and amendments very numerous. The Senate, being a much smaller body than the House, and professing to proceed upon principles of courtesy which allow every member to speak upon any question as long as he may desire, most of the business of that branch of the Legislature is done under a kind of general consent. In the House of Representatives, on the contrary, the greater numbers of that body, and the difficulty of restraining its members, and making them conform to any set of regulations, have led to a very complex and troublesome set of rules. With a good knowledge of them an experienced member, who has served in that body during several terms of Congress, may obtain a very great advantage in the conduct of the business of the House. Many of these rules, indeed, in the opinion of intelligent members and outside observers, are better calculated to embarrass than to facilitate the progress of business, and a member familiar with them and their bearing upon all subjects of legislation which may arise is often enabled to get the House into inextricable confusion, and retard or suspend its proceedings entirely. It is obvious, therefore, that these rules could be very much improved by a careful revision.

The punishment of members for disorderly behavior has generally been by resolutions ex-

LECTURE IV.  
Rules.

Punishment for  
disorderly behavior.



**LECTURE IV.**  
**Punishment for**  
**disorderly behav-**  
**ior.**

pressing the disapprobation of the House to which the member belonged, or by a reprimand to the disorderly party by the presiding officer thereof under the direction of that body; but both of these punishments, as well as the expulsion of a member which requires two-thirds, have been of rare occurrence and have never been exercised, it is believed, without sufficient grounds, although this has been questioned in regard to some cases of expulsion at the beginning of the recent war on account of the supposed treasonable practices or utterances of certain Senators.

**Journals.**

Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and, from time to time, publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy. The journals of both Houses of Congress have undoubtedly been faithfully kept since the beginning of the Government; and but rarely has any portion been withheld from publication, except that which relates to the secret sessions of the Senate when engaged in its function of considering treaties or nominations to office sent to it by the President. Very recently a strenuous effort has been made to abolish the secret sessions in which these matters have been considered, by a resolution of the Senate itself. Thus far it has failed; and in regard to treaties it is certainly wise that, while they are yet incomplete and matters of negotiation between the two nations proposing to make them, the discussions of a body like the Senate should not be bruited abroad.

The provision that "the yeas and nays of the members of either House, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal," whether wise or unwise, is the fruitful source of a great waste of time. It may be very well doubted whether the call of the yeas and nays in the House of Representatives, which necessarily consumes a great deal of time, is not resorted to more for that purpose than any other, thereby frequently defeating a measure which a majority of the House is prepared to pass. It may be of some advantage in the way of compelling members to spread their names upon the record as having voted for or against any particular proposition, and thereby holding them responsible to the public sentiment of their constituents. Where this is the conscientious object and motive in calling for the yeas and nays it is probably unobjectionable, and in the enactment of laws of great public importance it is desirable, for many reasons, that the votes of members should be recorded. No doubt this was the object of the Constitution in authorizing a call of the yeas and nays upon the request of one-fifth of the members present, and this requirement of one-fifth seems to be a necessity to prevent the frittering away of the time of the legislative body at the request of a single member.

The requirement that "neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which

LECTURE IV.  
Call of the yeas  
and nays.

Limitation in  
power of separate  
adjournment.

**LECTURE IV.**  
**Limitation in**  
**power of separate**  
**adjournment.**

the two Houses shall be sitting," is of obvious necessity to prevent either branch of the Congress from breaking up its sessions. If one House could adjourn itself to a different place it would practically be an end to that session of Congress; or if one House could adjourn of its own motion without the other, for two or three weeks at a time, the obstruction of the public business would be very great, and there would be an impossibility of the co-operative action contemplated by the Constitution. In practice, the three days' limit is reached by one or both branches of Congress very frequently during a long session, when an adjournment is had over from Thursday until Monday.

**Separate powers**  
**of the House.**

These are the provisions which apply equally to each House of Congress, and are obligatory upon both. We now come to consider certain powers and functions which are reposed in one House and not in the other. Of these we will begin with the House of Representatives.

**The Speaker.**

Article I, section 2, declares that "the House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment." In the use of the word which designates the presiding officer of that body the convention which framed the Constitution adopted, as it has done in so many other instances, the language of the law of England in regard to the presiding officer of the House of Commons. While there is in the Constitution no very definite description of the powers which may be exercised by the Speaker of the House, that

office has become, by the practice and the rules of the House, the repository of more unrestricted power than any other officer of the Government of the United States possesses. The Speaker appoints all the committees of that body, whether those prescribed by the general rules of the House or special committees for particular occasions. He not only appoints these committees, but he nominates their chairmen; although he does this, of course, with reference to the opinions of the members of the committee, so far as they may be known, in regard to matters which will come before them. It is also customary to make up these committees, with regard to the political affiliations of the members who are to compose them, in such a manner as to give a majority upon each committee to the party to which the Speaker himself belongs; and in regard to particular measures which may be brought to the attention of the House, the Speaker, if he is aware of their character, may so arrange the committee, to which they will be referred, as to secure action in accordance with his own views of the subject under consideration. As the influence of the reports and action of these committees has grown greater and greater with the increasing number of the members of the House of Representatives, the power of the Speaker in thus securing in advance a committee which will act according to his views is hard to over-estimate. In the pressure of business in the House, which is always very great, the recognition of a member by the Speaker, or his failure

LECTURE IV.  
The Speaker.

LECTURE IV.  
The Speaker.

to so recognize him when he rises upon the <sup>viou</sup> floor, often determines the fate of an important <sup>Commeas-</sup> measure; and this recognition, which formerly <sup>one</sup> was supposed to be impartial and the actual result of the Speaker's eye first falling upon the member whom he recognized, has come to be in modern times a matter of prearrangement and understanding between the Speaker and the members who desire to be heard. All this makes him almost the absolute arbiter of the important legislation which is crowded into the latter part of a session of Congress.

The House of Representatives, by the character of its organization under the Constitution of the United States, consists of the same body of men for two years, and a term of Congress has come to be treated as the same as that of the members, whose term of office commences on the fourth of March and continues for two years thereafter. It is this body which elects a Speaker, and he is elected for the term of that Congress. There is, therefore, a new Speaker elected at the beginning of every Congress. It is creditable to the characters of the Speakers who have presided over that body, and to the discretion of the respective Houses that elected them, that it is rare that a Speaker has only served a single term. They have generally been re-elected for several terms, as long as they themselves remained in Congress and their party in the majority, or chose to seek a re-election. Undoubtedly this grows largely out of the fact that the necessity and value of experience in a

Speaker is felt by all the members; and perhaps it may be said also that, subject to certain recognized obligations to the political party who elected him, the Speaker has generally been found to be impartial toward the members, and just in his rulings on matters submitted to him.

LECTURE IV.  
The Speaker.

The other officers of the House of Representatives, beside the Speaker, are the clerk, the sergeant-at-arms, doorkeeper, postmaster, and perhaps others of inferior grade. These require no comment at the present time, except to say that they are almost invariably selected at a caucus of the dominant party held a day or two before the organization of the House. It has happened once or twice in the history of the Government, the contest for the office of Speaker being so close and so bitter, that, no candidate receiving a majority of the whole number of votes, the struggle was prolonged for several weeks at the beginning of the session, during which the House could do nothing.

Other officers of  
the House.

The House also has the sole power of impeachment.<sup>1</sup> The Constitution provides else-

Power of im-  
peachment.

<sup>1</sup> "It is not disputed that the power of originating the inquiry, or, in other words, of preferring the impeachment, ought to be lodged in the hands of one branch of the legislative body; will not the reasons which indicate the propriety of this arrangement strongly plead for an admission of the other branch of that body to a share of the inquiry? The model from which the idea of this institution has been borrowed, pointed out that course to the convention. In Great Britain it is the province of the House of Commons to prefer the impeachment, and the House of Lords to decide upon it. Several of the State constitutions have followed the example. As well the latter, as the former, seem to have regarded the practice of impeachments as a bridle in the hands of the legislative body upon the executive servants of the Government. Is not this the true light in which it ought to be regarded?" The Federalist, No. 64. Dawson's ed.: No. 65, Hallowell ed.

LECTURE IV.  
Power of im-  
peachment.

where, to which we have already referred in these lectures, that the President, and all the other officers of the Government, may be removed from office by impeachment for high crimes and misdemeanors. The process of impeachment, which is here provided for, can only begin in the House of Representatives. This is done by that House formulating charges in the nature of an indictment against the officer intended to be impeached, upon inquiry into the matters which they propose to include within such impeachment. No other body has the right to prefer these articles or charges. In doing this the House of Representatives discharges a function in the nature of that exercised by a grand jury. Nor does its connection with the proceedings cease with the mere formulation of the charges and the presentation of them to the Senate, which is the body that tries the impeachment. The prosecution of the case before the Senate by the introduction of evidence, the argument of the cause, and all the other machinery for the conviction of the defendant, is submitted to the control of the House. That body usually appoints a special committee, called a committee of managers, who conduct the prosecution. They may be, and in important cases are, aided by counsel who are not members of the committee, nor even members of the House; but this matter is within the control of the House, and such counsel are employed by its authority.

The most important trial of this class which

has ever taken place in this country was that of President Johnson, which has already been referred to. This power of impeachment has not been exercised very frequently, probably not nearly so often as it would have been but for the limited tenure of most of the officers of the Federal Government. The process is tedious and expensive, and the requirement of a two-thirds majority in order to convict, renders it generally inefficient. As most of the officers of the Government have a term fixed to the enjoyment of their offices, it has been usually thought wiser to let the limitation effect the removal, than to engage in this costly and unsatisfactory process of impeachment.

LECTURE IV.  
Power of impeachment.

“All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives;<sup>1</sup> but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.”<sup>2</sup>

Revenue bills.

This is a very important function of legislation, as it is now construed by the House, to be reposed exclusively in that body. As we would

---

<sup>1</sup> The House of Representatives can not only refuse, but they alone can propose the supplies requisite for the support of Government. They, in a word, hold the purse; that powerful instrument by which we behold, in the history of the British constitution, an infant and humble representation of the people gradually enlarging the sphere of its activity and importance, and finally reducing, as far as it seems to have wished, all the overgrown prerogatives of the other branches of the government. This power over the purse may, in fact, be regarded as the most complete and effectual weapon, with which any constitution can arm the immediate representatives of the people for obtaining a redress of every grievance, and for carrying into effect every just and salutary measure. The Federalist, No. 57, Dawson's ed.: No. 58, all other editions.

<sup>2</sup> Constitution, Art. 1, sec. 7, par. 1.



**LECTURE IV.**  
**Revenue bills.**

naturally understand the meaning of the term "revenue" at the present day, the expression "bills for raising revenue" would have reference to laws for the purpose of obtaining money by some form of taxation or other means of raising the necessary funds to be used in supplying the wants of the government, paying its expenses, and discharging its debts. The appropriation of that money, which is always necessarily done by virtue of an act of Congress, would seem to be quite a different thing from the laws prescribing how the money shall be raised. In practice, however, the House of Representatives has insisted that, not only shall it originate all bills of ways and means for raising revenue, for which purpose there is a committee appointed in that body called the "Committee on Ways and Means," but it has also claimed that all the appropriation bills, and especially the annual appropriation bills, which are prepared each year to meet the current expenses of the Government during the succeeding fiscal year, shall originate in that body; and it has, therefore, a standing "Committee on Appropriations." This has been the practice now for so long a time that it may be doubted whether it will be seriously questioned.

The Senate, however, has never given its full assent to this proposition, but has, on the contrary, from time to time originated bills appropriating money for specific purposes; although it is not believed that it has for a great many years attempted to act upon any of the general

appropriation bills until they have been sent to that body from the House. At the present time

LECTURE IV.  
Revenue bills.

there is no apparent connection between a bill for raising money and an appropriation bill to spend that money. The revenues of the country are derived from a system of permanent taxation, which year after year brings into the treasury of the United States, by its continued operation, sufficient means to pay all the expenses of the Government, as well as the interest on its public debt; and it is not necessary that every year, or even at every term of the Congress, there should be a new law for the raising of revenue, but it is required that there should be a law every year appropriating the money thus placed in the treasury to the needs of the Government. It is difficult to see, under this clause of the Constitution, how it is, when no new law is necessary to raise revenue, that the act appropriating or directing how the revenue already raised, which exists or is expected to exist in the treasury, shall be appropriated, can be properly called a bill for raising revenue. Undoubtedly the adop-

Difference between English and American practice in this matter.

tion of this article into the Constitution, and the construction which has been given to it, is the result of the practices of our English ancestors. The Commons of England came into existence as an efficient power in the government of that country by virtue of the necessity there was for them to make contributions, called subsidies, and taxes, which they gave to the King for his support and for that of his government. This at first was done at odd times, and but infre-

LECTURE IV.  
Difference between English  
and American  
practice in this  
matter.

quently, the King relying in early days upon his own revenues to support his regal station and his authority. But as these became inadequate, and wars with foreign nations demanded more money and treasure or property than the King could command, he was by necessity compelled to call upon his subjects to aid him by contributions from their substance. This he did by calling together certain prominent and leading men in the country who represented their own classes and the citizens of the towns, who voted a voluntary supply, or contribution, or subsidy (for it was called by all of these names), which they appropriated to the support of the King and his government. These votes and gifts of the Commons they were very jealous about. They would not permit the King himself to levy these taxes or contributions without their consent given in public in solemn form; and it may be remarked that the revolution in which King Charles lost his life was the result of an attempt on his part to do this. Neither would they permit the House of Lords to vote these taxes or supplies. Hence, as the necessity for resorting to the Commons for the support of the government grew greater and greater, the tenacity with which they clung to the right to have this done by their own voluntary action became stronger and stronger.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Commons, through its nominees, the ministry, has absorbed the greater part of the power of the Crown, and more and more reduced the other House to a position of secondary importance.

These contributions were at first voted at considerable intervals, and the bill or law by which they were given was both a bill to raise revenue and to appropriate that revenue when raised. They, therefore, came to be called appropriations, or bills of supply, and perhaps revenue bills. They have retained that name to the present time in England, as well as in most of the States of the Federal Union. The annual appropriation bills in Great Britain, and in this country in most of the States, are called "bills of supply." In England a familiar term also is "The Budget," and this budget, while voting the money necessary for the support of the Government, almost always contains some modification of the system of taxation; they are united together, and they are in fact bills which appropriate the money, and establish the sources at the same time from which it shall be raised. It is undoubtedly in analogy to that system, as furnishing the true meaning of this clause of the Constitution, that the phrase "bills for raising revenue" in that instrument has come to be construed to include both bills of appropriation and bills for establishing or raising revenue; although they may be very different in character, and the bill for an appropriation may contain no element incident to the raising of revenue.

It is singular that so little comment is to be found upon this clause of the Constitution by those who have made that instrument the subject of their consideration; and there is but little reference to it in the debates of the two Houses

LECTURE IV.  
Difference between English  
and American  
practice in this  
matter.

**LECTURE IV.**  
Difference between English and American practice in this matter.

of Congress or in the discussions at the time the Constitution was framed and adopted. It seems to have been assumed, and probably a hundred years ago it was the usual custom, that appropriation bills were accompanied by more or less legislation on the subject of the means of raising revenue. But at the present time, under our settled system of financial operation, although there is, of course, a necessity for regulating the expenditures of the Government and therefore preparing the appropriation bills to meet its expenses according to the means which are at the command of Congress, there is, in fact, a very remote connection between a bill for the raising of revenue and the ordinary bills appropriating the revenue already raised to the support of the Government.

Election of President when there is no election by the people.

In some respects the most important duty, devolved upon the House of Representatives exclusively by the Constitution, is that which was originally found in Article II, section 1, paragraph 3, of that instrument, but for which the Twelfth Article of the amendments has since been substituted. This Article, after amending in some respects the clumsy provision as it originally stood concerning the appointment of electors, and their choice of a President, declares that "the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have such majority, then, from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list

of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in case of the death, or other constitutional disability of the President."

LECTURE IV.  
Election of President when there is no election by the people.

As this provision stood in the original Constitution, each elector cast two votes, and the person receiving the largest number of such votes was to be President, and the one the next largest was to be Vice-President. This made no provision for distinctive votes for President and for Vice-President, the result of which was that at the end of President John Adams' administration, when the electors came to cast their votes, it was found that Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had an equal number of votes, though it has been said that in the popular canvass which resulted in the election of these electors, it had always been understood that Mr. Jefferson was supported for President by those who voted for Mr. Burr as Vice-President. The result, however, of this tie was that the election went to the House of Representatives under the provision in the orig-

## LECTURE IV.

Election of President when there is no election by the people.

inal Constitution, and not under the ones which we have just cited from the Twelfth Article of the amendments, and a long and bitter contest ensued in that body before Mr. Jefferson was finally elected President, and Mr. Burr Vice-President.

A similar event under this Twelfth Article occurred at the expiration of Mr. Monroe's administration, when neither of the candidates who were voted for by the electors received a majority of the electoral votes. General Jackson received a plurality; Mr. John Quincy Adams received the next highest number, and then came Mr. Crawford and Mr. Clay. The election by the House, taken by States, resulted in the choice of Mr. Adams.

Although this mode of electing a President, by which, as in the case last cited, the plurality of the electoral vote and a very large plurality of the popular vote was for one man, while another was elected President by the House of Representatives, has never met with general public approval, yet it remains unaltered in the objectionable feature mentioned, and but little effort has ever been made to change it. In fact the whole subject of the manner of electing a President has never been satisfactory to the general public, and only the difficulty of proposing a system which would meet with the general approval of the States, to which it would have to be submitted, has prevented some material modification of it. The manner of counting the votes is left ambiguous in many respects,

and in the case of the contest between Mr. Hayes and Mr. Tilden was a subject of great anxiety and even danger from a public disturbance of the peace, which was only averted by the novel expedient of an electoral commission to report upon the condition of the electoral votes cast.

LECTURE IV.  
Election of President when there is no election by the people.

Reverting now to the exclusive powers vested in the Senate, that which relates to the selecting of its officers, as found in Article I, section 3, will be seen to differ somewhat from that of the House of Representatives. Paragraphs 4, 5 and 6 read as follows:—

Separate powers of the Senate.

“4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

“5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

“6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.”

It will thus be seen that the presiding officer of the Senate is the Vice-President of the United States, not selected from among the senators, nor by them, and that his principal function in the scheme of the Government is this duty of

The Vice-President.



LECTURE IV.  
The Vice-President.

presiding over the Senate. The office as thus established was probably supposed to be one of much dignity and of some power, especially in regard to the appointment of committees, standing or others. The practice of the Senate, however, for many years past has been, under the domination of all political parties in it, to select by a majority vote of the entire body its committees and their chairmen. This is altogether true of the regular standing committees. If the presiding officer of the Senate is ever authorized to appoint the members of a special committee, it is by virtue of the express delegation of that power in the resolution providing for such committee.

The limited power of the Vice-President to cast a vote in the case of an equal division of the Senate has been rarely called into exercise, and the office itself, except for the event unfortunately too often occurring in the history of our Government of his succession to the Presidential office by the death of its incumbent, would be one merely of dignity and respectability. In the case of the death of the Vice-President, or his accession to the office of President of the United States, or his temporary absence, the Senate elects a president *pro tempore*, from among its own members, who exercises all the functions of the Vice-President in relation to that body, except that of giving a casting vote in case of an equal division. This he does not do because he does not lose his right to vote as a senator by becoming the presiding officer of that body.

One of the most important powers confided to the Senate is that of trying impeachments. As already suggested, this power has been rarely called into operation when we consider that it is the only mode of removing from his place an officer of the Government during the term of office for which he is elected or appointed, except so far as that power may be reposed in the President as a part of his power of appointment to office. In other cases, which are by far the most numerous, where it would be important to remove an officer, it can only be done by impeachment. The result of this has been that the expense, the delay, the cumbersome method of the process of impeachment, and the interference which it causes with the other functions of the Senate while the trial is in progress, have all contributed to give immunity to men in high offices who ought to have been removed for the good of the service to which they belonged.

LECTURE IV.  
Trial of impeach-  
ments.

The Senate in trying an impeachment sits as a court, its members take a new oath or affirmation as such, and when the President of the United States is to be tried the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court is to be the presiding officer. No conviction shall be had without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present, and in case of a conviction the punishment, if it can be called punishment, shall extend no further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States thereafter.

LECTURE IV.  
Trial of impeach-  
ments.

The uncertainty as to what must be the nature of the offences which will justify a conviction on trials of impeachment is another reason why it is so seldom resorted to. Article II, section 4, declares that "The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office, on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors."

Treason and bribery are easily understood, but no satisfactory definition has ever been given or generally accepted of the phrase "or other high crimes and misdemeanors."

The most important power of the Senate, however, in which the House of Representatives has no part, is that in which it is called to assist in the performance of functions properly executive in connection with the President of the United States. These are the making of treaties, and the appointments to office. The second paragraph of section 2, of Article II, of the Constitution joins the Senate and the President in the execution of these two powers. It declares that the President "shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Con-

gress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.”

LECTURE IV.  
Trial of impeach-  
ments.

All treaties, therefore, made by this country with any foreign power, require, in the first place, the action of the executive branch of the Government, and then the advice and consent of the Senate. To make this advice and consent operative, two-thirds of the senators present, when a treaty is passed upon, must concur in its approval. The consent of the Senate also is necessary, though not requiring two-thirds of that body for that purpose, to the confirmation of such officers as shall be nominated to it by the President for ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. It will be seen that this provision confers upon the Senate a power of the greatest importance and magnitude in the conduct of the affairs of the Government, although it is true that the President in this conjoint action with the Senate has the initiative. He makes the treaty before it is submitted to the Senate for its consent thereto, and he selects the individuals whom he will nominate to office before their names are sent to the Senate for its concurrence. Although the language of the clause that “he shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties,” would imply that

Treaties.

**LECTURE IV.**  
**Treaties.**

the negotiation of a treaty with a foreign nation in the first instance, would be an act in which the advice of the Senate would be asked, and though the Senate has in a few instances been advised with, and has made suggestions concerning treaties before they were signed by the officers of the governments initiating them, yet the practice has almost uniformly been that the treaty has been first reduced to form and signed by the ministers authorized to negotiate it, before it has been submitted to the Senate for its approval.

The Senate, however, has exercised freely its prerogative, in cases where treaties have been thus submitted to it, of suggesting amendments which would put the treaty in such form as to meet its views, or of refusing its consent altogether. The other power of the Senate, to confirm or reject nominations to office, has also been freely exercised and freely commented upon. Grave differences of opinion exist as to the authority of the President where such nominations are rejected. The power conferred by this clause of the Constitution is too important, too far-reaching, and presents too many questions of magnitude and of every day occurrence to justify me in entering any further into its consideration than I have done at this time.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE IV.

---

### 1. *Impeachment.*

“Impeachment was taken, not directly from LECTURE IV. English usage, but rather from the Constitutions Impeachment. of Virginia (1776), and Massachusetts (1780), which had, no doubt following the example of England, established this remedy against culpable officials.”<sup>1</sup> It is a cumbersome process, and very apt to fail. A competent observer says that it “is the heaviest piece of artillery in the congressional arsenal, but, because it is so heavy, it is unfit for ordinary use. It is like a hundred-ton gun, which needs complex machinery to bring it into position, an enormous charge of powder to fire it, and a large mark to aim at. Or, to vary the simile, impeachment is what physicians call a heroic medicine, an extreme remedy, proper to be applied against an official guilty of political crimes, but ill adapted for the punishment of small transgressions.”<sup>2</sup>

Seven persons have been impeached. Of these, five were acquitted; one a President of the United States, one a Justice of the Supreme Court, one a District Judge, one a Senator, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Note 2, Bryce's *American Commonwealth*, vol. 1, p. 47.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Bryce's *American Commonwealth*, 208.

LECTURE IV.      one a Secretary of War. Two District Judges  
Impeachment.      have been convicted.<sup>1</sup>

## 2. *The Budget.*

The budget.

“This name is applied to an account of the ways and means by which a minister of finance purposes to defray the expenditure of the State. In the United Kingdom the Chancellor of the Exchequer, usually in April, lays before the House of Commons a statement of the actual results of revenue and expenditure, in the past finance year ending March 31, showing how far his estimates have been realized, and what surplus or deficit there has been in the income as compared with the expenditure. This is accompanied by another statement in which the Chancellor gives an estimate of what the produce of the revenue may be in the year just entered upon, supposing the taxes and duties to remain as they were in the past year, and also an estimate of what the expenditure will be in the current year. If the estimated revenue, after allowing for normal increase of the principal sources of income, be less than the estimated expenditure, this is deemed a case for the imposition of some new, or the increase of some existing tax or taxes. On the other hand, if the estimated revenue shows a large surplus over the estimated expenditure, there is room for remitting or reducing some tax or taxes, and the extent of this relief is generally limited to the amount of surplus

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Bryce's *American Commonwealth*, 106, 227.

realized in the previous year. The Chancellor of the Exchequer has to take Parliament into confidence on his estimates both as regards revenue and expenditure; and when the taxation and expenditure obtain the assent of Parliament, the results as thus adjusted become the final budget estimate for the year.”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE IV.  
The budget.

### 3. *The Speaker.*

The enormous power which the Speaker of the House of Representatives wields over the legislation of Congress, which Mr. Justice Miller has so forcibly pointed out, is not enjoyed by the presiding officer of that great body in England from whence the office and its title are derived.

The Speaker of  
the House of  
Commons.

“In the House of Commons the Speaker is a member, elected to that office at the desire of the Crown, and confirmed by the royal approbation, given in the House of Lords. A similar office seems to have existed as early as the reign of Henry III, when Peter de Montfort signed and sealed an answer of the Parliament to Pope Alexander, *vice totius communitatis*; but the title Speaker was first given to Sir T. Hungerford, in the reign of Edward III. The Speaker of the House of Commons presides over the deliberations of the House, and enforces the rules for preserving order; he puts the question, and declares the determination of the House. As the representative of the House, he communi-

---

<sup>1</sup> Encyclopædia Britannica, tit. Budget.



LECTURE IV.  
The Speaker of  
the House of  
Commons.

cates its resolutions to others, and conveys its thanks or its censures. He is thus the mouth-piece of the House, whence his title seems to be derived. He issues warrants in execution of the orders of the House for the commitment of offenders, for the issue of writs, the attendance of witnesses, the bringing up prisoners in custody, etc. The mace is borne before him by the sergent-at-arms when he enters or leaves the House; when he is in the chair, it is left on the table, and it accompanies him on all State occasions. He cannot speak or vote on any question, but on an equality of voices he has the casting vote. Both by ancient custom and legislative declaration, he is entitled to take precedence of all commoners.”<sup>1</sup>

#### 4. *Treaties.*

Treaties.

The treaties made by the United States with foreign powers have had their full share in shaping the destiny of the nation; and hence the power in this respect reposed in the Senate is one of great importance.

In the notes to Lecture I, the treaties concluded before the adoption of the Constitution were considered. It was also seen that the municipal operation of every treaty is subject to be modified or abrogated by legislation of Congress. It only remains to notice some of the principal treaties, concluded under this power, and this notice of necessity must be confined to a few, and be very brief.

---

<sup>1</sup> Chambers' Encyclopædia, tit. Speaker.

The treaty known as Jay's Treaty was the most important concluded during the administration of President Washington. He found, on becoming President, Great Britain occupying all the principal military stations within our territory on our northern frontier, from Oswego to Detroit, and even penetrating, with its military forces, into the interior of the State of Ohio. Spain was in possession of Natchez and was aiming at Vicksburg. The two powers soon after took up arms against France, in the wars of the French Revolution, and Great Britain began to seize, condemn, and confiscate our commerce on the high seas, on frivolous and illegal pretences, and to drag American seamen from American ships, and force them into British service. France, on the other hand, was represented in the United States by a rash and imprudent envoy, who was persistent in his efforts to drive the United States into the controversy on the side of France. Washington felt that the country needed rest, and was determined to remain neutral if it were possible to do so. With this view he sent Chief Justice Jay to London, to settle matters with England. Jay concluded there on the 19th of November, 1794, the treaty which has since borne his name. It provided for the withdrawal of the British garrisons; for joint commissions to determine the claims of British subjects against the United States and of American citizens against Great Britain; for the payment of the judgments, and for various other things; but it did not provide for an

LECTURE IV.  
Jay's Treaty.

LECTURE IV.  
Jay's Treaty.

abandonment by Great Britain of the illegal claims under which the acts complained of had been committed. This caused great excitement in the United States, and became the rallying-point of those who opposed the ratification of the treaty, and who desired to force the United States into the war on the side of France.

The treaty was ratified however, and I repeat here what was said some years ago: "It is the judgment of history that, with all its shortcomings, it was a wise measure. We came out of the war of independence poor; with a great debt; with a depreciated paper currency emitted by the States, and emitted by authority of Congress; with a paralyzed business, and with a narrow ribbon of population along the shores of the Atlantic, of uncongenial pursuits, with great difficulties of communication, and with no common historical traditions prior to the war. With the greatest difficulty, the aversion to a stronger Central Government was overcome. The Constitution started its operation in time of peace, among a people, a large minority of whom, if not an actual majority, was averse to it. Jay's Treaty secured a certainty of a longer time of peace for it to take root and grow. If we had not concluded that treaty, we might have been bound in honor to go to war with England at that time. I cannot see what the result of such a war would have been; but I can see that, by putting off taking part in the great struggle for eighteen years, we secured precious time for the people to become accustomed and attached to

the new form of government, and on this is founded the opinion that the measure, however intrinsically defective, was a wise turning-point in our history."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE IV.  
Jay's Treaty.

This treaty introduced the custom of international arbitration of private claims, which has now become so common. Some sixty years ago it was said by the Baron de Barante, in the French Chamber of Peers, while discussing the bill for the overdue instalments on the French Convention of 1831, that "the United States, when the laws of neutrality are violated with respect to them, do not go to war. . . . Without beginning hostilities they protest, quietly present their claims, and when the time comes that their good will is needed, or their friendship sought, they profit by the occasion, and cause the settlement of the private claims, the payment of which had been contested or deferred."<sup>2</sup>

Settlement of international claims by treaty.

It is impossible to overestimate the importance of the Treaty of April 30, 1803, with France, ceding Louisiana. "History fully justifies the wisdom of a measure, acquiring the mouth of the Mississippi. Jay's Treaty and this treaty had a marked influence on the political history of the country. They mainly contributed to wrest the Federal Government from the hands of those who favored the adoption of the Constitution, and place it in the hands of those

Treaty ceding Louisiana.

<sup>1</sup> Cyclopædia of Political Science, etc., tit. Treaties of the United States.

<sup>2</sup> Treaties and Conventions, with other powers. Introductory note, p. 941, orig. ed.

**LECTURE IV.**  
**Treaty ceding**  
**Louisiana.**

who opposed it. They thus converted a jealous and astute oligarchy in the South from opponents into supporters of the new form of government, and made it their interest to preserve it during the long years that they held power. When the day of change at last came, the Constitution had ceased to be an experiment. It had traditions in the national heart deep enough to protect it.”<sup>1</sup>

**Treaty of Ghent.**

The Treaty of Ghent, signed December 24, 1814, which made peace with Great Britain, is remarkable for two things: First, that it made no provision for settling the principal causes of the war: Second, that by it the United States lost valuable rights in the Fisheries. After resisting Great Britain's construction of that treaty in this respect, a construction in my judgment manifestly erroneous, Mr. Munroe finally accepted it in the Treaty of 1818. This decision has been the cause of much trouble since.

**Treaty ceding**  
**Florida.**

**Treaty ceding**  
**California.**

By the Treaty of February 22, 1819, with Spain, we acquired the Floridas; and by the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, terminating the Mexican War, we acquired California. The first of these treaties promised, in its operation, to perpetuate the power of the slave-holding States in the republic, especially when it was fortified, in this respect, by the annexation of Texas; but the second operated to overcome the influence of the first; and to restore to the non-slave-

---

<sup>1</sup> Encyclopædia of Political Science, etc., tit. Treaties of the United States.

holding States the healthy influence of liberty and freedom.

The treaty known as the Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, concluded in 1850, dispossessed Great Britain of an important military, naval, and political position on the Isthmus, at a time when the relative strength of the two powers was very different from what it is now; and, as construed by the United States, contains no continuing engagements to embarrass them. It made possible the canal which is now in course of construction across Nicaragua.

The naturalization treaties negotiated by Mr. Bancroft with the several German States, put an end to the feudal doctrine of perpetual allegiance, and laid the foundation for similar treaties with other States.

The Treaty of Washington of 1871 with Great Britain resulted in the settlement of the Alabama claims in accordance with the demands of the United States; in the settlement of the water boundary between the United States and Vancouver Island upon the line claimed by the United States; and in an adjustment of the Fishery question, which proved to be temporary and unsuccessful.

During the century several commercial treaties have been made, affecting the legislation of Congress in regard to customs duties. As the Constitution places this matter within the control of the House of Representatives to originate, such treaties were long received with disfavor in the House. Recent legislation, how-

LECTURE IV.  
Treaty ceding  
California.  
Clayton-Bulwer  
treaty.

Naturalization  
treaties.

Treaty of Wash-  
ington.

Commercial  
treaties.

**LECTURE IV.**  
**Commercial**  
**treaties.**

ever, seems to indicate a change of opinion on this subject, and a disposition on the part of the House of Representatives to concede to the treaty-making power the right to settle the rates of customs duties.

The settlement of international postal rates by treaty or convention, and the international arrangements for the surrender of fugitives from justice, are modern applications of the treaty-making power to produce most useful results.

## V.

### THE POWER OF TAXATION.<sup>1</sup>



ARTICLE I, SECTION 8, PARAGRAPH 1. The Con- LECTURE V.  
gress shall have Power to lay and collect Taxes,  
Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and  
provide for the common Defence and general Wel-  
fare of the United States ; but all Duties, Imposts  
and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United  
States ;

ARTICLE I, SECTION 7, PARAGRAPH 1. All Bills for  
raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Repre-  
sentatives ; but the Senate may propose or concur  
with Amendments as on other Bills.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 9, PARAGRAPH 4. No Capi-  
tation, or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in  
Proportion to the Census or Enumeration hereinbe-  
fore directed to be taken.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 10, PARAGRAPH 3. No State  
shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty  
of Tonnage, etc.

It has been said that the Federal Government <sup>Power of taxation.</sup>  
is one of granted or conceded powers.<sup>2</sup> This

---

<sup>1</sup> This is Lecture IV of the Lectures delivered before the classes  
of the University Law School.

<sup>2</sup> "The Government of the United States can claim no powers  
which are not granted to it by the Constitution, and the powers  
actually granted must be such as are expressly given, or given by  
necessary implication." Story, J., in *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*,  
1 Wheat. 304, 326.

The distinction between the power of taxation and the power to  
regulate commerce existed before the Revolution ; the former was  
asserted to belong to the internal polity of the Colonies, while the  
latter was conceded to be a proper exercise of the imperial authority.

The essential principle of the American Revolution was that



LECTURE V.  
Power of taxation.

being so, even the most cursory examination of the Constitution of the United States, which is the great charter upon which it was founded and is still carried on, will show that among all the powers given by that instrument none are more important than those vested in the legislative body, or Congress. Without attempting any general or very elaborate exposition of all those powers, let us briefly consider some of those most important and useful, among which your attention is more particularly directed to that of taxation.<sup>1</sup>

The first clause of section 8, of Article I, declares that:—

---

they who pay the taxes should control the levying of them. The right is thus wedded to the power, and representation and taxation become correlatives.

The principle was early asserted that taxation by Parliament in any Colony, without its consent, was tyranny. It had been the inspiration of Magna Charta, and was to be the force which impelled the Colonies to the Revolution. The exclusive power of taxation was claimed by Virginia in 1623; and treaty was made with the Parliament of the Commonwealth of England in March, 1651, which declared that the Virginia colonists were as free as the English subjects; that their assembly should transact all their own affairs, and taxes should not be imposed, or forts or garrisons maintained in that Colony without their consent. Massachusetts asserted the same doctrine in 1636, and it was reiterated in other Colonies.

<sup>1</sup> The power is not judicial. Its collection may involve the exercise of judicial and executive functions. *Blackwell on Tax Titles*, 26.

It is as incompetent for the Legislature to confer the power to tax upon the judiciary as upon the executive. *Hardenburg v. Kidd*, 10 California, 402.

This power of taxation belongs in this country to the legislative sovereignty, State and national. It is not only not one of the inherent powers of the court to levy and collect taxes, but it is an invasion by the judiciary of the Federal government of the legislative functions of the State Government. *Heine v. Levee Commissioners*, 19 Wall. 655, 661.

"The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States ;<sup>1</sup> but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States."

LECTURE V.  
Extent of the  
power.

It may be noted that the language is "to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises," and then there comes a comma, after which it continues, "to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States."<sup>2</sup> Whether this latter clause

---

<sup>1</sup> This language was not novel. Compare the objects of union among the States as stated in the Articles of Confederation. In Article III it is "for their common defence, the security of their liberties, and their mutual and general welfare." In Article VIII "all charges of war, and all other expenses that shall be incurred for the common defence, or general welfare" shall be defrayed out of a common treasury. Similar language is used in the Ninth Article.

A government ought to contain in itself every power requisite to the full accomplishment of the objects committed to its care, and the complete execution of the trusts for which it is responsible; free from every other control, but a regard to the public good, and to the sense of the people. The Federalist, No. 31 (Hallowell ed.).

<sup>2</sup> In the transcript of the Constitution as printed in the Revised Statutes, p. 19, there is only a comma after the word "excises," which was the end of the clause in the first draft when reported in the convention, a semicolon only appearing after the following word "States." The same is also true of the carefully corrected copy found in Hickey's Constitution. It would appear, therefore, that the proper value to be attached to this clause and its true meaning, as intended by the wise and learned framers of this instrument, are best exemplified by considering the latter part of the clause as a limitation upon the power given by the opening words. Story in his work on the Constitution prints it in the same way, but remarks, section 912, that in the revised draft in the convention there was a semicolon and paragraph as in the other cases; that it so stands now in some copies, and *it is said* so stands in the official copy, with a semicolon interposed. In the Federalist this

LECTURE V.  
Extent of the  
power.

was put there as a distinctive power, or as a limitation upon the power of taxation, has been a question much controverted. Not being a distinct clause by itself, it would seem probable that these words are a limitation upon the purposes for which taxes may be laid and collected.<sup>1</sup> At one time I did not concur in this peculiar manner of punctuating this instrument by commas and semicolons, without a period coming in between the opening words of this eighth section, "Congress shall have power," and the eighteenth clause with which it concludes. This clause, however, in regard to paying the debts and providing for the common defence and general welfare, constitutes a proper qualification of the power to collect taxes, and in what may be called the same sentence is followed by the limitation requiring all duties, excises, and im-

---

punctuation is referred to, and, referring to the complaint that the language amounts to an unlimited commission to exercise every power which may be alleged to be necessary, it is asked "what color can the objection have when the specification of the objects alluded to by these general terms immediately follows; and is not even separated by a longer pause than a semicolon?" Federalist, No. 41, Hallowell ed. ; 40 Dawson's ed.

<sup>1</sup> This view was concisely and strongly presented by Mr. Jefferson in his opinion on the Bank of the United States, February 15, 1791. He says: "To lay taxes to provide for the general welfare of the United States, that is to say, "to lay taxes *for the purpose* of providing for the general welfare." For the laying of taxes is the *power*, and the general welfare the *purpose* for which the power is to be exercised. They are not to lay taxes *ad libitum* for any purpose they please; but only to pay the debts or provide for the welfare of the Union. In like manner, they are not to do anything they please to provide for the general welfare, but only to lay taxes for that purpose." 7 Jefferson's Works, 557. And the same construction has been placed upon this language by other eminent men of that period. Hamilton, Gerry, Ellsworth, and others.

posts to be uniform; so that it seems probable that the meaning is that Congress shall have power to lay these taxes and collect them in order "to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Extent of the  
power.

The importance in the study of constitutional law of this subject of the power of taxation, as exercised by both the Federal and State governments, can hardly be overestimated. It would be curious and interesting to examine into the origin, growth, and progress of methods of taxation as a means of carrying on the business of government, but it is unnecessary to go further back than the feudal ages to note the fact that no taxes were needed then to carry on the public institutions. The monarch, king, duke, or other sovereign of a particular district or country was generally the owner of a large proportion of the soil. The men who cultivated it were his villeins, serfs, or tenants. The theory of English land tenures to-day is, that the orig-

---

<sup>1</sup> The Government of the Union is a Government of the people; it emanates from them; its powers are granted by them; and are to be exercised directly on them and for their benefit. Though limited in its powers, it is supreme within its sphere of action. If the end be legitimate, and within the scope of the Constitution, all the means which are appropriate, which are plainly adapted to that end or not prohibited, may constitutionally be employed to carry it into effect. *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316.

Congress is authorized to lay and collect taxes, etc., to pay the debts, and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States. . . . Congress is not empowered to tax for those purposes which are within the exclusive province of the States. *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 9 Wheat. 1, 199.

Taxation purely in aid of personal or private objects is beyond the legislative power and an unauthorized invasion of private right. *Loan Association v. Topeka*, 20 Wall. 655, 662.

LECTURE V.  
History of constitutional taxation.

inal title is in the king, and that everybody who has an interest in the land is a tenant. There is no such thing known in England, though it may be in some other countries, as an allodial title; that is, one which is absolute, such as we have in this country, to the ownership of the soil.<sup>1</sup> Out of this fact come many of the difficulties American students find in regard to the doctrines pertaining to estates and tenancies. Our laws have been freed from a large part of those intricacies and traditional requirements, which were the outgrowth of centuries of development among our English ancestors regarding the holding of land, but their influence still embarrasses our judicial system.

A sovereign who owned all the land of a country, and who could impose such terms as he pleased on the people who cultivated it, naturally did not need any taxes, in the ordinary use of that term. It was customary, however, to take rents, and generally services, in addition to the revenues derived by the prince from his own large domain, which was cultivated by his own servants. He was also attended by a retinue of followers, his feudatories, sub-tenants, or lords, who each had their following. War was made

---

<sup>1</sup> In England all land is held mediately or immediately of the king, and there is no allodial tenure. The greatest dominion recognized over property by the English law is expressed by the words "tenancy in fee simple." In America, however, the title of land is essentially allodial. In New York, Pennsylvania, Connecticut, Virginia, Michigan, and perhaps other States, lands have been declared to be allodial and free from every vestige of feudal tenure. 4 Kent. Com. 2.

by the prince calling on those who owed him allegiance to come forward with their followers, and by thus joining together their forces form an army with which the sovereign could take the field. Many a kingdom was won or lost by the failure of the feudatory chiefs to come forward to fight in response to such a call. Each was generally expected to bear his own expenses, while the cost of the Central Government the king paid himself. He was, indeed, but little more than a superior chief.

LECTURE V.  
History of constitutional taxation.

We cannot, however, trace the history of those customs farther at this time than to say, that the great revolution in England, by which the constitutional rights of the people were finally established, wherein Charles I lost his head and James II had to flee the country, was caused by a question of taxation. The old methods, to which reference has been made, for getting the means of maintaining the public authority had become exhausted. The king had not soil or country enough to furnish means for his proper support, and that of his government, and so he had gradually come to receive assistance from the people by the House of Commons voting him certain concessions, as they called them, out of the wealth of the country every two or three years, which was called their free offering.

Our provisions derived from England.

This was the free offering of the Commons and not of the Lords.

This fact is the origin of that provision in the Constitution of the United States declar-

LECTURE V.  
~~Our provisions~~  
derived from  
England.

ing that "all bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives" (Art. I, sec. 7, par. 1), which body, under our political system, may be compared with the English House of Commons. That more nearly representative and popular body, in comparison with the House of Lords, was very jealous of its dignity and prerogatives. The Commons, claiming to represent the people, said, in effect, that what they gave to support the government was their money; that the prince could not get it unless they voted it, and that they did not propose to allow the Lords to originate a bill declaring that they raised the money without their assistance.<sup>1</sup>

Questions growing out of taxation, the methods by which it should be levied, and its collection enforced, have always been troublesome, and they have frequently led to public disturbances and even to prolonged wars. Out of the taxation of tea, and the taxation by means of stamps, imposed upon the American Colonies by Great Britain, arose the difficulties which culminated in the revolution that secured their independence. But after a while it came to be understood, at least in all civilized nations, that government must be carried on, not by the revenue derived from the domain of the sovereign or money belonging to him, but by contri-

---

<sup>1</sup> All bills for granting money must have their beginning in the House of Commons; the Lords cannot take this object into their consideration but in consequence of a bill presented to them by the latter. De Lolme, *Constitution of England*, p. 59, ed. London, 1834.

butions from the people. A tax is a contribution, and the modern and free governments organized for the benefit of society, must depend upon them for their support. The definition by both Webster and Story is that "a tax is a contribution imposed by government on individuals for the service of the State."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Our provisions  
derived from  
England.

When, therefore, the members of the convention assembled from the various States, for the purpose of forming an organic law for the government of the new nation, which was intended to be permanent in its character, the very first power that they conferred upon Congress was that of laying and collecting taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, for the purpose (if it may be so construed) of paying the debts and providing for the common defence and general welfare. It will be observed that it does not say "all taxes," because in another clause of the same instrument it is said that "no capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration," directed to be taken. Art. I, sec. 9, par. 4. It has been a troublesome question to determine what was

---

<sup>1</sup> Taxes are defined as being the enforced proportional contribution of persons and property, levied by the authority of the State for the support of the government, and for all public needs. They are the property of the citizen, demanded and received by the government to be disposed of to enable it to carry into effect its mandates, and to discharge its manifold functions. Cooley on Taxation, 1.

The power to tax is granted for the benefit of the whole people, and none have any right to complain if the power is fairly exercised and the proceeds properly applied to discharge the obligations for which the taxes were imposed. — *North Missouri Railroad Co. v. Maguire*, 20 Wall. 46, 60.



LECTURE V.  
Our provisions  
derived from  
England.  
Capitation tax.

meant by the expression "direct taxes" as distinguished from other taxes.

A "capitation tax" is, of course, so much a head, and must be levied according to the population, as determined by the census. It can be levied in no other way. But it is not so easy to determine what is a "direct tax."

Direct tax.

The question has been before the Supreme Court of the United States several times, and has been the subject of comment in both Houses of Congress. One principle upon which all have agreed is, that a direct tax must be made upon each State in proportion to its population. When a direct tax is laid, as was done in the beginning of the late war, and was the case shortly after the organization of our Government, the amount of money to be raised is first ascertained, then the population of each State is taken, according to the last census, after which it is a simple matter of division to find out the proportion or quota due from each State. A statute is then passed, declaring that each State shall pay to the Federal Government so much money, according to their ascertained proportion of the whole amount which it is proposed to raise.

But suppose the State does not pay it? In regard to this it may be said that in all instances where a direct tax has been laid, except in the case of some of the States engaged in the late rebellion, the obligation has been promptly assumed, and each State has taken its own means of collecting the sum for which it was assessed.

This amount was then paid into the national treasury. But during that contest the States that did not sympathize with the loyal side did not want to help the Federal Government by raising money for its use. Congress, therefore, passed a law appointing commissioners, whose duty it was to go into those States as fast as they were subjugated, following up the armies, and ascertain the value of the landed estate as reported by their own tax officers. The assessment was then levied against this real property, and in many cases it was sold to pay the amount required. Growing out of these transactions extensive controversies have arisen and many suits to determine whether the provisions under which those things were done were such as to make the sales valid.

LECTURE V.  
Direct tax.

Under the provisions already quoted the question then came up as to what is a "direct tax," and also upon what property it is to be levied, as distinguished from any other tax. In regard to this it is sufficient to say that it is believed that no other than a capitation tax, of so much per head, and a land tax, is a direct tax within the meaning of the Constitution of the United States. All other taxes, except imposts, are properly called excise taxes. Direct taxes, within the meaning of the Constitution, are only capitation taxes as expressed in that instrument, and taxes on real estate.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Springer v. United States*, 102 U. S. 586.

Mr. Justice Chase said in 1796: "I am inclined to think, but of this I do not give a judicial opinion, that the direct taxes con-

LECTURE V.  
Excise tax.

A tax on incomes  
an excise tax.

An excise tax is one which is assessed upon some article of personal property, or money, or something which is exhausted in the use. It is one which from its essence and nature must be paid in fact by the buyer, or the last man who buys and uses the property, because whoever has it at the time when the tax is levied upon it adds that amount to the selling price when he comes to dispose of it, until the property is consumed. It is a tax upon consumption. It was at one time doubted by some whether the late income tax was an excise or a direct tax, and a case to test this question was taken to the Supreme Court of the United States. It was, however, abandoned. It is now entirely clear that the former view was the correct one, and that the amount assessed upon incomes was in the nature of an excise tax.

The next words of the phrase under discussion are "duties, imposts, and excises."<sup>1</sup> The first

---

templated by the Constitution, are only two; namely, the capitation or poll tax, simply without regard to property, profession, or any other circumstance; and a tax on land. I doubt whether a tax by a general assessment of personal property within the United States is included within the term direct taxes." The same opinion was expressed by Mr. Justice Paterson. In that case it was decided that a tax on carriages was not a direct tax. *Hylton v. United States*, 3 Dall. 171, 175.

A tax on the income of an insurance company has been held not to be a direct tax, but a duty or excise. *Pacific Ins. Co. v. Soule*, 7 Wall. 433, 444.

A tax of ten per centum upon the circulation of State banks was held not to be a direct tax. *Veazie Bank v. Fenno*, 8 Wall. 533.

<sup>1</sup> Paterson, J., said: "What is the natural and common or technical and appropriate meaning of the words duty and excise, it is not easy to ascertain. They present no clear and precise idea to the mind. Different persons will annex different significations to the terms." *Hylton v. United States*, 3 Dall. 171, 176.

two, so far as this Constitution is concerned, may be considered as implying the same thing, except that the word "imposts" means more properly a duty or tax upon goods imported from abroad, whereas there might be exports, a tax upon which would be a duty. The Constitution, however, in another place forbids the Federal Government levying any tax or duty upon articles exported from any State (Art. I, sec. 9, par. 5.), so that there can be no tax upon exports, and the words "duties" and "imposts" practically mean the same thing.

LECTURE V.  
A tax on incomes  
an excise tax.

"All duties, imposts, and excises," or all taxes that are not direct, are required to be "uniform throughout the United States." What is meant by that word "uniform" has become a matter of very great importance, because the States have begun, of late years, to adopt that principle in their constitutions, and to require that their taxes shall be levied with regard to the restriction of uniformity. So that the question has frequently arisen as to what was a proper definition of that term.

Uniformity of  
taxation.

Does it mean that all property that is taxed shall be at the same rate or ratio? That would perhaps be a natural inference at first thought. That is, if horses, wagons, and land are taxed, then the same per cent of value must be assessed upon the horses and wagons as upon the land. The result of this principle would be that, as a very heavy rate is imposed upon whiskey, any other article upon which it is thus proposed to raise a revenue would have to be taxed in the

LECTURE V.  
Uniformity of  
taxation.

same high proportion. This rate has frequently been as much as two hundred per cent of its original value — much larger than most articles could bear.

The greater part of the money that is raised to support the Government by taxation is raised by duties upon imports from abroad. But the articles which are imported are taxed very differently. For example, silk may be taxed at sixty cents on the dollar of its value. Coffee may be taxed ten cents on the dollar of its value. Are these uniform? If they are not, then very few of our tax laws are valid.

We are, however, relieved from any difficulty in regard to that question, by the peculiar language in which the provision is stated, "but all taxes, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States." They are not required to be uniform as between the different articles that are taxed, but uniform as between the different places and different States. Whiskey, for instance, shall not be taxed any higher in the State of Illinois, or Kentucky, where so much of that article is produced, than it is in Pennsylvania. The tax must be uniform on the particular article; and it is uniform within the meaning of the constitutional requirement if it is made to bear the same percentage over all the United States.

That is manifestly the meaning of this word, as used in this clause. The framers of the Constitution could not have meant to say that the Government, in raising its revenues, should not

be allowed to discriminate between the articles which it should tax.

LECTURE V.  
Uniformity of  
taxation.

This conclusion has come to be accepted as the well-settled construction of this clause in regard to uniformity, and it bothers the State authorities now more than the Federal officers. The people in the States are every day resisting the collection of taxes, upon the ground that they are not uniform, although imposed under their own statutes. The better opinion seems to be that what is meant by the use of that term in such statutes is not uniformity as to place. They operate only upon one State, and when they use the words "taxes must be uniform," they mean uniform with regard to the subject of the tax.

This has been productive of some trouble. A State might wish to tax whiskey and tobacco higher than a man's plough or corn-field; and this might be prevented by confining the meaning of this language within too narrow bounds. The difficulties in the way of this construction have, however, been very largely obviated by the meaning of the word "uniform," which has been adopted, holding that the uniformity must refer to articles of the same class. That is, different articles may be taxed at different amounts, provided the rate is uniform on the same class everywhere, with all people, and at all times.

Take, for instance, the case of a license. If everybody in any particular class is required to pay a certain license, — if all lawyers are taxed \$25 a year, if all merchants are taxed \$100 a

LECTURE V.  
Uniformity of  
taxation.

year, if all saloon-keepers are taxed \$200 a year, — then it is uniform, because it imposes the same burden upon every man of the same class, and who comes within the circle of its well-defined limits. This interpretation may be a little strained, but probably it has arisen from the necessity of enabling the Legislature to levy taxes according to common sense, if not altogether with regard to strict uniformity.

Limits of the tax-  
ing power.

One of the most interesting, as well as important, of the branches into which this subject naturally divides, is that in regard to the limits of the taxing power. In this country it is everywhere accompanied by the necessity that the tax shall be imposed for a public use. No State government, nor that of the United States, nor any other authority professing a regard for the rights of the people, is at liberty to take money out of their pockets for any other than a public purpose. Whenever it can be discovered that a tax is levied for something that cannot properly be called such, it may be successfully resisted by all the measures that the law allows in courts of justice.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> "The power to tax is the strongest and most pervading of all the powers of government, reaching directly or indirectly to all classes of people. It was said by Chief Justice Marshall, in the case of *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316, 431, that the power to tax is the power to destroy. A striking instance of the truth of the proposition is seen in the fact that the existing tax of ten per cent imposed by the United States on the circulation of all other banks than the national banks, drove out of existence every State bank of circulation within a year or two after its passage. This power can as readily be employed against one class of individuals and in favor of another, so as to ruin the one class and give unlim-

It is very difficult in a general way, in a government like ours, to say in any particular instance where an act of Congress has authorized a certain tax to be levied, under which any money has been collected, paid into the treasury of the United States, and distributed under other acts of the legislative branch by its proper officials, has been levied or collected for any other than a public use. Sometimes the use may not be approved by sound public sentiment; nevertheless it is necessary to give the legislative body the benefit of the presumption that they acted in the exercise of a reasonable discretion, when they profess to have levied the tax for a public purpose.

LECTURE V.  
Taxes levied for  
public uses.

In some cases, however, States, counties, and municipalities, which have a subordinate right of taxation, have so far departed from that principle that taxes levied by them have been enjoined. Perhaps the greatest number of contests which have originated in regard to this subject have had relation to taxes imposed for the purpose of assisting in the construction of railroads.

ited wealth and prosperity to the other, if there is no implied limitation of the uses for which the power may be exercised. To lay with one hand the power of the Government on the property of the citizen, and with the other to bestow it upon favored individuals to aid private enterprises and build up private fortunes, is none the less a robbery because it is done under the forms of law and is called taxation. This is not legislation. It is a decree under legislative forms. . . . We have established, we think beyond cavil, that there can be no lawful tax which is not laid for a public purpose." *Loan Association v. Topeka*, 20 Wall. 655, 664.

Taxes are burdens or charges imposed by the Legislature upon persons or property to raise money for public purposes. Cooley on Constitutional Limitations, 479.



**LECTURE V.**  
**Taxes levied for**  
**public uses.**

If a private individual should ask the municipality of Washington to levy a tax to enable him to build a road from his house out to the Soldier's Home, in the outskirts of the city, which, when completed, should belong to him, and across which he could put up gates at any time at his own pleasure, everybody would see at once that it was not for public but for private use. There is not a judge in the District of Columbia who would not enjoin the collection of a tax so assessed and levied upon the people.

On the other hand, a tax levied to keep up the streets and roads in the city and county, which everybody travels and uses, is a tax for a public use; and although there has been a great deal of litigation in the courts for the purpose of getting rid of these taxes, and stubborn resistance made to their collection, yet it has been upon the ground of their alleged inequality or improper levy or assessment; not that the Government had not the authority to levy them for such public thoroughfares.

**Municipal tax-**  
**ation.**

But the main difficulty arises when we come to the case of a corporation, which has built a road by the expenditure of its own funds. That road so built belongs to it, and it has a right to compel everybody who travels over it or uses it to pay for such service or privilege. This fare which it receives is its compensation therefor, and goes into its hands for its own purposes, whether it be large or small in amount. It is true that the property which has thus come into existence belongs to the corporation in one sense,

and yet in another it is one in which the public have an interest. The people, by whom the right to construct such a road must first have been granted, are entitled to its use as a highway under reasonable regulations for the protection of the rights of all persons concerned. The corporation cannot refuse to carry any person who properly presents himself to be carried. It must maintain the usual and suitable means of doing a carrying business. It is generally authorized to exercise the right of eminent domain in order to acquire the land on which its road may be built, and although it must pay a reasonable compensation therefor, yet it is a public function which cannot be exercised unless it be authorized by some constitutional provision or the act of some legislative body. It is, therefore, said in some senses to be a public body, and proposals to take stock in it by a State or a county are one of the great sources from which controversies arise.

LECTURE V.  
Municipal taxation.

Many such political bodies, in their great enthusiasm for public improvements, have overburdened themselves with obligations for the purpose of assisting in the construction of railroads, which they afterwards found it almost impossible to meet when the day of payment arrived. So they sometimes attempted, more or less directly, to repudiate these debts, and one of the ways in which they tried to do this was by alleging that the assessment of a tax for their liquidation was void, because it was not for a public purpose.

LECTURE V.  
Municipal taxation.

They said, in effect, that the corporation received their money, collected its tolls, and appropriated the profits growing out of its business to its own private uses, such as the payment of dividends to its stockholders, or the improvement of its plant. On the other hand, the municipal body alleged that the road could not have been built without the power of eminent domain, and even when it was built it was not permitted to retain absolute control of its management; that it was subjected to certain regulations as to the carriage and accommodation of passengers, as well as its rates therefor, and could not reject one man and carry another at its own pleasure, and that it was also bound to keep its road in good order; that it was not, in fact, for all purposes private property, but possessing a public character was subject to public supervision.<sup>1</sup>

It is now pretty well settled that building a railroad with money collected by taxation, by a State, county, or town, is an appropriation of such a tax for a public use, and therefore a law imposing or authorizing it is valid. On the other hand, a contribution to build a saw mill, or a steam mill, or anything of that kind, was not made for a public use, and a tax levied for such purpose was void.<sup>2</sup> The same question has also been discussed and decided in several other similar cases. "It must be for a public object,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Pittsburgh & Connellsville Railroad Co. v. Southwestern Pennsylvania Railway Co.*, 77 Penn. St. 173.

<sup>2</sup> *Loan Association v. Topeka*, 20 Wall. 655.

clearly superior and paramount, or to which preference is expressly given by law or the Constitution, in order to make the right clear to seize and condemn land.”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Municipal taxation.

The United States being a limited form of government, one of the restrictions to which it is subject is in regard to its power to levy taxes. The States may levy them for a great many purposes for which Congress cannot, because to the States belong all of the powers not delegated to Congress.<sup>2</sup> Hence, while the Constitution of the United States has nowhere been amended by any limitation of its taxing power, there has scarcely been a State constitutional convention in half a century that has not imposed some restriction upon the power of the State to levy taxes.

There is, also, another matter concerning this power of taxation that deserves attention. It will be noted that the Constitution of the United States has placed several limitations upon the general power, and that some of them are implied. One of its provisions is that neither the President of the United States (Art. II, sec. 1, par. 6), nor a judge of the Supreme or inferior courts (Art. III, sec. 1), shall have his salary diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, or during his continuance in office. It is very clear that when Congress, during the late war, levied an income tax, and

Limitations of  
taxing power of  
Congress.

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Chicago*, 7 How. 185, 195. See also *Pumpelly v. Green Bay Co.*, 13 Wall. 166.

<sup>2</sup> Art. X, Amendments to Constitution.

LECTURE V.  
Limitations of  
taxing power of  
Congress.

placed it as well upon the salaries of the President and the judges of the courts as those of other people, that it was a diminution of them to just that extent.

The judges were patriotic, however, and did not raise the question, although Chief Justice Taney filed with the Clerk of the Supreme Court an opinion stating that it was unconstitutional and ought not to be paid. Yet everybody did pay their taxes, and possibly they could not have helped themselves if they had tried, because the accounting officers would have deducted the amount of the tax from the salary before paying it. Even after the war this tax of five per cent upon these salaries was deducted and paid. But about that period Mr. Boutwell, who was then Secretary of the Treasury, of his own accord took up the question, investigated it, and came to the conclusion that this tax was void so far as these officers were concerned. He, therefore, returned the money to the President and to each of the judges, which had been paid under that statute, and this they naturally thought was a very fair judicial construction of the constitutional provisions relating to that subject.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> A tax upon the salary of an officer, to be deducted from what would otherwise be payable as salary, is a diminution of his compensation; and in the cases of the President and judges of the Supreme Court and inferior courts of the United States, such diminution would fall within the prohibition of the Constitution, if the act levying the tax was enacted during the official term of the President or of the judge affected thereby. See Opinion of Attorney General Hoar, October 23, 1869, 13 Opinions Attorneys General, 161.

But it is also well settled that an act reducing the compensation

But the main limitations upon the power of taxation, found in the Constitution of the United States, are upon the States. One of these is that "no State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws." Art. I, sec. 10, par. 2.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Limitations on  
taxing power of  
the States.

The several States just after the close of the Revolutionary War commenced with almost a fury to tax everything belonging to any other State that came within their jurisdiction, and what is known as the commerce clause of the Constitution, which declares that "Congress shall have power to regulate commerce with foreign nations and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes," was the result of the necessity of preventing each individual State from embroiling itself in all sorts of quarrels in regard to its commercial relations with its neigh-

---

or salary of a statutory officer is valid in the absence of any constitutional prohibition, although he may have entered upon his term of service, and that such an act violates no contract rights. That there is no express or implied contract for the permanence of the salary, is shown by the constitutional provision making an exception of certain officials, such as the judges. Cases cited in Black on Constitutional Prohibitions, §§ 96, 97, pp. 116, 117. But after services have been rendered under a law, resolution or ordinance, which fixes the rate of compensation, there arises an implied contract to pay for this service at that rate. This contract is a completed contract. Its obligation is perfect and rests on the remedies which the law itself gives for its enforcement. *Fisk v. Jefferson Police Jury*, 116 U. S. 131.

<sup>1</sup> It is well settled that the States cannot exercise this authority in respect to any of the instrumentalities which the General Government may create for the performance of its constitutional functions. *Austin v. Aldermen*, 7 Wall. 694, 699.

LECTURE V.  
Limitations on  
taxing power of  
the States.

bors, and going on to pass statutes levying taxes of one kind or another upon everything brought within its borders. The result of this course would have been clearly disastrous to the whole people, as well as to the Federal Government that it was proposed to erect, in place of the Confederation under which the Colonies had emerged from the perils of war.<sup>1</sup>

The additional restriction relating to this subject, besides that found in the commerce clause, is that above quoted, prohibiting any State, without the consent of Congress, from laying any imposts or duties on imports or exports. This language implies that they may do it if Congress consents. Such exceptions granted by that body have been of rare occurrence. In the early days there were a few statutes passed, giving the consent of Congress to the imposition of limited duties in order to enable the States to improve their harbors.

The same clause of the Constitution also excepts by its specific terms such as may be absolutely necessary for executing the inspection laws of the particular State, but that has never amounted to much, and the only question of any importance that has ever arisen about the taxa-

---

<sup>1</sup> The author of the *Federalist*, No. 7, refers to the situation of New York, as compared with that of Connecticut and New Jersey, as affording an example of the opportunities which some States had of rendering others tributary by commercial regulations; and said that New York would neither be willing nor able to forego the advantage of levying duties on importations, a large part of which must necessarily be paid by the individuals of the other two States in the capacity of consumers.

tion of imports or exports has been whether the words applied to articles carried between the States.

LECTURE V.  
Limitations on  
taxing power of  
the States.

It has been held<sup>1</sup> that the word "imports," as used in this clause, did not apply to articles imported or transported from one State into another, and that they were not imports or exports within the meaning of the Constitution; that it only referred to articles imported from foreign countries into the United States. The latter was a case in which Alabama had passed a statute taxing all the whiskey imported into the State. It was insisted that it was an import, and consequently its tax in that way was forbidden by the clause now under discussion. The court, however, held that it was not an import, and the tax was not void for that reason. A similar tax for the same rate or amount had been levied upon all whiskey produced in Alabama, and the statute was, therefore, not void because there was no discrimination against the commerce of any other State.

Imports.

An important question was also raised in the Supreme Court of the United States in regard to the cotton tax. During the war a tax was imposed upon that staple, and about twenty millions of dollars were raised by its means. Its collection was resisted on the ground that it was a tax upon exports, and the argument was that, as four-fifths of all the cotton raised in the country was in fact exported, therefore a tax on

The cotton tax.

<sup>1</sup> *Woodruff v. Parham*, 8 Wall. 123; *Hinson v. Lott*, 8 Wall. 148.



LECTURE V.  
The cotton tax.

cotton was necessarily a tax on exports. The argument on the other side was that when the cotton was actually exported, then any amount levied upon it would be a tax upon exports, but that it could not be assumed that all the cotton raised in this country was to be exported.

Tax on interstate  
commerce.

The Supreme Court was divided upon that question, and it stood in that way until the October Term, 1885,<sup>1</sup> when the subject was again discussed, and the following language used: —

“Goods, the product of a State, intended for exportation to another State, are liable to taxation as part of the general mass of property of the State of their origin, until actually started in course of transportation to the State of their destination, or delivered to a common carrier for that purpose; the carrying of them to, and depositing them at, a depot for the purpose of transportation is no part of that transportation.

“When goods, the product of a State, have begun to be transported from that State to another State, and not till then, they have become the subjects of interstate commerce, and, as such, are subject to national regulation, and cease to be taxable by the State of their origin.”

This principle was afterwards reasserted and affirmed.<sup>2</sup>

There is another restriction of the same class that may be noted in this connection, and which has been the subject of a great deal of comment in the Supreme Court of the United States. It

---

<sup>1</sup> *Coe v. Errol*, 116 U. S. 517.

<sup>2</sup> *Turpin v. Burgess*, 117 U. S. 504.

is to be found in the following language: "No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage." Art. I, sec. 10, par. 3. LECTURE V.  
Tax on interstate  
commerce.

The meaning of this expression, as may be gathered from the numerous decisions in that court, undoubtedly is, that vessels coming from abroad, or engaged in navigation among the States, or even if plying entirely within the boundaries of and owned by citizens of a single State, shall not be taxed, as vessels, for the privilege of navigating the inland waters of the country, or coming into any of its ports. In *State Tonnage Tax Cases*,<sup>1</sup> the court held that "although taxes levied, as on property, by a State, upon vessels owned by its citizens, and based on a valuation of the same, are not prohibited by the Federal Constitution, yet taxes cannot be imposed on them by the State at so much per ton of registered tonnage." Such taxes are within the prohibition of the clause under consideration. Tonnage tax.

The word "tonnage" was used by the framers of the Constitution, because at that day and time it was the customary mode of measuring the value of a ship. A vessel was said to be of so many tons burden, which meant that it was worth so much money, carried so much freight, and, therefore, the method generally adopted of imposing a tax upon its tonnage was the readiest way to fix the amount which that species of property should pay. But the Constitution forbids any tonnage tax, and so the Supreme Court

---

<sup>1</sup> 12 Wall. 204.

LECTURE V.  
Tonnage tax.

has been called upon over and over again to decide what that means.

After much discussion it has about settled down to mean this: that if a man living in Louisiana owns a steamboat, it is liable to be taxed like any other property that he may possess there, and if a tax is levied upon it, measured by its capacity, which is called tonnage, that is not a tonnage tax. But when a vessel enters the port of New Orleans from abroad, or from some point up the river, and lands at a wharf, or moors out in the middle of the stream, and the city or State demands that it shall pay a tax for every time that is done, it is in fact a tonnage tax within the meaning of the constitutional provision, because it is a tax on the privilege of navigating the river and entering the harbor. It cannot be evaded by not measuring it by the ton, or by calling it by some other name. A reasonable charge may be made for services actually rendered,<sup>1</sup> but this great privilege of the

---

<sup>1</sup> "A charge for services rendered, or for conveniences provided, is in no sense a tax or a duty. It is not a hindrance or impediment to free navigation. The prohibition to the State against the imposition of a duty of tonnage was designed to guard against local hindrances to trade and carriage by vessels, not to relieve them from liability to claims for assistance rendered and facilities furnished for trade and commerce. It is a tax or a duty that is prohibited: something imposed by virtue of sovereignty, not claimed in right of proprietorship. Wharfage is of the latter character. Providing a wharf to which vessels may make fast, or at which they may conveniently load or unload, is rendering them a service. . . . What was intended by the second clause of the tenth section of the first article was to protect the freedom of commerce and nothing more, . . . and therefore the prohibition should be so construed as to carry out that intent." *Packet Co. v. Keokuk*, 95 U. S. 80, 84, 87.

In a later case the Supreme Court said that a duty of tonnage is

free navigation by all persons of the waters of this country is thus secured against interference on the part of the individual States of the Union.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Tonnage tax.

In a recent case decided in 1886,<sup>2</sup> may be found a full review of all the principal cases upon this subject, together with a full exposition of the doctrines upon which this clause of the Constitution rests. The State of Louisiana had required by a statute that each vessel passing a quarantine station should pay a certain fee for examination as to her sanitary condition. This was held to be a part of the quarantine system, and a compensation for services rendered to the vessel, and not a tax within the meaning

---

a charge for the privilege of entering or trading or lying in a port or harbor, while wharfage is a charge for the use of a wharf. They are not the same thing. *Transportation Co. v. Parkersburg*, 107 U. S. 691.

The fact that the rates of wharfage charged are graduated by the size or tonnage of the vessel is of no consequence, and does not make it a duty of tonnage in the sense of the Constitution and the acts of Congress. *Cannon v. New Orleans*, 20 Wall. 577; *Packet Co. v. Catlettburg*, 105 U. S. 559.

<sup>1</sup> The State of Illinois legislated for the construction of locks on the Illinois River, and created a Board of Commissioners who prescribed certain tolls for the passage of vessels, which were fixed at so much per ton according to the tonnage measurement of the vessels and the freight carried. The court held that this was simply a mode of fixing the rate according to the size of the vessel and the amount of property carried, and was in no sense a duty of tonnage within the prohibition of the Constitution. It said: "A duty of tonnage within the meaning of the Constitution is a charge upon a vessel, according to its tonnage, as an instrument of commerce, for entering or leaving a port, or navigating the public waters of the country; and the prohibition was designed to prevent the States from imposing hindrances of this kind to commerce carried on by vessels." *Huse v. Glover*, 119 U. S. 543, 549.

<sup>2</sup> *Morgan's Steamship Co. v. Louisiana Board of Health*, 118 U. S. 455.

LECTURE V.  
Tonnage tax.

## Implied limitations to the taxing power.

of the Constitution concerning tonnage taxes imposed by the States.

In addition to the specific restrictions which are fixed by constitutional or statutory authority, there are implied limitations upon the power of taxation which grow out of the nature of things. It was a terse statement of a great truth which was made by Chief Justice Marshall in the great case, in regard to the United States Bank,<sup>1</sup> that the power to tax, where unlimited, involves the power to destroy. This may at first appear to have been a rather strong statement, but it was not. Any government or municipality possessing unlimited power to tax any property, any business, or any man, can drive that property, that business, or man out of the community. This is true, because it can make the tax equal to all that he earns, or all that he is capable of earning, or equal to all the property that he has. So that the Chief Justice was not stating it too strongly when he said that the unlimited power of taxation was the power to destroy.<sup>2</sup>

This expression was used in reference to the United States Bank, when the State of Maryland undertook to tax its circulation; for if the State could tax that part of its business at all, it could drive the bank out of the State, at least so far as circulation was concerned. Then if the State taxed the circulation, it could tax the deposits

---

<sup>1</sup> *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316.

<sup>2</sup> The right of taxation, where it exists, is necessarily unlimited in its nature. It carries with it inherently the power to embarrass and destroy." *Austin v. Aldermen*, 7 Wall. 694, 699.

of the bank, and could thus force it to withdraw entirely from its jurisdiction. That was one of the great cases arising early in the history of the establishment of our institutions, in which very important constitutional questions came up for consideration, which it was essential to the future peace and prosperity of the country, as well as to insure the perpetuity of the new Government, then only in its experimental stage, should be wisely and permanently settled. It was decided in that case, that the State had no power to tax the bank, because it was the instrument of the United States, and a State could not tax anything which the United States required for its use in the administration of the Government, or "any of the constitutional means employed by the Government of the Union to execute its constitutional powers."<sup>1</sup>

It was also held that the bonds of the United States could not be taxed, such a power being inconsistent with the constitutional power of the Government to borrow money, as enabling the State to exclude such securities from its markets.<sup>2</sup> So they are not taxed to-day, and cannot be taxed by a State, even indirectly by a tax on valuation.<sup>3</sup> So also of United States notes,

LECTURE V.  
Implied limitations to the taxing power.

Income from bonds of the United States not taxable by States.

<sup>1</sup> See *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316. The principle of exemption is, that the State cannot control the National Government within the sphere of its constitutional powers, for there it is supreme, and cannot tax its obligations for payment of money issued for purposes within that range of powers, because such taxation necessarily implies the assertion of the right to exercise such control.

<sup>2</sup> *Bank of Commerce v. New York*, 2 Black, 620.

<sup>3</sup> *Bank Tax Case*, 2 Wall. 200.

LECTURE V.  
Income from  
bonds of the  
United States not  
taxable by States.  
Salaries of United  
States officers not  
taxable by States.

although issued as currency, they are yet national obligations and exempt from State taxation.<sup>1</sup>

Neither can any State authority tax the salaries or emoluments of officers of the United States,<sup>2</sup> or of any of the institutions now called national banks; but Congress put into their charters, originally, a provision permitting the shares to be taxed, at the home of the person who owned them, by including them in the valuation of the personal property of the person or corporation to whom they belonged, at the place where the bank was located. (An act to provide a national currency, secured by a pledge of the United States bonds, and to provide for the circulation and redemption thereof. Approved June 3, 1864.<sup>3</sup>) To guard against the destruction of the banks, however, by the States, or unjust discrimination even in the exercise of that privilege, it was declared by that statute that such taxes shall not exceed the rates imposed upon the shares in any of the banks organized under the authority of the State

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bank of New York v. Supervisors*, 7 Wall. 26.

Chief Justice Marshall said: "The tax on Government stock is thought, by this court, to be a tax on the contract, a tax on the power to borrow money on the credit of the United States, and consequently repugnant to the Constitution." *Weston v. City of Charleston*, 2 Pet. 449, 469.

<sup>2</sup> The compensation of an officer of the United States is fixed by a law made by Congress. It is in its exclusive discretion to declare what shall be given, and any law of a State imposing a tax upon the office, diminishing the recompense, is in conflict with the law of the United States which secures the allowance to the officer. *Dobbins v. Erie County Commissioners*, 16 Pet. 435.

<sup>3</sup> 13 Stat. c. 105, § 41, pp. 99, 112.

where such association was located, or upon other moneyed capital in the hands of individuals.

LECTURE V.  
Salaries of United  
States officers not  
taxable by States.

The shareholder is thus protected from undue impositions by providing that everybody else, under like circumstances, must be taxed as much as he is, or in the same proportion. This is fully considered in *McCulloch v. Maryland*, *supra*.<sup>1</sup> See also *Osborn v. United States Bank*,<sup>2</sup> and the case of *Weston v. Charleston*, *supra*,<sup>3</sup> in which the city council of Charleston undertook to tax Government bonds in the hands of some of its citizens. It was there held that this could not be done, because "the American people have conferred the power of borrowing money on the Government, and by making that Government supreme, have shielded its action in the exercise of that power, from the action of the local governments. The grant of the power, and the declaration of supremacy, is a declaration that no such distraining or controlling power shall be exercised."

A great many decisions have been made to settle this doctrine. The States have been fertile in constantly devising many means to tax banks, if possible, and the recent volumes of reports of the Supreme Court are full of cases having relation to such attempts, and the discussions which they have elicited. One case which may be referred to in this connection is that of the *People v. Weaver*.<sup>4</sup> The State of New York passed a

<sup>1</sup> 4 Wheat. 316.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Pet. 449.

<sup>3</sup> 9 Wheat. 738.

<sup>4</sup> 100 U. S. 539.



LECTURE V.  
Salaries of United  
States officers not  
taxable by States.

law declaring that whenever a man listed his personal property for taxation, he might except out of it an amount equal to all the debts he owed, which should not be taxed. The Legislature then passed another law stating that the first should not apply to shares of national banks. This the courts held to be unconstitutional. If the owner of one or more shares in a national bank was not to be allowed to deduct what he owed from the amount of his taxable property, in which those shares were included, then other persons could not be allowed to take out what they owed in the taxation of their personal property.

Indiana unsuccessfully tried the same thing,<sup>1</sup> and there have been many attempts by different States to tax banks in violation of this clause of the Constitution, and of the statutes of the United States. See also *Cummings v. The Merchants' National Bank*.<sup>2</sup>

Tax upon travelers.

There is another rather curious instance where the States have been forbidden, by the decisions of the courts, to use the power of taxation. It was first discussed in the case of *Crandall v. Nevada*,<sup>3</sup> where the principle was declared that every man in this broad country had a right to travel all over it, for purposes of business or pleasure, regardless of State lines, and that no state could levy a tax upon him for that privilege. The State of Nevada attempted to compel certain transportation companies within its

<sup>1</sup> *Evansville Bank v. Britton*, 105 U. S. 322.    <sup>2</sup> 101 U. S. 153.

<sup>3</sup> 6 Wall. 35.

boundaries to make a report of every passenger that they carried through the State, for each of which they were required to pay one dollar. Of course this was practically a tax upon the passenger, because it was simply added to his fare by the companies. In one instance the payment was resisted, and the matter came up in the usual way to the Supreme Court of the United States, where the statute was declared to be unconstitutional and void. If this had been the extent of the effect of the declaration of this principle, it would have been comparatively unimportant, for the total amount collected by the State of Nevada was not very large; but it so transpired that the State of New Jersey had been for many years collecting a similar tax upon every passenger who passed through that State on a railroad, and as the traffic was very heavy the amount was correspondingly important, almost enough in fact to pay the expenses of the State government. But that tax collapsed with the announcement of that decision, and no attempt has been made to collect it since.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Another question which has been the subject of contention was whether the legislature of a State could so relinquish the right to impose taxes on property within its jurisdiction that it could not be revoked by a future one. One of the first cases in which this was considered was *State of New Jersey v. Wilson*, 7 Cranch, 164, holding that a legislative act declaring certain lands which should be purchased for the Indians should not, thereafter, be subject to any tax, constituted a contract which could not be rescinded by a subsequent legislative act. Bradley, J., in *Given v. Wright*, 117 U. S. 648, 655, says that the Supreme Court does not feel disposed to question that decision, although it was held that by acquiescence

**LECTURE V.** for a long period the right to the privilege might be lost. But this construction will be taken strictly against the grantee.  
**Tax upon travelers.**

The power of taxation is an attribute of sovereignty and is essential to every independent government. The whole community is interested in retaining it undiminished, and has a right to insist that its abandonment ought not to be presumed in a case in which the deliberate purpose of the State to abandon it does not appear. *Delaware Railroad Tax*, 18 Wall. 206. An illustration of this rule is found in *Vicksburg &c. Railroad Co. v. Dennis*, 116 U. S. 665, where the road and fixtures of the company, by its charter, were exempt from taxation for ten years after its completion, but this was held not to exempt the road and fixtures from taxation *before* its completion.

To support the exemption, there must be an adequate consideration, otherwise it is a mere spontaneous concession on the part of the legislature, not constituting a contract, and may be revoked at will. *Rector of Christ's Church v. County of Philadelphia*, 24 How. 300.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE V.

---

UNDER the head of the power of taxation Mr. LECTURE V. Justice Miller groups two distinct subjects in this lecture: (1) The powers confided by the Constitution to the United States; and (2) the powers which that instrument withholds from the States. He has also alluded to (3) cases in which the courts of the United States interfere to compel the imposition of local taxes in the States.

The cases under each of these heads are numerous. For many years scarcely a volume of the reports has been issued which has not contained one or more of them. Little or no good could come from an extended examination of them; indeed such an examination would be impracticable within the limits to which this note is necessarily confined. It will be sufficient to briefly refer to a few of the leading cases, some of which Mr. Justice Miller has not noticed.

### 1. *The Federal Power of Taxation.*

In an early case the question was raised whether Congress had the power to tax the District of Columbia; and it was held that the power to levy and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises was coextensive with the territory

Federal power of  
taxation.

LECTURE V.  
Federal power of  
taxation.

of the United States.<sup>1</sup> But, if a public enemy conquers and occupies a portion of the United States, the portion so occupied becomes foreign territory, so far as revenue laws are concerned; and the subsequent restoration of the authority of the United States over it does not change the character of past transactions.<sup>2</sup> On the other hand, the conquest and military occupation of foreign territory by the United States leaves it foreign country for revenue purposes.<sup>3</sup>

The exercise by Congress during the civil war of its power to impose direct taxes upon real estate within the States did not create a liability, upon the part of the States in which the land was situated, to pay the tax.<sup>4</sup> The power to tax was exercised upon the property of private individuals within the State. In the great taxation during and immediately after the civil war, questions were sometimes raised whether a particular tax was a direct tax or an impost or excise. A succession tax was held to be the latter.<sup>5</sup>

The provision that duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States is complied with if the tax operates with the same effect in all places where the subject of it is found. There is no want of uniformity simply because the thing taxed is not equally distributed in all parts of the United States.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Loughborough v. Blake*, 5 Wheat. 317.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. Rice*, 4 Wheat. 246.

<sup>3</sup> *Fleming v. Page*, 9 How. 603.

<sup>4</sup> *United States v. Louisiana*, 123 U. S. 32.

<sup>5</sup> *Scholey v. Rew*, 23 Wall. 331.

<sup>6</sup> *Head Money Cases*, 112 U. S. 580.

There are some things which are not proper subjects of Federal taxation, as, for instance, the revenues of a municipal corporation.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Federal power of  
taxation.

## 2. *Restraints upon State Taxation.*

The State can authorize the taking of individual property by taxation only for public uses and purposes. Hence it cannot confer upon its municipal corporations power to create debts to be paid by taxation, when the money is to be used for private objects.<sup>2</sup>

Restraints upon  
State power of  
taxation.

It cannot part with its general power to tax, because that power is essential to the exercise of its sovereignty and the performance of its duties. But it can by contract part with a portion of this sovereign power for a consideration which it accepts as sufficient. When, in incorporating a private corporation, the State exempts the property of the corporation from taxation, or limits the amount of taxation to be imposed upon it, subsequent legislation, imposing a higher rate of taxation than the charter permits, is invalid.<sup>3</sup> But such legislation is looked upon with jealousy, and construed strictly by the courts. The immunity will not be recognized, unless granted in terms too plain to be mistaken.<sup>4</sup> It is a privilege belonging only to the corporation named, and will not pass to its successor, unless

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Railroad Company*, 17 Wall. 322.

<sup>2</sup> *Cole v. La Grange*, 113 U. S. 1, and cases cited in the opinion.

<sup>3</sup> *New Orleans v. Houston*, 119 U. S. 265.

<sup>4</sup> *Chicago & Burlington Railroad v. Guffey*, 120 U. S. 569; *S. C.* 122 U. S. 561.

LECTURE V.  
Restraints upon  
State power of  
taxation.

the intent of the statute thereto is clear and express.<sup>1</sup>

The power of making such a contract is confined to private corporations. The power of taxation on the part of a municipal corporation is not private property, or a vested right of property in its hands. The conferring of such power is an exercise by the Legislature of a public and governmental power, which cannot be imparted in perpetuity, and is always subject to revocation, modification, and control, and is not the subject of contract.<sup>2</sup>

Real estate and personal property of the United States situated within the limits of a State;<sup>3</sup> evidences of debt issued by the United States held by a citizen of a State;<sup>4</sup> franchises conferred by Congress upon a corporation created by it, to be exercised within a State;<sup>5</sup> and agencies employed by the United States in carrying into effect the powers vested in it by the Constitution,<sup>6</sup> cannot be subjected to taxation by the States, without the consent of Congress. The State taxation of national banks, too, is con-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Morgan v. Louisiana*, 93 U. S. 217; *Wilson v. Gaines*, 103 U. S. 417; *Louisville & Nashville Railroad v. Palmes*, 109 U. S. 244; *Memphis & Little Rock Railroad v. Railroad Commissioners*, 112 U. S. 609; *Pickard v. East Tennessee, Virginia & Georgia Railroad*, 130 U. S. 637; *Yazoo & Miss. Valley Railroad v. Thomas*, 132 U. S. 174.

<sup>2</sup> *Williamson v. New Jersey*, 130 U. S. 189.

<sup>3</sup> *Van Brocklin v. Tennessee*, 117 U. S. 151; *Wisconsin Central Railroad v. Price*, 133 U. S. 496.

<sup>4</sup> *Weston v. Charleston*, 2 Pet. 449; *Bank v. Supervisors*, 7 Wall. 26.

<sup>5</sup> *California v. Central Pacific Railroad Co.*, 127 U. S. 1.

<sup>6</sup> *Osborn v. Bank of the United States*, 9 Wheat. 738.

trolled and regulated by Congress.<sup>1</sup> So, too, a State income tax cannot be imposed upon the salary of an officer of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Restraints upon  
State power of  
taxation.

The legislation of the State of Virginia, first making its consolidated bonds receivable in payment of taxes, and then repudiating that contract, has been the subject of much litigation. The cases were reviewed at length at October Term, 1889, and it was held that the statute constituted a contract between the State and the holders of bonds and coupons issued under it, which was materially impaired by the subsequent legislation; and that although no proceedings could be instituted by holders against the Commonwealth or its executive officers to control them in the exercise of their official functions, yet that, on the other hand, proceedings could not be taken on behalf of the State to molest holders on account of such taxes when payment of them had been tendered in such coupons, and the taxpayer held himself continually ready to pay them in such coupons.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> There are many cases on this point. It is sufficient to refer to *Mercantile Bank v. New York*, 121 U. S. 138, where the subject is discussed.

<sup>2</sup> *Dobbins v. Erie County*, 16 Pet. 435.

<sup>3</sup> *McGahey v. Virginia*, 135 U. S. 662. "This case, with seven others, reported under this title, grew out of the legislation of the State regarding coupons of the same character as those involved in the Virginia coupon cases. Mr. Justice Bradley, delivering the unanimous opinion of the court, after a full and exhaustive review and analysis of the decisions in those cases and others like them, presented a summary of the propositions established by those decisions, which cannot be well abridged, as follows:

"First, That the provisions of the act of 1871 constitute a contract between the State of Virginia and the lawful holders of



LECTURE V.  
Restraints upon  
State power of  
taxation.

By far the larger class of cases touching the constitutional restriction of the power of taxation in the States relates to its interference with the powers in respect of commerce which the Constitution has reposed in the Federal Government. This subject, which we shall find considered more at length when we reach the Lecture upon the Regulation of Commerce, has been also touched upon by Judge Miller in this lecture. It is necessary to add to what he has said only a reference to a few of the later cases.

The doctrine of *Brown v. Maryland*,<sup>1</sup> that a

---

the bonds and coupons issued under and in pursuance of said statute;

“Second, That the various acts of the General Assembly of Virginia passed for the purpose of restraining the use of said coupons for the payment of taxes and other dues to the State, and imposing impediments and instructions to that use, and to the proceedings instituted for establishing their genuineness, do in many respects impair the obligation of that contract, and cannot be held to be valid or binding in so far as they have that effect;

“Third, That no proceedings can be instituted by any holder of said bonds or coupons against the Commonwealth of Virginia, either directly by suit against the Commonwealth by name, or indirectly against her executive officers to control them in the exercise of their official functions as agents of the State;

“Fourth, That any lawful holder of the tax-receivable coupons of the State, issued under the act of 1871 or the subsequent act of 1879, who tenders such coupons in payment of taxes, debts, dues and demands due from him to the State, and continues to hold himself ready to tender the same in payment thereof, is entitled to be free from molestation in person or goods on account of such taxes, debts, dues or demands, and may vindicate such right in all lawful modes of redress, — by suit to recover his property, by suit against the officer to recover damages for taking it, by injunction to prevent such taking where it would be attended with irreparable injury, or by a defence to a suit brought against him for his taxes or the other claims standing against him.” Mr. Justice Lamar, in *Pennoy v. McConnaughy*, 140 U. S. 1.

<sup>1</sup> 12 Wheat. 419.

State statute, requiring all importers and dealers in imported goods to take out a license and pay a license fee therefor, is repugnant to the Constitution, and for that reason void, has been steadily followed since, and has been applied to commerce "among the several States," commonly known as interstate commerce. Below will be found references to a few of the many cases.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Restraints upon  
State power of  
taxation.

In *Philadelphia & Southern Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 122 U. S. 326, it was held that a State tax could not be constitutionally imposed upon the gross receipts of a steamship company, incorporated under its laws, which were derived from the transportation of persons and property by sea, between different States, and to and from foreign countries. In *State Freight Tax Case*, 15 Wall. 232, it was held that interstate commerce cannot be taxed at all, even though the same amount of tax should be laid on domestic commerce, or that which is carried on solely within the State. In *Welton v. Missouri*, 91 U. S. 275, it was held that a statute of Missouri which required the payment of a license tax by peddlers,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Henderson v. New York*, 92 U. S. 259; *People v. Compagnie Générale Transatlantique*, 107 U. S. 59; *Welton v. Missouri*, 91 U. S. 275; *The Passenger Cases*, 7 How. 283; *State Freight Tax*, 15 Wall. 232; *Walling v. Michigan*, 116 U. S. 446; *Philadelphia & Southern Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 122 U. S. 326; *Pensacola Telegraph Co. v. Western Union Telegraph Co.*, 96 U. S. 1; *Ratterman v. Western Union Telegraph Co.*, 127 U. S. 411; *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Alabama*, 132 U. S. 472; *Asher v. Texas*, 128 U. S. 129; *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489; *Leloup v. Port of Mobile*, 127 U. S. 640; *Corson v. Maryland*, 120 U. S. 502.

LECTURE V.  
Restraints upon  
State power of  
taxation.

peddling goods within the State, which were not its growth, produce, or manufacture, and which required no such payment and license from a person peddling within the State similar goods, the growth, produce, or manufacture of Missouri, was repugnant to the Constitution; and also that the non-exercise by Congress of its power to regulate commerce among the States was equivalent to a declaration that it should be free from restrictions. In *Asher v. Texas*, 128 U. S. 129, it was held that a State law exacting a license tax to enable a person within the State to solicit orders and make sales there for a person residing within another State was void; affirming *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489. And in *Pensacola Telegraph Co. v. Western Union Telegraph Co.*, 96 U. S. 1, affirmed and followed in several subsequent cases, it was held that a tax cannot be imposed by a State upon a telegraph company which has accepted the provisions prescribed by Congress (Rev. Stat. tit. LXV), based upon receipts derived from messages received or sent without the State.

In a recent case a New York statute essentially modifying, in the taxpayer's favor, previous laws of limitation concerning lands sold for non-payment of taxes, was attacked as unconstitutional. The new statute enacted that no action should thereafter be maintained to compel the execution or delivery of a lease upon a sale for taxes, etc., made more than eight years prior to its date, unless commenced within six months

after that date, and that, on the expiration of that six months, the lien of certificates of purchase on which no lease had been taken or no action commenced should cease and determine. It was held by the Supreme Court that there was nothing in the Constitution of the United States which prevented the Legislature of New York from prescribing a limitation for the bringing of suits where none had previously existed, or from shortening the time within which suits should be commenced to enforce existing rights under the tax sales, provided the time prescribed by the new law was a reasonable one.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE V.  
Restraints upon  
State power of  
taxation.

### 3. *Power in Federal Courts to compel Municipal Taxation in a State.*

On pages 243-246, *ante*, Mr. Justice Miller has referred to the many issues of the bonds of municipal corporations in aid of the construction of railroads and other private enterprises, which have been a fertile source of litigation during the past twenty years.

When Federal  
Courts may com-  
pel municipal  
taxation.

Although this class of cases, as a whole, in one aspect belongs to the subject treated of in Lecture XI, on the impairment of the obligation of contracts, in another and narrower relation they should be classified here.

It is now well settled that the implied power of a municipal corporation to borrow money to enable it to execute the powers expressly conferred upon it by law, if it exist at all, does

---

<sup>1</sup> *Wheeler v. Jackson*, 137 U. S. 245.

LECTURE V.  
When Federal  
Courts may com-  
pel municipal  
taxation.

not authorize it to create and issue negotiable securities, to be sold in the market, and to be taken by the purchaser freed from equities which might be set up by the maker.<sup>1</sup> Also that a grant to a municipal corporation of power to appropriate money in aid of the construction of a railroad, accompanied by a provision directing the levy and collection of taxes to meet such appropriation, and prescribing no other mode of payment, does not authorize the issuing of negotiable bonds in payment of such appropriation.<sup>2</sup>

With this class of cases, many in number, confining the power of municipal corporations in respect to the issue of negotiable securities to the powers expressly conferred upon it by statute, we have nothing to do in this connection.

There are, however, a class of cases, in which such a power was exercised by the municipality in payment of subscriptions to aid in the construction of railroads, either under an unequivocal grant from the State legislature, or under a statute of the State which, as interpreted by its highest court, contained such a grant. Bonds issued under such circumstances were widely scattered; and when default was made in their payment, suits were commenced which finally found their way to the Supreme Court. When they reached that stage, it had been developed in some of them that the highest court of the State had reversed its ruling in regard to the power of the municipality to issue such bonds, and that bonds, valid under

---

<sup>1</sup> *Merrill v. Monticello*, 138 U. S. 673, and cases there cited.

<sup>2</sup> *Concord v. Robinson*, 121 U. S. 671.

its rulings when issued, would be held invalid, if the new ruling of the same court should be followed. It also appeared that powers of municipal taxation which existed at the time of the original issue of such bonds, had been modified or changed by State legislation to the injury of the holders of such bonds.

LECTURE V.  
When Federal  
Courts may com-  
pel municipal  
taxation.

With regard to the change of ruling in the State court, the Supreme Court, by Chief Justice Waite, said : —

“Until long after the issue of the bonds now in question, the law was treated by the courts and the people as valid and constitutional. No lawyer, asked for a professional opinion on that subject, could have hesitated to say that it had been settled. It would seem as though every question, which could be raised, had in some form, directly or indirectly, been presented and decided. . . . We are, then, to consider whether, under these circumstances, we must follow the later decisions to the extent of destroying rights which have become vested under those given before. As a rule, we treat the construction which the highest court of a State has given to a statute of the State, as part of the statute, and govern ourselves accordingly; but where different constructions have been given to the same statute at different times, we have never felt ourselves bound to follow the later decisions, if thereby, contract rights, which have accrued under earlier rulings, will be injuriously affected. . . . So far as this case is concerned, we have no hesitation in saying that the rights of the

LECTURE V.  
When Federal  
Courts may com-  
pel municipal  
taxation.

parties are to be determined according to the law, as it was judicially construed to be when the bonds in question were put on the market as commercial paper."<sup>1</sup>

In regard to the legislation modifying the taxing power, it is held that, "when a contract is made with a municipal corporation, upon the faith that taxes will be levied, legislation repealing or modifying the taxing power of the corporation, so as to deprive the holder of the contract of all adequate and efficacious remedy, is within the inhibition of the Constitution:" and that "a judgment creditor of a municipal corporation, entitled by his original contract to be paid out of specific tax levies, which agreement the corporation fails to comply with, is entitled, in mandamus proceeding, to a writ ordering the levy and collection of a sufficient tax to pay his judgment according to the assessment roll of the year in which the levy was made."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Douglass v. County of Pike*, 101 U. S. 677, 685, 686, 687; *Scotland County v. Hill*, 132 U. S. 107, 112. See also *Burgess v. Seligman*, 107 U. S. 20, 33, 34, where the subject is fully considered.

<sup>2</sup> *Nelson v. St. Martin's Parish*, 111 U. S. 717. See also *United States v. Clark County*, 96 U. S. 211; *Knox County Court v. United States*, 109 U. S. 229; *Macon County v. Huidekoper*, 134 U. S. 332. In all these cases a writ of mandamus was granted. See also *United States v. Macon*, 99 U. S. 582, where one was refused.

## VI.

### NATURALIZATION AND CITIZENSHIP.<sup>1</sup>



ARTICLE I, SECTION 8, PARAGRAPH 4. The Congress shall have Power . . . to establish a uniform Naturalization rule of Naturalization . . . throughout the United States.

ARTICLE IV, SECTION 2. The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

ARTICLE XIV OF THE AMENDMENTS, SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States. . . .

LAST evening we took up the first clause of section 8 of Article I of the Constitution of the United States, which has reference to taxation. This evening I will call your attention to the fourth clause, which is as follows: "To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies, throughout the United States."

Naturalization is the process by which a citizen, or subject of a foreign nation or kingdom, is made a citizen of the United States.

Definition of  
naturalization.

---

<sup>1</sup> This is Lecture V of the Lectures delivered before the classes of the University Law School.



LECTURE VI.  
Definition of  
naturalization.

It is evident that the Constitutional Convention thought that it was important that this process should be placed under the exclusive control of the Federal Government and not of the States. There are certain rights, privileges, and duties belonging to a citizen of a State, which do not belong to a foreigner resident within the State. Among these it is said that allegiance and protection are correlative obligations. If you are a citizen or subject of a country (and I employ the words "citizen" and "subject" as they are distinctively used in monarchical countries, the former being more commonly used to designate the relation where free or republican institutions exist, and the latter where a monarchy is established), then, in either instance, there are the correlative obligations between yourself on the one side, and the government or the monarch on the other. The citizen or subject owes allegiance, which signifies the loyal devotion and support due from him to the government under which he lives; and, in return, that government owes him protection in a great many ways, too numerous for me to undertake to detail at this time. Naturalization, then, is the process of conferring on, or imparting to, a foreigner, who does not yet owe that allegiance, and who has no right to that protection, the right to protection, and the obligations of allegiance.

Citizenship of the  
United States.

Before you can understand what a man gets by being naturalized in this country, you must have an idea of what it is to be a citizen. Citi-

zenship in the United States was for many years a thing of very imperfect definition. The term occurs several times in the Constitution, in which citizens of the different States, as well as of the United States, are spoken of. It long remained a matter of considerable doubt what constituted citizenship of the United States. It was maintained by many statesmen, up to the time of the adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment, that there was no such distinctive character as "a citizen of the United States;" that, on the contrary, the designation of "a citizen of a State" had been long known and understood, and as such, and by virtue of that fact, the person was a citizen of the United States. But that, you will at once see, left out all the good people who lived in the District of Columbia, for they were not citizens of any State; and it also left out all the residents of the Territories, for they were citizens of no State. It was also asserted that it left out, and probably it did, all the Indians in this country, whether connected with some tribe or not; and the statesmen who lived in the slave-holding States vehemently maintained that it left out as well all the slaves. Possibly it was true; I am not prepared to say; but they also insisted that it left out all the free colored population.

In various ways it became a matter of considerable consequence whether that view was to be generally accepted. For instance, if a citizen of the District of Columbia, or a negro, while travelling abroad, was arrested by a foreign govern-

LECTURE VI.  
Citizenship of the  
United States.

**LECTURE VI.**  
**Citizenship of the**  
**United States.**

ment, and appealed to this Government for protection as a citizen of the United States, the foreign power could reply that he was not such a citizen, and could not assert the same rights as if he were a white man, a citizen of a State, and therefore a citizen of the United States. Among the good as well as evil things that the late rebellion has brought about, is a constitutional definition of this word "citizen." It is impossible to get a clear idea of what naturalization means without knowing what citizenship is; and I will therefore turn your attention to the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States, where that term is now clearly defined, and its meaning placed beyond all question. This it was intended to do, as well as to put at rest the question of the civil status of the negro.

**The Fourteenth**  
**Amendment.**

This amendment is divided into several sections, the first of which relates to this subject.

"Sec. 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws."

Looking at that section critically, you will see that citizenship of the United States and citizenship of a State are distinctly spoken of as sepa-

rate things, although the mode of ascertaining who is a citizen of the United States is to some extent through citizenship of a State. It is not necessary, however, that a man should be a citizen of a State in order to be a citizen of the United States. If he is born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to its jurisdiction, he is a citizen of the United States, and being such a citizen he is, by virtue of the clause above quoted, necessarily a citizen of the State in which he resides. There is, therefore, no difficulty now in determining what is citizenship of the United States.

LECTURE VI.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment.

In regard to the use of the word "jurisdiction" in the phrase, "All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof," it may be remarked, that a child of a foreign ambassador, born within the limits of the United States, is not subject to its jurisdiction within the meaning of the language just quoted. He remains a foreigner and a subject of the kingdom or country which is represented by his father, and the same is true of all other diplomatic representatives. If a stranger or traveller passing through, or temporarily residing in this country, who has not himself been naturalized, and who claims to owe no allegiance to our Government, has a child born here which goes out of the country with its father, such child is not a citizen of the United States, because it was not subject to its jurisdiction.

This Amendment, of course, includes all the black people. They are born in the United

LECTURE VI.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment.

States and subject to its jurisdiction ; they are, therefore, all citizens. Indeed, the main purpose of this Amendment to the Constitution was to make the fact plain that the black population within our borders were citizens of this country. The Indian tribes were not, however, included ; and it has been decided by the Supreme Court of the United States that an Indian did not become a citizen without naturalization, by virtue of this clause of the Fourteenth Amendment.<sup>1</sup>

Citizenship is exclusive of sex or age.

It would seem almost useless to say that the word " citizen " does not pertain alone to adult males, but I have found so many persons who thought that citizenship and the right to vote were in some way connected and identical, that I have thought it proper to remind you that citizenship has no relation to age or sex. A child the moment it enters the world is a citizen, and a woman is a citizen. Consequently they have rights, although the privilege of voting may not be one of them, which are pertinent to and grow out of the fact of this citizenship of the United States. The object, then, of naturalization, in regard to which the Constitution says that Congress shall have power to establish a uniform rule, is to confer upon those persons who do not have it this right of citizenship.

Naturalized citizens.

The process by which a person becomes naturalized will be found prescribed in sections 2165 to 2174 of the Revised Statutes of the United States. I will not read them to you

---

<sup>1</sup> *Elk v. Wilkins*, 112 U.S. 94.

here, but will only state the general purport of the statute on that subject. In the first place, it is provided that a person must have lived in the United States five years before he can become a citizen. I am speaking now of persons who arrive here at adult age; there are other provisions for those who come here as minors, whose naturalization is to some extent governed by that of the father. At any time after a person enters this country he can go before a court of competent jurisdiction, and make a declaration that he intends or desires to become a citizen of the United States. That declaration becomes a matter of record in the court where it is made, and the applicant is thereupon furnished with a copy of this record containing his name, description, and declaration.

The courts which have been given by acts of Congress jurisdiction over this subject are not alone those of the United States; but all the courts of the States and of the United States, which are courts of record, have the power to conduct these proceedings for the naturalization of aliens. After five years' residence within the United States the party can go to the same court, or to another court having this jurisdiction, produce his certificate declaring his intention to become a citizen, and take an oath to perform the duties of a citizen of the United States, that he is well affected towards its Government, and that he renounces all allegiance to any foreign country, kingdom, or potentate. He then proves, or tries to prove, in the best way he can, by

LECTURE VI.  
Naturalized citizens.

LECTURE VI.  
Naturalized citizens.

competent witnesses, his five years' residence, and that he is a man of good moral character. If he establishes these facts to the satisfaction of the court, it makes an order that he is a citizen, which is recorded, and also gives him a certificate which is always evidence of his citizenship. If it is lost he can at any time obtain a copy of it from the court where the original proceedings were had.

What is gained by  
naturalization.

Why should a man become naturalized? What does he gain by it, or what does he lose by not thus becoming a citizen? In the first place, if he does not become a citizen he will not have the right to call upon this Government for protection, whenever he may be in another country. A great deal of the trouble about naturalization in this country has arisen from the fact, which you have no doubt observed in the newspapers, that some one is constantly popping up all over Europe, charged with some dereliction, and claiming that the United States must protect him because he has become one of its citizens. This protection is always given, and generally secures a fair consideration of the case. In almost any country, and even in England, if the evidence of citizenship had been established early enough, the consul or minister would have interposed and seen that the man had a fair trial, that it was not a sham, that there was no oppressive tyranny exercised towards the accused, and that the rules of law were fairly observed. Of course the representative of our Government could not compel the court to do anything it did not see

proper to do, or step out of the way to control the trial; but he would stand by and see that the person who sought his aid had a fair trial. If he became satisfied in any case that a person so accused did not have a fair trial, or was oppressively tried, or was denied witnesses or counsel or any of the ordinary rights of a prisoner on trial, he would communicate that fact to the proper department of the United States; which, while it would not perhaps interpose in the trial, would yet make itself heard by the authorities of the country in which the trial was had, and that hearing would amount to something. That is one of the protections which it is the correlative duty or obligation of this Government to extend in return for that of allegiance on the part of the citizen.

LECTURE VI.  
What is gained by  
naturalization.

Another instance in which this right of citizenship, as acquired by naturalization, has been quite effectual in securing protection and has been often invoked, but most frequently by former German subjects, is where persons who have come to this country and become naturalized have returned for pleasure or business to the country to which they formerly owed allegiance, and have been there seized and drafted into the military service of that government. Most of these cases have occurred where a German State has alleged that the man in question had, before he left Germany, contracted an obligation to perform military service under its law requiring every man of a specified age and capacity to serve in some military organization for a certain

German claims to  
military duty by  
Germans natural-  
ized here.



LECTURE VI.  
German claims to  
military duty by  
Germans natural-  
ized here.

number of years. This was required of every man, or every man in turn, by a certain allotment or by a draft. These men, in regard to whom the controversies arose, had, by that process and under that law, as it was supposed and asserted, become designated and liable to this period of service. Having emigrated before it was performed, or perhaps before they were called on to serve, when they returned, and their presence became known to the authorities who administered these laws, they were seized, placed under military control, and required to perform this compulsory military service. The question then arose. Here was a citizen of the United States by our laws, who had renounced all allegiance to the German power, who according to our laws owed it no allegiance, and was bound to render it no service. He had become one of our citizens and claimed that, being a citizen of the United States, no other country or government, when he was about his peaceable business, or because he happened to be within its limits, should be permitted to draft him into its military service. We have had a great deal of trouble on this subject. The resistance of the German Government to our claims was long, troublesome, and vexatious. Generally where we could find the man, trace him up, and make proper remonstrances, the authorities would release him rather than have a difficulty about it; nevertheless, all the time asserting their right to enforce obedience if they thought proper to do so.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See Note upon this Lecture.

A very interesting historical case, that of Martin Koszta, of which perhaps some of you may have read, was the subject, some thirty or forty years ago, of a great deal of newspaper comment, while Mr. Marcy was Secretary of State. Koszta was an Austrian subject who came over to this country and became naturalized, or, rather, had so far begun the process that he had made his declaration of intention to do so, of which he had a certificate. It may be that he had been long enough a resident of the United States to have procured the second order admitting him as a citizen had he applied for it, but that seemed to be about the only defect on our side of the case. While matters were in that condition he went, not to Europe, but to Smyrna, a town under Turkish dominion, and was there seized by an Austrian vessel, or the Austrian consul found him and took him by force on board of an Austrian vessel. He managed, however, before he was taken out of the harbor, to communicate with the captain of an American vessel of war which was lying in the same port. This officer demanded the release of Koszta, but the Austrian commander refused to comply. Thereupon the American officer trained his guns upon the Austrian vessel with the declaration that if he attempted to leave the port with that man on board he would blow his vessel to pieces. The courage of the American captain, and perhaps the superior size of his guns, compelled the Austrian officer to deliver up the prisoner, which he did, not to the

LECTURE VI.  
The Koszta case.

**LECTURE VI.**  
**The Koszta case.**

captain of our vessel, but to the authorities of the port. He was, as a matter of fact, turned over to the Turkish authorities. The matter then became the subject of a long diplomatic correspondence, mainly carried on here between Mr. Marcy and Chevalier Hulseman, the Austrian Minister to the United States, which finally ended in the Turkish authorities being allowed to deliver the subject of this controversy into our hands ; but our right to demand him was not acknowledged ; and that refusal was the source of some disagreements between the respective governments.<sup>1</sup>

**The right of ex-**  
**patriation.**

The governments of Europe for a long time denied, and some of them do still, the right of a man to expatriate himself. They denied his right to abandon his allegiance to the king or monarch in whose country he was born, and to transfer that allegiance or his home and residence to another country. A more remarkable case than even that of Koszta arose in this country with regard to the same thing. Very shortly after our Government was organized under the Constitution, these naturalization laws were passed by the United States ; and Irish, Scotch, and English subjects of Great Britain began to pour into this country, naturalize themselves, and thus become citizens. This went on without much question until the wars between Napoleon and England made the matter of securing a sufficient number of fighting

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Note to this Lecture.

men a very important one for the latter country; for, while England had a great deal of money and subsidized other nations of Europe to fight Napoleon, it was troubled all the time to get sailors and soldiers. It was a small kingdom, with an abundance of funds but a scarcity of fighting material. We, in the meantime, after the War of the Revolution, had built up a little navy, of which, though small, we felt very proud, and it proved its worth when the War of 1812 broke out, because it was made up of good fighting material. Our sailors at that time were mostly natives of Ireland, England, or Scotland. There were not many of our population that went into the business of sailor soldiers; and on our merchant vessels the sailors were nearly all foreigners, mostly English. England was then frequently in great distress for sailors, often needing more than it could raise; because it was in the habit of carrying on war by blockading the enemies' ports, which required a large number of vessels and sailors to man them. The British Government, therefore, assumed the right, wherever they could find a man who was born upon the soil of the British Isles, without regard to what ship or what soil he was at the time upon, to impress him into their own service. This claim of right was not of much consequence within the limits of the United States, because no officer of the English Government could come here and assert it upon our soil or in our ports; but when they undertook to board our ships upon the seas, claiming for their war

LECTURE VI.  
The right of expatriation.

LECTURE VI.  
The right of ex-  
patriation.

vessels the right to search every merchant vessel, not only of our country but of all other countries, and abusing that right of search by taking our sailors out of those merchant vessels by the wholesale and transferring them to their men of war, our Government remonstrated. There were also serious grievances with France about which we remonstrated ; but neither country paid much attention to our complaints. Our worst grievance, however, and the one which bore hardest upon us, was the seizing of naturalized citizens of the United States out of our ships upon the high seas, and putting them into the service of British men-of-war. This roused the spirit of our people, and did more to bring about the War of 1812 than any other one thing. You have no doubt all heard of the cry of "Free Trade and Sailor's Rights." This did not mean free trade in the modern sense of opposition to a protective tariff, but the free right to trade on the seas ; it stood for the right of our vessels to go where they pleased, without fear of search, and for the freedom of all our citizens on board of those vessels. That great war, fought through four years, with much loss of treasure and some humiliation, but a great deal of glory, closing with the battle of New Orleans, was mainly to support this doctrine. It was to maintain the proposition that when a man came over to this country and became a naturalized citizen, no other government had a right to recapture him ; it was waged in favor of the doctrine of self-expatriation, the right to

leave one country, go to another, and there become a citizen, if that other would accept him as such, and in doing so to throw off all allegiance to the country of his nativity. But although that was the great controversy in that war, it did not decide the question finally. In fact, after both countries were tired of fighting, we made a treaty of peace in which that matter was left unsettled. The British did not give up this right which they had claimed; we got something the better of them in regard to some disputes as to boundaries and fisheries and other questions which were settled, yet the main question remained undetermined. From that time we have gone on while these troubles have been pending, those with Germany about their military claims, and a great many others of a similar character, negotiating, writing, and talking, the Government of this country all the time asserting this absolute right without concession, until nearly all the governments of the world, even if they have not adopted it as international law, have in the main abandoned the idea that a man cannot expatriate himself. Where they have not done that they have made treaties with the United States recognizing that right, which amounts to about the same thing. We have treaties now with nearly all nations which concede it, and only one subject of difference remains. That is the German question, to which I have referred, whether a man who has left his native country, where the law imposes an obligation on the subject to serve in some

LECTURE VI.  
The right of expatriation.

LECTURE VI.  
The right of ex-  
patriation.

military organization for a certain period, can be compelled to render those services if he returns thither as a naturalized citizen of the United States. It is still asserted that if he goes back to the land of his birth, the government of which he was before a subject has a right to compel him to perform those services, except where they have yielded that right by treaty. This has now, I think, been substantially done, and that is one of the rights which a man acquires by naturalization.<sup>1</sup>

Right to inherit  
real estate.

Another right, perhaps the next in importance, is the right to inherit property. It was the law of England that no alien could inherit any real estate in the English dominions, nor could he transmit any real estate, nor any such estate go through him, but to do this he must be a native citizen. It was said that an alien had no inheritable blood with regard to real estate. This rule, however, had no relation to personal estate. That doctrine of the common law became, and is, except as modified by statute or treaty, the doctrine of the States of this Union; the title to real estate being a matter which is prescribed in each State by its own laws, and not governed by the laws of the Congress of the United States. It is one of the effects of this constitutional provision, and one of the purposes for which it was made, that Congress should prescribe a uniform rule of naturalization, which should be effective in all

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Note to this Lecture.

the States, and a rule by which any foreigner or alien might become a citizen. Now, when by that process of naturalization he was declared a citizen, he became entitled in any State, where he might be, to inherit property and transmit it by descent the same as any native citizen. That was also one of the advantages of naturalization.

LECTURE VI.  
Right to inherit  
real estate.

Another benefit which has been much talked of, but which does not amount to a great deal, is that of the right of voting, as many of the States have prescribed as a qualification for voting, that the man must be at least a citizen of the State where he offers to vote. That is not the case in all of the States, but it is true of most of them. Some of the Western States, I think Minnesota, and perhaps Wisconsin, where there are large numbers of Swedes, Germans, and Norwegians, have provisions in their statutes that a man may vote by reason of his residence without regard to citizenship; but the majority of the constitutions of the States of the Union require that the voters shall be citizens. By this operation of naturalization, and by the Constitutional Amendment which I have read, the alien becomes a citizen of whatever State he may select as his residence at the time. That is one of the valuable things attaching to naturalization.

Right of suffrage.

There have been times when it was a question whether this power to prescribe a rule of naturalization was an exclusive power in the Congress of the United States, or whether it was one that the States might also exercise. That

The Federal laws  
on this subject  
are exclusive.



LECTURE VI.  
The Federal laws  
on this subject  
are exclusive.

question, however, has been practically settled by the fact that the United States has had a law on the subject for some eighty or ninety years, which, when it was enacted, necessarily became the exclusive law in regard to that matter, because the power given to the Congress is "to establish a uniform rule of naturalization . . . throughout the United States." This means that the law which Congress establishes is the law of all the States and Territories and places where naturalization can take place. It is, therefore, practically an exclusive power with which the individual States cannot deal.

Marshall, C. J., in  
*Osborn v. Bank*  
of U. S.

There have not been a great many decisions in our courts upon this subject of naturalization, because, as I observed a while ago, it has been rather an international question than one of dispute among ourselves. In the case of *Osborn v. The Bank of the United States*,<sup>1</sup> however, the Supreme Court of the United States, in an opinion delivered by Chief Justice Marshall, made the following remarks upon the subject of a naturalized citizen:—

"He becomes a member of the society, possessing all the rights of a native citizen, and standing, in the view of the Constitution, on the footing of a native. The Constitution does not authorize Congress to enlarge or abridge those rights. The simple power of the national Legislature is to prescribe a uniform rule of naturalization, and the exercise of this power exhausts it, so far as

---

<sup>1</sup> 9 Wheat. 738, 827.

respects the individual. The Constitution then takes him up, and, among other rights, extends to him the capacity of suing in the courts of the United States, precisely under the same circumstances under which a native might sue. He is distinguishable in nothing from a native citizen, except so far as the Constitution makes the distinction."

LECTURE VI.  
Marshall, C. J., in  
*Osborn v. Bank*  
of U. S.

The Constitution of the United States having, therefore, defined what citizenship is, and removed it out of the domain of controverted questions of constitutional law, having prescribed what constitutes citizenship of the United States, and what citizenship of a State, and having alluded to them in distinct terms, it has become a question what are distinctively the rights of a citizen of the United States, and what are the rights of a citizen of a State. That question came up very soon after the adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment, in what are called the Slaughter House Cases. It was insisted there that the rights which the Constitution, or this Amendment, conferred on a citizen of the United States, were all those of a fundamental character, which regard the relations of a citizen to the society in which he lives; but the court, after very grave consideration, in an opinion which I had the honor to deliver, held that not to be a sound view of the matter; that the State in its relation to its citizens, and the citizens in their relation to the State, were interchangeably bound with regard to those laws which go to make up the rights which are protected by law: the right

Miller, J., in the  
Slaughter House  
Cases.

**LECTURE VI.**  
**Miller, J., in the**  
**Slaughter House**  
**Cases.**

**Rights of a Citi-**  
**zen.**

of marriage; the right of the descent of property; the right to the control of children; the right to sue for property, and to have it protected; and, in general, the protection of life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness,—these were all founded in the relation between the State and its citizens. The Constitution gave Congress no right to interfere with that great body of the rights of the citizen. He has a right to look to that government, as I have told you, for protection in all foreign countries wherever he might travel, on the high seas or the sands of Africa, in Europe or in Australia, wherever a ship floats, or a traveller can go. He has a right to call on the United States for protection wherever he may be outside of its lines or territories. He has also the right, as I told you in a previous lecture, to travel all over this country free from any tax, assessment, or interruption in his passage from one part of the country to another. He has the right of petition granted to him by the Constitution of the United States. He has the right to the use of the mails of the United States; he has, in short, a right to everything which that great Government gives or concedes to anybody, and these are his rights as a citizen of the United States. They are numerous; they are great; they are valuable. So it may also be said of his rights as a citizen of a State: they are numerous; they are great; they are important. The one affects one class of relations, and the other affects another class. The citizen owes an allegiance to the United States, and he owes

an allegiance to his State. He is bound to obey the laws of his State, and he is bound to refrain from all criminal practices denounced by those laws. He is bound to pay his taxes to support the government of the State, and he is bound as well to pay the taxes due from him to the United States; to fight for that Government if called upon, or to fight for his State, and even to give his life, if need be, for his citizenship of the United States. He is bound to be governed by the United States in all of his relations with foreign States. If he wishes to travel in a foreign State, and desires protection, the United States will give him a passport, which a State is not permitted to do. If he wants to take part in the administration of the Government of the United States, either as an officer, member of Congress, contractor, or builder; if he wants his river improved, if he wants the postal railway extended, if he wants a new post-office, or any one of a thousand such things, he must go to the Federal Government. It is the business of a lifetime to define the relations of a man to that Government, or his relations to the State in which he belongs; but they all grow out of, and constitute this doctrine of allegiance and protection. He owes his allegiance first, to the Government of the United States, because he is first of all a citizen of that Government; second, to his State, because he becomes a citizen of that State, after being a citizen of the United States, by his residence.

I hope, gentlemen, while I do not wish any of

LECTURE VI.  
Rights of a Citizen.

LECTURE VI.  
Rights of a Citizen.

you the misfortune of turning out politicians, that you will read and consider this subject dispassionately, neither assuming, on the one hand, that the Federal Government has a right to sweep away a State as so much rubbish, nor that any of the States have a right to rise up and overthrow the great Government of the United States, which is our guardian and protector, and in which, after all, are united our brightest hopes and greatest interests.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE VI.

---

THE relations between the individual and the State throughout Christendom, (Russia perhaps excepted,) have been\* vastly modified by the influence of the naturalization laws and treaties of the United States.

LECTURE VI.

Wide influence of the American doctrine of citizenship.

When the war of the American Revolution broke out, the feudal relation still prevailed between the sovereign and the subject, modified to some extent by the progress of civilization, and by the influences of modern thought. The duties of the subject and the rights of the sovereign under that system sprang from occupation of the soil by the former under tenure from the latter, either by the actual tenant, or by the lord to whom he was feudally attached.

The feudal system.

In this respect feudalism differed from the civil law. The Roman citizen's rights came from the State, of which he formed an integral part. The common sovereignty was lodged in the people as a whole. "The Emperor Julian said that States are immortal, that is, that they may be so: because a People is that kind of body which consists of separate elements, but is subject to one name, and has *one habit*, as Plutarch says as one spirit, Paulus. This spirit or habit in a people is the full and perfect common

Roman law.

LECTURE VI.  
Roman law.

participation of civil life ; the first production of which is the sovereignty, the bond by which the State is held together, the vital breath drawn by so many thousands, as Seneca speaks." <sup>1</sup>

Relations of the  
citizen to the  
State in America.

Thus, in the social system which prevailed under the civil law, the citizen was but an integral part of the State ; while, under the feudal system he was the subject of the sovereign, who was master of the soil. Under the American system his duties to the State survive, marked and defined, however, by positive law ; but he has the right to determine for himself who shall be that sovereign, and in whose service those duties shall be performed.

The first act of Congress, pointing towards its subsequent policy in the matter of citizenship, is to be found in the Articles of Confederation.

Interstate citizen-  
ship established  
by the Articles of  
Confederation.

The Fourth Article of the Articles of Confederation provided that, "the better to secure and perpetuate mutual friendship and intercourse among the people of the different States in this Union, the free inhabitants of each of these States, paupers, vagabonds, and fugitives from justice excepted, shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several States."

Of this the historian says : "In the republics of Greece, citizenship had in theory been confined to a body of kindred families, which formed an hereditary caste, a multitudinous aristocracy. Such a system could have no permanent vital-

<sup>1</sup> Grotius, *De jure Belli et Pacis*, Lib. 2, c. 9, § 3. Whewell's ed. Cambridge, 1853, vol. 2, p. 2.

ity; and the Greek republics, as the Italian republics in after ages, died out for want of citizens. America adopted the principle of the all-embracing unity of society. As the American territory was that of the old thirteen Colonies, so the free people residing upon it formed the free people of the United States. . . . That which gave reality to the Union was the article which secured to 'the free inhabitants' of each of the States 'all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several States.' Congress appeared to shun the term 'people of the United States.' It is nowhere found in their Articles of Confederation, and rarely and only accidentally in their votes; yet by this act they constituted the free inhabitants of the different States one people. . . . Congress, while it left the regulation of the elective franchise to the judgment of each State in the Articles of Confederation, in its votes and its treaties with other powers, reckoned all the free inhabitants, without distinction of ancestry, creed, or color, as subjects or citizens. But America, though the best representative of the social and political acquisitions of the eighteenth century, was not the parent of the idea in modern civilization that man is a constituent member of the State of his birth, irrespective of his ancestry. It was already the public law of Christendom."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VI.  
Interstate citizenship established by the Articles of Confederation.

This provision of the Articles of Confederation was incorporated into the Constitution; and to

---

<sup>1</sup> Bancroft's History, Last Revise, vol. 5, pp. 200, 206, 207.



LECTURE VI.  
Naturalization  
laws.

it was added the power to establish a union c. h th  
system of naturalization. Congress exerci sed  
this power in March, 1790.<sup>1</sup> Under this in b act.  
two years' previous residence was requi red.  
This was repealed in January, 1795, and a file re-  
vious declaration of intention after an at lea in  
three years' residence was required, and a resi- la  
dence of at least five years before naturalization.<sup>2</sup>  
Further changes were made from time to time,  
and the law as it now stands is codified in the  
Revised Statutes of the United States.<sup>3</sup>

Relation of the  
naturalized citi-  
zen to the govern-  
ment of his native  
country.

These laws, however, led up to the doctrine  
of expatriation and citizenship as now under-  
stood; but that doctrine was not accepted by  
other powers, and was by no means insisted  
upon, in its full extent, by our own political  
officers.

In the wars of the French revolution and the  
French empire, Great Britain, as Mr. Justice  
Miller points out, entirely disregarded them.  
In the midst of the negotiations for peace  
which terminated in the Treaty of Ghent, Mr.  
Alexander Baring, when urged by Mr. Gallatin  
to lend his official influence to the conclusion of  
a treaty on the basis desired by the United  
States, answered: "I must freely confess that,  
highly as I value a state of peace and harmony  
with America, I am so sensible of the danger to  
our naval power from anything like an unre-  
stricted admission of your principles, that I  
should almost incline to think it safer to consider

<sup>1</sup> 1 Stat. 103, c. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Rev. Stat. §§ 2165-2174.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Stat. 414, c. 20.

ity; an American as an inevitable concomitant of a French war, and to provide for it accordingly.<sup>1</sup> And when the treaty of peace was made and promulgated, it was found to contain absolutely nothing about this dispute, which, as Mr. Justice Miller has justly said, was one of the main causes of the war.

LECTURE VI.  
Relation of the  
naturalized citizen to the government of his native country.

Meanwhile, as this country increased in population, largely in consequence of emigration, the same old question arose, but in a different form, as pointed out by Mr. Justice Miller. The Prussian army, which was still kept up practically on the basis devised by Stein after the battle of Jena, demanded military duty from Prussians who had been to America, and had been naturalized there as citizens of the United States, and had returned to Prussia. To a person who, under such circumstances claimed his protection as Minister of the United States at Berlin, Mr. Wheaton answered, declining to interfere, upon the ground that, on the applicant's return to his native country, his former nationality reverted. Mr. Everett and Mr. Webster substantially agreed with Mr. Wheaton. Mr. Cass took a somewhat more advanced position; but until the spring and summer of 1868, the question may be fairly regarded as an open one.

On the 22d of February in that year Mr. Bancroft concluded at Berlin the first of a series of such treaties, a list of which will be found in

The naturalization treaties.

<sup>1</sup> Baring to Gallatin, M., Ms. Department of State. Notes and Treaties (ed. 1889) p. 1327.

**LECTURE VI.**  
**The naturaliza-**  
**tion treaties.**

the margin:<sup>1</sup> and, on the 27th of the following July, Congress enacted that "the right of expatriation is a natural and inherent right of all people, indispensable to the enjoyment of the rights of life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness"; that, "in the recognition of this principle this government has freely received emigrants from all nations, and invested them with the rights of citizenship"; and that "all naturalized citizens of the United States, while in foreign States, shall be entitled to, and shall receive from this Government, the same protection of persons and property, that is accorded to native born citizens in like situations and circumstances."<sup>2</sup>

**The Koszta case.** It was some twenty years before the conclusion of these treaties and the passage of this act, that the case of Martin Koszta, to which Justice Miller refers, took place. This was subsequently explained and qualified by the Department of State. Just prior to and during the Cuban insurrection of 1869, 1870, many Cubans declared their intention to become citizens of the

---

|                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> Austria :         | concluded September 20, 1870. |
| Baden :                        | concluded July 19, 1868.      |
| Bavaria :                      | concluded May 26, 1868.       |
| Belgium :                      | concluded November 16, 1868.  |
| Denmark :                      | concluded July 20, 1872.      |
| Ecuador :                      | concluded May 6, 1872.        |
| Great Britain :                | concluded May 13, 1870.       |
| Great Britain (supplemental) : | concluded February 23, 1871.  |
| Hesse :                        | concluded August 1, 1868.     |
| * North German Union :         | concluded February 22, 1868.  |
| Sweden and Norway :            | concluded May 26, 1869.       |
| Württemberg :                  | concluded July 27, 1868.      |

<sup>2</sup> 15 Stat. 223, c. 249.

United States, and, after doing so, returned to Cuba. It became a practical question whether the United States were to assume to protect these men against the barbaric severity of the Volunteers, who dominated Cuba at that time. The department said: "Mr. Marcy was very careful in his elaborate letter concerning Martin Koszta, not to commit this Government to the obligation, or to the propriety, of using the force of the nation for the protection of foreign born persons who, after declaring their intention to become at some future time citizens of the United States, leave its shores to return to their native country. . . . He took especial care to insist that the case was to be judged, not by the municipal laws of the United States, not by the local laws of Turkey, not by the conventions between Turkey and Austria, but by the great principles of international law. . . . It has been repeatedly decided by this department that the declaration of intention to become a citizen does not, in the absence of treaty stipulations, so clothe the individual with the nationality of this country, as to enable him to return to his native land without being necessarily subject to all the laws thereof."<sup>1</sup>

Some further official correspondence with regard to this class of cases, as illustrating the difficulties with which the Government has to contend in dealing with them, may not be inappropriate.

---

<sup>1</sup> Session Ex. Doc. 108, 2d Session, 41st Congress, p. 202.

LECTURE VI.  
Naturalizations to  
escape military  
service. Action of  
President Grant.

The questions with Germany, to which Justice Miller alludes, growing out of the military service laws of Prussia and of the Empire, were largely the cause of the questions propounded by President Grant to the members of his Cabinet, to which allusion was made in the notes to Lecture III. Since the naturalization treaties went into operation matters have moved on with less friction than before. Native born Germans, who seek naturalization here solely for the purpose of escaping the performance of their duties to their native land, without a purpose or intent of doing their duty as citizens here, have found that the United States expect them to make their home here as a condition of protection: while, on the other hand, such Germans as honestly cast their fortunes in with us, receive the national protection against the claims of the government of their native land as efficiently as it is given to native born citizens.

Simultaneously with the letter of President Grant, calling for the opinions of his Cabinet, the Secretary of State addressed a circular to the Ministers of the United States at Berlin, Rome, and Paris, inquiring, among other things, "the number of Americans whose residence in Germany [Italy] [France] has been of long continuance, or seems to be indefinite in its intended duration." Mr. Bancroft, the then Minister at Berlin, answered: "Of Americans whose residence in Germany has been of long continuance, or seems to be indefinite in its intended duration, I estimate the number at 10,000, and that num-

ber rather on the increase." Mr. Marsh, the then Minister, addressed a circular to the Consuls in Italy and received from them detailed reports which footed up 225. He added: "I have no means for ascertaining the number of Italians and other foreigners naturalized in the United States, now residing in Italy; but though it is doubtless considerably smaller than during and soon after the rebellion, I think it must still amount to several hundred." Mr. Washburne reported from Paris that "the number of resident Americans in France does not increase, but, on the other hand, rather diminishes."

LECTURE VI.  
Naturalizations to  
escape military  
service. Action of  
President Grant.

Shortly before these inquiries were made a correspondence took place between the Legation at Paris and the Department of State, which may have been instrumental in causing the investigation. Mr. Washburne wrote for instructions in two cases.

The first he stated as follows: Madame Pepin, who applies on behalf of her son, a young man eighteen years of age, to have some papers from the legation, stating that he is an American citizen, and is to be protected as such. His case is as follows: John Pepin, the husband and father, was a Frenchman by birth. When a young man he emigrated to the United States, was educated in Kentucky, and became a naturalized citizen, residing in New Orleans. In 1850 he returned to France, leaving some property in New Orleans, which is still held by his family, he having died several years ago. After his return to this country he married a French-

Status of natural-  
ized citizens who  
reside perma-  
nently in their  
native land.

LECTURE VI.  
Status of natural-  
ized citizens who  
reside perma-  
nently in their  
native land.

woman, by whom he had a daughter, now twenty years of age, and the son above spoken of. He never returned to the United States to live, but made France his residence up to the time of his death. The boy in question has never been to the United States, though the mother and daughter went there two years ago, and the mother obtained a passport from the State Department as an American citizen. She says that the boy got a passport two years ago from the United States Minister in London, but that he had lost it."

To this the Secretary of State answered: "Pepin, the son of a naturalized Frenchman, who returned to France and died there, was never in this country. . . . It would seem quite possible that, were it not for his desire to avoid the duties required by French law, he would perhaps never have dreamed of calling himself an American; that he would remain in France and avoid all duties to the United States; that he would call himself a citizen of the United States and avoid all duties to France."

The second case was this: "A man and his wife, Americans by birth, came to Paris forty years ago, and have lived here ever since. This has become their permanent home, and they have never had any intention of returning to the United States. Several of their children have been born here, and have never been to the United States, and never expect to go, and never want to go. The question is, are these children citizens of the United States, and is the

Government of the United States bound to protect them as such ?”

To this Mr. Fish answered: “In the other case an American, whose name is withheld, has lived with his family forty years in France, has reared his children there, has never proposed to return to the United States, and his children have never been to the United States, and never expect to go, and never want to go.”

And to the inquiries in both cases the Secretary said: “In each of these cases there is a presumption of a purpose of expatriation so strong that, until it can be rebutted to your satisfaction, you will be justified in concluding that the persons respectively are not entitled to your intervention to protect them against the operation of the laws of the country which they have selected as the place of their residence.”<sup>1</sup>

The political department of the Government has made some rulings on this subject since the negotiation of the treaties, which deserve notice.

The treaty with North Germany calls for an uninterrupted residence of five years in the United States before the naturalized citizen is entitled to the immunities guaranteed by it. It is held that the recital in the record of the naturalization proceedings that the applicant had resided continuously in this country for more than five years does not conclude the United States as to that fact.<sup>2</sup> A similar decision has been made as to the treaty with Austria.<sup>3</sup>

LECTURE VI.  
Status of naturalized citizens who reside permanently in their native land.

Rulings of the political departments.

<sup>1</sup> Foreign Relations, 1873, vol. 1, pp. 249, 260, 261.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Treaties and Conventions (ed. 1889) p. 1264.   <sup>3</sup> Ib. p. 1265.



LECTURE VI.  
Rulings of the  
political departments.

Cases arise, from time to time, where persons who, by the laws of the United States, are declared to be citizens of the United States, are also, by the law of some other country, held to allegiance in that country. In this class may be included persons born out of the limits and jurisdiction of the United States, whose fathers were, at the time of their birth, citizens of the United States. Such a case being submitted to Attorney General Hoar, that officer held that it was not competent for the United States to interfere with the rights of a foreign nation to the government and control of persons claimed to be its subjects, so long as they were residing in such foreign country.<sup>1</sup>

Any one desiring to see the condition of the statutes and laws of the various powers in regard to this interesting subject will find it discussed at length in Calvo.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> 13 Opinions Attorney General, 89.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Droit International, liv. 8.

## VII.

# THE JUDICIAL POWER OF THE UNITED STATES.<sup>1</sup>



ARTICLE III, SECTION 1. The judicial Power of **LECTURE VII.** the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services, a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

SECTION 2. The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority; — to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls; — to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction; — to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party; — to Controversies between two or more States; — between a State and Citizens of another State; — between Citizens of different States, — between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or subjects.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

---

<sup>1</sup> This is Lecture VI of the lectures delivered before the classes of the University Law School.

## LECTURE VII.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury ; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

SECTION 3. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.

ARTICLE VII OF THE AMENDMENTS. In Suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE XI OF THE AMENDMENTS. The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

Judicial power.

I HAVE before alluded to the division which the Constitution makes of the powers to be exercised by the National Government into three departments: the legislative, executive, and judicial. That in which students of law will probably be most interested in having an exposition of its powers is the latter, to which attention will now be directed.<sup>1</sup>

My text, after the manner of the clergy, is

---

<sup>1</sup> Courts of justice have been described as an institution framed for the purpose of putting an end to the practice of private war. Without the instrumentality of judicial tribunals, society would be a prey to perpetual civil dissensions.

the third of the three main articles of the Constitution, into which it is divided, the first being devoted to the legislative, the second to the executive, and the third to the judicial; following which are some provisions establishing private rights, concerning the two Houses of Congress, and several amendments touching other subjects.

LECTURE VII.  
Judicial power.

Article Third reads as follows: —

“Sec. 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

“Sec. 2. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.

“In all cases affecting ambassadors, other pub-

LECTURE VII.  
Judicial power.

lic ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

“The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place, or places, as the Congress may by law have directed.

“Sec. 3. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

“The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In this connection should be read Article XI of the Amendments: “The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.”

Mr. Justice Story says, after quoting these provisions: “Such is the language of the article creating and defining the judicial power of the United States. It is the voice of the whole American people solemnly declared, in establishing one great department of that government, which was, in many respects, national, and in

Attention is first called to the second section, LECTURE VII. and the first thing that requires or justifies any Judicial power. criticism is as to the use of the words "judicial power."

What is judicial power? It will not do to What is judicial power? answer that it is the power exercised by the courts, because one of the very things to be determined is what power they may exercise. It is, indeed, very difficult to find any exact definition made to hand.<sup>1</sup> It is not to be found in any of the old treatises, or any of the old English authorities or judicial decisions, for a very obvious reason. While in a general way it may be true that they had this division between legislative and judicial power, yet their legislature was, nevertheless, in the habit of exercising a very large part of the latter. The House of Lords was often the Court of Appeals, and Parliament was in the habit of passing bills of

---

all, supreme. It is a part of the very same instrument which was to act not merely upon individuals, but upon States; and to deprive them altogether of the exercise of some powers of sovereignty, and to restrain and regulate them in the exercise of others." *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304, 328.

<sup>1</sup> "Judicial power" is the authority vested in the judges. Bouvier Law Dictionary.

As to what is meant by the phrase "judicial power," see *Callanan v. Judd*, 23 Wisconsin, 343, 349. Also charge of Judge Nelson to grand jury of the Circuit Court, 1861, that it is the power conferred upon courts in the strict sense of that term; courts that compose one of the great departments of the government; and not power judicial in its nature, or *quasi* judicial, invested from time to time in individuals, separately or collectively, for a particular purpose and limited time. 1 Blatchford, 635. *Gilbert v. Priest*, 65 Barb. 444, 448.

The power to hear and determine a cause is jurisdiction; it is *coram judice*, whenever a case is presented which brings this power into action. *United States v. Arredondo*, 6 Pet. 699, 709.

LECTURE VII.  
What is judicial  
power?

attainder as well as enacting convictions for treason and other crimes.<sup>1</sup>

Judicial power is, perhaps, better defined in some of the reports of our own courts than in any other place, and especially so in the Supreme Court of the United States, because it has more often been the subject of comment there, and its consideration more frequently necessary to the determination of questions arising in that court than anywhere else. It is the power of a court to decide and pronounce a judgment and carry it into effect between persons and parties who bring a case before it for decision.<sup>2</sup>

A case is necessary  
to its exercise.

This power "shall extend to all *cases*" of a particular character, which is specified. Before there can be any proper exercise of it a "case"

<sup>1</sup> The distinction between judicial and political power is so generally acknowledged in the jurisprudence both of England and of this country, that we need do no more than refer to some of the authorities on the subject. *Nabob of Carnatic v. East India Co.*, 1 Ves. Jr. 371, 375, 393; *S. C.* 2 Ves. Jr. 56, 60; *Penn v. Lord Baltimore*, 1 Ves. Sen. 444, 446, 447; *New York v. Connecticut*, 4 Dall. 4, 6; *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1; *Rhode Island v. Massachusetts*, 12 Pet. 657. They are all in one direction. *State of Georgia v. Stanton*, 6 Wall. 50, 71.

In the early ages of the English system, however, the line between the judiciary and the legislature was not distinctly marked, and Parliament, consisting of one great chamber, in which sat both lords and commons, not only made but also interpreted the laws. But it has now long been settled in England that the interpretation of statute law belongs to the judiciary alone, and in this country they have claimed and obtained an equal control over the construction of constitutional provisions. Sedgwick on Const. Law, 18.

<sup>2</sup> Judicial power is never exercised for the purpose of giving effect to the will of the judge; always for the purpose of giving effect to the will of the Legislature; or, in other words, to the will of the law. *Osborn v. Bank of the United States*, 9 Wheat. 738.

must be presented in court for its action.<sup>1</sup> A case implies parties, an assertion of rights, or a wrong to be remedied. The decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States, as well as those of other courts, contain many definitions of what it is. A reference to Paschal's Annotated Constitution will give many of them, and their leading features. Perhaps there is none better than in the language of Chief Justice Marshall: "A case arises, within the meaning of the Constitution, when any question respecting the Constitution, treaties, or laws of the United States has assumed such a form that the judicial power is capable of acting on it."<sup>2</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
A case is necessary  
to its exercise.

In this connection it is proper to endeavor to correct the erroneous impression that prevails in the minds of many persons with regard to the power of the Supreme Court of the United States as the expounder of the Constitution. It has been asserted in popular treatises, in public speeches, and political harangues, that the Supreme Court of the United States is the final expounder of that instrument, that it was made

Functions of the  
court as interpreting  
the Constitution.

---

<sup>1</sup> In order to entitle the party to the remedy a case must be presented appropriate for the exercise of judicial power; the rights in danger must be rights of persons or property; not merely political rights, which do not belong to the jurisdiction of a court, either in law or equity. *State of Georgia v. Stanton*, 6 Wall. 50, 76.

When a right is asserted by a party before a court in the manner prescribed by law, it then becomes a case to which the judicial power extends. This includes the right of both parties to the litigation; and the case may be said to arise whenever its correct decision is dependent upon the construction of the Constitution, laws, or treaties of the United States.

<sup>2</sup> *Osborn v. Bank of the United States*, 9 Wheat. 738, 819.



LECTURE VII.  
Functions of the  
court as interpret-  
ing the Constitu-  
tion.

for that purpose, and that it is one of its primary functions. But it has been over and again held by that court, that all it can do in that regard is to decide such questions as involve a construction of its provisions, and only those when they are brought before it in a suit between proper parties. In some cases these parties have been very dignified ones. The United States and great States have appeared before its bar, but in the great majority of cases, where it has been called upon to construe the Constitution of the United States, it has been in a conflict between individuals, wherein the validity of some law, or the determination of some right asserted by one party and denied by the other, must be settled by the authority of this great fundamental charter. So this court only does, in its higher position as the last court to which such cases can be brought, what every other court in the United States has to do, whether it be a State or a Federal court. It only decides such cases as arise in the progress of ordinary litigation.<sup>1</sup>

It may also be noted, before passing from the consideration of this part of the clause, that the judicial power "shall extend to *all* cases" aris-

---

<sup>1</sup> This clause enables the judicial department to receive jurisdiction to the full extent of the Constitution, laws, and treaties of the United States, when any question respecting them shall assume such a form that the judicial power is capable of acting on it. That power is capable of acting only when the subject is submitted to it by a party who asserts his rights in the form prescribed by law. It then becomes a case. Marshall, C. J., in *Osborn v. Bank of the United States*, 9 Wheat. 738, 819.

ing under the circumstances specified. That is to say, to all cases where a right exists under the Constitution, or under a treaty which shall be made under the authority of the Federal Government. The Federal power extends over, and covers all such cases, and they are properly within the jurisdiction of its courts.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Functions of the  
court as interpreting  
the Constitution.

This extension of power over all cases is, however, qualified by the words immediately following: "in law or in equity." These cases must be in law or in equity, with the exception of admiralty, as to which there is a separate clause further on in the section. Under this provision an attempt has been made to exclude a very large class of cases arising in the State and other courts, which were of an anomalous character. Some actions where remedies were given by peculiar modes of proceeding, by summary proceedings, by attachment, and others at variance with the common law, were said not to be suits at law, and yet did not come under any head of equity jurisprudence. But the decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States are abundant to the effect that, with the exception of admiralty, all modes of procedure for the assertion of rights must be arranged under the one class or the other, either law or equity, within the meaning of this clause.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The judicial department is authorized to decide all cases, of every description, arising under the Constitution or laws of the United States. *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264, 382.

<sup>2</sup> This clause extends the jurisdiction of the court to all cases described, without making in its terms any exception whatever, and without any regard to the condition of the party. If there be

LECTURE VII.  
Equity jurisdiction.

Equity is a limited jurisdiction which has grown up by the side of the common law, which is in some sense a restriction of, and departure from that law. There is not much difficulty as to what are cases in equity, and it is sufficient to say, that the Federal courts have held that all the cases that are neither properly cognizable in admiralty or equity are, within this clause of the Constitution, cases at law. Indeed, the Supreme Court have held, as they have been compelled to do, that when the Federal courts come to administer the rights or the remedies claimed under what I may venture to term the improvements in the modes of procedure which have been adopted by the codes of the various States, in most of which equity and law have been consolidated, as well as under many new statutes giving new rights, appointing new modes of procedure, and fixing new remedies, they must range the actions in those courts upon the equity or law side as the nature of the right asserted, or the remedy given may require. They do this, as equity is understood and was understood in the English courts at the time of the Revolution.<sup>1</sup> Their equity jurisdiction is

---

any exception, it is to be implied against the express words of the article. . . . A case in law or equity consists of the right of one party, as well as of the other, and may be truly said to arise under the Constitution or a law of the United States, whenever its correct decision depends on the construction of either. Chief Justice Marshall, in *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264, 378.

<sup>1</sup> The equity jurisdiction of the courts of the United States is independent of the local law of any State, and is the same in nature and extent as the equity jurisdiction of England from which it is derived. Therefore it is no objection to this jurisdiction that there

independent of the local law of any State, and no rules at law or in equity, which have been adopted in any State court, can abolish the separate and distinct jurisdiction. That must be administered on the chancery side of the Federal court which has taken charge of it.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Equity jurisdiction.

One of the distinctions necessary to be noted in this regard is that another provision of the Constitution declares that in suits at common law, where the value in controversy exceeds twenty dollars, every one shall have a right to a trial by a jury.<sup>2</sup> The right of trial by jury is

Right of trial by jury at common law.

is a remedy under the local law. *Gordon v. Hobart*, 2 Sumner, 401.

The remedies in courts of the United States are to be, at common law or in equity, not according to the practice of State courts, but according to the principles of common law and equity, as distinguished and defined in that country from which we derive our knowledge of those principles. *Robinson v. Campbell*, 3 Wheat. 211, 222.

It is not enough that there is a remedy at law; it must be plain and adequate, or in other words, as practical and as efficient to the ends of justice and its prompt administration, as the remedy in equity. *Boyce's Executors v. Grundy*, 3 Pet. 210, 215; *United States v. Howland*, 4 Wheat. 108.

<sup>1</sup> Although the forms of proceedings in the State courts have been adopted in the District court, yet the adoption of the State practice must not be understood as confounding the principles of law and equity, nor as authorizing legal and equitable claims to be blended together in one suit. The Constitution of the United States, in creating and defining the judicial power of the General Government, establishes this distinction between law and equity; and a party who claims a legal title must proceed at law, and may undoubtedly proceed according to the forms of practice in such cases in the State courts. But if the claim is an equitable one, he must proceed according to rules which this court has prescribed [under the authority of the act of August 23, 1842], regulating proceedings in equity in the courts of the United States. *Bennett v. Butterworth*, 11 How. 660.

<sup>2</sup> In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved,

LECTURE VII.  
Right of trial by  
jury at common  
law.

no part of the system of equity jurisprudence, and therefore, in order to give proper effect to all of these provisions, the Federal courts have been compelled to keep separate and distinct cases at law and cases in equity.<sup>1</sup>

When a case  
arises under the  
Constitution.

Proceeding farther in the consideration of the language of this clause we first note that these cases are those "arising under this Constitution." That is to say, a case arises under the Constitution whenever some constitutional right is denied, some right which this instrument gives, whether it be a right to property, a right of liberty, a right to vote, or any other right which can be traced to this Constitution. If that right be infringed, denied, or imperilled, it can be brought into the courts of the United States by virtue of this provision.<sup>2</sup>

This is also true of the laws of the United States. These cases are also those "arising under . . . the laws of the United States." The Constitution itself is a very general instrument.

---

and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law. Amendment VII.

<sup>1</sup> The courts of the United States are required, both by the Constitution and the acts of Congress, to observe the distinction between legal and equitable rights, and to enforce the rules and principles of decision appropriate to each. *Fenn v. Holme*, 21 How. 481.

<sup>2</sup> It is only where the rights of persons or property are involved, and when such rights can be presented under some judicial form of proceedings, that courts of justice can interpose relief. This court can have no right to pronounce an abstract opinion upon the constitutionality of a State law. Such law must be brought into actual, or threatened operation upon rights properly falling under judicial cognizance, or a remedy is not to be had here. Dissenting opinion of Justice Thompson, in *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1, 75.

The rights which it confers and the duties which it imposes, are stated in very general language ; but these rights and duties, and the obligations growing out of them, have been put into full operation and defined and perfected by statutes, which we designate the laws of the United States.<sup>1</sup> Whenever, therefore, an individual has a claim or right under a statute of the United States, which he seeks to enforce, we see that this can be done by — and that the proper place to seek the power to accomplish it is in — some one of the different branches of the judicial department of the Government of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
When a case  
arises under the  
Constitution.

This power extends also to all cases arising under “treaties made, or which shall be made under their authority,” as to which some observations may properly be made. A treaty always means a compact or convention between two independent nations or governments. Independence, or at least some degree of it, is necessary

Cases arising  
under treaties.

<sup>1</sup> The Constitution (Art. 1, sec. 8, par. 18) gives Congress the power “To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.” One of these powers is the judicial, embracing civil and criminal cases alike.

The provision that it shall extend to “all cases” embraces civil actions and criminal prosecutions. Both are equally within that power. *Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257.

<sup>2</sup> The jurisdiction vested in the courts of the United States . . . shall be exclusive of the courts of the several States. Rev. Stat. § 711.

Congress gave to the Circuit and District Courts of the United States, during and immediately after the close of the rebellion, jurisdiction over many questions which had been previously left entirely within the control of the State courts.

LECTURE VII.  
Cases arising  
under treaties.

in order that the treaty may exist between the parties who make it. From these principles the conclusion has been reached that so far as the treaty itself is a national obligation to be enforced by the action of the States who made it, either by war, by negotiation, by modification, or by appeals to the States, the courts have nothing to do with it. In that case, they must follow and abide by what the Government proper does upon that subject, or what, in the language of the Supreme Court of the United States, are called the political branches of the Government having charge of that relation.<sup>1</sup>

But a treaty may be the foundation of a private right, and then it becomes a subject of judicial action, as does any other private right.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "This court (in *Foster v. Neilson*, 2 Pet. 253, 307) did not deem the settlement of boundaries a judicial, but a political question — that it was not its duty to lead but to follow the action of the other departments of the Government; that when individual rights depended on national boundaries, 'the judiciary is not that department of the Government to which the assertion of its interests against foreign powers is confided, and its duty commonly is to decide upon individual rights according to those principles which the political department of the nation has established.'" These views are reiterated in *United States v. Arredondo*, 6 Pet. 699, 711.

But this right must be a legal one: the judicial power does not extend to all questions which may arise under the Constitution, laws, and treaties, because they are frequently political in their character, and must be decided by other departments of the Government. Chief Justice Marshall says: "The judiciary is not that department of the Government to which the assertion of its interests against foreign powers is confided; and its duty commonly is to decide upon individual rights, according to those principles which the political departments of the nation have established." *Foster v. Neilson*, 2 Pet. 253, 306.

<sup>2</sup> A treaty is the supreme law of the land. *Hauenstein v. Lynham*, 100 U. S. 483. Its operation cannot be interfered with or in any way limited by a State, and it overrides State laws in conflict with it. *Baker v. Portland*, 5 Sawyer, 566.

This subject has been well considered in the case of the *United States v. Rauscher*,<sup>1</sup> who was returned from Great Britain to this country in pursuance of a demand of the President, on the charge of murder. He was tried, and a verdict of guilty rendered by the jury upon a charge of inflicting cruel and unusual punishment upon one of the seamen of the vessel on which he was an officer. He denied the authority of the court to try him for this, or for any other offence, except that for which he had been surrendered in the extradition proceedings. The Supreme Court in response to questions certified to it by the judges of the Circuit Court, held that this contention was sound, and that the treaty would, in the event that he was either acquitted, or not tried for the offence for which he had been extradited, give him a right to be set at liberty and allow him a reasonable time to return to Great Britain. The court, referring to the *Head Money Cases*, quoted from its language in that case in reference to the character of a treaty as a law of the land, as follows:—

LECTURE VII.  
Cases arising  
under treaties.

“A treaty is primarily a compact between independent nations. It depends for the enforcement of its provisions on the interest and the honor of the governments which are parties to it. If these fail, its infraction becomes the subject of international negotiations and reclamations, so far as the injured party chooses to

---

<sup>1</sup> 119 U. S. 407.



LECTURE VII.  
Cases arising  
under treaties.

seek redress, which may in the end be enforced by actual war. It is obvious that with all this the judicial courts have nothing to do and can give no redress. But a treaty may also contain provisions which confer certain rights upon the citizens or subjects of one of the nations residing within the territorial limits of the other, which partake of the nature of municipal law, and which are capable of enforcement as between private parties in the courts of the country. An illustration of this character is found in treaties which regulate the mutual rights of citizens and subjects of the contracting nations, in regard to the rights of property by descent or inheritance, when the individuals concerned are aliens. The Constitution of the United States places such provisions as these in the same category as other laws of Congress, by its declaration that 'this Constitution and the laws made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made or which shall be made under authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land.' A treaty then, is a law of the land, as an act of Congress is, whenever its provisions prescribe a rule by which the rights of the private citizen or subject may be determined. And when such rights are of a nature to be enforced in a court of justice, that court resorts to the treaty for a rule of decision for the case before it, as it would to a statute."<sup>1</sup>

"The treaty of 1842 being therefore the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Head Money Cases*, 112 U. S. 580, 598. See also *Chew Heong v. United States*, 112 U. S. 536, 540, 565.

supreme law of the land, of which the courts are bound to take judicial notice, and to enforce in any appropriate proceeding the rights of persons growing out of that treaty, we proceed to inquire, in the first place, so far as pertinent to the questions certified by the circuit judges, into the true construction of the treaty.”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Cases arising  
under treaties.

Passing on in the consideration of this section, we note that the judicial power not only extends to cases arising under the Constitution and laws of the United States, and treaties made under its authority, but is directed to specific classes of cases. The text here assumes another form of expression. Heretofore it has been dealing with the subject matter of the suit or with the nature of the controversy. Now it speaks of cases affecting classes of people. Let us consider them in their order.

“The judicial power shall extend . . . to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls.” Every diplomatic representative, such as an ambassador, or a minister or a consul at one of our various ports, has a right to have any case affecting his rights tried in a Federal court. This is true, no matter what his grade or rank, and some of these diplomatic gentlemen have very high sounding titles, such as Minister Plenipotentiary and Envoy Extraordinary. The reason for this provision is easy to be understood. These persons are the representatives of foreign governments, independent

Cases affecting  
ambassadors.

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Rauscher*, 119 U. S. 407, 419.

LECTURE VII.  
Cases affecting  
ambassadors.

nations, and should not, therefore, be subjected to the power of individual States who have no relation to those governments. Cases in which they are concerned can only be brought before the courts of the United States, who can look into the matters at issue and right them.

Admiralty and  
maritime juris-  
diction.

It shall also be extended "to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction."<sup>1</sup> That is a very peculiar thing to be in this Constitution. I suppose the reason it was put there was that it was considered to be in the nature of an international relation, coming immediately, as it does, in juxtaposition with the clause relating to ambassadors and other public ministers and consuls. Doubtless that is why it was taken out from State jurisdiction and placed within the power of the Federal judiciary; for, although admiralty cases do not involve any law or statute of the United States, nor the Constitution of the United States, nor any treaty, yet at the time the Constitution was framed, the admiralty jurisdiction was supposed to be limited, as it was in England, to traffic on the ocean, and the affairs of vessels, seamen, and navigators upon the tidal waters of the country. It was thus thought to be only properly cognizable by the courts of the Central Government.<sup>2</sup> In connec-

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Federalist, No. 80, it is said: "The most bigoted idolizers of State authority have not thus far shown a disposition to deny the National Judiciary the cognizance of maritime causes. These so generally depend on the laws of nations, and so commonly affect the rights of foreigners, that they fall within the considerations which are relative to the public peace."

<sup>2</sup> The exclusive cognizance of all cases of this character was

tion with this view of the subject it may be well to note also, that this particular provision is an interpolation of a clause regarding the matter of jurisdiction among those which concern the character of the parties.

LECTURE VII.  
Admiralty and  
maritime juris-  
diction.

At this point the word "cases" is dropped, as well as the subject matter of jurisdiction, and

When the United  
States is a party.

vested in the District Courts by this clause and the judicial act of 1789. No attempt was made, however, to define the meaning of the terms or to fix the limits of their jurisdiction. Very few cases came to the Supreme Court involving these questions up to 1840, but the principle was established that the true test of the jurisdiction of a court of admiralty was whether the vessel was engaged, substantially, in maritime navigation, upon the tidal waters of the country. *The Steamboat Orleans v. Phœbus*, 11 Pet. 175.

To give jurisdiction the cause of action must have arisen upon waters affected by the tide. The District Court was held not to have jurisdiction of a suit for wages earned on a voyage from Kentucky up the Missouri River and back. *The Thomas Jefferson*, 10 Wheat. 428. [1825].

In other cases following the jurisdiction of admiralty courts was limited to tide waters, or where the influence of the tide was at all felt. *The Planter*, 7 Pet. 324; *United States v. Coombs*, 12 Pet. 72.

In the case of a collision upon the Mississippi River, ninety miles above New Orleans, but within the ebb and flow of the tide, it was held that the expression in the Constitution was neither limited to nor to be interpreted by, what were cases of admiralty jurisdiction in England when the Constitution was adopted by the States of the Union, and that in cases of tort or collision as far up a river as the tide ebbs and flows, although it may be *infra corpus comitatus*, courts of admiralty have jurisdiction. *Waring v. Clarke*, 5 How. 441. [1847]. See also *The Lexington*, 6 How. 344; *St. John v. Paine*, 10 How. 557; *The New Jersey*, 10 How. 586.

By the act of February 26, 1845, Congress extended the jurisdiction to the great lakes, 5 Stat. 726, and the tide-water restriction was entirely abandoned by the Supreme Court in *The Genesee Chief*, 12 How. 443, extending the jurisdiction to all public navigable lakes and rivers where commerce is carried on between different States or with a foreign nation. This doctrine was defined and reaffirmed in *The Magnolia*, 20 How. 296; *The Eagle*, 8 Wall. 15; *The Montello*, 11 Wall. 411; *Miller v. Mayor of New York*, 109 U. S. 385.

LECTURE -VII.  
When the United  
States is a party.

the section proceeds to give jurisdiction by a description of the persons or parties who may come before the Federal courts. The judicial power shall extend "to controversies to which the United States shall be a party." Whenever the United States is a party in a suit the Federal courts may have jurisdiction; that is, courts acting under the Federal power. They are tribunals established under the authority of Congress, and in those courts alone can the United States be sued.<sup>1</sup> These courts take jurisdiction of suits in which the United States sues to recover property or taxes, of suits upon the bonds of defaulting officers, of prosecutions for claims against the United States, and many other cases in which the General Government sues in the forum of its own creation.

Controversies  
between States.

The judicial power is next extended "to controversies between two or more States."<sup>2</sup> There never has been a tribunal known in history,

---

<sup>1</sup> Except where Congress has provided that the United States cannot be sued. *United States v. Lee*, 106 U. S. 198.

<sup>2</sup> The effect of the want of this power is aptly illustrated in the language of the Federalist, No. 21, regarding the American Confederacy which then existed. "The next most palpable defect of the subsisting Confederation, is a total want of a SANCTION to its laws. The United States, as now composed, have no power to exact obedience, or punish disobedience to their resolutions, either by pecuniary mulcts, by a suspension or divestiture of privileges, or by any other constitutional means. There is no express delegation of authority to them to use force against delinquent members; and if such a right should be ascribed to the Federal head, as resulting from the nature of the compact between the States, it must be by inference and construction, in the face of that part of the second article, by which it is declared, 'that each State shall retain every power, jurisdiction, and right, not expressly delegated to the United States in Congress assembled.'"

anterior to the formation of this Constitution, which had jurisdiction, in the full sense of that word, of controversies between States.<sup>1</sup> The old Amphictyonic Council among the Greeks might possibly have been called a court or tribunal in some sense, but certainly not in the broad way in which the term is applied to the Supreme Court of the United States. That council could

LECTURE VII.  
Controversies  
between States.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Germanic Confederation there was a tribunal in some respects resembling the Supreme Court of the United States. The Chamber of Wetzlar, or Westphalia, possessed exclusive jurisdiction in deciding upon disputes between members of the Empire. But it had no power to execute its decisions. The laws operated not upon individuals, but upon States; and the sentence of the supreme judicial tribunal had no higher effect. The consequence was that it became necessary to resort to force, and to this end the Empire was divided into circles, the entire military force of which was at the disposal of the Emperor, to enable him to execute the sentence of the court against a refractory member. Under the new constitution of 1815 a different organization took place. If the rights of one State are invaded by another State, the injured party must choose one of three members of the diet, selected by the defendant; or if the defendant neglected to select, the diet is bound to name them. And the court of final resort in the State of the member thus chosen decides the case. And if the party against whom the judgment is pronounced does not obey, military force is resorted to, to coerce submission. There does not appear to have been any judicial tribunal, either under the old or new constitutions, for the purpose of settling disputes between the States and the Confederacy. The diet, or national legislature, seems to have possessed this power. The American system stands alone amid the institutions of the world, and although it was a natural consequence of the adoption of the perfect form of confederation, yet as this species of government is a work of the greatest refinement, and the result of a very high state of civilization, the organization of the national judiciary may be pronounced one of the greatest achievements which political science has made. Grimke on Free Institutions, p. 389, Cincinnati, 1848.

In the *Federalist*, No. 80, reference is made to the Imperial Chamber of Maximilian, which is said to have been a court invested with authority to decide finally all differences among the members of the Germanic body.

LECTURE VII.  
Controversies  
between States.

meet and hear the complaints of the Greek States against each other, and in that forum they could complain of each other's acts. Upon such hearing the council could recommend what could be done, but it had no power to carry its determinations into effect. The Constitution of the United States, however, creates a court which can not only hear and determine all controversies between different States, of which it is given original jurisdiction, but can also bring them before it by process, as it can bring the humblest citizen, and declare its judgment, which it has usually been able to enforce.<sup>1</sup>

Controversies  
between a State  
and citizens of  
another State.

It also extends to controversies "between a State and citizens of another State."<sup>2</sup> That is to say, while a State cannot sue one of its own citizens in the courts of the United States, it can sue those of other States. As this Constitution stood at the time it was adopted, a citizen of one State could sue another State in the Federal courts, but as soon as a case of that kind origi-

---

<sup>1</sup> That a person cannot sue his own State, except under some State law, is well settled. *Hans v. Louisiana*, 24 Fed. Rep. 55. [See 134 U. S. 1, for the action of the Supreme Court on this case.]

<sup>2</sup> Nor can that be accomplished by indirect means which cannot be done directly. The history of Article XI of the Amendments to the Constitution, and the causes which led to its adoption, are reviewed in the case of *New Hampshire v. Louisiana*, 108 U. S. 76, and it was decided that unless the State prosecuted consents, that amendment prohibits the court from entertaining jurisdiction of a case in which one State seeks relief against another State on behalf of its citizens, in a matter in which the State prosecuted has no interest of its own; that one State cannot create a controversy with another State, within the meaning of that term as used in the judicial clauses of the Constitution, by assuming the prosecution of debts owing by the other State to its citizens.

nated in which a State found its dignity infringed and it was seen that a State could be brought into court by any one, a requisite number of States modified this provision by declaring that it should not apply to suits by citizens of one State against another State. The jurisdiction is now between States, which was discussed in a preceding paragraph, and between a State and citizens of another State when the State is plaintiff.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Controversies  
between a State  
and citizens of  
another State.

We now come to controversies "between citizens of different States." Here is, as it has turned out, the largest source of the jurisdiction of the Federal courts. In the previous part of this section the right to sue in the Federal

Between citizens  
of different States.

---

<sup>1</sup> The impression prevailed after the adoption of the Constitution in 1789 that a citizen of one State or an alien might sue a State. Hamilton refers to this, and denies it, in the *Federalist*, No. 81. Madison and Marshall both denied its existence in the course of the debates on the Constitution in Virginia. It was, however, maintained in *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419, in 1793. William Vassal, a British subject, soon after brought a suit in the Supreme Court to set aside a confiscation of his property in Massachusetts. Process was served on the governor of the State, John Hancock. The General Court was convened by him, and the authority questioned. It was argued that such suit was contrary to the principles of the Federal Government. It decided that the Federal Constitution should be amended in this respect, and in 1794 a senator from that State introduced in the Senate of the United States, and secured the adoption of the Eleventh Amendment by that body. It was declared in force January 8, 1798. The cases of *Chisholm* and *Vassal* were never prosecuted to judgment, and no attempt has been since made to so use the power of the court against a State at the suit of an individual.

The amendment is as follows: "The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State." Constitution, Art. XI of Amendments.



LECTURE VII.  
Between citizens  
of different States.

courts was granted in any action arising under the Constitution, laws, and treaties of the United States, without regard to the citizenship or residence of the parties thereto; but here it is the character of the party which gives the right to sue without reference to the nature of the matter at issue. A class of persons is here designated who can bring suits in the Federal courts, no matter what may be the cause of action. It may arise on a promissory note, out of an assault and battery, or from any other matter which can become the subject of a judicial investigation. A person residing in Maryland can sue in the courts of the United States a person residing in Virginia, and *e converso*, and so of other States. If a person has the qualification of citizenship in one State, and his adversary has it in another State, the suit can be brought in the Federal courts.

The reason for this, as has been frequently said by commentators and by courts, was the fear in the minds of the makers of the Constitution that the local prejudice likely to arise in favor of a man sued in the courts of his own State would result in unfair decisions against his non-resident adversary. Suppose, for illustration, that one party who is living in Boston brings a suit against a man residing in New Orleans. It was supposed that the popularity or the home influence, of the man who was thus sued in New Orleans, and possibly some irritation or ill-feeling against citizens of another State, might stand in the way of the just

determination of the claim of the man from Boston.

LECTURE VII.  
Between citizens  
of different States.

So, also, seeing that the Constitution had provided that the man so sued for an amount exceeding twenty dollars in value might demand a trial by a jury, and considering that the jury might be affected by this class of prejudices, it was thought wise that a tribunal that was supposed to be impartial should be provided, and one which did not owe its appointment or compensation to the State in which the case was tried. It was thought that a court owing its allegiance to, and receiving its commission from the United States, would be a safer tribunal than a court which was commissioned by a State, which could be influenced by a vote of a majority of its citizens, and might be swayed more or less in its decisions from the absolute principles of justice.<sup>1</sup> It was for these reasons that this provision was placed in the Constitution, and it has been and is to-day, in the ratio of four to one, the source of controversies, suits, and cases in the courts of the United States.

---

<sup>1</sup> One great object in the establishment of the courts of the United States and regulating their jurisdiction was, to have a tribunal in each State, presumed to be free from local influence; and to which all who were non-residents or aliens might resort for legal redress. *Gordon v. Longest*, 18 Pet. 97.

“In the argument the court has been admonished of the jealousy with which the States of the Union view the revising power intrusted by the Constitution and laws to this tribunal. To observations of this character the answer uniformly has been that the course of the judicial department is marked out by law. We must tread the direct and narrow path prescribed for us. As this court has never grasped at ungranted jurisdiction, so it never will, we trust, shrink from that which is conferred upon it.” Chief Justice Marshall, in *Fisher v. Cockerell*, 5 Pet. 248.

LECTURE VII.  
Citizens of the  
same State claim-  
ing lands under  
grants of different  
States.

The next class of cases to which the judicial power extends is one that depends partly upon the citizenship of the party and partly upon the character of the particular issue. It relates to controversies "between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States."<sup>1</sup> Virginia, at one time, claimed a large part of what was known as the Northwestern Territory. Connecticut had a grant of land which is included in the State of Ohio, what is called the "Western Reserve," with probably a population of a quarter of a million. It was supposed that where there were grants under the authority of different States there would be controversies. This provision was, therefore, introduced here for the purpose of giving the Federal courts jurisdiction of that class of cases.<sup>2</sup>

Between a State,  
or its citizens, and  
foreign states or  
citizens.

Finally, it is extended to controversies, "between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects." Every foreign state, or any of its citizens, is entitled to sue any of our citizens in the Federal courts, and if a citizen of this country can get service of process upon them, he has a right to sue them in the same tribunals.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> These are the only instances in which the proposed Constitution directly contemplates the cognizance of disputes between the citizens of the same State. The Federalist, No. 80.

<sup>2</sup> See case of *Pawlet v. Clark*, 9 Cranch, 292, relating to grants by the States of New York and Vermont. If the controversy is founded upon the conflicting grants of different States, the judicial power of the courts of the United States extends to the case, whatever may have been the equitable title of the parties prior to the grant. See grants by Kentucky and Virginia, in *Colson v. Lewis*, 2 Wheat. 377.

<sup>3</sup> The courts of the United States have jurisdiction in a case

These are the characteristics of the parties who may bring suits in the various courts of the United States, and these are the classes of cases, as well as the nature of the controversies, which come within their jurisdiction. But before this could be exercised in regard to the largest part of them, an act of Congress was required to create the courts for that purpose.<sup>1</sup> Therefore it was that immediately after the organization of the Government, Congress did create courts, define their constitution, and regulate their administration. It is, however, a noteworthy fact that up to within a very few years a large body of this judicial power, which is within the con-

LECTURE VII.  
Between a State,  
or its citizens, and  
foreign states or  
citizens.

between citizens of the same State if the plaintiffs are only nominally plaintiffs for the use of an alien. *Browne v. Strobe*, 5 Cranch, 303. It must appear from the record that the opposite party is a citizen. *Jackson v. Twentyman*, 2 Pet. 136. An Indian tribe or nation located within the United States is not a foreign state within the meaning of this clause. *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1.

<sup>1</sup> The great act, commonly called the "Judiciary Act," and entitled "An Act to establish the Judicial Courts of the United States," passed September 24, 1789, 1 Stat. 73, c. 20, originated in the Senate. One member of the committee which reported it, Oliver Ellsworth, afterwards became a Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, and another member, William Paterson, an Associate Justice of the same court. Five of its members had also been deputies to the convention which framed the Constitution. It may be said that the authors of this act, as well as the Congress which adopted it, were adherents of the political party which held that it was indispensable to the peace and unity of the country that the authority of the Federal Government should be extended as far as it could be constitutionally. So it has been considered, and justly so, as an authoritative and contemporaneous exposition of the limits of the judicial power of the General Government. Chief Justice Marshall says, in *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264, "Congress seems to have intended to give its own construction to this part of the Constitution in the twenty-fifth section of the Judiciary Act, and we perceive no reason to depart from that construction."

LECTURE VII.  
Between a State,  
or its citizens, and  
foreign states or  
citizens.

Limitations im-  
posed by Con-  
gress.

trol of Congress under these provisions of the Constitution, was vested in no court at all, and consequently could not be exercised by a Federal court.<sup>1</sup>

Limitations have also, from time to time, been fixed by Congressional action upon the classes of cases in regard to which jurisdiction has been vested in the courts of the United States. At the present time this limitation is a very large one. For instance, no suit can be brought in those courts where the amount in controversy does not exceed two thousand dollars in value, with the exception of patent, and revenue or admiralty cases, and criminal prosecutions. In regard to those matters suits may be brought without reference to value, but in all other actions brought by a citizen of this country the amount in controversy must exceed this specified limit.<sup>2</sup>

The Act of March  
3, 1875.

It was not until March 3, 1875, that Congress finally passed a law which authorized all cases arising under the Constitution, or laws of the United States, and treaties made under their authority, to be brought in the Federal courts,

---

<sup>1</sup> Congress may legislate authorizing the removal from State to Federal courts of criminal as well as civil cases. This has been partially done. Act of February 4, 1815, 3 Stat. 198, c. 31, § 8; Act of March 2, 1833, 4 Stat. 632, c. 57; March 3, 1863, 12 Stat. 755, c. 81, § 5; July 13, 1866, 14 Stat. 171, c. 184, § 67. This subject was considered at length in *Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257.

<sup>2</sup> It has often been decided that the sum in controversy in a suit is the damages claimed in the declaration; whether it be an original suit in the Circuit Court of the United States, or brought there by petition from a State court. *Gordon v. Longest*, 16 Pet. 97.

thus giving them concurrent jurisdiction with the State courts.<sup>1</sup> Previous to that date, if a party had a right under the Constitution, the laws, or treaties, but had not the requisite citizenship, he had to first go before a State court. After he had carried his case through all the State tribunals, up to the highest, then the question which concerned the Federal jurisdiction might, if it was decided against him, be brought by a writ of error up to the Supreme Court of the United States. But that class of cases may now, by the act of 1875, be brought originally in the Circuit Courts of the United States.

LECTURE VII.  
The Act of March  
3, 1875.

These comments upon the second section of the third article of the Constitution have been made before taking up the first section, because it defines or marks out the judicial power of the United States by providing to what cases it may extend. It is, therefore, of primary importance to the student of the legal principles upon which our Government is founded.

The first section provides, in its opening clause, that this judicial power of the United States, which we have been discussing, "shall be vested in one Supreme Court,<sup>2</sup> and in such inferior

---

<sup>1</sup> An act to determine the jurisdiction of Circuit Courts of the United States, and to regulate the removal of causes from State courts, and for other purposes. Approved March 3, 1875. 18 Stat. 470.

<sup>2</sup> The origin of this provision is described by Hamilton, in the *Federalist*, No. 81. He says that contrary to the general supposition of many persons who represented it to be novel and unprecedented, it is but a copy of the constitutions of New Hampshire,

LECTURE VII.  
The Act of March  
3, 1875.  
The Supreme  
Court.

courts as the Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish."

There can, therefore, be but one such court, but one which is supreme.<sup>1</sup> The establishment of that great tribunal is positively required by this provision, while, in that which follows, the establishment of inferior courts is left to the discretion of Congress.

The Supreme Court, once in existence, cannot be abolished, because its foundation is not in an act of the legislative department of the Government, but in the Constitution of the United States.<sup>2</sup> It is true, an act of Congress was

---

Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, and he applauds the wisdom of committing the judicial power, not to a part of the Legislature, but to distinct and independent bodies of men.

<sup>1</sup> The court of errors, or of cassation, in France, is the highest judicial tribunal in the kingdom. The principle on which, until recently, it proceeded, was this: If the judgment of an inferior court was reversed, the case was sent back to be tried again. If the court below persisted in its error, and the case was again appealed, and the court above reaffirmed the judgment before pronounced, it was sent back a second time. But if the inferior court still persevered in its error, the decree of the court of cassation no longer afforded the governing rule. The Legislature was then appealed to to settle the law by a declaratory act. But the absurdity of the scheme, the temptation which it held out to the legal tribunals to resist the judgment of the highest court, and to unsettle all the principles of law, produced so much mischief, that in 1837 the English and American procedure was adopted; and the determination of the court of cassation is now final, and absolutely binding upon all other tribunals. Grimke on Nature and Tendency of Free Institutions, p. 390 (Cincinnati, 1848).

<sup>2</sup> Chief Justice Taney, in the last judicial paper which he prepared, wrote as follows: "The Supreme Court does not owe its existence or its powers to the legislative department of the Government. It is created by the Constitution, and represents one of the great divisions of power in the Government of the United States, to each of which the Constitution has assigned its appro-

necessary to define the number of judges which should constitute that court, as well as to limit their jurisdiction and provide for their compensation;<sup>1</sup> but that once done, the existence of the court is an established fact. It cannot be abolished, nor its judges legislated out of existence,<sup>2</sup> although it has been forcibly urged, and

LECTURE VII.  
The Supreme  
Court.

---

appropriate duties and powers, and made each independent of the other in performing its appropriate functions. The power conferred on this court is exclusively judicial, and it cannot be required or authorized to exercise any other. . . . The existence of this court is therefore as essential to the organization of the Government established by the Constitution as the election of a President or members of Congress. It is the tribunal which is ultimately to decide all judicial questions confided to the Government of the United States. No appeal is given from its decisions, nor any power given to the legislative or executive departments to interfere with its judgments or process of execution." *Gordon v. United States*, 117 U. S. (Appendix), 699, 700.

<sup>1</sup> The act approved April 20, 1802, 2 Stat. 156, made the Supreme Court to consist of a Chief Justice and six Associates, which number was increased to eight by an act approved March 3, 1837, 5 Stat. 176, c. 34. Rev. Stat. sec. 673.

<sup>2</sup> Animadverting upon the great power of the Supreme Court, Mr. Van Buren said in the Senate in 1826: "It has been justly observed that there exists not upon this earth, and there never did exist, a judicial tribunal clothed with powers so various and so important as the Supreme Court. . . . Not only are the acts of the national Legislature subject to its review, but it stands as the umpire between the conflicting powers of the General and State governments. That wide field of debatable ground between those rival powers is claimed to be subject to the exclusive and absolute dominion of the Supreme Court. . . . In virtue of this power, we have seen it holding for naught the statutes of powerful States, which had received the deliberate sanction, not only of their Legislatures, but their highest judicatories, composed of men venerable in years, of unsullied purity, and unrivalled talents — statutes on the faith of which immense estates had been invested, and the inheritance of the widow and the orphan were suspended. You have seen such statutes abrogated by the decision of this court, and those who had confided in the wisdom and power of the State authorities plunged in irremediable ruin, — decisions final in



LECTURE VII.  
The Supreme  
Court.

probably with truth, that all the other courts can, by legislative act, be abolished, and their powers conferred on other courts, or subdivided in different modes.

Judges hold office  
during good be-  
havior.

The concluding clause of the first section fixes still more clearly the status of these judicial officers. "The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office."<sup>1</sup>

The judges of the Supreme Court, as we have just seen, cannot be legislated out of office, whatever might be the result as to the other judges of the United States if the inferior courts

---

their effect and ruinous in their consequences. I speak of the power of the court, not of the correctness or incorrectness of its decisions. With that we have nothing to do.

But this is not all. It not only sits in final judgment upon our acts, as the highest legislative body known to the country — it not only claims to be the final arbiter between the Federal and State governments, but it exercises the same great power between the respective *States* forming the great confederacy and their own *citizens*. . . . Add to the immense powers of which I have spoken [the regulation of commerce and the power to determine the validity of all legislative acts] those of expounding treaties, . . . of deciding controversies between the States and the citizens of the different States; and the justice of the remark will not be questioned, that there is no known judicial power so transcendently omnipotent as that of the Supreme Court of the United States." 4 Elliot's Debates, 486.

<sup>1</sup> Chief Justice Taney wrote a letter dated February 15, 1863, in which the position was taken that the act of Congress which imposed a tax of three per cent, so far as it applied to the judges of the Supreme Court, was an unconstitutional diminution of their salaries; and that they could not be diminished by taxation or otherwise. This letter was ordered by the court on the 10th of March, 1863, to be recorded in its minutes. Tyler's Life of Taney, 432.

were abolished. None of these officers shall be removed during good behavior, nor when the Legislature has once fixed their compensation, can it be diminished during the term of the judge then in office.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Judges hold office during good behavior.

There is an obvious reason for that. As has been before remarked, the judicial branch of the Government is the weakest of all.<sup>2</sup> It has

---

<sup>1</sup> Marshall said in the Virginia Convention of 1829: "The judicial department comes home in its effects to every man's fireside; it passes on his property, his reputation, his life, his all. Is it not to the last degree important that he should be rendered perfectly and completely independent, with nothing to control him but God and his conscience? I have always thought, from my earliest youth till now, that the greatest scourge an angry heaven ever inflicted upon an ungrateful and a sinning people was an ignorant, a corrupt, or a dependent judiciary."

"In the general course of human nature, a power over a man's subsistence amounts to a power over his will." *The Federalist*, No. 79.

<sup>2</sup> The author of the *Federalist*, No. 78, quotes this sentiment in the strong language of Montesquieu: "Of the three powers [the legislative, executive, and judicial], the judiciary is next to nothing." *Spirit of Laws*, vol. 1, p. 186. He proceeds to say that the judiciary has no influence over either the sword or purse; no direction either of the strength or of the wealth of society, and can take no active resolution whatever; and that it is incontestably the weakest of the three departments of power; that it can never attack with success either of the other two, and that all possible care is requisite to enable it to defend itself against their attacks.

"While by the Constitution the judicial department is recognized as one of the three great branches among which all the powers and functions of the Government are distributed, it is inherently the weakest of them all. Dependent as its courts are for the enforcement of their judgments upon officers appointed by the Executive and removable at his pleasure, with no patronage and no control of the purse or the sword, their power and influence rest solely upon the public sense of the necessity of the existence of a tribunal to which all may appeal for the assertion and the protection of rights guaranteed by the Constitution, and by the laws of the land, and on the confidence reposed in the soundness of their decisions and the purity of their motives." *United States v. Lee*, 106 U. S. 193, 223.

LECTURE VII.  
Judges hold office  
during good be-  
havior.

neither the purse nor the sword. It is dependent upon annual appropriations for the bread upon which its judges live. The courts are dependent upon the President to furnish marshals to execute their decrees. If, then, they are to administer the Constitution according to its true spirit, as the protectors and guardians of the weak against the strong, and to uphold the righteous cause against the encroachments of injustice, they must be shielded by guarantees of the needful independence in order that they may act impartially.<sup>1</sup> The makers of this wonderful instrument which we are considering, were perfectly aware of the waves of passion which frequently run through the legislative and executive branches of the Government. They knew that these judicial bodies would be called upon occasionally to point out what the Constitution means; that it might even become necessary to declare that certain enactments of Congress were void and of no effect, because they were

---

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Justice Johnson remarked, in the case of *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304, 381, "God forbid that the judicial power in these States should ever, for a moment, even in its humblest departments, feel a doubt of its own independence."

And Hamilton says in the *Federalist*, No. 78, "The complete independence of the courts of justice is peculiarly essential in a limited constitution."

<sup>2</sup> "This principle, which has been the subject of so much deserved eulogy, was derived from the English constitution. The English judges anciently held their seats at the pleasure of the king, and so does the lord chancellor to this day. It is easy to perceive what a dangerous influence this must have given to the king in the administration of justice, in cases where the claims or pretensions of the crown were brought to bear upon the rights of a private individual. . . . The Act of Settlement of 12 and 13 Wm. III. c. 2, established the commissions of the judges *quamdiu se bene gesserint*.

unconstitutional,<sup>2</sup> and that they might thus provoke virulent hostility and popular prejudice. So they said that their salaries should not be diminished, because they were not in accord with the legislative or executive departments of the Government, or in sympathy with the prevalent currents of popular feeling in the community. And they went further and said also that these judges should not be turned out of office, but should remain as long as they lived, provided they behaved themselves.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Judges hold office  
during good be-  
havior.

I am not going to discuss now the question of how well they have behaved. Their opinions and actions have become a part of the public history of this great land. If they are guilty of misconduct the same instrument which pro-

---

*rint.* The excellence of this provision has recommended the adoption of it by other nations of Europe." 1 Kent Com. 292, 293.

The Americans have acknowledged the right of judges to found their decisions on the Constitution, rather than on the laws. In other words, they have left them at liberty not to apply such laws as may appear to them to be unconstitutional. I am aware that a similar right has been claimed, but claimed in vain, by courts of justice in other countries; but in America it is recognized by all the authorities. De Tocqueville, vol. 1, p. 80, (ed. 1838, N. Y.).

"There is no position which depends on clearer principles, than that every act of a delegated authority, contrary to the tenor of the commission under which it is exercised, is void. No legislative act, therefore, contrary to the Constitution, can be valid." The Federalist, No. 78.

<sup>1</sup> A most ancient precedent in favor of the establishment of an independent judiciary is the statute of Alfonso V of Aragon, in 1442, providing they should continue in office during life, removable only on sufficient cause by the king and Cortes united. Prescott's History of Ferdinand and Isabella, vol. 1, p. 108. Introduction, sec. 2, p. 74 (5th ed. London, 1840).

And it is the best expedient which can be devised in any government to secure the steady, upright, and impartial administration of the laws. The Federalist, No. 78.

LECTURE VII.  
Judges hold office  
during good be-  
havior.

tests them in the proper administration of their duties, provides the means by which the personal responsibility for their misbehavior may be brought home to them. The only mode for determining that is by impeachment. If found guilty they may be removed from office, and thenceforth disqualified to hold or enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States. One judge of the Supreme Court of the United States went through that process, but he came out unharmed.<sup>1</sup>

Original juris-  
diction of the  
Supreme Court.

We have thus far only considered the first paragraph of the second section. We come now to the second paragraph; which provides that "in all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction."<sup>2</sup>

That is to say, there are some classes of cases where a litigant need not go through the forms of the lower courts; it is not necessary that his claim or right be passed upon by the District or Circuit Courts, or any other tribunal; but if he

---

<sup>1</sup> Samuel Chase, appointed by President Washington an Associate Justice of the Supreme Court in 1796, was impeached in 1804, at the instigation of John Randolph, for various alleged arbitrary, oppressive, and unjust acts and conduct on the bench. [Trial, vol. 1, pp. 25-103.] He was arraigned in 1805, but was acquitted after a long trial. He died June 19, 1811. See Lanman's Biog. Annals; Trial of Judge Chase; Annals of 8th Congress, 2d Session, pp. 81-676.

<sup>2</sup> The Supreme Court has original jurisdiction only in the two classes of cases mentioned in this clause. The appellate jurisdiction extends to all other cases within the judicial power of the United States. See cases reviewed in *Ex parte Yerger*, 8 Wall. 85, 95.

be an ambassador, a public minister, or consul, or if a State be a party (provided it be in the capacity of plaintiff, unless sued by another State), then the action may be brought at once in the Supreme Court of the United States in its original jurisdiction. Of course these classes of persons are not very large, nor will the cases in which a State is a party ever be very great, so that the number of suits coming within the original jurisdiction of that court has always been and will always continue to be very small. It never amounts to more than eight or ten cases upon the docket of any one term.

LECTURE VII.  
Original juris-  
diction of the  
Supreme Court.

The word "original" does not appear elsewhere in the Constitution, and is used in this clause in contradistinction to what is termed its "appellate" jurisdiction. Under the latter head comes the great mass of cases to which the power of the Federal Government extends. The concluding clause of the paragraph is as follows: "In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make."

The Congress, therefore, can control very largely the appellate jurisdiction of the United States Supreme Court. It has done so, by passing laws at various times regulating that jurisdiction.<sup>1</sup> One of its earliest enactments upon

Its appellate  
jurisdiction.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is essential to the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court of the United States over the judgment or decree of a State court, that it shall appear that one of the questions mentioned in the statute

LECTURE VII.  
Its appellate  
jurisdiction.

the subject was, that no ordinary suit between individuals could come to the Supreme Court for revision unless the amount involved was over two thousand dollars. It is now five thousand dollars, and it has been urged that this should be enlarged to ten or twenty thousand dollars, either by the creation of some intermediate appellate tribunal, or otherwise. This is proposed in order that the Supreme Court may be relieved from the consideration of a great number of less important matters which are brought to its attention, and so that only cases involving great amounts, as well as certain other cases where the Constitution of the United States is involved, or where there is a conflict between State and Federal authority, shall go up to that court under the head of its appellate jurisdiction.<sup>1</sup>

The third paragraph of the second section provides that "the trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury," and concludes by directing where such trial shall be held. This subject will be more appropriately treated in some observations which will be made concerning the system of trial by jury. The

---

must have been raised and presented to the State court; that it must have been decided by the State court against the right claimed or asserted by the plaintiff in error, under the Constitution, treaties, laws, or authority of the United States, or that such a decision was necessary to the judgment or decree rendered in the case. *Murdock v. City of Memphis*, 20 Wall. 590.

<sup>1</sup> The jurisdiction does not depend upon the amount of any contingent loss or damage which one of the parties may sustain by the decision against him, but by the amount in dispute between them. *Ross v. Prentiss*. 3 How. 771.

cases in which impeachment is the proper method of procedure is also separately considered under its appropriate head. LECTURE VII.  
Its appellate  
jurisdiction.

The third and last section of Article III is devoted to defining what is treason, and pointing out certain restrictions upon the power of the courts to convict of that offence. Congress is given the power to declare what punishment shall be meted out to the offender, "but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted." This subject will also be more appropriately considered in connection with others of the same general character.

It will thus be seen that the Constitution of the United States has created a judicial department of this Government as one of its three great branches, to which it has exclusively delegated all judicial power,<sup>1</sup> with the exception of the trial of impeachments. It prescribes with wonderful clearness the classes and kinds of suits which may be brought before it; it defines the persons who are privileged to sue, either in its highest forum or in its lower grades, and marks out the method in which trials are to be had. The courts are  
the judicial de-  
partment of the  
Government.

To this department is confided the judicial power of the Government.<sup>2</sup> It is perhaps true

<sup>1</sup> In cases arising during the reconstruction period, the extent and essential character of the judicial power, and its relation to the legislative and executive functions of the Government, were discussed at length. *Georgia v. Stanton*, 6 Wall. 50; *United States v. Lee*, 106 U. S. 196.

<sup>2</sup> The judicial power of the United States, considered with ref-



LECTURE VII. .  
The courts are  
the judicial de-  
partment of the  
Government.  
Definition of "ju-  
dicial power."

that the lines which separate the legislative and the judicial power are sometimes not very clearly defined, but they are becoming more and more so. That is a judicial power which, in a controversy, decides the right to property between citizens or proper parties. Such a determination is not a legislative power. If a legislature, or at least such a body acting within the dominion of the Government of the United States, should undertake to declare that certain property which belonged to A should become the property of B, it would be an invasion of the judicial function, and therefore wholly inoperative and void.<sup>1</sup> No court would hesitate to declare that such a determination was within the province of the courts alone; that the legislature could not effect it, because of this separation of the judicial and legislative powers which is made by the Constitution.<sup>2</sup>

---

erence to its adaptation to the purposes of its creation, is one of the most admirable and felicitous structures that human governments have exhibited. Curtis' Constitution.

<sup>1</sup> There is nothing in the Constitution of the United States which forbids the legislature of a State to exercise judicial functions. *Satterlee v. Matthewson*, 2 Pet. 413. A legislature cannot, however, declare what the law was, but what it shall be. — *Ogden v. Blackledge*, 2 Cranch, 272.

A resolution by the legislature of Tennessee, that a criminal should be discharged by a court, was held to be an unwarranted assumption of power on the part of the legislature, and void. *State v. Fleming*, 7 Humphreys, 152.

The legislature cannot grant a new trial, or direct the court to order it. *De Chastellux v. Fairchild*, 15 Penn. St. 18.

<sup>2</sup> The power vested in the American courts of justice of pronouncing a statute to be unconstitutional, forms one of the most powerful barriers which has ever been devised against the tyranny of political assemblies. De Tocqueville, *Dem. in America*, vol. 1, p. 83 (ed. N. Y.) 1838.

It is true that the Executive may, under certain circumstances, invade the personal rights of the individual, as regards his liberty. It has been done in cases of emergency; it may be done again. The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* may be suspended, when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it. The President, or the executive officers, may order a man into imprisonment, provided the necessity of the case warrants such action. But in all these cases they are bound to be careful to exercise their power within the law.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
*Habeas corpus.*

The highest judicial power in England is subordinate to the legislative power, and bound to obey any law that Parliament may pass, although it may, in the opinion of the court, be in conflict with the principles of Magna Charta or the Petition of Rights. Taney, C. J., in *Gordon v. United States*, 117 U. S. 699.

But in the United States, if a legislative act oppugns a constitutional principle, the former must give way, and be rejected on the score of repugnance. In such case it will be the duty of the court to adhere to the Constitution, and to declare the act null and void. The Constitution is the basis of legislative authority; it lies at the foundation of all law, and is a rule and commission by which both legislators and judges are to proceed. *Vanhorn's Lessees v. Dorrance*, 2 Dall. 304.

<sup>1</sup> The provisions in the constitutions and laws of the various States by which the right to the writ of *habeas corpus* has been secured to the people, incorporated the substance of the famous act of 31 Car. II, c. 2, which has frequently been termed the second Magna Charta of Great Britain. The right to suspend this writ in the United States is expressly confined to cases of rebellion or invasion, where the public safety may require it. Mr. Jefferson was opposed to the suspension in any case whatever of the "eternal and unremitting force of the *habeas corpus* laws."

This subject was earnestly debated during the late civil war, but very few cases were ever brought to the attention of the courts. Perhaps the most important was *Ex parte Merryman*, Taney's, C. Ct., Decisions, 246. Merryman was arrested May 26, 1861, in the State of Maryland by a military force acting under the orders of General Cadwallader and confined in Fort McHenry. Chief Justice Taney, sitting at chambers, issued a writ of *habeas corpus*,

LECTURE VII.  
*Habeas corpus.*

Whenever they act arbitrarily, and thus infringe the rights of any man by creating a law for themselves, in violation of the restrictions which both the Constitution and the laws have thrown around private rights, they invade the judicial functions and powers of the United States, and the courts will set that man at liberty, if their mandates are observed.<sup>1</sup>

---

but the officer to whom it was directed refused to produce the petitioner on the ground that he had been arrested for treason, and that the President of the United States had suspended the writ for the public safety. Chief Justice Taney simply filed his opinion, holding the petitioner entitled to be set at liberty, on the ground that Congress was the only power that could authorize a suspension of the privilege of the writ, and issued an attachment which the officers in charge of the fort would not permit to be served.

It was with the tacit consent or permission of Congress that the power was exercised during the rebellion by the President to suspend the action of this writ. March 3, 1863, Congress, however, determined to definitely regulate the matter, and passed an act which, among other things, gave the President the right, during the existing rebellion, to suspend the writ, whenever in his judgment the public safety might require it. 12 Stat. 755.

<sup>1</sup> The constitutional provision that no person shall be deprived of life, liberty or property without due process of law, nor private property be taken for public use without just compensation, relates to those rights whose protection is peculiarly within the province of the judicial branch of the Government. See examination of cases, showing that the courts extend protection when the rights of property are unlawfully invaded by public officers. *United States v. Lee*, 106 U. S. 196.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE VII.

---

FOLLOWING the example set by Mr. Justice LECTURE VII. Miller in this lecture, I will first consider some general subjects, applicable alike to all cases arising under any grant of judicial power, and then consider each grant separately, so far as may be advisable after the full treatment of these subjects in the lecture.

### 1. *Courts are created for Judicial Purposes only.*

The purpose of the framers of the Constitution to divide the powers of the Government into three branches, executive, legislative, and judicial, might have been frustrated, so far as the judiciary were concerned, but for its power to protect itself by pronouncing any law imposing other duties upon it, to be an infringement of its constitutional rights. Attempts to impose non-judicial duties upon the courts.

As early as 1792 Congress made such an attempt. The Judiciary Act of 1789 had gone into effect, the districts and circuits had been created, the judges had been appointed, and the new courts found themselves with little to do. On the 23d of March, 1792, Congress enacted a law "to provide for the settlement of the claims of widows and orphans barred by the limitations

LECTURE VII.  
Attempts to im-  
pose non-judicial  
duties upon the  
courts.

heretofore established, and to regulate the claims to invalid pensions.”<sup>1</sup>

This act imposed upon courts of the United States the duty of hearing applications for pensions, and of deciding whether the applicant should be put upon the list. It made a Pension Bureau of a court that was practically without judicial employment.

The Circuit Court for the District of New York, consisting of Chief Justice Jay, Mr. Justice Cushing, and Judge Duane, the District Judge, on the 5th of the following April, after consideration, unanimously held:—

“That, by the Constitution of the United States, the Government thereof is divided into three distinct and independent branches, and that it is the duty of each to abstain from, and to oppose, encroachments on the other; that neither the legislative nor the executive branches can constitutionally assign to the judicial any duties but such as are properly judicial, and to be performed in a judicial manner; and that the duties assigned to this circuit, by this act, are not of that description, and that the act itself does not appear to contemplate them as such, inasmuch as it subjects the decisions of these courts, made pursuant to those duties, first to the consideration and suspension of the Secretary at War, and then to the revision of the Legislature; whereas, by the Constitution neither the Secretary at War, nor any other

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Stat. 243, c. 11.

executive officer, nor even the Legislature, are authorized to sit as a court of errors on the judicial acts or opinions of this court." They held, however, that they could proceed as commissioners to perform these duties.

LECTURE VII.  
Attempts to impose non-judicial duties upon the courts.

In the District of Pennsylvania, the Circuit Court, consisting of Justices Wilson and Blair of the Supreme Court, and Judge Peters of the District Court, on the 18th April, 1792, addressed a letter to the President, declining to proceed: "1st, because the business directed by this act is not of a judicial nature." "2d, because, if upon that business the court had proceeded, its judgments (for its opinions are its judgments) might, under the same act be revised and controlled by the Legislature, and by an officer in the executive department."

Mr. Justice Iredell and Judge Sitgreaves, District Judge of North Carolina, sitting in Circuit Court, addressed a letter from that circuit to the President on the 8th of June, 1792, setting forth substantially the same thing.<sup>1</sup>

On the 17th of February, 1794, the question came before the Supreme Court in a case which was not reported at the time, but which was made the subject of a note, subsequently prepared by Mr. Chief Justice Taney, and inserted at the end of *United States v. Ferreira*<sup>2</sup> by his direction.<sup>3</sup>

This case was heard in circuit at New Haven, on May 3, 1792, before Chief Justice Jay, Mr.

<sup>1</sup> *Hayburn's Case*, 2 Dall. 408 ; 409, note.

<sup>2</sup> 13 How. 40.

<sup>3</sup> *United States v. Yale Todd*, 13 How. 52, note.

LECTURE VII.  
Attempts to im-  
pose non-judicial  
duties upon the  
courts.

Justice Cushing, and Judge Law, the District Judge. They adhered to the decision of the Circuit Court of New York, except that, on reflection, they did not think they could act out of court as commissioners.

Chief Justice Taney, in his note, sums up the result of all the opinions as follows : —

“1. That the power proposed to be conferred on the Circuit Courts of the United States, by the act of 1792, was not judicial power within the meaning of the Constitution, and was, therefore, unconstitutional, and could not lawfully be exercised by the courts :

“2. That as the act of Congress intended to confer the power on the courts as a judicial function, it could not be construed as an authority to the judges composing the court to exercise the power out of court as commissioners :

“3. That money paid under a certificate from persons, not authorized by law to give it, might be recovered back by the United States.”

He further adds : “In the early days of the Government, the right of Congress to give original jurisdiction to the Supreme Court, in cases not enumerated in the Constitution, was maintained by many jurists, and seems to have been entertained by the learned judges who decided *Todd's Case*. But discussion and more mature examination have settled the question otherwise ; and it has long been the established doctrine, and we believe now assented to by all who have examined the subject, that the original jurisdiction of this court is confined to the cases speci-

fied in the Constitution, and that Congress cannot enlarge it. In all other cases its power must be appellate."

LECTURE VII.  
Attempts to impose non-judicial duties upon the courts.

The same questions were afterwards discussed in *Gordon v. United States*,<sup>1</sup> on an appeal from the Court of Claims; and in *United States v. Jones*,<sup>2</sup> explanatory of that case. The cases settle the principle that courts created by law to exercise the judicial power conferred by the Constitution of the United States are purely judicial bodies.

The converse of this proposition does not hold good as to legislative bodies, existing under the laws of the United States. At October Term, 1857, it was held by a majority of the Supreme Court that a territorial statute of Oregon, dissolving the bonds of matrimony between a husband and his wife, (the husband being a resident of Oregon, the wife and children residents in Ohio where they had been left by the husband under promise that he would return or send for them, and the statute being enacted on the husband's application, without knowledge of the wife,) was an exercise of the legislative power of the territory on a rightful subject of legislation, according to the prevailing judicial opinion of the country, and the understanding of the legal profession at the time when the act of Congress establishing the territorial government was enacted (August 15, 1848).<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Wall. 561; 117 U. S. 697.

<sup>2</sup> 119 U. S. 477.

<sup>3</sup> *Maynard v. Hill*, 125 U. S. 190.



LECTURE VII.  
Attempts to im-  
pose non-judicial  
duties upon the  
courts.

So extreme a case as this, where manifest injustice was done under the form of law, shows that legislatures ought not to exercise judicial powers; or, at least, if they do exercise them, should be required to cite in all interested parties before they do it.

## 2. *How far the Laws of the Place of Trial prevail.*

Local law : when  
prevailing.

The courts of the United States are necessarily held within the domains of forty-four independent States; to say nothing of the Territories and the District of Columbia. The subjects of controversy which they have to adjudicate upon generally grow out of as many different systems of law, and are tried in localities having as many different systems of practice.

On this subject the Revised Statutes of the United States have made some provisions which are printed in the margin.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> "SEC. 722. The jurisdiction in civil and criminal matters, conferred on the District and Circuit Courts by the provisions of this title, and of title "Civil Rights," and of title "Crimes," for the protection of all persons in the United States in their civil rights, and for their vindication, shall be exercised and enforced in conformity with the laws of the United States, so far as such laws are suitable to carry the same into effect; but in all cases where they are not adapted to the object, or are deficient in the provisions necessary to furnish suitable remedies and punish offences against law, the common law, as modified and changed by the constitution and statutes of the State wherein the court having jurisdiction of such civil or criminal cause is held, so far as the same is not inconsistent with the Constitution and laws of the United States, shall be extended to and govern the said courts in the trial and disposition of the cause, and, if it is of a criminal nature, in the infliction of punishment on the party found guilty."

"SEC. 914. The practice, pleadings, and forms and modes of pro-

The adoption of State systems of remedy stops, however, when they conflict with the Constitution; as, for instance, the blending of remedies at law and in equity, so as to deprive a litigant of his constitutional right to a trial by jury, where his remedy is a remedy at common law. This question has often arisen. In a late case<sup>1</sup> from Mississippi, the opinion of the court was delivered by Mr. Justice Field. He said:

LECTURE VII.  
Local law: when  
prevailing.

“The general proposition, as to the enforcement in the Federal courts of new equitable rights created by the States, is undoubtedly correct, subject, however, to this qualification, that such enforcement does not impair any right conferred, or conflict with any inhibition imposed, by the Constitution or laws of the United States. Neither such right nor such inhibition can be in any way impaired, however fully the new equitable right may be enjoyed or enforced in the States by whose legislation it is created. The Constitution, in its Seventh Amendment, declares that “in suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved.” In the Federal courts this right cannot be dispensed with, except by the assent of the parties entitled to it, nor can it be impaired by

---

ceeding in civil causes, other than equity and admiralty causes, in the Circuit and District courts, shall conform, as near as may be, to the practice, pleadings, and forms and modes of proceeding existing at the time in like causes in the courts of record of the State within which such Circuit or District courts are held, any rule of court to the contrary notwithstanding.”

<sup>1</sup> *Scott v. Neely*, 140 U. S. 106.

LECTURE VII.  
Local law : when  
prevailing.

any blending with a claim, properly cognizable at law, of a demand for equitable relief in aid of the legal action or during its pendency. Such aid in the Federal courts must be sought in separate proceedings, to the end that the right to a trial by a jury in the legal action may be preserved intact."

"The Code of Mississippi gives to a simple contract creditor a right to seek in equity, in advance of any judgment or legal proceedings upon his contract, the removal of obstacles to the recovery of his claim caused by fraudulent conveyances of property. There the whole suit, involving the determination of the validity of the contract, and the amount due thereon, is treated as one in equity, to be heard and disposed of without a trial by jury. It is not for us to express any opinion of the wisdom of this law, or whether or not in its operation it is more advantageous in the interests of justice than an entire separation of proceedings at law from those for equitable relief. It is sufficient that under the statute of the United States such separation is required in the Federal courts, and by the Constitution, in cases at common law, a right to a trial by jury is secured to the defendant."

As to the more essential matter, the law which is to determine the rights of the parties to the controversy, the rule in this respect is thus stated by Mr. Justice Bradley in a carefully considered opinion :<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Burgess v. Seligman*, 107 U. S. 20, 33, 34.

“The existence of two co-ordinate jurisdictions in the same Territory is peculiar, and the results would be anomalous and inconvenient but for the exercise of mutual respect and deference. Since the ordinary administration of the law is carried on by the State courts, it necessarily happens that, by the course of their decisions, certain rules are established which become rules of property and action in the State, and have all the effect of law, and which it would be wrong to disturb. This is especially true with regard to the law of real estate and the construction of State constitutions and statutes. Such established rules are always regarded by the Federal courts, no less than by the State courts themselves, as authoritative declarations of what the law is. But when the law has not been thus settled, it is the right and duty of the Federal courts to exercise their own judgment; as they also always do in reference to the doctrines of commercial law and general jurisprudence. So, when contracts and transactions have been entered into, and rights have accrued thereon under a particular state of the decisions, or when there has been no decision of the State tribunals, the Federal courts properly claim the right to adopt their own interpretation of the law applicable to the case, although a different interpretation may be adopted by the State courts after such rights have accrued. But even in such cases, for the sake of harmony and to avoid confusion, the Federal courts will lean towards an agreement of views with the State

LECTURE VII.  
Local law : how  
construed.

LECTURE VII.  
Local law: how  
construed.

courts, if the question seems to them balanced with doubt. . . . As, however, the very object of giving to the National courts jurisdiction to administer the laws of the States in controversies between citizens of different States was to institute independent tribunals, which it might be supposed would be unaffected by local prejudices and sectional views, it would be a dereliction of their duty not to exercise an independent judgment in cases not foreclosed by previous adjudication.”<sup>1</sup>

### 3. *The Right to Trial by Jury.*

Trial by jury.

This constitutional right, so far as it relates to civil cases, has been sufficiently considered. In regard to persons accused of criminal offences before a police court, without a jury, it was held at October Term, 1887, that the Police Court of the District of Columbia was without constitutional power to try, convict, and sentence to punishment a person accused of a conspiracy to prevent another person from pursuing his calling and trade anywhere in the United States, and to boycott, injure, molest, oppress, intimidate, and reduce him to beggary and want, although the Revised Statutes relating to the District of Columbia provide that, “Any party deeming himself aggrieved by the judgment of the police court may appeal to the Supreme Court” of the district: as the provisions of the

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Hardin v. Jordan*, 140 U. S. 371; *Mitchell v. Smale*, 140 U. S. 406; *St. Louis v. Rutz*, 138 U. S. 226; *Barney v. Keokuk*, 94 U. S. 324; *Packer v. Bird*, 137 U. S. 661.

Constitution relating to trial by jury are in force in the District of Columbia.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Trial by jury.

It is held that the Sixth Amendment providing for the trial in criminal prosecution by a jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, has reference only to offences against the United States committed within a State.<sup>2</sup>

#### 4. *Ambassadors, other Public Ministers, and Consuls.*

The statute which regulates this jurisdiction is section 687 of the Revised Statutes. "It [the Supreme Court] shall have exclusively all such jurisdiction of suits or proceedings against ambassadors, or other public ministers, or their domestics, or domestic servants, as a court of law can have consistently with the law of nations; and original, but not exclusive, jurisdiction of all suits brought by ambassadors, or other public ministers, or in which a consul or vice-consul is a party."

Suits by ambassadors, etc.

These provisions are plenary. When such a suit appears upon the docket, and this privilege is claimed either by plaintiff or defendant, the first question to be passed upon is whether he is entitled to it. It has seemed to me that there is, and from the nature of the case can be, but one class of evidence that can establish this fact. Whether a person is or is not a diplomatic rep-

<sup>1</sup> *Callan v. Wilson*, 127 U. S. 540.

<sup>2</sup> *Cook v. United States*, 138 U. S. 157.

LECTURE VII.  
Suits by ambassa-  
dors, etc.

representative or consular agent of a foreign power, accepted as such by our Government, is a political fact to be established by the certificate of the Secretary of State. He may have been accepted as such yesterday, and may not be so accepted to-day. The Department of State is the only place where absolutely correct information on the subject can be had. It seems to me that the courts ought, in every case, to insist upon this as the best evidence, to show what the political department of the Government has determined as to the status of the individual. The courts, however, have not gone quite to this extent. In a recent case it is said: "We do not assume to sit in judgment upon the decision of the Executive in reference to the public character of a person claiming to be a foreign minister, and therefore have the right to accept the certificate of the Department of State that a party is or is not a privileged person, and cannot properly be asked to proceed upon argumentative or collateral proof."<sup>1</sup>

### 5. *Admiralty and Maritime Jurisdiction.*

Admiralty juris-  
diction.

Nothing further need be said on this point except that it has recently been held that since the passage of the act of June 19, 1886, 24 Stat. 79, this jurisdiction is extended over cases of limited liability on the navigable rivers of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *In re Baiz*, 135 U. S. 403, 432.

<sup>2</sup> *In re Garnett*, Petitioner, 140 U. S. 000.

6. *Controversies between a State and Citizens.*

The history of the Eleventh Amendment and its application to some recent cases<sup>1</sup> is fully set forth by Judge Miller. In a still more recent case it was held that, although this amendment applies, in terms, only to suits against a State by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state, yet that a State cannot, without its own consent, be sued in a Circuit Court of the United States, upon a suggestion that the case is one arising under the Constitution and laws of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

LECTURE VII.  
Suits against  
States.

Mr. Justice Bradley, in delivering the opinion of the court, said: "Looking back from our present standpoint at the decision in *Chisholm v. Georgia*, we do not greatly wonder at the effect which it had on the country. Any such power as that of authorizing the Federal judiciary to entertain suits by individuals against the States, had been expressly disclaimed, and even resented by the great defenders of the Constitution, whilst it was on trial before the American people." And then, after quoting the views of Hamilton in the *Federalist*, No. 81, and referring to the dissenting opinion of Justice Iredell, he said: "Looking at the subject as Hamilton did, and as Mr. Justice Iredell did, in the light of history and experience, and the established order of things, the views of the

---

<sup>1</sup> *New Hampshire v. Louisiana*, 108 U. S. 76.

<sup>2</sup> *Hans v. Louisiana*, 134 U. S. 1.



LECTURE VII.  
Suits against  
States.

latter were clearly right, as the people of the United States, in their sovereign capacity, subsequently decided.”<sup>1</sup>

In the course of the century which has elapsed, especially in the latter part of it, many attempts have been made to enforce, in the courts of the United States, private rights against a State, by suing its officers.

A mass of authority has been created by this litigation, which is admirably and lucidly reviewed by Mr. Justice Lamar.<sup>2</sup> He says:—

“It is well settled that no action can be maintained in any Federal court by the citizens of one of the States against a State, without its consent, even though the sole object of such suit be to bring the State within the operation of the constitutional provision which provides that ‘no State shall pass any law impairing the obligation of contracts.’ This immunity of a State from suit is absolute and unqualified, and the constitutional provision securing it is not to be so construed as to place the State within the reach of the process of the court. Accordingly, it is equally well settled that a suit against the officers of a State, to compel them to do the acts which constitute a performance by it of its contracts, is, in effect, a suit against the State itself.

“In the application of this latter principle two classes of cases have appeared in the deci-

---

<sup>1</sup> This subject is further treated in Lecture VIII, on the Supreme Court of the United States.

<sup>2</sup> *Pennoy v. McConnaughty*, 140 U. S. 1.

sions of this court, and it is in determining to which class a particular case belongs that differing views have been presented.

LECTURE VII.  
Suits against  
States.

“The first class is where the suit is brought against the officers of the State, as representing the State’s action and liability, thus making it though not a party to the record, the real party against which the judgment will so operate as to compel it to specifically perform its contracts.<sup>1</sup>

“The other class is where a suit is brought against defendants who, claiming to act as officers of the State, and under the color of an unconstitutional statute, commit acts of wrong and injury to the rights and property of the plaintiff acquired under a contract with the State. Such suit, whether brought to recover money or property in the hands of such defendants, unlawfully taken by them in behalf of the State, or for compensation in damages, or, in a proper case where the remedy at law is inadequate, for an injunction to prevent such wrong and injury, or for a mandamus, in a like case, to enforce upon the defendant the performance of a plain, legal duty, purely ministerial, is not within the meaning of the Eleventh Amendment an action against the State.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *In re Ayers*, 123 U. S. 443; *Louisiana v. Jumel*, 107 U. S. 711; *Antoni v. Greenhow*, 107 U. S. 789; *Cunningham v. Macon & Brunswick Railroad*, 109 U. S. 446; *Hagood v. Southern*, 117 U. S. 52.

<sup>2</sup> *Osborn v. Bank of the United States*, 9 Wheat. 738; *Davis v. Gray*, 16 Wall. 203; *Tomlinson v. Branch*, 15 Wall. 460; *Litchfield v. Webster County*, 101 U. S. 773; *Allen v. Baltimore & Ohio Railroad*, 114 U. S. 311; *Board of Liquidation v. McComb*, 92 U. S. 531; *Poindexter v. Greenhow*, 114 U. S. 270.

LECTURE VII.  
Suits against  
States.

"It is not our purpose to attempt a review of all, or even many, of these decisions, as to do so intelligently would unnecessarily protract this opinion, and in this connection, would subserve no useful purpose. It will be sufficient, perhaps, to refer to some of those which this case most nearly resembles."

Then, after referring to the cases cited in the margin,<sup>1</sup> he continued:—

"The dividing line between the cases to which we have referred and the class of cases in which it has been held that the State is a party defendant, and, therefore, not suable, by virtue of the inhibition contained in the Eleventh Amendment to the Constitution, was adverted to in *Cunningham v. Macon & Brunswick Railroad*,<sup>2</sup> where it was said, referring to the case of *Davis v. Gray*: '*Nor was there in that case any affirmative relief granted by ordering the governor and land commissioner to perform any act towards perfecting the title of the company.*' Thus holding, by implication, at least, that affirmative relief would not be granted against a State officer, by ordering him to do and perform acts forbidden by the law of his State, even though such law might be unconstitutional.

"The same distinction was pointed out in

---

<sup>1</sup> *Osborn v. Bank of the United States*, 9 Wheat. 738, 859; *New Hampshire v. Louisiana*, 108 U. S. 76; *In re Ayers*, 123 U. S. 443; *Davis v. Gray*, 16 Wall. 203; *Board of Liquidation v. McComb*, 92 U. S. 531; *Poindexter v. Greenhow*, 114 U. S. 270; *Allen v. Baltimore & Ohio Railroad Co.*, 114 U. S. 311; *McGahey v. Virginia*, 135 U. S. 662.

<sup>2</sup> 109 U. S. 446.

*Hagood v. Southern*, which was held to be, in effect, a suit against the State, and it was said: ‘A broad line of demarcation separates from such cases as the present, in which the decrees require, *by affirmative official action* on the part of the defendants, *the performance of an obligation which belongs to the State in its political capacity*, those in which actions at law or suits in equity are maintained against defendants who, while claiming to act as officers of the State, violate and invade the personal and property rights of the plaintiffs under color of authority, unconstitutional and void.’<sup>1</sup>

“The cases in which suits against officers of a State have been considered as against the State itself, and, therefore, within the inhibition of the Eleventh Amendment to the Constitution, and those in which such suits were considered to be against State officers, as individuals, were elaborately reviewed and distinguished in the recent case of *In re Ayers*.<sup>2</sup> That case came before us on application for *habeas corpus* by the attorney general of Virginia, the auditor of the State, and the commonwealth’s attorney for Loudoun County in that State, who were in the custody of the United States marshal for the Eastern District of Virginia, for contempt of court, in disobeying a restraining order of the Circuit Court of the United States for that district, commanding them not to institute and prosecute certain suits in the name of the State of Virginia, required to be brought by the statutes

---

<sup>1</sup> 117 U. S. 52, 70.

<sup>2</sup> 123 U. S. 443.

LECTURE VII.  
Suits against  
States.

of the State. The suit in which the restraining order was issued was nominally against certain officers of the State, but this court held that it was, in effect, a suit against the State itself, and, therefore, in violation of the Eleventh Amendment to the Constitution. And that such being true, the acts and proceedings of the Circuit Court in that suit were null and void for all purposes; and the prisoners were discharged. In delivering the opinion of the court, Mr. Justice Matthews, referring to the class of cases in which it had been adjudged that the suit was against State officers in their private capacity, and not against the State, said: 'The vital principle in all such cases is that the defendants, though professing to act as officers of the State, are threatening a violation of the personal or property rights of the complainant, for which they are personally and individually liable. . . . This feature will be found, on an examination, to characterize every case where persons have been made defendants for acts done or threatened by them as officers of the government, either of a State or of the United States, where the objection has been interposed that the State was the real defendant, and has been overruled.'<sup>1</sup>

"In *Hans v. Louisiana*<sup>2</sup> the general rule on this subject was concisely stated by Mr. Justice Bradley in the following terms: 'To avoid misapprehension it may be proper to add that, although the obligations of a State rest for their

---

<sup>1</sup> 123 U. S. 500, 501.<sup>2</sup> 134 U. S. 1, 20, 21.

performance upon its honor and good faith, and cannot be made the subjects of judicial cognizance unless the State consents to be sued, or comes itself into court; yet where property or rights are enjoyed under a grant or contract made by a State, they cannot wantonly be invaded. Whilst the State cannot be compelled by suit to perform its contracts, any attempt on its part to violate property or rights acquired under its contract, may be judicially resisted; and any law impairing the obligation of contracts under which such property or rights are held is void and powerless to affect their enjoyment.'

LECTURE VII.  
Suits against  
States.

### 7. *Inferior Courts.*

This grant of power refers to courts of the United States, established by law, under the provisions of the Constitution. About these nothing more need be said. A word may be added, however, concerning some courts, created under authority of Congress, but not held to be courts of the United States under the grant of judicial power under the Constitution.

Inferior courts.

As long ago as 1828, it was held in an opinion delivered by Chief Justice Marshall, that a territorial court was not "a constitutional court, in which the judicial power conferred by the Constitution on the General Government can be deposited," but a legislative court, "created in virtue of the general right of sovereignty which exists in the Government, or in virtue of that clause which enables Congress to make all need-

LECTURE VII.  
Inferior courts.

ful rules and regulations respecting the territory belonging to the United States.<sup>1</sup>” The District Court of Alaska has just been held to be a court of this stamp,<sup>2</sup> Justices Field, Gray, and Brown dissenting, but not on this point.

A recent opinion by Mr. Justice Field holds the Consular courts established in foreign countries by Congress under grants of rights of ex-territoriality to the United States by treaty, to be valid courts, and that the statutes establishing them do not infringe the Constitution. The opinion says:—

“The framers of the Constitution, who were fully aware of the necessity of having judicial authority exercised by our consuls in non-Christian countries, if commercial intercourse was to be had with their people, never could have supposed that all the guarantees in the administration of the law upon criminals at home were to be transferred to such consular establishments, and applied, before an American who had committed a felony there could be accused and tried. They must have known that such a requirement would defeat the main purpose of investing the consul with judicial authority.” “By the Constitution a government is ordained and established ‘for the United States of America,’ and not for countries outside of their limits. The Constitution can have no operation in another country.”<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *American Insurance Co. v. Canter*, 1 Pet. 511, 546.

<sup>2</sup> *McAlister v. United States*, 141 U. S. Act of May 17, 1884, 23 Stat. 24, c. 53.

<sup>3</sup> *In re Ross*, Petitioner, 140 U. S. 453.

When the Roman Empire fell, the influence of its wonderful system of law remained. Even the common law traces to Rome the principles on which it is grounded. But when the Turks conquered Constantinople, the Twelve Tables and the Institutes gave place to the Koran as a system of law. The unwillingness of the powers of Europe to submit their subjects to such a system — or want of system — of jurisprudence, led to the establishment of consular courts in Ottoman countries, with civil and criminal jurisdiction over the subjects or citizens of the nationality to which the particular capitulation was granted. The first was made to France, from which circumstance all Christians in the Ottoman dominions came to be called Franks.

LECTURE VII.  
Inferior courts.

As intercourse with Asia grew, the same system of consular courts, with extraterritorial jurisdiction, was adopted there.

These concessions proved to be of great importance to Americans residing in those countries. Congress created consular courts to exercise the granted powers, both civil and criminal. In the latter it was a necessity that proceedings should be instituted against persons accused of murder, without the intervention of a grand jury, and that they should be tried without a petit jury. Some strict constructionists in Congress and elsewhere questioned the constitutionality of such proceedings. This decision of the Supreme Court, announced by Mr. Justice Field, has set at rest all such questions.



LECTURE VII.  
Inferior courts.

Somewhat akin to this is the jurisdiction which a District Court of the United States may acquire over crimes committed on Guano Islands, by reason of the offender being brought first into the district.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Rev. Stat. § 5576. *Jones v. United States*, 137 U. S. 202.

## VIII.

# THE SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

**ARTICLE III, SECTION 1.** The judicial power of **LECTURE VIII.** the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their services, a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

**SECTION 2.** The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; — to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls ; — to all Cases of Admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction ; — to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party ; — to Controversies between two or more States ; — between a State and Citizens of another State ; — between Citizens of different States ; — between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

**ARTICLE XI OF THE AMENDMENTS.** The Judicial Power of the United States shall not be construed to

## LECTURE VIII.

extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

## The Supreme Court.

I HAVE selected a subject for this address<sup>1</sup> in which I trust the young gentlemen present, who have just graduated, will feel an interest as great as their seniors in the profession of the law. It is one which ought to engage the thoughts and reflections of every member of the legal profession in the United States, and it has been chosen because my own familiarity with the topic will, I trust, enable me to say something valuable in regard to the highest judicature in this country. My subject is "The Supreme Court of the United States."

This court may be regarded in many respects, to consider each one of which would consume more time than is permissible upon an occasion like this. There are, and might be discussed separately, its jurisdiction, the *personnel* of its organization, the history of the men who have occupied places upon its bench, a review of the great cases decided by it, and a general outlook upon the principal events in its career.

## Its judicial history.

Upon the present occasion I propose to consider the history of the court with relation to its effect upon the course of the General Government, and in doing this I can best illustrate my meaning and better interest my listeners by

---

<sup>1</sup> This lecture was delivered by Mr. Justice Miller before the Alumni of the Law Department of the University of Michigan on the 29th of June, 1887, as an Address at the semi-centennial celebration of the founding of the University.

a reference to some of its decisions upon great constitutional questions that have influenced, and in some instances controlled, the course of the other two great departments of the Government.

LECTURE VIII.  
Its judicial  
history.

The framers of the Constitution of the United States were governed by the principle that the powers which belong to all governments could be most safely and satisfactorily exercised by their division among three separate branches or departments, to one or the other of which, in the main, they were all distributed. These departments are called the executive, the legislative, and the judicial. The line, however, is not perfect which divides the powers exercised by each of them from those of the others. The President, or the Executive, takes part in the making of laws by his signature to them, or by his refusal to sign them, in which event a two-thirds vote of the Legislature is required to make the act a law. The Senate partakes in the executive function by its power to confirm or reject treaties made by the President, as well as his nominations to office; and the power to try impeachments, which is essentially judicial in its nature, is also given to that body. Yet, notwithstanding these departures from the general principle, it remains true that the great executive functions of the Government in this country are given to the President, the legislative to Congress, and, more rigidly than in either of the other cases, the judicial to the courts of the United States.

Division of  
powers of the  
Government.

LECTURE VIII.  
The Supreme  
Court is the head  
of the judicial de-  
partment.

Of the judicial department of the Government the Supreme Court is the head and representative, and to it must come for final decision all the great legal questions which may arise under the Constitution, the laws, or the treaties of the United States. It is to this court, and to some detached portions of its history of nearly one hundred years, that I propose to call your attention.

It has been said of this court, that the Constitution created it for the purpose of construing that instrument. The popular idea to-day is that such is the primary and most important object of its existence. To some extent this may be so, but it is undoubtedly true that the judicial function of administering justice as a court of law between certain classes of litigants, and upon certain subjects of dispute, is the duty in which it is principally engaged. In the administration of this duty questions must occasionally arise in regard to the validity of the laws enacted by the Congress of the United States, or of a State, or of an act of the executive department of the Government, as to whether such law or action is in conformity to or in violation of the Constitution of the United States; and the court must in such cases give judicial construction to that instrument. Such construction, being by the highest law tribunal of the country, is to be received as the law, not only of that particular case, but the rule of action for all inferior judicial tribunals in all cases of a like character.

As it is also desirable that there should be uniformity of construction upon all important questions arising under the Constitution, the decisions of no other body in the organization of the Government are likely to command the same influence, in producing that result, as those of the Supreme Court. And as the same questions may time after time be brought before it, and will in general be decided in the same way, its decisions constitute a body of precedents which naturally come to command the respect of all other tribunals, and to be generally received as the true construction of the organic law of the nation, upon the points thus determined.

LECTURE VIII.  
Decisions of the  
Supreme Court  
construing the  
Constitution.

It is not strictly true that these decisions are in all cases binding upon the executive and the legislative branches of the Government. In certain classes of cases every man who takes an oath to support the Constitution of the United States must find himself in the presence of embarrassing questions, in regard to which his action must be governed by his own conviction of the duties which it imposes upon him. Still it may be said that in the history of the Government, during a period of nearly a century since its organization, it has been exceedingly rare that a principle of constitutional law has been distinctly laid down by the Supreme Court, which has not come to be recognized as the true sense of that instrument.

Not strictly binding upon the other departments.

The act of Congress under which the organization of this court took place was approved

Organization of  
the court.

**LECTURE VIII.**  
**Organization of**  
**the court.**

September 24, 1789. It provided for the appointment of a Chief Justice, and five Associate Justices, who should constitute the court. The first judges appointed under this law were John Jay of New York, Chief Justice; and John Rutledge of South Carolina; James Wilson of Pennsylvania; William Cushing of Massachusetts; Robert Harrison of Maryland; and John Blair of Virginia, Associate Justices.

**Succession of**  
**Chief Justices.**

Jay served as Chief Justice from 1789 to 1795, when he resigned. During this period, however, he was Minister of the United States to England. And, as showing that this high judicial office was not in that early time considered incompatible with the discharge of the functions of other offices, it may be mentioned that, when Marshall was appointed and confirmed as Chief Justice in 1801, he was Secretary of State in the Cabinet of President John Adams, and, though commissioned and taking his seat upon the bench, he continued to discharge the duties of the secretaryship until the end of that administration, a period of two or three months.

On the resignation of Jay, in 1795, John Rutledge was appointed Chief Justice, received his commission, and took his seat in court, but, not being confirmed by the Senate, Oliver Ellsworth was appointed in 1796. He served as Chief Justice until December, 1799, when he resigned.

John Marshall was appointed to the position of Chief Justice in 1801, and served a period of thirty-four years, until he died in 1835. After his death Roger B. Taney was appointed to the

vacant place in 1836, and held it until he died in 1864, after a service of twenty-eight years. With the additional statement that Chief Justice Chase succeeded him, and presided for nine years, when he died, and was succeeded by the present Chief Justice Waite, I am compelled to close what I have to say with regard to the personal organization of the court.<sup>1</sup> It will be noted that for a period of sixty-two years continuously the court was presided over by two Chief Justices, which may be supposed to have aided very much in the stability and uniformity of its course of decisions.

LECTURE VIII.  
Succession of  
Chief Justices.

Very early in the history of the court a question came before it of much importance, which was fully considered at the time, and in which great public interest was felt. Its decision caused the adoption of an amendment to the Constitution of the United States, the Eleventh. It arose in the case of *Chisholm v. The State of Georgia*.<sup>2</sup>

Review of some  
of the most im-  
portant decisions.

*Chisholm v.  
Georgia*, 2 Dall.  
419.

This was an action of *assumpsit*, instituted in the Supreme Court of the United States, under its original jurisdiction, at the August Term, 1792, and was decided at the February Term, 1793. The State of Georgia, which was supposed to be brought before the court by the service of the writ upon its Governor and its Attorney General, refused to make any general appearance, but presented by its attorneys, In-

<sup>1</sup> Chief Justice Waite died March 23, 1888. Chief Justice Fuller was commissioned July 20, 1888.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Dall. 419.



LECTURE VIII.  
*Chisholm v.*  
*Georgia*, 2 Dall.  
419.

gersoll and Dallas, a written remonstrance and protestation against the exercise of jurisdiction in this case. The question thus presented was, whether a common law action of *assumpsit* could be sustained against a State in the Supreme Court of the United States by a citizen of another State.

The action was commenced under the second section of the Third Article of the Constitution, providing that the judicial power of the United States shall among other matters extend to controversies between a State and citizens of another State, and that the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction in all cases in which a State shall be a party. Chisholm, being a citizen of North Carolina, began his action under this provision against the State of Georgia in the Supreme Court of the United States. The judges delivered separate opinions.

Iredell of North Carolina, who had succeeded Harrison of Maryland as a member of the court, delivered a very learned one, the main object of which seemed to be to show that, inasmuch as States had never been held liable to action at common law, the State in this case could not be sued in an action of *assumpsit*, however it might be in regard to other matters of litigation. The other judges, on the contrary, all agreed in the proposition, that the provision of the Constitution, just recited, made a State liable to be sued for any legal cause of action, in law or in equity, in the Supreme Court of the United States by a citizen or citizens of another State.

This proposition, which, as Mr. Randolph, the Attorney General of the United States who argued the case for Chisholm, said, was so unpopular that he had been warned against the consequences of his pressing it upon the court, was received with very great disfavor. The result was that Congress immediately proposed the Eleventh Amendment to the Constitution, which was ratified by the States as soon as they had an opportunity to vote upon it. That amendment is as follows: —

LECTURE VIII.  
*Chisholm v.*  
*Georgia*, 2 Dall.  
 419.

“The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.”

It is a little remarkable that, notwithstanding the unanimity of the court upon this question, a different opinion had been expressed by Mr. Hamilton in No. 81 of the *Federalist*. In reply to the objection that this provision of the Constitution subjected a State to be sued for its debts or obligations, he says: —

“It has been suggested that an assignment of the public securities of one State to the citizens of another would enable them to prosecute that State in the Federal courts for the amount of those securities, a suggestion which the following considerations prove to be without foundation.”

He then goes on to show that it is inherent in the nature of sovereignty not to be amenable to suit without its consent, and that this is the

LECTURE VIII.  
*Chisholm v.*  
*Georgia*, 2 Dall.  
419.

general sense and the general practice of mankind; that this provision of the Constitution can only be construed to authorize a State to bring a suit against citizens of other States in the Federal courts, and does not authorize a suit against the State by the citizen of another State.

Mr. Madison and Mr. Marshall, one or both of them, made the same suggestion in the Convention of the State of Virginia, called to pass upon the adoption of the Constitution.

The amendment just quoted was supposed to have settled the question of the suability of a State upon its obligations or for its debts in any other mode than that to which the State should give its express consent, and that the courts of the United States had no jurisdiction to entertain such suits. But curiously enough, after the lapse of ninety years, the suggestion of Hamilton in regard to the assignment by creditors of a State, who could not themselves sue in the Federal courts, to parties who could sue the State in those courts, has been acted upon.

*New Hampshire*  
*v. Louisiana*, 108  
U. S. 76.

In the cases of *New Hampshire v. Louisiana*, and *New York v. Louisiana*, reported in 108 U. S. 76, this precise question was brought up. Although the jurisdiction to sue a State in the courts of the United States by the citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State, was abolished by the Eleventh Amendment, there yet remained the right of one State to sue another. Certain creditors, therefore, of the State of Louisiana, who could not sue that State themselves, transferred by

assignment the evidence of their indebtedness, some to the State of New Hampshire and others to the State of New York, and these States brought suits in the Supreme Court of the United States against the State of Louisiana upon those obligations.

LECTURE VIII.  
*New Hampshire*  
*v. Louisiana*, 108  
U. S. 76.

The court, after a very elaborate argument, decided that these actions could not be sustained; that "the evident purpose of the amendment, so promptly proposed and adopted, was to prohibit all suits against a State by or for citizens of other States, or aliens, without the consent of the State to be sued," and that "one State cannot create a controversy with another State, within the meaning of that term as used in the judicial clauses of the Constitution, by assuming the prosecution of debts owing by the other State to its citizen."

At the same term there was presented to the court in its appellate jurisdiction an effort to force the State of Louisiana to pay some of the same kind of debts out of the money in its treasury. This was a proceeding in *mandamus* against the treasurer of the State to compel him to pay them out of the funds in his hands as such officer, and by a bill in chancery to enjoin the payment of the same money to other creditors.

*Louisiana v.*  
*Jumel*, 107 U. S.  
711.

Both of these were held to be forbidden by the Constitution, because they were substantially suits against the State.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Louisiana v. Jumel*, 107 U. S. 711.

LECTURE VIII.  
*Louisiana v.*  
*Jumel*, 107 U. S.  
 711.

And though there have been some differences in court upon the question of how far an action against an officer of a State may be held to be a suit against the State, so as to come within the principle of the Eleventh Amendment to the Constitution, excluding the jurisdiction of the Federal courts, yet the main proposition has been steadily sustained, that if it be essentially a suit against the State the Federal courts cannot entertain it. In view of the many millions of dollars of indebtedness of the States, which they refuse to pay, the importance of the original decision, which evoked the constitutional amendment forbidding the States to be sued in the Federal courts, is readily to be perceived.

Another judgment of the Supreme Court a little later, rendered at the February Term, 1803, which has been very far-reaching in its influence upon the other departments and other officers of the Government, was made in the case of *Marbury v. Madison*.<sup>1</sup>

*Marbury v. Madison*, 1 Cranch, 137.

I have already said that Marshall, although Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, had continued to act as Secretary of State until the close of John Adams's administration, when the latter was succeeded by Jefferson. The commissions of certain officers, signed and sealed by the President, and ready for delivery, were left in the office of the Secretary of State, which the succeeding Secretary, Mr. Madison, refused to deliver to the parties thus commissioned. The

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cranch, 137.

result of this was that Mr. Marbury, who was one of these parties, commissioned as a justice of the peace of the District of Columbia, and whose appointment had been approved by the Senate, having demanded the delivery of his commission, applied to the Supreme Court for a writ of *mandamus* to compel its delivery.

The opinion in the case was delivered by Marshall himself, as Chief Justice, and was concurred in by the whole court. It is very lengthy, and an exhaustive discussion of the power of a court of law to compel officers by the writ of *mandamus* to discharge duties which it is clear they are bound to perform, and in regard to which they have no discretion. The court decides that since the commission was signed and sealed by the President of the United States, and the appointment approved by the Senate, there was no authority in the President or Secretary of State to withhold it; that the duty to deliver it to the person entitled to it was clear and unquestionable, and that this duty could be enforced by any court having jurisdiction of the case.

The court, however, came to the conclusion that this was not a case in which it had any original jurisdiction, and it therefore could not issue the writ. But it was also held that such jurisdiction was in the local courts of the District of Columbia, who had authority to issue the writ to any officer within the District who refused to perform a duty merely ministerial in its character, in regard to which he could exercise

LECTURE VIII.  
*Marbury v. Madison*, 1 Cranch, 137.

LECTURE VIII. no judgment, and that this was of that class of *Marbury v. Madison* cases. *son*, 1 Cranch, 137.

The immense importance of this decision, though in some respects *obiter*, since the court declared in the end that it had no jurisdiction of the case, may be appreciated when it is understood that the principles declared, which have never since been controverted, subjected the ministerial and executive officers of the Government, all over the country, to the control of the courts, in regard to the execution of a large part of their duties. Its application to the very highest officers of the Government, except perhaps the President himself, has been illustrated in numerous cases in the courts of the United States, and in the reports of the Supreme Court. Perhaps one of the latest and most instructive of these is the case of *United States v. Schurz*,<sup>1</sup> decided at October Term, 1880.

*United States v. Schurz*, 102 U. S. 378.

It appears that Mr. Schurz, as Secretary of the Interior, after a patent for lands had been granted, signed by the President of the United States, and recorded in the Register of Patents, issued an order to the Commissioner of the General Land Office that he should withhold the instrument, and not deliver it to the person named in it. The land department of the Government had been in the habit, after patents for lands were issued, and even after they had been delivered, of recalling them at their own option and revoking them. In many instances, even after

---

<sup>1</sup> 102 U. S. 378.

they had been sent to the local land office for delivery to the proper parties, they had been recalled while there, and thus their owners had been put to great inconvenience and trouble.

LECTURE VIII.  
*United States v.*  
*Schurz*, 102 U. S.  
 378.

An action for a writ of *mandamus* to compel Mr. Schurz to deliver this patent was brought in the name of the United States on relation of the party applying for the writ, who was the grantee of the land. The Supreme Court held that after the patent had been signed, sealed, and recorded there no longer remained in the officers of the Government any power over the title, or any right to retain, and to refuse to deliver the patent. They therefore authorized the issuing of a writ by the Supreme Court of the District.

This decision was founded upon *Marbury v. Madison*, and upon its reasoning, as many other decisions have been; and the power of the courts in the class of cases described in that opinion — namely, those in which a duty is imposed by law upon an officer of the Government to do a specific act, in regard to which he has no discretion, and which act is simply and purely ministerial in its nature to compel their performance, has been well established, and is one of the most useful principles of Federal jurisprudence.

During the long Chief Justiceship of Marshall, many cases of public and political importance, having a large influence over the course of the Government and very materially guiding the action of the executive and legislative departments, came up for consideration. I must only select such of these as I consider most impor-



LECTURE VIII.  
*United States v.*  
*Schurz*, 102 U. S.  
 378.

*McCulloch v.*  
*Maryland*,  
 4 Wheat. 316.

tant, and which can be touched upon within the limits of this discourse.

The next of these to which I shall call your attention is *McCulloch v. Maryland*, decided in 1819, and reported in 4 Wheat. 316. It involved the question of the power of the General Government to create a national bank, with branches in the States, capable of issuing circulating notes. Such a bank had been created under Hamilton's administration of the treasury, and its charter expired about the commencement of the war of 1812. A recharter was refused under the influence of the strict construction rule of Virginia politics in regard to the power of Congress to create such a bank. Mr. Madison himself, who was then President, was opposed to it, it is said, upon that ground. But the disastrous condition of the public credit, and the general financial ruin which followed the close of that war, induced Congress to charter a new bank. This was done in 1816, and received the assent of Mr. Madison.

The introduction into the States of this institution, by branches of the principal bank, especially with the power of issuing circulating notes, was unpopular in many of them, and attempts were made to resist their business operations. Among these the State of Maryland assessed a tax upon the circulating notes of the bank, which in effect was intended to drive them from the State. In the attempt to enforce this law, the Court of Appeals of Maryland affirmed the validity of the statute of that State establishing

the tax. McCulloch, the party sued, thereupon brought the case by a writ of error to the Supreme Court of the United States.

LECTURE VIII.  
*McCulloch v.*  
*Maryland,*  
 4 Wheat. 316.

The opinion takes a very wide range with regard to the nature and power of the Federal Government, and the principles of construction of the Constitution. It is one of the ablest of the opinions delivered by Chief Justice Marshall, and has often been referred to and followed in subsequent cases.

The court held that Congress had power to incorporate such a bank; that although there was no express grant of such power, or of authority to create any corporation, yet, as one of the appropriate means of exercising the powers of the Government in regard to the collection and disbursement of its revenues and the transfer of them from one point to another, the institution of this bank, with the right to establish its branches and offices of discount and deposit within a State, and to issue circulating notes, was an appropriate means of carrying into effect the powers expressly given by the Constitution to the Government of the Union.

It therefore held that no State had any authority by taxation or otherwise to impede the necessary and proper action of this bank, an instrumentality which Congress deemed necessary in carrying on the general operations of the Government of the United States connected with the treasury. "If," said the court, "the right of the State to tax the means employed by the General Government be conceded, the

LECTURE VIII.  
*McCulloch v.*  
*Maryland,*  
4 Wheat. 316.

declaration that the Constitution and laws made in pursuance thereof, shall be the supreme law of the land, is empty and unmeaning declamation."

The number of the Justices at this time had been increased to seven, and their opinion was unanimous.

Just prior to the expiration of the charter of this bank in 1836, the question of its renewal became one of absorbing public interest. The then President of the United States, General Jackson, brought all his influence and popularity to bear to prevent a renewal of its charter, and the question entered into the partisan politics of the day more largely than any other, and to some extent continued to do so until the late war. The Congress of 1836 passed the bill for the recharter of the bank, but President Jackson vetoed it, largely on the ground that it was unconstitutional. It may be said, however, that the prevailing sentiment of the country, and especially of its leading statesmen, has been in the main favorable to the constitutionality of the United States Bank; and no decision of the Supreme Court, or of any other court of the United States, has ever impugned or denied the correctness of the principle upon which *McCulloch v. Maryland* was decided.

It is a matter of interest, which I cannot forbear to mention here, that the present national bank system, which in my judgment, and in that of many thinking men, statesmen and financiers, is the best that the world has ever

seen, originated during the midst of the civil war with the Secretary of the Treasury who afterwards came to Marshall's place, as Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States.

LECTURE VIII.  
*McCulloch v. Maryland*,  
 4 Wheat. 318.

It is unnecessary for me to point out to this intelligent audience the great influence which that decision of the Supreme Court has exercised over the material and financial prosperity of this country. Had the decision been, that there existed in this Government no power to create a national currency, or to provide for a national banking system, the disastrous effects upon the business prosperity of the people can hardly be imagined. Those who are old enough to have gone through the State bank and wild-cat systems of paper money prevalent a few years since in this country, can bear feeling testimony to the value of a so-called national bank system.

Another decision of the court, made in the same year, and perhaps at the same term, is that of *Dartmouth College v. Woodward*.<sup>1</sup>

*Dartmouth College v. Woodward*,  
 4 Wheat. 518.

It may well be doubted whether any decision ever delivered by any court has had such a pervading operation and influence in controlling legislation as this. The legislation, however, so controlled, has been that of the States of the Union. The decision is founded upon that clause of the Constitution which declares "That no State shall make any law impairing the obligation of contracts."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 4 Wheat. 518.

<sup>2</sup> Art. I, sec. 10.

LECTURE VIII.  
*Dartmouth Col-  
lege v. Woodward,*  
4 Wheat. 518.

Dartmouth College existed as a corporation under a charter granted by the British Crown to its trustees in New Hampshire, in the year 1769. This charter conferred upon them the entire governing power of the college, and among other powers that of filling up all vacancies occurring in their own body, and of removing and appointing tutors. It also declared that the number of trustees should forever consist of twelve, and no more.

After the Revolution, the Legislature of New Hampshire passed a law to amend the charter, to improve and enlarge the corporation. It increased the number of trustees to twenty-one, gave the appointment of the additional members to the Executive of the State, and created a board of overseers to consist of twenty-five persons, of whom twenty-one were also to be appointed by the Executive of New Hampshire. These overseers had power to inspect and control the most important acts of the trustees.

The Supreme Court, reversing the decision of the Superior Court of New Hampshire, held that the original charter constituted a contract between the Crown, in whom the power was then vested, and the trustees of the college, which was impaired by the act of the Legislature above referred to. The opinion, to which there was but one dissent, establishes the doctrine that the act of a government, whether it be by a charter of the Legislature or of the Crown, which creates a corporation, is a contract between the State and the corporation, and that all the essential

franchises, powers, and benefits conferred upon the corporation by the charter become, when accepted by it, contracts, within the meaning of the clause of the Constitution referred to. LECTURE VIII.  
*Dartmouth College v. Woodward*,  
4 Wheat. 518.

I cannot here go into the great argument by which this proposition was supported, nor enter into a minute statement of the class of subjects which by the rulings of this case became contracts protected by the Constitution. The opinion has been of late years much criticised, as including with the class of contracts whose foundation is in the legislative action of the States, many which were not probably intended to be so included by the framers of the Constitution. And it is undoubtedly true that the Supreme Court itself has been compelled of late years to insist in this class of cases upon the existence of an actual contract by the State with the corporation, when relief is sought against subsequent legislation.

The main feature of the case, namely, that a State can make a contract by legislation, as well as in any other way, and that in no such case shall a subsequent act of the Legislature interpose any effectual barrier to its enforcement, where it is enforceable in the ordinary courts of justice, has remained. The result of this principle has been to make void innumerable acts of State legislatures, intended in times of disastrous financial depression and suffering, to protect the people from the hardships of a rigid and prompt enforcement of the law in regard to their contracts, and to prevent the States from Statutory contracts.

LECTURE VIII.  
Statutory con-  
tracts.

repealing, abrogating, or avoiding by legislation contracts entered into with other parties.

This decision has stood from the day it was made to the present hour as a great bulwark against popular effort through State legislation to evade the payment of just debts, the performance of obligatory contracts, and the general repudiation of the rights of creditors. I cannot even refer here to the numerous decisions by the Supreme Court of the United States, of the subordinate courts of the Government, and the highest courts of the States themselves, in which, under the influence of this decision, the principle of the Constitution that no State shall pass any law impairing the obligation of contracts has been upheld for the protection of those contracts.

*Gibbons v. Ogden*,  
9 Wheat. 1.

Regulation of  
commerce.

With the case of *Gibbons v. Ogden*,<sup>1</sup> which has always been considered a leading one, commenced a series of decisions which has continued down to the term of the court just ended, construing the third clause of section 8, Article I, of the Constitution of the United States. The language of this clause is that "Congress shall have power to regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes."

There has not been, during the history of the Government, any serious question or difficulty about the exercise of the power by Congress to regulate commerce with the Indian tribes. The

---

<sup>1</sup> 9 Wheat. 1.

few laws which that body has found it necessary to pass in regard to trade and intercourse with the Indians have given rise to very few controversies before the courts. The power to regulate commerce with foreign nations has necessarily occupied the attention of the legislative body, and the questions arising under it have principally been as to the construction of the statutes, with an occasional contest as to the power to regulate immigration into the various States from foreign countries.

LECTURE VIII.  
Regulation of  
commerce.

But, as regards the regulation of commerce among the States, Congress has signally failed in providing any general system, or in enacting any very important laws upon the subject. In point of fact, the commerce in existence which could be regulated with any profit, or called for it at the time the Constitution was formed, was that upon the ocean, carried on by sailing vessels, and it was not until the origin of the steamboat, making the great rivers of the country equal in carrying capacity to seas, with the superadded power of steam to make them useful, that interstate commerce became a matter of much consequence. Afterwards the invention of railroads increased the magnitude of this kind of traffic, so that in relative importance to foreign commerce it is now so much superior that I dare not, without consulting the statistics, undertake to state what it is.

Very soon after the introduction of the steamboat, whose use was accompanied by great dangers in the navigation of the interior rivers of



**LECTURE VIII.**  
**Regulation of**  
**commerce.**

the country, Congress began to legislate upon the subject, and finally established, some forty or fifty years ago, a system of laws regulating their construction and navigation. The various acts passed from time to time also required that the masters and pilots of these vessels should be regularly examined as to their qualifications and licensed by officers appointed by the General Government. They also prescribed with great minuteness what safeguards they should keep on board in the way of life-saving implements and small boats, and limited the number of passengers, thus taking special care of their comfort and safety.

But in relation to railroads, whose owners were corporations under charters from the different States of the Union, such legislation as was needful has been left by Congress to the States who chartered them, or through whose territory they extended.

This inaction of the Congress of the United States, which it was asserted could alone establish regulations for the control of railroads in conducting transportation of persons and property through more States than one, thus coming within the definition of the phrase "interstate commerce," has at length been superseded by a very important statute, called the Interstate Commerce Law, passed at the recent session. These railroad corporations, the necessity and value of which to meet the wants of this great country grew so rapidly, asserted for a long time that by virtue of the charters granted

them by the States, they were exempt from nearly all legislative control over their business, their contracts, or the manner in which their transportation should be conducted. LECTURE VIII.  
Regulation of  
commerce.

In the cases of *Munn v. Illinois*,<sup>1</sup> *Chicago, Burlington & Quincy Railroad v. Iowa*,<sup>2</sup> and *Peik v. Chicago & Northwestern Railroad*,<sup>3</sup> decided at the same time, it was held by the Supreme Court that as common carriers they were subject to appropriate regulation of the manner in which their business should be conducted, by legislative authority. But these decisions left undecided the question how far this legislative power of regulation belonged to the States, and how far it was in the Congress of the United States.

The case of *Gibbons v. Ogden*, above referred to, originated in an attempt of the State of New York to pass laws which affected free navigation upon the Hudson River by steamboats. With the idea of rewarding Fulton and Livingston for the invention by the former of the new method of propulsion by steam, a statute was passed giving to them the exclusive right of navigating that river with boats thus propelled. Other persons coming into the business of transportation with boats of a similar character, contested this right to such exclusive privilege, and were sued for infringing it in those waters.

The questions arising in that case were argued with great ability, Mr. Webster being one of the counsel engaged in the case, and one

---

<sup>1</sup> 94 U. S. 113.

<sup>2</sup> 94 U. S. 155.

<sup>3</sup> 94 U. S. 164.

LECTURE VIII.  
Regulation of  
commerce.

of the best considered opinions of the court was delivered by Chief Justice Marshall. It is not important here to detail the substance of that argument; but the two questions that were mostly discussed related to the following conclusions which were reached by the court : —

*First.* That this statute was an exercise of the power of regulating commerce among the States, which had been confided to Congress by the Constitution.

*Second.* That inasmuch as Congress had passed laws authorizing the licensing of vessels for the coasting trade, which authorized them to navigate all the waters within the jurisdiction of the United States capable of being used for that purpose, this act was an exercise of the power conferred by the clause of the Federal Constitution concerning commerce among the States, and that Congress having occupied the field by its own legislation, this necessarily excluded the action of the State upon the subject.

While the opinion of the court undertakes to ascertain what kind of commerce must be regulated exclusively by Congress, it also seems to concede that there may be a class of regulations affecting it, when carried on between the States, which would be valid in the absence of any action by Congress. But the case rested in the end upon the proposition that such a principle could not be applied to the case then before the court, because Congress had acted upon the subject, having passed a law or made a regula-

tion which was inconsistent with the statute of the State of New York granting this exclusive privilege to Livingston and Fulton.

LECTURE VIII.  
Regulation of  
commerce.

In the subsequent case of *Willson v. Blackbird Creek Marsh Co.*,<sup>1</sup> the principle was laid down, that in a class of cases, local in their character, regulations affecting interstate commerce may be enacted by the States in the absence of the exercise of that power by Congress. That proposition, which in a subsequent stage of the history of the court was very much controverted, and upon which it had been divided until within recent years, has led to much uncertainty as to the validity of laws passed by the States of the Union. This doubtful condition of affairs can hardly yet be considered to be at an end. The great necessity of some well-defined rule in regard to these matters, in the absence of any Congressional regulation of commerce, is evinced by the fact that scarcely a session of the Supreme Court of the United States has passed within the last twenty-five years, in which some case has not been brought before it, wherein the validity of laws passed by the States of the Union, or ordinances of municipalities made under the authority of some State laws affecting commerce, has not been brought up and controverted, and become the subject of serious consideration.

*Willson v. Blackbird Creek Marsh Co.*, 2 Pet. 245.  
State legislation  
to affect interstate  
commerce.

I venture to hope, however, that some of the decisions discussing these questions, made during

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Pet. 245.

LECTURE VIII.  
State legislation  
to affect interstate  
commerce.

the term of the court just expired, have brought it to a substantial unanimity upon these subjects, and have established a reasonable degree of precision in the definition of the regulations of interstate commerce exclusively within the control of Congress, and what legislation remains to the States where Congress has taken no action in regard to the matter. *Wabash, St. Louis &c. Railway v. Illinois*;<sup>1</sup> *Fargo v. Michigan*;<sup>2</sup> *Philadelphia & Southern Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*.<sup>3</sup>

Importance of  
these decisions,  
especially as  
affecting inter-  
state commerce.

The importance of the subject, and the necessity of a true construction of this clause of the Constitution, may be seen when we consider the trouble among the States between the time of the closing of the revolutionary war and the adoption of that instrument, in regard to their interstate commerce, and to burdens and obstructions placed upon it by each of the States for what they regarded as their own interest, without reference to the general good. Indeed, these considerations were among the principal, if not the most weighty, which induced its formation. And the cases to which I have referred as coming before the Supreme Court of the United States, are ample evidence of what the States would now do, if they had the power, in crippling the interstate commerce of this country, by imposing burdens upon its exercise; and the efforts of the States, endeavoring to shift the burden of taxation from their own shoulders

<sup>1</sup> 118 U. S. 557.

<sup>2</sup> 121 U. S. 230.

<sup>3</sup> 122 U. S. 326.

and impose it upon the property, rights, and interests of others could only end in the destruction of the Union and the total suppression of the free and valuable commerce now carried on between the States.

LECTURE VIII.  
Importance of  
these decisions,  
especially as  
affecting inter-  
state commerce.

The relations of the Indian tribes to the States The Indians.

and to the Federal Government have often been before the Supreme Court of the United States, whose judgments have largely influenced the course of legislation by Congress, as well as the States, in regard to those tribes. The first case involving those relations was that of the *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*,<sup>1</sup> in which the court, considering the general subject, held that these tribes, although occupying a semi-independent position, which enabled them to make treaties with the United States, were neither States of the Union nor foreign States, in the sense of the Constitution, which confers jurisdiction upon the Supreme Court in controversies between a State or the citizens thereof and foreign States, citizens, or subjects. It declared that these tribes were, owing to their peculiar conditions, wards and pupils of the nation, and largely under its control.

*Cherokee Nation*  
*v. Georgia*, 5  
Pet. 1.

In the succeeding case of *Worcester v. Georgia*,<sup>2</sup> the same proposition is advanced, and it was held that they were independent of the laws and government of the State within which they might as a tribe be located. This latter case was one in which the State of Georgia, having

*Worcester v.*  
*Georgia*, 6 Pet.  
515.

<sup>1</sup> 5 Pet. 1.

<sup>2</sup> 6 Pet. 515.

LECTURE VIII.  
*Worcester v.*  
*Georgia*, 6 Pet.  
515.

passed a statute extending the jurisdiction of its laws over the Cherokee lands, indicted and imprisoned Worcester, a missionary of some Christian church, who had settled among those Indians, for a violation of a law of the State. He was convicted by the State courts and sent to prison. On a writ of error to the Supreme Court of the United States it was held that the State courts of Georgia had no jurisdiction over the Indian tribes, or the land which they had held in possession from time immemorial.

*United States v.*  
*Kagama*, 118 U.S.  
375.

This principle seems to have settled the independence of those tribes of State legislation and State jurisdiction generally, but it afterwards came to be questioned what power the Government of the United States or Congress could exercise over such Indians. This matter came up in *United States v. Kagama*.<sup>1</sup> The whole subject there was fully reviewed, and the proposition finally established that "while the Government of the United States has recognized in the Indian tribes heretofore a state of semi-independence and pupilage, it has the right and authority, instead of controlling them by treaties, to govern them by acts of Congress; they being within the geographical limit of the United States, and being necessarily subject to the laws which Congress may enact for their protection and for the protection of the people with whom they come in contact. The States have no such power over them as long as they maintain their tribal relations."

---

<sup>1</sup> 118 U. S. 375.

This settled a difficult and vexatious question, and one very important to the Indians themselves as well as to the citizens of the United States who are brought in contact with them. LECTURE VIII.  
*United States v. Kagama*, 118 U. S. 375.

Perhaps the two most important decisions of the Supreme Court that have been delivered in many years grew out of the agitation of the subject of slavery. The long and continued discussion of that topic, in and out of Congress, commencing at a time not within the memory of any one in this audience, and prolonged up to the close of the late civil war, which was the cause of that war, the most destructive that the history of mankind presents, almost necessarily brought before the great judicial tribunal of the nation grave questions in regard to the constitutional power of Congress over the subject. With the exception, however, of *Prigg v. Pennsylvania*<sup>1</sup> (in which an act of Congress to enable the owners of fugitive slaves who had fled from service and got beyond the borders of the State in which such owners resided, was held to be a proper exercise by Congress of the provisions of the Constitution for the return of persons held to service in the States to which they belonged, and which itself excited much comment), the *Dred Scott* decision<sup>2</sup> overshadowed all others on the subject, in the importance of the principles which it laid down, and in the immense influence which it had upon the history of the country. Slavery. Fugitive slaves.  
*Prigg v. Pennsylvania*, 16 Pet. 539.  
*The Dred Scott Case*, 19 How. 393.

Dred Scott, a slave, having been taken from

<sup>1</sup> 16 Pet. 539.

<sup>2</sup> *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393.



LECTURE VIII.  
The *Dred Scott*  
Case, 19 How. 393.

the State of Missouri, in which laws authorizing slavery prevailed, by his master with his family into the Territory of Minnesota, in which slavery was forbidden, was afterwards carried back by that master to the State of Missouri. Scott asserted that having been voluntarily carried by his master into a government where slavery was not recognized, he thereby became a free man, and that Sandford, his owner, in exercising restraint over his personal liberty was a trespasser. He therefore brought suit to establish his freedom, and the case came in regular order in the Supreme Court of the United States, which, after some controversy in regard to the jurisdiction of that court, finally decided that it had jurisdiction to entertain the appeal. It then proceeded to decide the question of the effect of the residence of Scott, with the consent of his master, in the free Territory of Minnesota. It held that there existed no power in the Congress of the United States to pass any laws for the government of a Territory of the United States, by which owners of slaves could be prevented from carrying them there and making it their residence, and still retaining the same power and control over their slaves which they had in the States where slavery was established.

This decision was made very soon after Congress had passed a statute for the organization of territorial governments for Kansas and Nebraska, and the question whether slavery should be excluded from those Territories or not by the act agitated the public mind to a degree perhaps

unknown since the formation of the Constitution. To pass a law recognizing as valid the institution of slavery in these Territories was not only a violation of the strongest feelings of a large portion of the people of the United States, but it was necessarily a repeal of what was called the compromise on that subject at the time that the Territory of Missouri was admitted as a State. At that time the same excited controversy existed, and was only settled by a provision that in future, slavery should not exist north of a line corresponding with the southern line of Missouri, extending westward, namely, the parallel of 36° 30' north latitude. The decision in the *Dred Scott Case*, that Congress had no power to pass any law forbidding slavery in any of the Territories of the United States, from which it necessarily resulted that the Missouri Compromise law was unconstitutional, added to the flames of popular excitement.

I do not need to go over the history of the contest which led to the attempted secession of eleven of the slave States of the Union, and to the civil war of four years which followed this effort to secede. The unparalleled excitement of the public mind, brought about by the act organizing the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska, which repealed the Missouri Compromise law, so far from being mitigated by the *Dred Scott* decision, added fuel to the flame. It was charged that the decision was merely a partisan effort to aid in the establishment of slavery in the rich soil of Kansas, and it added force to

LECTURE VIII.  
*The Dred Scott  
Case*, 19 How. 393.

LECTURE VIII.  
*The Dred Scott*  
*Case*, 19 How. 393.

the determined purpose of those opposed to the further progress of slavery, to prevent it. If that statute had not been passed it is not within the capacity of human wisdom to tell how long the great contest over human slavery within the limits of the United States might have been postponed.

This decision has never been reconsidered in the Supreme Court of the United States. Its operation upon public opinion was to incite to additional ardor the efforts of those who desired the emancipation of the slaves; and, although the decision itself was of no value and only precipitated the evils which it was intended to avoid, the civil war brought about by these events resulted in the abolition of slavery throughout the entire extent of the United States, and, of course, the *Dred Scott* decision became a useless incumbrance in the reports of that court.

The Thirteenth  
Amendment.

At the close of the war the public sentiment of those who had conducted it to a successful termination required certain amendments to the Constitution, the first of which, the Thirteenth, established the abolition of slavery forever within all the dominions over which the United States had jurisdiction. It was soon found, however, that the sudden gift of freedom to over four millions of human beings, who had been slaves, and who were unprepared by education or training to assert their rights or protect themselves against those who had been their masters for generations past, required some additional safe-

guards in the Constitution, which would operate as a protection to them against those masters, or the acts of the States themselves readmitted into the Union. This induced the passage of the Fourteenth Amendment, which declared all these former slaves to be now citizens of the United States, and entitled to all the privileges and immunities of such citizens. It further enacted provisions for the equality of rights of all persons, intending thereby to secure the rights of this depressed race, and to protect them from unjust and unequal laws which might be passed by the States for the purpose of their oppression.

LECTURE VIII.  
The Thirteenth  
Amendment.

The Fourteenth  
Amendment.

A short experience seemed to prove that even these two amendments, the one abolishing slavery and the other with the provisions mentioned, were inadequate to secure the purpose which the people had in view, that of guaranteeing equal rights to all persons, including former slaves. The Fifteenth Amendment was therefore passed, which declared that no discrimination in regard to the right of suffrage should be made in any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

The Fifteenth  
Amendment.

These three amendments to the Constitution, the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth, were rapidly passed through Congress and ratified by the States. They have been the subject of many decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States, with regard to their construction and their effect upon enactments of the State legislatures, which have been supposed to be in conflict with them. The most important of

Construction of  
amendments in  
*The Slaughter*  
*House Cases.*

LECTURE VIII.  
Construction of  
amendments in  
*The Slaughter  
House Cases*.

these cases, and perhaps the first one which came before the court, and which, by reason of the questions involved and the course of the argument, required a construction of all three of these amendments, were *The Slaughter House Cases*, so called, reported in 16 Wall. 36. They grew out of an act of the legislature of Louisiana, passed since it had been recognized as a State of the Union after the close of the civil war. This statute, assuming to regulate the business of slaughtering animals for food within the limits of the city of New Orleans, and of the landing of live animals as they came into the city, created a corporation upon which it conferred the exclusive right of killing animals for food within that city. It directed the place where they should be landed, the place where they should be slaughtered, made full and complete regulations for the maintenance of a public slaughter-house by this corporation, at which all butchers must slaughter the animals whose flesh they intended to sell, required this corporation to provide all the conveniences necessary for this purpose, and made proper restrictions upon the price which should be charged therefor.

After a while the butchers of the city, who considered this monopoly an invasion of their personal rights, brought suit to enjoin the exercise of this authority by the slaughter-house company. The case came finally to the Supreme Court of the United States, upon the ground that by the three amendments to the Con-

stitution, to which I have just referred, the exercise of this power by a State legislature is forbidden. The whole subject was very fully argued in that court, and the range of discussion was very wide.

LECTURE VIII.  
Construction of  
amendments in  
*The Slaughter  
House Cases.*

At the close of the civil war there were many very wise and patriotic statesmen who had come to the conclusion that the powers left with the States in the original formation of the Constitution, by which they were enabled to combine and organize into a formidable confederacy for the overthrow of the Government and the destruction of the Union, had been the source of a protracted and terrible war, which was just terminated by the re-establishment of the General Government in all its original powers. They therefore felt, that, in the amendments to the Constitution which were deemed necessary for the reconstruction of this Union, which if not broken was very much shattered, these powers of the States should be curtailed in their capacity to bring about another such catastrophe. Many of these men were in Congress when the resolutions for these amendments were adopted, and proposed to the States for their ratification. The members of that body undoubtedly differed among themselves as to the effect to be attained, and the manner in which it was to be accomplished by these three amendments. When this case came up, the first in which the Supreme Court was called upon to construe them, the opinions of the judges, of lawyers, and of statesmen, were divergent in

LECTURE VIII.  
Construction of  
amendments in  
*The Slaughter  
House Cases.*

regard to the principles which should govern that construction.

These views are represented in the opinions filed in the case mentioned, the opinion of the court being fully concurred in by five of the judges. The court, after speaking of the fact that the civil war disclosed that the true danger to the perpetuity of the Union was in the capacity of the States to organize, combine, and concentrate all the powers of a State and all contiguous States to resistance to the General Government, said:—

“Unquestionably this has given great force to the argument, and added largely to the number of those who believe in the necessity of a strong National Government. But, however pervading this sentiment, and however it may have contributed to the adoption of the amendments we have been considering, we do not see in those amendments any purpose to destroy the main features of the general system. Under the pressure of all the excited feeling growing out of the war, our statesmen have still believed that the existence of the States with powers for domestic and local government, including the regulation of civil rights—the rights of person and property—was essential to the perfect working of our complex form of government, though they have thought proper to impose additional limitations on the States, and to confer additional power on that of the United States. But whatever fluctuations may be seen in the history of public opinion on this subject during

the period of our national existence, we think it will be found that this court, so far as its functions required, has always held with a steady and an even hand the balance between State and Federal power, and we trust that such may continue to be the history of its relation to that subject so long as it shall have duties to perform which demand of it a construction of the Constitution, or of any of its parts.”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE VIII.  
Construction of  
amendments in  
*The Slaughter  
House Cases.*

Although this decision did not meet the approval of four out of nine of the judges on some points on which it rested, yet public sentiment, as found in the press and in the universal acquiescence which it received, accepted it with great unanimity; and although there were intimations that in the legislative branches of the Government the opinion would be reviewed, and criticised unfavorably, no such thing has occurred in the fifteen years which have elapsed since it was delivered. And while the question of the construction of these amendments, and particularly the Fourteenth, has often been before the Supreme Court of the United States, no attempt to overrule or disregard this elementary decision of the effect of the three new constitutional amendments upon the relations of the State governments to the Federal Government has been made; and it may be considered now as settled that, with the exception of the specific provisions in them for the protection of the personal rights of the citizens and people of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Slaughter House Cases*, 16 Wall. 36, 82.



LECTURE VIII.  
Construction of  
amendments in  
*The Slaughter  
House Cases.*

the United States, and the necessary restrictions upon the power of the States for that purpose, with the additions to the powers of the General Government to enforce those provisions, no substantial change has been made. The necessity of the great powers, conceded by the Constitution originally to the Federal Government, and the equal necessity of the autonomy of the States and their power to regulate their domestic affairs, remain as the great features of our complex form of government.

*Kilbourn v.  
Thompson.*

The only other decision of the Supreme Court to which I shall call your attention is that of *Kilbourn v. Thompson*, 103 U. S. 168. It is principally remarkable as establishing the right of a party to recover damages for an unlawful imprisonment by the express order of the House of Representatives. That body, as well as the Senate, had been in the habit of calling witnesses before them to testify in regard to various matters concerning which an investigation had been ordered by one or the other of those bodies. They also seem to have exercised without hesitation the power to punish by fine and imprisonment any witness who refused to answer questions which, by order of the particular body authorizing the investigation, had been propounded to him, and without much if any regard to the limitation upon their right to exercise this power.

Under a resolution, which recited that the Government was a creditor of the banking firm of Jay Cooke & Company, then in bankruptcy

by the decree of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania, and that settlements had been made adverse to the interests of the United States in that court, a special committee of the House of Representatives was appointed by the Speaker to inquire into the matter, together with the history of a real estate pool, in which that firm was said to be involved. In the progress of the investigation Mr. Kilbourn, who was a real estate dealer in the city of Washington, was called before the committee and required to make statements in regard to his dealings with various persons who had had transactions with him, and to produce his books for the general inspection of the committee. He declined to do this, and being brought before the House he was ordered to make answer. Still further declining, the House ordered him to be imprisoned, and that the Speaker issue his warrant to the sergeant-at-arms to commit him for contempt.

LECTURE VIII.  
*Kilbourn v.  
Thompson.*

Mr. Kilbourn was held in confinement under this order for some time, but was finally released on a writ of *habeas corpus* issued by the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia. He then brought suit against the sergeant-at-arms, by whom he was kept in prison, and against the members of the committee who were active in procuring the order of the House for his punishment. On a demurrer to the answer of the defendants, which set up this order of the House as their defence, the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia

LECTURE VIII.  
*Kilbourn v.*  
*Thompson.*

held the answer to be good; but on a writ of error to the Supreme Court of the United States that decision was reversed.

The opinion goes into a thorough examination of the history of this class of questions in various cases before the House of Commons of Great Britain, which were afterwards carried to the courts of that country, and comes to the conclusion that, while in that country, by reason of the history of the Parliament, and of its original possession of full judicial powers, the House of Commons could punish for contempt, there is no inherent authority in any purely legislative body, apart from that remnant of judicial power remaining in the Parliament, to punish parties for offences of that character.

Referring to the Constitution of the United States, under which alone Congress, as an entire body or either branch of it, could exercise any such power, it is declared that there is a total absence of any general grant of such authority; but inasmuch as each branch of Congress had certain specific powers to make orders which required the examination of witnesses, that in that class of cases, where a witness refused to testify, the House could enforce this duty by fine and imprisonment as a punishment for contempt. Those occasions were limited to such cases as punishment of its own members for disorderly conduct, or failure to attend sessions, or in cases of contested elections, or in regard to the qualifications of its own members, or in case of an

effort to impeach an officer of the Government, and perhaps a few others.

LECTURE VIII.  
*Kilbourn v.  
Thompson.*

It was held that neither House had any right to organize an investigation into the private affairs of a citizen, and that, except in a case in which the Constitution expressly conferred upon the one body or the other powers which were in their nature somewhat judicial, and which required the examination of witnesses, they possessed no power to compel by fine or imprisonment, or both, the attendance of such witnesses, and answers to interrogatories which did not relate to some question of which it had jurisdiction.

This decision, which ultimately resulted in the recovery of a large judgment by Mr. Kilbourn against the sergeant-at-arms, which sum was paid by an appropriation made by the Congress of the United States out of the Treasury, was everywhere received with satisfaction. It has been followed in the States of the Union where similar questions have constantly arisen, and is undoubtedly, on account of the assertion by it of the right of the citizen to be protected against the legislative body, and to be proceeded against for any offence only in the judicial branch of the Government, one of the most important that has been made in recent years. It is also important as being in some sense a direct control by the Supreme Court of the United States over the decisions and acts of one of the branches of the legislative department of the Government, made without authority of the law.

LECTURE VIII.  
*Kilbourn v.*  
*Thompson.*

It is proper also to observe that the court decided that the members of the committee who had propounded these questions to Kilbourn, and at whose instance the House passed the resolution for his imprisonment, were not liable to his action for damages, on the ground that what they did came within the constitutional provision that "senators and representatives . . . shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place." Art. I, sec. 6.

This court, of which we have been speaking, whether we take the character of the suitors that are brought before it, or the importance of the subjects of litigation over which it has final jurisdiction, may well be considered one of the highest that the world has ever seen. It has the power to bring States before it, States which some of our politicians have been in the habit of considering sovereign, not only when they come voluntarily, but by judicial process they are subjected, in certain classes of cases, to the judgment of the court. Whatever these States may have been at the time of the formation of the Constitution, they now number their inhabitants by millions, and in wealth and civilization are equal to many of the independent sovereignties of Europe.

The subject matter of which this court has jurisdiction is the construction and exposition of the Constitution of the United States, which controls the affairs of sixty millions of people. Its every-day business, almost, is to pass upon the question of conflicting rights and jurisdictions between the States and the United States, and between the laws framed by each of this class of political bodies. Its judges hold their offices for life, unless removed by impeachment. But one attempt has been made in the history of the Government to impeach a member of that court, and that effort failed.

## LECTURE VIII.

No danger to be apprehended from the exercise of the power to construe the Constitution.

It has been said that these powers may be dangerous to the people, and to the other departments of the Government, but the answer to this is both true and perfect. The judicial branch of the Government, of which the Supreme Court is the head, is the weakest of all the three great departments into which the power of the nation is divided. It has no army, it has no navy, and it has no purse. It has no patronage, it has no officers, except its clerks and marshals, and the latter are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate. They are the officers to whom its processes are sent for the enforcement of its judgments, but they may be removed at any time by the Executive. The clerks, whom the judges in some form or other are permitted to appoint, have salaries or compensation regulated by the legislature. The clerk who may receive \$20,000 or more, in fees, must pay all but \$3500 of such receipts into the

LECTURE VIII.  
No danger in the  
exercise by the  
Court of its power  
to construe the  
Constitution.

Treasury of the United States. The judges themselves are dependent upon appropriations made by the legislature for the payment of the salaries which support them while engaged in the functions of their office.

It is, then, so far as the ordinary forms of power are concerned, by far the feeblest branch or department of the Government. It must rely upon the confidence and respect of the public for its just weight and influence, and it may be confidently asserted that neither with the people, nor the country at large, nor the other branches of the Government, have there ever been found wanting that respect and confidence. It is one of the best tributes which can be paid to the American nation, a tribute which it deserves above all others, even of Anglo-Saxon descent, and which can be paid to no other race, that it always submits to the law as expounded by its judiciary. In all the excitements of bitter contests, involving great financial interests, power, position, and even political existence, in fact everything which could properly be brought within its judicial cognizance, the people have always felt that their interests were safely intrusted to its charge.

That the court may long continue to deserve this confidence, as it has for the past hundred years, must be the desire of every patriotic citizen.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE VIII.

---

MR. JUSTICE MILLER'S treatment of the sub-LECTURE VIII.ject of this lecture is so thorough, and his reference to cases so recent, as to leave little to be said. The subjects will be considered in the order in which they are treated in the lecture.

### 1. *Detail of a Justice to other duties.*

In addition to the cases of Chief Justice Jay Detail of a justice to other duties. and Chief Justice Marshall, referred to by Mr. Justice Miller, there have been two notable instances, in more recent days, of the detail, if I may call it so for want of a better word, of justices of the Supreme Court to the performance of duties outside of the judicial power imposed upon them by the Constitution.

In January, 1871, the British Cabinet made confidential approaches to the Government of the United States with a view to ascertain whether some practicable way could not be found for disposing of the pending questions between the two governments, including the Alabama Claims, the Fisheries, and the Oregon boundary. This resulted in an agreement to organize a joint commission, which should be charged with dealing with these subjects; and



LECTURE VIII.  
Detail of a justice  
to other duties.

on the 9th of February, just one month after the negotiations opened, President Grant nominated to the Senate five commissioners on the part of the United States, of whom one was "Samuel Nelson, an associate justice of the Supreme Court of the United States." The message with the nominations was accompanied by a brief on "Plurality of Offices" for the use of the Senate. The first among several cases given was that of Mr. Jay; and it was said that he was nominated to the Senate "as Envoy Extraordinary of the United States on the 16th<sup>1</sup> of April, 1794; was confirmed on the 19th of that month; went to London, and there signed the treaty known as Jay's Treaty on the 29th of November, 1794; arrived in New York on the 28th of May, 1795; and resigned the office of chief justice on the 29th of the following June."

I trust it will not be thought improper for me to add a fact within my own knowledge, that Mr. Justice Nelson proved to be a most valuable member on that commission. His counsels were always judicious, and his views were generally adopted by his colleagues. His labors there lasted until after the end of that term of court, and with them closed the work of a long and honorable career of public service. He was retired at his own request in the following autumn, and died in December, 1873.

The second instance of such detail was brought about by the Act of January 29, 1877,<sup>1</sup> under

---

<sup>1</sup> 19 Stat. 227, c. 37.

which the Electoral Commission was established to decide "all questions upon or in respect of double returns" in the Presidential election of that year. This body consisted of five members of the Senate, five members of the House, and five associate justices of the Supreme Court, of whom Mr. Justice Miller was one. It is unnecessary to make further references to so recent an historic fact.

LECTURE VIII.  
Detail of a Justice  
to other duties.

## 2. *Suits against a State.*

The provision in the Constitution conferring upon the Federal courts judicial power in "controversies between two or more States" was adopted from the Articles of Confederation, which provided, in Article IX, that, "The United States in Congress assembled shall also be the last resort on appeal in all disputes and differences, now subsisting or that may hereafter arise, between two or more States concerning boundary, jurisdiction, or any other cause whatever." Elaborate provisions were made for regulating the exercise of this jurisdiction which need not be described. This power was invoked six times during the existence of the Confederation; but in only one case were the proceedings carried to final judgment. All were questions of territorial jurisdiction.

Suits against a  
State.

The first in date related to the sovereignty over the territory now known as Vermont, then claimed by New York on the one hand, and New Hampshire on the other. The settlers and occupiers of the soil drove out the New York

LECTURE VIII.  
Suits against a  
State.

officials by force in 1775, and refused to recognize any authority in New Hampshire. The State of New York initiated proceedings in Congress under the Articles of Confederation. The State of New Hampshire responded, but the actual settlers refused to come into court, although censured by Congress. We have the authority of Mr. Hamilton<sup>1</sup> for saying that their attitude caused some anxiety. Vermont had made up its mind to be independent. Massachusetts assented to the recognition of its independence in 1781; New Hampshire followed in the same year; New York in 1790; and the controversy was closed, without a judicial determination, by its admission into the Union in 1791.<sup>2</sup>

The controversy between Virginia and Pennsylvania as to the boundary line between them was before Congress in 1779 by its own initiation. It does not appear that either State invoked its interference. It was settled between the parties by mutually agreeing to and running, on the face of the soil, the line now known as "Mason and Dixon's line."

The controversy between Pennsylvania and Connecticut concerning the sovereignty of lands on the east branch of the Susquehanna, is the only one that was ever brought to trial and judgment under the Articles of Confederation. An account of the proceedings is given in the Appendix to volume 131 of the United States Reports, at pages liv.-lviii.

---

<sup>1</sup> Federalist, No. 7.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Stat. 191.

In the proceedings instituted by the State of New Jersey against the State of Virginia in 1784, the apparent object was to prevent Congress from accepting the cession by New York, Virginia, and Connecticut of the Northwestern lands. Nothing was done beyond the presentation of the petition.

LECTURE VIII.  
Suits against a  
State.

The dispute between Massachusetts and New York was carried to the point of selecting judges to be appointed by Congress, and was then settled by the parties.

That between South Carolina and Georgia reached the same point, and got no farther, if the record is to be trusted. It is apparently the same controversy which was settled by an agreement between the parties, which will be found in *South Carolina v. Georgia*, 93 U. S. 5, 6.

It was found both convenient and just to have a tribunal vested with jurisdiction to determine such controversies; and so, when the Constitution was adopted, it contained a provision that the judicial power should extend to controversies between two or more States.

In *Hans v. Louisiana*, 134 U. S. 1, which was an action against the State of Louisiana brought by one of its citizens to recover on coupons annexed to bonds of the State, it was held that a State could not, without its consent, be sued in a Circuit Court of the United States, upon a suggestion that the case was one arising under the Constitution and laws of the United States; and *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419, com-

LECTURE VIII.  
Suits against a  
State.

mented on by Judge Miller in this chapter, was substantially overruled, the court saying that the views of Mr. Justice Iredell, who dissented from the judgment, "were clearly right."

3. *Some Recent Cases additional to those cited by Mr. Justice Miller.*

Mandamus.

In *Dunlap v. Black*<sup>1</sup> the question before the court was whether mandamus should issue to the Commissioner of Pensions, commanding him to increase a pension. Mr. Justice Bradley reviewed at length the cases of *Marbury v. Madison*,<sup>2</sup> *Kendall v. United States*,<sup>3</sup> *Decatur v. Paulding*,<sup>4</sup> *United States v. Schurz*,<sup>5</sup> and others, and as a result of the examination laid down this rule: "The court will not interfere by mandamus with the executive officers of the Government in the exercise of their ordinary official duties, even where those duties require an interpretation of the law, the court having no appellate power for that purpose; but when they refuse to act in a case at all, or when, by special statute or otherwise, a mere ministerial duty is imposed upon them, that is, a service which they are bound to perform without further question, then, if they refuse, mandamus will be issued to compel them."

<sup>1</sup> 128 U. S. 40.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Cranch. 137.

<sup>3</sup> 12 Pet. 524.

<sup>4</sup> 14 Pet. 497.

<sup>5</sup> 102 U. S. 378. See also *Brashear v. Mason*, 6 How. 92; *Goodrich v. Guthrie*, 17 How. 284; *Commissioner of Patents v. Whiteley*, 4 Wall. 522; *Georgia v. Stanton*, 6 Wall. 50; *Gaines v. Thompson*, 7 Wall. 347; *Butterworth v. Hoe*, 112 U. S. 50.

The recent cases relating to interstate commerce will be referred to more at length in connection with Lecture IX. The latest case referred to by Mr. Justice Miller is *Philadelphia & Southern Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*.<sup>1</sup> The leading cases since that time are recited in the note below.<sup>2</sup> The great number of them is an evidence of the importance of the subject, and of the pertinacity, alluded to more than once by Mr. Justice Miller, with which the States try to get round this provision of the Constitution, and secure for themselves some advantages in violation of its spirit.

LECTURE VIII.  
Interstate commerce.

In *Cook v. United States*<sup>3</sup> the statutes relating to the organization of the Indian Territory, and more especially the courts of the United States and their criminal jurisdiction within it, are reviewed at length, both in the arguments and in the opinion. In *Gon-shay-ee's Case*<sup>4</sup> it was held that the Act of March 3, 1885,<sup>5</sup> was enacted

<sup>1</sup> 122 U. S. 326.

<sup>2</sup> *Sands v. Manistee River Improvement Co.*, 123 U. S. 288; *Smith v. Alabama*, 124 U. S. 465; *Pembina Mining Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 125 U. S. 181; *Bowman v. Chicago & Northwestern Railway Co.*, 125 U. S. 465; *California v. Central Pacific Railroad Co.*, 127 U. S. 1; *Ratterman v. Western Union Tel. Co.*, 127 U. S. 411; *Leloup v. Port of Mobile*, 127 U. S. 640; *Kidd v. Pearson*, 128 U. S. 1; *Nashville, Chattanooga &c. Railway Co. v. Alabama*, 128 U. S. 96; *Stoutenburgh v. Hennick*, 129 U. S. 141; *Pennsylvania Railroad Co. v. Miller*, 132 U. S. 75; *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Alabama*, 132 U. S. 472; *Leisy v. Hardin*, 135 U. S. 100; *Lyng v. Michigan*, 135 U. S. 161; *McCall v. California*, 136 U. S. 104; *Norfolk & Western Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 136 U. S. 114; *Minnesota v. Barber*, 136 U. S. 313; *Brimmer v. Rebman*, 138 U. S. 78; *Pullman's Palace Car Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 141 U. S. 18; *Crutcher v. Kentucky*, 141 U. S. 47.

<sup>3</sup> 138 U. S. 157. <sup>4</sup> 130 U. S. 343. <sup>5</sup> 23 Stat. 385, c. 341, § 9.

LECTURE VIII.  
Indians.

to transfer to Territorial courts established by the United States the jurisdiction to try the crimes described in it<sup>1</sup> when sitting as and exercising the functions of a Territorial court, and not of a Circuit or District Court of the United States; and in *Mayfield's Case*<sup>2</sup> it is held that a member of the Cherokee nation, committing the crime of adultery in territory assigned to that tribe, is not subject to trial for that crime by the courts of the United States.

Slavery.

In *Clay v. Field*<sup>3</sup> it appeared that two persons were partners in working a plantation in Tennessee. One of them died before the civil war, and the other retained possession of it in good faith, and also of all the slaves upon it, and continued to operate it for what he thought was for the interest of the deceased as well as himself. The war broke out, the plantation was in the theatre of the conflict, and at its close the slaves were free. In view of all the circumstances, the court decided that the surviving partner was not accountable for the value of the slaves, but that he was accountable for the fair rental value of the property, including the slaves while they were slaves.

Diplomatic privilege.

In *Baiz' Case*, 135 U. S. 403, the petitioner Baiz, being sued in the Circuit Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York, set up a constitutional privilege, as a diplomatic representative, to be exempt from the

---

<sup>1</sup> Murder, manslaughter, rape, assault with intent to kill, and larceny.

<sup>2</sup> 141 U. S. 107.

<sup>3</sup> 138 U. S. 464.

jurisdiction of that court. Evidence was offered on both sides in the Supreme Court. This claim being overruled, he applied to the Supreme Court for a writ of prohibition or mandamus to restrain the Circuit Court from exercising further jurisdiction in the case. It was held that, in the absence of a certificate from the Secretary of State that he was such a representative, he was not entitled to the immunity from suit except in the Supreme Court which is granted to such persons by the Constitution. It was also held that, on such an application, the respondent was called upon to produce any evidence within his knowledge to overcome the petitioner's proof of his privilege; and that the court could accept the certificate of the Department of State upon the question at issue, and was not required to proceed upon argumentative or collateral proof.

LECTURE VIII.  
Diplomatic privilege.

In *Cooper's Case*, 138 U. S. 404, on an application for a writ of prohibition to restrain the District Court of the United States for the District of Alaska from issuing process upon a decree condemning a vessel for illegally capturing seals, the court held that it had jurisdiction, and granted leave to file the petition for the writ.

The Behring Sea Case.

In *Neagle's Case*, 135 U. S. 1, argued and decided after this lecture was delivered, the subject of the protection which the Constitution affords to the court when exercising the judicial power conferred upon it was elaborately considered, the opinion of the court being written by

The *Neagle Case*.



LECTURE VIII.  
The *Neagle Case*.

Mr. Justice Miller. The headnotes of the case, as reported, which were also written by him, embody all the propositions of law bearing upon the subject, which were discussed and decided by the court, and also make a sufficiently full statement of the facts to enable the student to understand exactly what was before the court and decided by it. The material propositions in those headnotes are the following:—

“By virtue of Rev. Stat. §§ 606, 610, the justices of the Supreme Court of the United States are allotted among the nine circuits, to each one of which a judge is assigned; and the latter section makes it the duty of each judge to attend the Circuit Court in each district of the circuit to which he is allotted, and thereby imposes upon him the necessity of travelling from his residence to the Circuit Court which he is to attend, and from each place in that circuit where the court is held to the other places where it is held. *Held*, that, while a judge is thus travelling to or from those places, he is as much in discharge of his duty as when listening to and deciding cases in open court, and is as much entitled to protection in the one case as in the other.

“While there is no express statute authorizing the appointment of a deputy marshal, or any other officer, to attend a judge of the Supreme Court when travelling in his circuit, and to protect him against assaults or other injury, the general obligation imposed upon the President

of the United States by the Constitution to see that the laws be faithfully executed, and the means placed in his hands, both by the Constitution and the laws of the United States, to enable him to do this, impose upon the executive department the duty of protecting a justice or judge of any of the courts of the United States, when there is just reason to believe that he will be in personal danger while executing the duties of his office.

LECTURE VIII.  
The *Neagle Case*.

“An assault upon a judge of a court of the United States, while in discharge of his official duties, is a breach of the peace of the United States, as distinguished from the peace of the State in which the assault takes place.

“Under the provisions of Rev. Stat. § 788, it is the duty of marshals and their deputies in each State to exercise, in keeping the peace of the United States, the powers given to the sheriffs of the State for keeping the peace of the State; and a Deputy Marshal of the United States, specially charged with the duty of protecting and guarding a judge of a court of the United States, has imposed upon him the duty of doing whatever may be necessary for that purpose, even to the taking of human life.

“United States officers and other persons, held in custody by State authorities for doing acts which they were authorized or required to do by the Constitution and laws of the United States, are entitled to be released from such imprisonment; and the writ of *habeas corpus* is the appropriate remedy for that purpose.

LECTURE VIII.  
The *Neagle Case*.

“David Neagle, a Deputy Marshal of the United States for the District of California, was brought by writ of *habeas corpus* before the Circuit Court of that district, upon the allegation that he was held in imprisonment by the sheriff of San Joaquin County, California, on a charge of the murder of David S. Terry. He alleged that the killing of Terry by him was done in pursuance of his duty as such deputy marshal in defending the life of Mr. Justice Field, while in discharge of his duties as Circuit Judge of the ninth circuit. On the trial of this writ in the Circuit Court it entered an order discharging the prisoner, finding that he was in custody for an act done in pursuance of a law of the United States, and was imprisoned in violation of the Constitution and laws of the United States. The case being brought up to the Supreme Court by appeal, this court, on examining the voluminous testimony, arrived at the conviction that there was a settled purpose on the part of Terry and his wife, amounting to a conspiracy, to murder Mr. Justice Field, on his official visit to California in the summer of 1889; that this arose from animosity against him on account of judicial decisions made in the Circuit Court of the United States for the Northern District of California in a suit or suits to which they were parties; that the purpose which they had of doing Mr. Justice Field an injury became so well and so publicly known, that a correspondence ensued between the marshal and the district attorney of that district and the Attor-

ney General of the United States, the result of which was that Neagle was appointed a deputy marshal for the express purpose of guarding Mr. Justice Field against an attack by Terry and his wife which might result in his death; that such an attack did take place; that Neagle, being there for the said purpose of affording protection, had just reason to believe that the attack would result in the death of Mr. Justice Field unless he interfered; and that he did justifiably interfere by shooting Terry while in the act of assaulting Mr. Justice Field, whom he had already struck two or three times. *Held,*

“(1) That Neagle was justified in defending Mr. Justice Field in this manner;

“(2) That in so doing he acted in discharge of his duty as an officer of the United States;

“(3) That having so acted, in that capacity, he could not be guilty of murder under the laws of California, nor held to answer to its courts for an act for which he had the authority of the laws of the United States;

“(4) That the judgment of the Circuit Court, discharging him from the custody of the sheriff of San Joaquin County, must therefore be affirmed.”

This case, from the novelty of the questions involved, and from the character and eminence of the distinguished jurist assaulted by Terry, naturally excited the greatest attention throughout the country. There was some difference of opinion between members of the bar before the argument. The elaborate opinion of the court,

LECTURE VIII.  
The Neagle Case.

LECTURE VIII. however, closed the doors against further discussion; and it has been accepted as affording to the court only the measure of protection to which it is justly entitled.

*The Neagle Case.*

Mr. Justice Miller brings his treatment of the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments only to *The Slaughter House Case*. There have been many decisions upon these amendments, made since that case, in which some one of them has been the subject of controversy and of construction. These cases are grouped together in the supplementary paper, No. XIII, in which the subjects not discussed elsewhere are treated.

## IX.

### REGULATION OF COMMERCE AMONG THE STATES.<sup>1</sup>



ARTICLE I, SECTION 8, PARAGRAPH 3. The Con- LECTURE IX.  
gress shall have Power . . . To regulate Commerce  
with Foreign Nations, and among the several States,  
and with the Indian Tribes.

THE text of this discourse is one of the most Regulation of commerce among States.  
important of the powers delegated to Congress  
by the Constitution of the United States. It is  
provided in Article I, section 8, paragraph 3, of  
that instrument, as follows : —

“The Congress shall have power, . . . to  
regulate commerce with foreign nations, and  
among the several States, and with the Indian  
tribes.”

You would scarcely imagine, and I am sure The importance of this power.  
you do not know, unless you have given some  
consideration to the subject, how very important  
is that little sentence in the Constitution. It was  
the want of any power to regulate commerce,  
as between the States themselves, and with  
foreign nations, which as much, and I am not  
sure but I am justified in saying more, than any

---

<sup>1</sup> This lecture is Lecture VII of the Lectures delivered before the  
classes at the University Law School.

**LECTURE IX.**  
The importance  
of this power.

one thing, forced the States to form the present Constitution in lieu of the Articles of Confederation under which they had won their freedom and established their independence. It is difficult now for us to fully appreciate how strong was the tendency to separate, to quarrel, and to bring their adverse interests into collision, which grew out of the want of any general power in the Federal Government, as it then existed, to control the commercial relations of the States with each other. A slight examination in the records which remain to us of the conditions, circumstances, and the discussions which preceded the formation of the Constitution, will be of service in enabling us to better understand this subject.

Its history.  
Action of Virginia  
in 1786.

One of the earliest and most significant was a resolution of the Virginia legislature of January 21, 1786. The Convention that framed the present Constitution assembled in the year 1787, so that this resolution was passed but a little over a year before its meeting. It was proposed to confer, by the action of the separate States composing the Confederation, additional power on the then Congress of the United States. This was a most pressing question, the necessity was urgent, and the legislature of Virginia thus expressed its desire that there should be greater power placed in the hands of the National Government. The resolution reads as follows: —

“Resolved, that Edmund Randolph, James Madison Jr., Walter Jones, St. George Tucker, and Merriweather Smith, Esquires, be appointed

commissioners, who or any three of whom shall meet such commissioners, as may be appointed in the other States of the Union at a time and place to be agreed on, to take into consideration the trade of the United States; to examine the relative situations and trade of said States; to consider how far a uniform system in their commercial regulations may be necessary to their common interest and their permanent harmony; and to report to the several States such an act relative to this great object as, when unanimously ratified by them, will enable the United States, in Congress, effectually to provide for the same."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE IX.  
Action of Virginia  
in 1786.

Mr. Madison was undoubtedly the author of that resolution, and he was afterwards a member of the Convention which framed the Constitution. That was the only resolution passed at that time, so that it is evident that more than a year before that Convention was finally called, the trade and commerce of the country occupied a prominent place in the minds of the Virginia legislature, as well as in the thought of this distinguished statesman, together with the prominent idea that there should be such regulation of that commerce as might be beneficial to all the States, with a power to control it placed in the central authority, weak though it then was. With the same end in view Oliver Ellsworth of Connecticut, a distinguished man of that day, a member of the Constitutional Convention, and

Mr. Madison.

Mr. Ellsworth.

<sup>1</sup> 5 Elliot's Debates, 113 (Madison Papers).



LECTURE IX.  
Mr. Ellsworth.

one of the early Chief Justices of the Supreme Court of the United States, had urged upon the people of his State to send delegates to the Convention which was to consider the subject of a Federal Constitution. His main argument was that the people of his State were suffering from the imposts laid upon their commerce by the States of New York and Rhode Island, each of which had fine harbors and ports of entry. Having succeeded in getting a Constitution adopted with this provision in it, he was then elected to the State convention which should approve or reject it. In the opening of the discussion in that body, in the first speech that was made, he made use of this remarkable language:—

“Our being tributaries to our sister States is in consequence of the want of a Federal system. The State of New York raises £60,000 or £80,000 a year by impost. Connecticut consumes about one-third of the goods upon which this impost is laid, and consequently pays one third of this sum to New York. If we import by the medium of Massachusetts she has an impost, and to her we pay a tribute.”<sup>1</sup>

The Federalist.

The Federalist, that remarkable series of papers published by Hamilton, Madison, and Jay, while the ratification of the Constitution was pending before the people in their State conventions, contains, of course, the principal arguments in favor of the adoption of that instrument. To that, therefore, all persons

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Elliot's Debates, 189.

engaged in construing the Constitution of the United States naturally look for a contemporaneous exposition of it by the distinguished statesmen of that period, two of whom were engaged in its formation, and who had no superiors at that time in the public service. In the seventh number of that series of articles the author, in speaking of the evils of a divided condition of the States, says: —

LECTURE IX.  
The Federalist.

“The competitions of commerce would be another fruitful source of contention. The States less favorably circumstanced would be desirous of escaping from the disadvantages of local situation, and of sharing in the advantages of their more fortunate neighbors. Each State, or separate confederacy, would pursue a system of commercial polity peculiar to itself. This would occasion distinctions, preferences, and exclusions, which would beget discontent. The habits of intercourse, on the basis of equal privileges, to which we have been accustomed from the earliest settlement of the country, would give a keener edge to those causes of discontent, than they would naturally have, independent of this circumstance. *We should be ready to denominate injuries those things which were in reality the justifiable acts of independent sovereignties consulting a distinct interest.*”<sup>1</sup>

Again the following language is used: —

“The opportunities which some States would have of rendering others tributary to them, by

---

<sup>1</sup> The Federalist, No. 7 (Hamilton).

LECTURE IX.  
The Federalist.

commercial regulations, would be impatiently submitted to by the tributary States. The relative situation of New York, Connecticut, and New Jersey, would afford an example of this kind. New York, from the necessities of revenue, must lay duties on her importations. A great part of these duties must be paid by the inhabitants of the two other States in the capacity of consumers of what we import. New York would neither be willing, nor able, to forego this advantage. Her citizens would not consent that a duty paid by them should be remitted in favor of the citizens of her neighbors.”<sup>1</sup>

The subject is recurred to again in the twenty-second letter:—

“The interfering and unneighborly regulations of some States, contrary to the true spirit of the union, have, in different instances, given just cause of umbrage and complaint to others; and it is to be feared that examples of this nature, if not restrained by a national control, would be multiplied and extended till they became not less serious sources of animosity and discord, than injurious impediments to the intercourse between the different parts of the confederacy.”<sup>2</sup>

Here follows a sentence remarkable as almost a prophecy of what we have seen and known in our day:—

“The commerce of the German Empire is in

---

<sup>1</sup> The Federalist, No. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Ib. No. 22.

continual trammels, from the multiplicity of the duties which the several princes and States exact upon the merchandises passing through their territories, by means of which the fine streams and navigable rivers with which Germany is so happily watered, are rendered almost useless.”<sup>1</sup>

Now we know that Germany submitted to that condition of affairs until some fifty or sixty years ago, when that portion since called North Germany, with Prussia as the dominant power, formed what they called the Zollverein.<sup>2</sup> This was a commercial union between about a dozen of those States, Dukedoms, and Principalities, by which it was arranged that travellers and goods of all kinds might pass entirely through their

LECTURE IX  
The Federalist.

German Zoll-  
verein.

<sup>1</sup> The Federalist, No. 22, quoting from the Encyclopædia, art. Empire.

<sup>2</sup> The Zollverein had its origin in a customs convention between Prussia and the Grand Duchy of Hesse in 1828; and other states, as they gradually became convinced of the advantages afforded by a general customs frontier, joined it from time to time during the succeeding forty years. The following table shows the progressive territorial limits of the Zollverein, which may be regarded as the precursor of the present German Empire:—

| Years. | States entering During the Various Periods.          | Area Square Miles. | Population of the Union States. |
|--------|--|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1828   | Prussia, Hesse (Grand Duchy) .                       | 112,000            | 13,295,254                      |
| 1831   | Hesse-Cassel . . . . .                               | 115,300            | 15,090,075                      |
| 1834   | Bavaria, Würtemberg, Saxony, Thuringia, etc. . . . . | 163,900            | 23,478,120                      |
| 1844   | Brunswick, Luxembourg, etc. .                        | 171,900            | 28,498,136                      |
| 1851   | Hannover, Oldenburg . . . .                          | 191,800            | 32,559,055                      |
| 1868   | Schleswig-Holstein, Lauenburg, Mecklenburg . . . . . | 205,500            | 38,277,939                      |
| 1871   | Alsace-Lorraine . . . . .                            | 209,251            | 40,677,960                      |

Encyclopædia Britannica, vol. 10, 455 (9th ed.).

LECTURE IX.  
German Zoll-  
verein.

territories with but one inspection and one set of duties. I am not familiar with the details of the treaty, but, as we all know, its practical result was to bring together all the North German States in a union for all commercial transactions. That condition of affairs had existed but a few years when war broke out between Prussia and Austria. The entire North German Confederacy, if it could be so called, joined Prussia in this war, in which that country was successful, and they then established a still more intimate relation, forming themselves into one kingdom or government. They then extended their Zollverein, but not their unity of government, to South Germany, which included Bavaria and Würtemberg, each of which was a rather large kingdom in its territorial extent among those small principalities. So intimate, however, was this commercial relation that those two governments followed Prussia in the subsequent war with France, and at the end of that war the present German Empire was organized. All this grew out of the original commercial union, called the Zollverein, adopted to prevent discriminating duties and other troubles which arise when the business relations of neighboring territories are interrupted by independent laws and regulations.

Importance of  
this clause in the  
Constitution.

In the paper No. 41 of the Federalist there is another reference to this subject, written before the adoption of the Constitution, in which the same idea is expressed.

“The defect of power in the existing con-

federacy to regulate the commerce between its several members, is in the number of those which have been clearly pointed out by experience. To the proofs and remarks which former papers have brought into view on this subject, it may be added, that without this supplemental provision, the great and essential power of regulating foreign commerce would have been incomplete and ineffectual. A very material object of this power was the relief of the States which import and export through other States, from the improper contributions levied on them by the latter. Were these at liberty to regulate the trade between State and State, it must be foreseen that ways would be found out to load the articles of import and export, during the passage through their jurisdiction, with duties which would fall on the makers of the latter, and the consumers of the former. We may be assured by past experience, that such a practice would be introduced by future contrivances; and both by that and a common knowledge of human affairs, that it would nourish increasing animosities, and not improbably terminate in serious interruptions of the public tranquillity.”<sup>1</sup>

A further indication of the importance which the States attached to this matter is to be found in the fact that Rhode Island was between two and three years in ratifying the Constitution, after all the other States except North Carolina had acted upon the subject. Your attention

LECTURE IX.  
Importance of  
this clause in the  
Constitution.

Legislation of  
Rhode Island.

<sup>1</sup> The Federalist, No. 41 (Dawson's ed.); No. 42 all other editions.

LECTURE IX.  
Legislation of  
Rhode Island.

may not have been called to the reason which governed Rhode Island in that matter, but history shows that it was on account of the importance which that State attached to this power to regulate the commerce that would naturally seek its ports. It possessed in Newport one of the finest harbors on the whole Atlantic coast, and a very large part of the imports into the northern States of the Union from abroad went through that town. There was, of course, a heavy tax laid upon such importations, so that this little State and its principal city were paying their expenses and living a jolly life off of the imposts collected on goods that went through its ports to Connecticut, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and the adjoining States, for consumption.

Legislation of  
New York.

The experience of the country since the adoption of the Constitution has shown how wise were its framers in including this particular clause which we are now considering within its provisions. From the case of *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 9 Wheat. 1, 189, argued in the Supreme Court of the United States in 1824, down to the present time, there have been many judicial decisions upon this subject, in which acts of the States were held void which were intended to infringe that provision of the Constitution, and which attempted to impose upon the property and goods of citizens of other States the burdens which the citizens of the States making the enactments ought themselves to bear. The case of *Gibbons v. Ogden*, in which the opinion was

delivered by Chief Justice Marshall, arose under a statute of the State of New York which seemed to be intended as a liberal concession on account of an invention of great public value. That State granted to Robert R. Livingston and Robert Fulton, the inventor of the steamboat, the exclusive right of navigating all the waters within its jurisdiction with boats moved by fire or steam for a term of years. This included the waters of the Hudson River, which were then relatively more important than they now are, because there were no railroads or canals. The defendant Gibbons employed two steamboats, running between New York and Elizabethtown in the State of New Jersey, in violation, as it was claimed, of this exclusive privilege. An injunction was therefore sought to restrain him from using those boats, although they had been duly enrolled and licensed under acts of Congress. The case came by due process into the Supreme Court of the United States, where it was held that the statute of the State of New York was a regulation of commerce between the States, and therefore repugnant to the clause of the Constitution which we are now considering, authorizing Congress to regulate commerce among the several States.

From that time until the present the efforts of the individual States to take advantage of their opportunities to impose duties, taxes, restraints, and burdens upon the property of citizens of other States passing through or brought into them have been the source of the continued exercise

LECTURE IX.  
Legislation of  
New York.

Legislation of  
Maryland.



LECTURE IX.  
Legislation of  
Maryland.

of the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court of the United States, where such laws have in almost every instance been declared void. For example, the statute in the case of *Guy v. Baltimore*, 100 U. S. 434, was an old sinner, and made a very clever attempt to conceal the evil. It appeared that the city of Baltimore owned some of the wharves in that city at which vessels coming to that port landed: probably not all, but some of them, and imposed a certain tax for the use of those wharves. This was begun a great many years ago, and was done by an act of the General Assembly of Maryland, passed in 1827, and regulations made thereunder by the city authorities, which provided in effect that all articles of merchandise brought into that city and landed at its wharves, which were the produce of the State of Maryland, should pay no fees on account of their use, but that all similar articles brought into that port from any other State should pay a tax for the use of the wharf upon which it was landed. Of course it was a small affair, the main business at these wharves being the landing of chickens, eggs, potatoes, cabbages, oysters, and other articles of food and things of that kind, so that the sum that any one little sailing vessel had to pay did not amount to much. Nobody, therefore, resisted its payment until a few years ago, when a man was at last found who would stand it no longer. In 1876 Guy, a resident citizen of Accomac County in the State of Virginia, landed his vessel at one of the public wharves, and when this

tax was demanded of him refused to pay it. So they sued him, and by regular process through their courts the case came at last into the Supreme Court of the United States. That court said that it did not matter if this tax had been collected for so many years, it was nevertheless a regulation of commerce which the State could not make or authorize, because this tax was not a compensation for the use of the city's property, but was a mere expedient or device to foster the domestic commerce of Maryland by means of unequal and oppressive burdens upon the industry and business of other States. It was invalid as a regulation of commerce. It was not merely intended to raise money for the use of a wharf, — that they had a right to do, and if they had laid a reasonable tax for its use and laid it alike upon the produce which came from every State in the Union, it would have been a valid tax; but it was evident that it was intended by this statute to make the produce and goods of Virginia, which lies right alongside, as well as that of the adjacent States of New Jersey and Delaware, which came into this port for a market, pay a tax to keep up the wharves and wharfage system of that port, while permitting the entry of goods and produce from the State of Maryland free of any such imposition. This was held to be a regulation of commerce, and though of nearly sixty years' standing, to be void.

If you will take the Constitution of the United States and read it, or that part of it in

LECTURE IX.  
Legislation of  
Maryland.

LECTURE IX.  
Legislation of  
Maryland.

immediate connection with this paragraph, you will see that the position which it occupies in that instrument indicates the place it occupied in the thought of the Convention which framed it. Article I is devoted to the organization and powers of the legislative branch of the Government, consisting of the Senate and House of Representatives. Section eight of the Article contains the specific grants of power made to the Congress. The first one of these is a grant to raise money by taxation for the support of the Government; the second is an authority to borrow money for the same purpose, and the third, out of about fifteen in number, is this clause concerning the regulation of commerce.

What is commerce?

We must next, in order to ascertain with any philosophical nicety what is meant by this clause, take some of its parts into the field of definition. And first let us consider, what is commerce? You remember that the commerce to be regulated by Congress is that "with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;" but the word "commerce" is applicable to all these, and it is essential to have some idea as to what is meant by the word. It is defined in *Gibbons v. Ogden*, as well as in some later cases, but it is difficult to give in any one sentence its entire meaning as employed in the Constitution. The ordinary meaning is trade and traffic—intercourse between different peoples; and that will perhaps answer for our purpose as a general definition of the word as used in this clause. But traffic and

trade are composed of a great many elements so far as the means are concerned by which and the persons by and between whom they are carried on.

LECTURE IX.  
What is commerce?

That element of commerce which has been the most frequent subject of legislation by the Congress of the United States, and which has perhaps received more frequent consideration in the courts than any other, is what may be called "transportation." In *Gibbons v. Ogden* the eminent Chief Justice made a very elaborate argument to prove that navigation was one of the principal elements of commerce, which was perhaps necessary for him to do in that day although it is a proposition which it would certainly not be thought necessary now to establish by precedents or authorities. In fact we have gone further than that, and we have said that the transportation of goods and passengers is commerce. And in that view, in the case of the *Clinton Bridge*, reported in 1 Woolworth, 150, in 1867, in which I had the honor of delivering the opinion of the court, it was held, though I believe it has sometimes been doubted since, that since the railroads of the country had almost superseded the use of vessels and water carriage, they, as a means of transportation, constituted an element of commerce, and that it was within the power of Congress to regulate that element. There is this limitation to that, however, that since these railroads are generally chartered by States, and many of them run only within the borders of a single State,

LECTURE IX.  
What is commerce?

the transportation or commerce over them is said to be not commerce with foreign nations, not commerce among the several States, and not commerce with the Indian tribes, and, therefore, not subject to regulation by Congress. But many of these roads run through several States, and most of them make arrangements to continue the transportation of their freight over other lines. A large part of the transportation of freight and passengers in this country from the Pacific to the Atlantic coast, and *vice versa*, is done in one vehicle and by one continuous passage. It is my opinion that such traffic is subject to regulation by Congress. The judgment rendered in that case was affirmed by the Supreme Court of the United States, but the argument which I have presented here, and which I used in the case below as a part of my opinion, was not fully adopted. The question was whether the Congress of the United States had power to authorize one of these railroads to build a bridge across the Mississippi River at the town of Clinton, where two roads, one on each side, met, and where it was necessary to have a bridge. I held that Congress having passed a statute authorizing it to be built, and declaring what the size and height of the bridge and the width between its piers should be, the act was within the power of Congress because it was a regulation of commerce. The Supreme Court sustained me in that, although some of the judges may have based their decision upon the fact that it was a bridge across a naviga-

ble stream, and therefore within the control of Congress. My decision in that case has often been quoted in Congress; various committees having charge of the question of the regulation of railroad traffic have considered the subject, and although no bill has passed both Houses, yet bills substantially based upon that idea have at different times passed each House, and generally the reports of the committees having them in charge have made reference to that opinion.

LECTURE IX.  
What is commerce?

Having ascertained, then, what commerce is, and what are some of its elements, which may be the subject of the action of Congress, or of the attempted action of the States, we next come to consider what it is to "regulate" commerce. You will observe from the extracts quoted from the *Federalist*, and still more if you study the history of the formation of the Constitution, that the word "regulate" was one much more frequently used in those days than it is now; undoubtedly our forefathers used it in a larger and wider sense than it would be generally used at this time. But we have in *Gibbons v. Ogden*, that magazine of constitutional law upon this subject, a definition by Chief Justice Marshall of what it is to regulate commerce, which perhaps can never be excelled in its brevity, accuracy, and comprehensiveness. He says that "to regulate commerce is to prescribe the rule by which commerce is to be governed." Commerce being intercourse and traffic between people, to regulate it is to prescribe rules by which it shall be conducted.

What it is to  
"regulate" com-  
merce.

LECTURE IX.  
What it is to  
"regulate" com-  
merce.

It is said in *Cooley v. Port Wardens of Philadelphia*, 12 How. 299, that it is the power to regulate the instruments of commerce; that "it extends to the persons who conduct navigation as well as to the instruments used." In pursuance of that view the Congress of the United States has applied the power which it has under that clause to regulate commerce to a method of intercourse which had no existence when the Constitution was framed. By this I mean the internal commerce of the country, among the States and on its great rivers, by means of steamboats, for it was nearly forty years after the Constitution was adopted before a steamboat was successfully used to take part in the actual transportation of goods and the navigation of the waters of the country. Before that time, however, Congress had applied its powers to the regulation of sailing vessels, both foreign and domestic. The next year after the adoption of the Constitution it passed two statutes, one called the "registry law," which applied exclusively to vessels engaged in foreign trade, and the other called the "enrolment law," which had application alone to coasting and other vessels engaged in the domestic trade. Congress also passed statutes: indeed, it was a part of those statutes, that all those vessels should be licensed, and that they should take out their licenses from the officers of the custom houses where they were built, or where their owners resided. In fact, it may be briefly stated that the whole system of the navigation laws of the United States is

founded on that simple clause giving Congress the power to regulate commerce.

Since steamboats came into successful operation Congress has been busy, and profitably so, in passing laws concerning and regulating their use on the interior waters of the country. It has passed laws prescribing the number of passengers that each one of these boats may carry in proportion to the space which they have for their accommodation, and providing heavy penalties for any excess in the number of passengers carried beyond the limit permitted by law. It has also enacted statutes requiring them to keep on board certain life-preserving and life-saving implements, of which there is a great variety, some circular, some square, some of cork, and some filled with air. These are all arrangements prescribed by Congress under this same clause of the Constitution.

These statutes also require that these vessels shall be inspected. The smallest vessel that navigates a river by steam as well as the largest that navigates the ocean is required, whether belonging to the United States service or to an individual, to be inspected and to have put up and exhibited in their cabins a certificate of that inspection, which must be renewed at appropriate intervals. These provisions are all intended for the safety of the passengers and crews, and to provide against danger to human life. It is also provided that on the inland waters of the country the pilot and engineer must be examined by suitable commissioners

## LECTURE IX.

What it is to  
"regulate" com-  
merce.

Steam navigation  
of the lakes and  
interior rivers.



LECTURE IX.  
Steam navigation  
of the lakes and  
interior rivers.

located in the principal cities of the Union. Any steamboat owner who employs a pilot or engineer who has no license is liable to a penalty, and any man who undertakes to serve as a pilot or engineer without such license is liable to a similar penalty. So that you will see that there has been a great deal of use made of this power which is conferred by this clause of the Constitution.

Immigrants.

Another matter having reference mainly to the foreign commerce of the United States has been the subject of consideration in our courts. I allude to laws concerning the landing of passengers who are foreigners in our ports. For more than fifty years the States within which the principal ports of entry are situated have struggled to in some way levy a tax upon every human being not a citizen of the United States who landed in one of those ports. This tax they endeavored to collect from the officers of the vessels bringing such passengers, under the pressure of heavy penalties for failure to pay such impositions. Such laws have over and over again been declared by the Supreme Court to be unconstitutional and void, because they are an attempt at a regulation of foreign commerce; because the terms upon which subjects and citizens of foreign nations shall land in the United States are not fit matters for State legislation; because, under the theory upon which our Government is based, the central authority must deal with the sovereigns of those subjects, as well as answer to them for any wrong done to them under the laws of nations; and because

such laws are essentially and from their very nature, of that class of legislation or action which is international in its character and which must, therefore, be regulated and acted upon by the Federal Government alone so far as foreign powers are concerned, and cannot be intrusted to any one or more of the individual States of the Union. But often as that doctrine has been declared by the Supreme Court of the United States, beginning with the *Passenger Cases*, 7 How. 283, in 1849, down to those which have been recently delivered, still the States continue this effort to tax passengers and freight and seek to avoid in some way or another the force and effect of the constitutional provision concerning commerce and its regulation.

LECTURE IX.  
Immigrants.

There is one other question connected with this topic which has been much mooted in the Supreme Court, and that is, whether there may not exist in the States a co-ordinate power to regulate commerce of certain kinds in the absence of any action by Congress on the subject.. It has been a vexed question in the court whether there is any such limited field of State legislation, or for State legislative power, in regard to any subject which can be fairly called a regulation of commerce. But I think that it is now the established doctrine that there is a class of subjects having the elements of commerce, both foreign and domestic and interstate, which may be acted on and in regard to which rules may be prescribed by the States so long as Congress does not choose to occupy the field and

Co-ordinate  
powers of the  
States.

LECTURE IX.  
Co-ordinate  
powers of the  
States.

pass laws upon the same subject. The principal cases upon that subject are rather numerous, but I will give you some of them. *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 9 Wheat. 1, 189; *Willson v. Blackbird Creek Co.*, 2 Pet. 245; *Cooley v. The Board of Wardens of the Port of Philadelphia*, 12 How. 299; *Gilman v. The City of Philadelphia*, 3 Wall. 713; *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35; *Pound v. Turck*, 95 U. S. 459, 462; *Packet Co. v. Catlettsburg*, 105 U. S. 559.

These are cases involving some local matter, yet in its nature a regulation of commerce, in regard to which the States concerned have attempted to pass, and have passed laws whose validity was disputed under this clause of the Constitution. They have come in this way before the Supreme Court of the United States, where they have been held to be valid. I can do no more now than to state what I have deduced as the result of these cases. The doctrine was for the first time clearly stated in *Cooley v. The Board of Wardens*, and it has been repeatedly affirmed since in the same court. It may be thus stated: That the power to regulate commerce is one which includes many subjects various and quite unlike in their nature; that whenever subjects of this power are in their nature national, or require one uniform system or plan of regulation, they may be justly held to belong to that class over which Congress has the exclusive power of legislation; but that local and limited matters, not national in their character, which are most likely to be wisely provided for by such

diverse rules as the localities and the authorities of the different States may deem applicable, may be regulated by the legislatures of those States in the absence of any act of Congress upon the same subject. Of course when Congress does legislate, as it has a right to do, that excludes the legislation of the States and renders it void so far as it may interfere or conflict with the statutes of the United States.

LECTURE IX.  
Co-ordinate  
powers of the  
States.

It may be useful to suggest here one or two of the classes into which this subject may be divided. One is pilotage, which was under consideration in *Cooley v. The Board of Wardens*. Almost all the seaports of the United States have found it necessary to make rules and laws constituting and regulating a system of pilotage. By these provision has been made for putting upon the great ocean steamships and other vessels before they reach the bar, which exists in most of our harbors, a pilot who is familiar with the coast and the channel, so that they may be brought safely into port. This dispenses, of course, with any pilot the vessel may have on board, whether competent or not. The reason for this is that it has been found necessary, in order to make proper compensation to these pilots and support a sufficient number of them to do the business, to require by law that every vessel shall take a pilot; and they have gone further, no doubt under a necessity inherent in the system, and have required that the vessel entering a port shall take the first pilot who offers himself when it comes within the limits

Pilotage.

LECTURE IX.  
Pilotage.

where the pilot-laws operate. This is because these pilots must go out and cruise about before the harbor, and stay there regardless of the weather, so that all vessels may avail themselves of their services, and it is therefore provided that they must be taken in the order in which they present themselves. Most of the States, however, have a provision in their laws that if a vessel has a pilot of her own, or for any other reason chooses to dispense with the services of the first pilot who offers himself, such vessel shall pay to that pilot one-half of the usual fees, which are established by the local regulations of the different States, or by their legislative bodies. This is a system that requires different rules and provisions in New York from what has been found necessary in New Orleans, and it has therefore been held that the laws of the States upon that subject are valid. It has been contended that all compulsory pilotage should be abolished, and a bill to accomplish that object has been reported from the Committee on Commerce of the Senate of the United States. If such a bill should pass it would not be necessary for a vessel to take a pilot whether she wanted him or not. This is an apt illustration of the power of Congress to act upon a subject which, if left untouched by it, would fall within the power of the State legislatures.

## Wharfage.

Another is wharfage rules and rates. So different are the localities where vessels land, the nature of the ground, and the condition of the

wharves, that it generally has been conceded LECTURE IX.  
Wharfage. that the places and times at which such landings may be made and the rates of wharfage shall be left to local regulation. Yet, undoubtedly, they are so far regulations of commerce, that if Congress should at any time interfere and pass a law upon the subject it would be controlling.

Another class, which has been frequently be- Bridges over navi-  
gable streams. fore the Supreme Court, involves matters like that discussed in the case of the Clinton Bridge, that is, of bridges over navigable streams. Such streams are within the control of Congress, absolutely. We may say in regard to every stream in the United States capable of being used as an aid to commerce for the navigation of any craft whatever, that Congress has a right to regulate its use. But, in the building of railroads across the country it was necessary that they should cross many streams, some of them navigable, and it was found to be to the interest of commerce that they should be bridged. This was sometimes done with drawbridges, but their piers were somewhat in the way, and rafts and steamboats often struck against them. So, some of the States authorized the building of bridges, and the courts of the United States have held that if there be no unreasonable use of the power of crossing the stream, the States may authorize the building of bridges in the absence of any action by Congress. There are now bridges over the Ohio, the Mississippi, indeed over all the streams crossed by railroads in this country, of which perhaps one-half are

LECTURE IX.  
Bridges over navigable streams.

authorized by some act of Congress, most of the others by the States, and some by both. In some cases there was a State law allowing the bridge to be built which Congress ratified. It has been sometimes said in regard to this subject that the power of Congress is in abeyance and can be exercised by the States in the absence of Congressional action.

The language of the clause of the Constitution which we are considering, declaring that Congress shall have power "to regulate commerce with foreign nations, among the several States, and with the Indian tribes," thus points out three different classes of commerce placed within the control of that body. It has pretty fairly performed its duty so far as passing laws regulating commerce with foreign nations and the Indian tribes is concerned; but until recently almost entirely ignored its duty in regard to its regulation among the several States of the Union. The result of this failure of Congress to prescribe rules for the government of commerce, which is the power of regulation, has been that the States, under pretence of exercising the power to pass laws concerning this subject, where Congress had not acted upon it, have been themselves making perpetual efforts to exercise forbidden powers at the expense of other States. The power to regulate commerce of course carries with it the auxiliary powers of the courts of the United States to enforce the laws which Congress may enact thereunder, and also the power of the Supreme Court to

State laws in conflict with this provision.

declare null and void regulations and statutes in contravention of those laws or of the Constitution, in order that all citizens may be protected from unconstitutional laws or regulations upon this subject sought to be enforced by the States. So the Federal courts, and particularly the Supreme Court of the United States, have been the theatre of a contest between certain States of the Union and citizens of other States who have thought themselves injured by State laws affecting commerce. That the courts established under the Constitution of the United States necessarily have a power of a judicial character, coextensive with the enforcement of the laws which Congress has a right to make and with the needful protection of the citizens of the Federal Union against laws made under a usurpation of power by the States, in the absence of any action by Congress on the subject, would hardly seem to need any argument. I will, however, refer to the expression used in that remarkable case of *Gibbons v. Ogden*, where it is said that "wherever commerce among the States goes the judicial power of the United States goes to protect it from invasion by State legislatures." 9 Wheat. 191.

There are many cases reported in the decisions of the Supreme Court discussing the attempted exercise of power by the State legislatures over this subject, principally devoted to commerce among the States. As an evidence of the persistence of some of the States in this attempt to transcend their powers, I quote the

LECTURE IX.  
State laws in conflict with this provision.



LECTURE IX  
State laws in conflict with this provision.

headnotes of the opinion in *People v. Compagnie Générale Transatlantique*, 107 U. S. 59, delivered in 1882, on the subject of the landing of passengers at one of the larger ports of the United States. The syllabus contains a sufficient synopsis of the opinion to indicate the persistent effort made by some States to pass laws which they are forbidden to pass, for the purpose of raising taxes from people over whom they never had any right of taxation.

"1. The statute of New York of May 31, 1881, imposing a tax on every alien passenger who shall come by vessel from a foreign country to the port of New York, and holding the vessel liable for the tax, is a regulation of foreign commerce, and void. *Henderson v. Mayor of New York*, 92 U. S. 259, and *Chy Lung v. Freeman*, 92 U. S. 275, cited, and the rulings therein made reaffirmed.

"2. The statute is not relieved from this constitutional objection by declaring in its title that it is to raise money for the execution of the inspection laws of the State, which authorize passengers to be inspected in order to determine who are criminals, paupers, lunatics, orphans, or infirm persons, without means or capacity to support themselves, and subject to become a public charge, as such facts are not to be ascertained by inspection alone.

"3. The words 'inspection laws,' 'imports' and 'exports,' as used in cl. 2, sec. 10, Art. I, of the Constitution have exclusive reference to property.

"4. This is apparent from the language of cl. 1, sec. 9, of the same article, where, in regard to the admission of persons of the African race, the word 'migration' is applied to free persons, and 'importation' to slaves."

LECTURE IX.  
State laws in conflict with this provision.

The point here made is that the Constitution declares that "no State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws." After the Supreme Court of the United States decided in the *Passenger Cases*, in 1849, that passengers were not imports, and could not, therefore, be taxed in that way, and after the decision in *Henderson v. Mayor of New York*, 92 U. S. 259, in 1875, that an amended law intended to get rid of that decision was unconstitutional, the legislature passed the law of 1881, and by calling it an inspection law undertook to get rid of the prohibition against the regulation of commerce by a State. This effort was declared by that opinion to be an unsuccessful one.

There are many cases, however, reported in the decisions of the Supreme Court which uphold the powers exercised by the State legislatures as coming within the rule in *Cooley v. The Board of Wardens*, above referred to. Among those where the State laws have been supported are the cases of *Willson v. The Blackbird Creek Marsh Co.*, 2 Pet. 245; *Gilman v. Philadelphia*, 3 Wall. 713, and others above cited.

*Willson v. The Blackbird Creek Marsh Co.*

LECTURE IX.  
State laws in conflict with this provision.

was a case where a small stream emptying into Delaware Bay, and navigable for ten or fifteen miles into the interior of the country, had been dammed with a view to improving its utility and draining the water from the surrounding swamps. The authority under which this was done was held not to be an act regulating commerce which was forbidden by the Constitution, being of a mere local and limited character, until Congress should pass some law on the subject. That was the first case in which the doctrine was clearly stated.

In *Gilman v. Philadelphia* a bridge was built across the Schuylkill River in the city of Philadelphia, within its present limits, below a wharf which had been long used and to which vessels of a very large class had been accustomed to go. It was decided that the necessities of a bridge at that point for the use of the great travel of the city were so great that its authorization by the legislature of Pennsylvania, being of a strictly local character and not interfering with general commerce, came within the rule in *Cooley v. The Board of Wardens*, and was, until Congress forbade it, a legitimate exercise of power.

In other cases, rather more numerous, various acts of the State legislatures have been held void as infringing upon the power to regulate commerce exclusively belonging to Congress. *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 9 Wheat. 1, 186; *Brown v. Maryland*, 12 Wheat. 419; *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35; *Case of the State Freight Tax*, 15

Wall. 232; *Woodruff v. Parham*, 8 Wall. 123; **LECTURE IX.**  
*Welton v. State of Missouri*, 91 U. S. 275; State laws in conflict with this provision.  
*Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Texas*, 105 U. S. 460; *Railroad Co. v. Husen*, 95 U. S. 465.

Perhaps a clearer idea may be had of the principles upon which these State laws have been held to be infringements of the power vested in Congress by the Constitution by stating briefly the substance of one or two of the most remarkable of these cases.

In *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35, it appeared that the State of Nevada had enacted a statute that every person who passed through its territory by any of the ordinary modes of public conveyance should pay to the State one dollar for that privilege. That is the way the Supreme Court construed the act. But the statute was artfully drawn, as all such statutes are, and it provided that every railroad, stage, or other company engaged in the business of transportation, should pay to the State one dollar for every person that they carried through the State. It has, however, long been decided, and it is very obvious, that such a tax levied on a carrier is really a tax on the passenger, for the carrier of course makes him pay that much more for carrying him through the State or for his conveyance whether it is by land or water. As remarked by the Supreme Court in *Henderson v. The Mayor of New York*, 92 U. S. 259, Review of principal cases. Crandall v. Nevada. Henderson v. New York. in the *Passenger Cases*, and some others, a tax demanded of a vessel for landing a passenger, coming from a European shore, in the harbor

LECTURE IX.  
Review of principal cases.  
*Henderson v. New York.*

of New York, is in its effect clearly a tax upon the passenger, because the master of the vessel puts that tax into his charge before he takes the passenger on his vessel at the European port, wherever it may be. So in this case, it was unquestionably a tax upon the passenger for the simple privilege of going through the State. The Supreme Court of the United States held that to be void, and the act was thereafter never enforced.

That decision, which probably would not have affected but a few thousand dollars a year so far as the State of Nevada was concerned, had the effect to break up a system of taxing passengers by railroads that run into the city of Washington. The State of Maryland had for twenty years exacted from the Metropolitan Branch of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad Company a tax of half a dollar for every passenger carried over that road, but the practice was stopped by that decision. The State of New Jersey had taxed all the passengers which passed through its strip of territory extending as a barrier between the city of New York and the West and South, and that custom was also broken up by that decision.

*Welton v. Missouri.*

In *Welton v. The State of Missouri*, 91 U. S. 275, it was shown that that State had by legislative enactment authorized the city of Saint Louis, among other things, to tax peddlers. In the exercise of that power, however, the city taxed only those peddlers who came within its borders to sell goods from other States, and did not tax

those who in that city sold only the goods or produce of the State of Missouri. This was very clearly a regulation of commerce prejudicial to other States and favorable to the merchants of Saint Louis, designed to compel every man who came within its limits to sell the produce of any other State to pay a tax regulated by its discretion, because if it could levy a tax of one dollar it might increase it to one hundred dollars. The Supreme Court held that to be a regulation of commerce among the States. If a peddler came there from New York, Cincinnati, or Chicago, to sell goods that he had bought in those cities, and was compelled by the State of Missouri to pay a tax for the privilege, when the man living in that State was not taxed for selling the produce or goods of that State, it was manifestly a regulation of commerce unfavorable to other States of the Federal Union. It was, therefore, held to be void.

LECTURE IX.  
Review of principal cases.  
*Welton v. Missouri.*

The question of the taxation of non-resident peddlers has arisen in the District of Columbia, but since the acts of Congress govern here, the District not being a State, and the authority under which a peddler can be taxed in this city must originate in Congress, which has a right to regulate its commerce, it is not clear how the courts can do much in regard to the grievance.

Another case illustrating the point in question is that of *Railroad Co. v. Husen*, 95 U. S. 465. There was a statute passed by the State of Missouri with regard to a disease which was supposed to infest Texan cattle coming into and

*Railroad Co. v. Husen.*

LECTURE IX.  
Review of principal cases.  
*Railroad Co. v. Husen.*

going through Missouri, and which was regarded as infectious. I am not prepared to say that if the statute had been strictly limited to the exclusion of cattle having that disease, or if it had provided proper means for ascertaining what cattle were diseased, and when that was ascertained had directed them to be turned back or segregated so that the disease should not be further propagated, it would not have been valid. But Missouri, like other States attempting to operate on this class of subjects, declared that no cattle from the State of Texas should come into that State at all, until they had been kept long enough to prevent any danger of contagion. The statute in effect amounted to an entire prohibition on the railroads from carrying cattle from Texas through the State of Missouri, and the Supreme Court of the United States held it to be unconstitutional.

*W. U. Tel. Co. v. Texas.*

Perhaps the case of the *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Texas*, 105 U. S. 460, more fully illustrates what is and what is not permissible on the part of the several States, than any other which has been decided by the Supreme Court. That State attempted to levy a tax of one cent upon every message received at or sent from any telegraph office located within its limits. Without going into the circumstances of the case in detail, it may be simply remarked that the telegraph company contested the validity of the act on the ground that it was unconstitutional, being a regulation of commerce. The question came before the Supreme Court and they held that the

very terms of the commerce clause of the Constitution imply that there is a commerce with which Congress has no right to interfere, and which the States, therefore, have the right to regulate. It will be observed that "commerce with foreign nations," and "among the several States," and "with the Indian tribes," leaves a large body of commerce, which has been defined as trade, traffic, and intercourse, conducted between citizens of the same State, entirely beyond the control of Congress. It has always been conceded in the discussions in the Supreme Court that with this great body of commerce, consisting of trade between citizens of the same State, Congress could not interfere, and that the Constitution did not affect the power of the State to regulate and control it. The business of the company was the forwarding of messages, of which undoubtedly a large number were sent from some point or office of the company in the State of Texas to some other point or office within the same State. Naturally, also, a very large number of these messages went from that State into others, as well as came from others into the State of Texas. If the latter was commerce at all, it was "commerce among the several States;" for another definition which has been given of the matter shows that the nations, States, and tribes designated in this clause of the Constitution do not mean those bodies in the aggregate. For example: the State of Tennessee has no commerce with the State of Kentucky lying adjacent to it; the United States as a body

LECTURE IX.  
Review of principal cases.  
*W. U. Tel. Co.*  
*v. Texas.*



LECTURE IX.  
Review of principal cases.  
*W. U. Tel. Co.*  
*v. Texas.*

has no commerce with England. It simply means commerce, traffic, and intercourse between the citizens or subjects of those nations, States, or tribes; so that when a man in Liverpool sells an article to a man in New York that is commerce with a foreign state. The same is true as to citizens of different States of the Union, or as to an American citizen and a member of an Indian tribe. It follows from these observations that, as regards the tax of one cent levied upon the telegraph company for every message received or delivered in the State of Texas, some portion of it might be valid, because levied upon messages transmitted wholly within the limits of the State, belonging to what may be called State commerce or internal commerce, which is not affected by the clause under consideration. On the other hand, a large portion of the tax would be levied upon messages coming from or going into other States, which would be, if commerce at all, "commerce among the several States." I will quote the language of the Chief Justice in the opinion in this case, confirmatory of what has been before stated, that railroad and steamboat transportation is as much commerce as that which takes place in sailing vessels, the only known method of water carriage at the time the Constitution was adopted.

"In *Pensacola Telegraph Co. v. Western Union Telegraph Co.*, 96 U. S. 1, this court held that the telegraph was an instrument of commerce and that telegraph companies were subject to the regulating power of Congress in respect to

their foreign and interstate business. A telegraph company occupies the same relation to commerce, as a carrier of messages, that a railroad company does as a carrier of goods. Both companies are instruments of commerce, and their business is commerce itself." *Telegraph Co. v. Texas*, 105 U. S. 460, 464.

LECTURE IX.  
Review of principal cases.

The opinion then goes on to decide that so much of the law levying that tax as concerned messages coming into the State of Texas or going out of it to other States was void, and that if the State wanted to tax messages sent by private parties, and not by agents of the Government of the United States, from one place to another exclusively within its own jurisdiction, it could do so, but that it could not under the law in question tax messages between different States.

Only a few words need be said in regard to commerce with the Indian tribes. Of course they were relatively much more powerful, and they themselves more numerous, at the time the Constitution was adopted than now, and commerce and personal intercourse with them was a matter of much more importance. They are still, however, a great expense to the Government, and occupy even at this day, as they have always done, a great deal of public attention, an important place in the legislation of Congress and in the action of the departments. Very early after the formation of the Constitution Congress took up the subject of intercourse with the Indian tribes and passed laws, supposed to be judicious,

Commerce with the Indian tribes.

LECTURE IX.  
Commerce with  
the Indian tribes.

restraining them, forbidding white people to settle among them, and made a special effort to prevent the use of intoxicating liquors and to exclude them from their reservations. Congress had the power under that clause of the Constitution to prohibit or license trade, to prohibit or license personal intercourse, and it passed laws upon that subject. This power of Congress to regulate commerce with these tribes, as the Supreme Court has said in several instances, is one which may be exercised with regard to the tribes in their localities, in the territories or within organized States, and also with regard to a member of a tribe who abides by the tribal relation. It has no restriction to locality, but wherever a tribe is found, however large or small, wherever there is an Indian who belongs to a tribe, this power of Congress attaches, whether it be in a State of the Union or upon the plains of the territories of the West. A short extract from the case of *United States v. Holliday*, 3 Wall. 407, 417, will perhaps give you a clearer view of the relation which Congress sustains to the Indian tribes than any statement which I might make. The court was considering an act forbidding the sale of liquor to Indians in charge of an agent appointed by the Government. The offence complained of in that case took place within the organized State of Minnesota, without the limits of the reservation on which the Indian tribe lived. The objection was raised that the power of Congress did not extend there, but that the Indian was

within the territory of a State which had the right to regulate its sale. The court said : —

LECTURE IX.  
Commerce with  
the Indian tribes.

“ If the act under consideration is a regulation of commerce, as it undoubtedly is, does it regulate that kind of commerce which is placed within the control of Congress by the Constitution. The words of that instrument are : ‘ Congress shall have power to regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes.’ Commerce with foreign nations, without doubt, means commerce between citizens of the United States and citizens or subjects of foreign governments, as individuals. And so commerce with the Indian tribes means commerce with the individuals composing those tribes. The act before us describes this precise kind of traffic or commerce, and therefore comes within the terms of the constitutional provision. Is there anything in the fact that this power is to be exercised within the limits of a State, which renders the act regulating it unconstitutional? In the same opinion to which we have just before referred, [*Gibbons v. Ogden*,] Judge Marshall, in speaking of the power to regulate commerce with foreign states, says : ‘ The power does not stop at the jurisdictional limits of the several states. It would be a very useless power if it could not pass those lines.’ ‘ If Congress has power to regulate it, that power must be exercised wherever the subject exists.’ It follows from these propositions, which seem to be incontrovertible, that if commerce, or traffic, or

LECTURE IX.  
Commerce with  
the Indian tribes.

intercourse, is carried on with an Indian tribe, or with a member of such tribe, it is subject to be regulated by Congress, although within the limits of a State. The locality of the traffic can have nothing to do with the power. The right to exercise it in reference to any Indian tribe, or any person who is a member of such tribe, is absolute, without reference to the locality of the traffic, or the locality of the tribe, or of the member of the tribe with whom it is carried on. It is not, however, intended by these remarks to imply that this clause of the Constitution authorizes Congress to regulate any other commerce, originated and ended within the limits of a single State, than commerce with the Indian tribes."

In that case one of the Indians concerned belonged in the State of Michigan, was authorized to vote in that State by its laws, and had so voted at county and town elections. He also owned property there, and, therefore, it was argued that he could not be the subject of any regulation of commerce with the Indian tribes. The answer to this proposition is, in the language of the opinion, that "neither the Constitution of the State, nor any act of its legislature, however formal or solemn, whatever rights it may have conferred on those Indians or withheld from them, could withdraw them from the influence of an act of Congress which that body has the constitutional right to pass concerning them. Any other doctrine would make the legislation of the State the supreme law of the

land instead of the Constitution of the United States.”

LECTURE IX.  
Commerce with  
the Indian tribes.

It is, however, proper to say that it was ascertained that this Indian still so far retained his tribal relation that he drew his share of the annuities belonging to the tribe, and that he was among the number of those that an Indian agent was appointed to look after as members of that tribe. The court held in that case, following a long course of previous decisions, that in a matter which constituted a kind of political relation between the Government of the United States and some other nation or tribe, the court would follow the action of what may be termed the political branch of the Government, that is, the Executive, the Congress, and the Departments.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE IX.

---

### LECTURE IX.

Cases decided  
since this lecture  
was written.

It is apparent that this lecture was written some years since. It contains no reference to a single case decided since 107 U.S. (October Term, 1882), although far more cases involving a consideration of this clause of the Constitution have been decided since then, than during any period of the same number of years since the court was organized. The footnote below gives a list of the more important of these cases.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Miller v. New York*, 109 U. S. 385; *Moran v. New Orleans*, 112 U. S. 69; *Foster v. Kansas*, 112 U. S. 201; *Head Money Cases*, 112 U. S. 580; *Cardwell v. American Bridge Company*, 113 U. S. 205; *Cooper Manufacturing Co. v. Ferguson*, 113 U. S. 727; *Gloucester Ferry Company v. Pennsylvania*, 114 U. S. 196; *Brown v. Houston*, 114 U. S. 622; *Fisk v. Jefferson Police Jury*, 116 U. S. 131; *Stone v. Illinois Central Railroad*, 116 U. S. 347; *Stone v. New Orleans & Northeastern Railroad*, 116 U. S. 352; *Walling v. Michigan*, 116 U. S. 446; *Coe v. Errol*, 116 U. S. 517; *Pickard v. Pullman Southern Car Co.*, 117 U. S. 34; *Tennessee v. Pullman Southern Car Co.*, 117 U. S. 51; *Sprague v. Thompson*, 118 U. S. 90; *Morgan's Steamship Co. v. Louisiana*, 118 U. S. 455; *Wabash &c. Railway Co. v. Illinois*, 118 U. S. 557; *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489; *Corson v. Maryland*, 120 U. S. 502; *Fargo v. Michigan*, 121 U. S. 230; *Philadelphia & Southern Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 122 U. S. 326; *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Pendleton*, 122 U. S. 347; *Mugler v. Kansas*, 123 U. S. 623; *Smith v. Alabama*, 124 U. S. 465; *Willamette Iron Bridge Co. v. Hatch*, 125 U. S. 1; *Bowman v. Chicago & Northwestern Railway Co.*, 125 U. S. 465; *California v. Central Pacific Railroad Co.*, 127 U. S. 1; *Ratterman v. Western Union Telegraph Co.*, 127 U. S. 411; *Leloup v. Port of Mobile*, 127 U. S.

A selection from some of the points in the headnotes of a few of these cases will show their importance.

LECTURE IX.  
Cases decided  
since this lecture  
was written.

### 1. *Generally.*

As to those subjects of commerce which are local or limited in their nature or sphere of operation, the State may prescribe regulations until Congress assumes control of them. As to those national in character, and requiring uniformity of regulation, the power of Congress is exclusive; and until Congress acts, such commerce is entitled to be free from State exactions.<sup>1</sup>

The clause in the Constitution which confers upon Congress the power to regulate commerce among the several States leaves to the States, in the absence of congressional legislation, the power to regulate matters of local interest, which affect interstate commerce only incidentally; but the power of Congress over interstate commerce is exclusive wherever the matter is national in character, or admits of a uniform system or plan of regulation. So long as Congress passes no law to regulate interstate commerce of the nature and character which makes its jurisdiction exclusive, its refraining from

---

640; *Kidd v. Pearson*, 128 U. S. 1; *Asher v. Texas*, 128 U. S. 129; *Stoutenburgh v. Henrick*, 129 U. S. 141; *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Alabama*, 132 U. S. 472; *Louisville, New Orleans &c. Railway Co. v. Mississippi*, 133 U. S. 587; *Leisy v. Hardin*, 135 U. S. 100; *McCall v. California*, 136 U. S. 104; *Norfolk & Western Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 136 U. S. 114; *Minnesota v. Barber*, 136 U. S. 313; *Crowley v. Christensen*, 137 U. S. 86; *Brimmer v. Rebman*, 138 U. S. 78.

<sup>1</sup> *Gloucester Ferry Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 114 U. S. 196.



LECTURE IX.  
Generally.

action indicates its will that commerce shall be free and untrammelled.<sup>1</sup>

The transportation of persons and property between States is commerce of a national character, requiring uniformity of regulation.<sup>2</sup>

The prohibition of the Constitution against State laws impairing the obligation of contracts applies to implied contracts as well as to express contracts.<sup>3</sup>

Interstate commerce by corporations is entitled to the same protection against State exactions which is given to such commerce when carried on by individuals.<sup>4</sup>

A State act which imposes limitations upon the power of a corporation, created under the laws of another State, to make contracts within the State for carrying on commerce between the States, violates that clause of the Constitution which confers upon Congress the exclusive right to regulate that commerce.<sup>5</sup>

The power to regulate commerce, interstate and foreign, vested in Congress, is the power to prescribe the rules by which it shall be governed, that is, the conditions on which it shall be conducted; to determine when it shall be free, and when subject to duties or other exactions.<sup>6</sup>

When goods, the product of a State, have

---

<sup>1</sup> *Brown v. Houston*, 114 U. S. 622.

<sup>2</sup> *Gloucester Ferry Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 114 U. S. 196.

<sup>3</sup> *Fisk v. Jefferson Police Jury*, 116 U. S. 131.

<sup>4</sup> *Gloucester Ferry Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 114 U. S. 196.

<sup>5</sup> *Cooper Manufacturing Co. v. Ferguson*, 113 U. S. 727.

<sup>6</sup> *Gloucester Ferry Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 114 U. S. 196.

begun to be transported from that State to another State, and not till then, they become the subjects of interstate commerce, and, as such, are subject to national regulation, and cease to be taxable by the State of their origin. Goods on their way through a State, from a place outside thereof to another place outside thereof, are in course of interstate or foreign transportation, and are subjects of interstate or foreign commerce, and are not taxable by the State through which they are passing, even though detained within that State by low water, or other temporary causes.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE IX.  
Generally.

Interstate commerce cannot be taxed at all by a State, even though the same amount of tax should be laid on domestic commerce, or that which is carried on solely within the State.<sup>2</sup>

The question whether, when Congress fails to provide a regulation by law as to any particular subject of commerce among the States, it is conclusive of its intention that that subject shall be free from positive regulation, or that, until Congress intervenes, it shall be left to be dealt with by the States, is one to be determined from the circumstances of each case as it arises.<sup>3</sup>

A burden imposed upon interstate commerce is not to be sustained simply because the statute imposing it applies alike to the people of all the States, including the people of the State enacting it.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Coe v. Errol*, 116 U. S. 517.

<sup>2</sup> *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489.

<sup>3</sup> *Bowman v. Chicago & Northwestern Railway Co.*, 125 U. S. 465.

<sup>4</sup> *Minnesota v. Barber*, 136 U. S. 313.

## 2. *Bridges over Navigable Streams.*

### LECTURE IX. Bridges.

A bridge erected over the East River in New York, in accordance with authority derived from Congress and from the legislature of New York, is a lawful structure, which cannot be abated as a public nuisance.<sup>1</sup>

In the absence of legislation by Congress, a State may authorize a navigable stream within its limits to be obstructed by a bridge or highway;<sup>2</sup> but Congress has plenary powers respecting such streams and is not concluded, by anything that may have been done under State authority, from assuming entire control, abating any erections that may have been made, and preventing any other from being made except in conformity with such regulations as it may impose.<sup>3</sup>

## 3. *Steamships.*

### Steamships.

A tax upon the gross receipts of a steamship company incorporated under its laws, which are derived from the transportation of persons and property by sea, between different States and to and from foreign countries, is a regulation of interstate and foreign commerce, in conflict with the exclusive power of Congress under the Constitution.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Miller v. New York*, 109 U. S. 385.

<sup>2</sup> *Cardwell v. American Bridge Company*, 113 U. S. 205.

<sup>3</sup> *Willamette Iron Bridge Co. v. Hatch*, 125 U. S. 1.

<sup>4</sup> *Philadelphia & Southern Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 122 U. S. 326.

4. *Railroads.*

A privilege tax of fifty dollars per annum on every sleeping car or coach used or run over a railroad in Tennessee, and not owned or run by the railroad on which it was run or used, was held to be void so far as it applied to the interstate transportation of passengers carried over railroads in Tennessee into or out of or across that State, in sleeping cars owned by a corporation of Kentucky, and leased by it to Tennessee corporations, the latter receiving the transit fare, and the former the compensation for the sleeping accommodations.<sup>1</sup>

A State statute requiring locomotive engineers on railroad trains to obtain licenses from the State before being permitted to run trains within the State is not a regulation of commerce when applied to engineers on through trains coming into the State from another State, or going from it to another State.<sup>2</sup>

A State statute which levies a tax upon the gross receipts of railroads for the carriage of goods and passengers into, out of, or through the State, is a tax upon commerce among the States, and therefore void. The States cannot be permitted, under the guise of a tax upon business within their borders, to impose a burden upon commerce within the States, when the business so taxed is itself interstate commerce.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Pickard v. Pullman Southern Car Co.*, 117 U. S. 34.

<sup>2</sup> *Smith v. Alabama*, 124 U. S. 465.

<sup>3</sup> *Fargo v. Michigan*, 121 U. S. 230.

LECTURE IX.  
Railroads.

Congress has authority, in the exercise of its power to regulate commerce among the several States, to construct or authorize the construction of railroads across the States and Territories of the United States; and the franchises thus conferred cannot, without its permission, be taxed by the States.<sup>1</sup>

5. *Quarantine.*

## Quarantine.

States may enact quarantine laws which amount to regulations of commerce, though not intended to be so, and maintain them until Congress acts in the matter by covering the same ground, or by forbidding State legislation.<sup>2</sup>

6. *Tax on Commerce.*

## Tax on commerce.

A municipal ordinance of the city of New Orleans to establish the rate of license for professions, callings, and other business, which assesses and directs to be collected a tax from persons owning and running towboats to and from the Gulf of Mexico and the city of New Orleans is a regulation of commerce among the States, and is an infringement of the provisions of Article 1, section 8, paragraph 3, of the Constitution.<sup>3</sup>

The act of Congress of August 3, 1882, "to regulate immigration," which imposed upon the owners of steam or sailing vessels bringing passengers from a foreign port into a port of the United States, a duty of fifty cents for every

---

<sup>1</sup> *California v. Central Pacific Railroad Co.*, 127 U. S. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Morgan's Steamship Co. v. Louisiana*, 118 U. S. 455.

<sup>3</sup> *Moran v. New Orleans*, 112 U. S. 69.

such passenger, not a citizen of this country, was a valid exercise of the power to regulate commerce with foreign nations.<sup>1</sup> LECTURE IX.  
Tax on commerce.

The business of receiving and landing of passengers and freight is incident to their transportation, and a tax upon such receiving and landing is a tax upon transportation and upon commerce, interstate or foreign, involved in such transportation.<sup>2</sup>

### 7. *Telegraphs.*

A State statute intended to regulate, or to tax, or to impose a restriction upon the transmission of persons, or property, or telegraphic messages, from one State to another, is not within that class of legislation which a State may enact, in the absence of legislation by Congress; and such statutes are void, even as to the part of such transmission within the State.<sup>3</sup> The judgment in this case was announced on the 25th of October, 1886, Mr. Justice Miller delivering the opinion of the court. It is not too much to say that it was the immediate cause of the passage of the "act to regulate commerce," commonly known as the Interstate Commerce Act.<sup>4</sup> Telegraphs.

The reserved police power of a State under the Constitution, although difficult to define,

<sup>1</sup> *Head Money Cases*, 112 U. S. 580.

<sup>2</sup> *Gloucester Ferry Company v. Pennsylvania*, 114 U. S. 196.

<sup>3</sup> *Wabash, St. Louis &c. Railway v. Illinois*, 118 U. S. 557.

<sup>4</sup> 24 Stat. 379, c. 104; amended March 2, 1889, 25 Stat. 855, c. 382.

LECTURE IX.  
Telegraphs.

does not extend to the regulation of the delivery at points without the State of telegraphic messages received within the State; but the State may, within the reservation that it does not encroach upon the free exercise of the powers vested in Congress, make all necessary provisions in respect of the buildings, poles, and wires of the telegraph companies within its jurisdiction, which the comfort and convenience of the community may require.<sup>1</sup>

A single tax assessed under the laws of a State upon receipts of a telegraph company, which were partly derived from interstate commerce and partly from commerce within the State, and which were capable of separation, but were returned and assessed in gross and without separation or apportionment, is invalid in proportion to the extent that such receipts were derived from interstate commerce, but is otherwise valid.<sup>2</sup>

8. *Spirituous Liquors.*Spirituous  
liquors.

A State law prohibiting the manufacture and sale of intoxicating liquors is not repugnant to the Constitution of the United States.<sup>3</sup>

A State cannot, for the purpose of protecting its people against the evils of intemperance, enact laws which regulate commerce between its people and those of other States of the Union.

<sup>1</sup> *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Pendleton*, 122 U. S. 347.

<sup>2</sup> *Ratterman v. Western Union Tel. Co.*, 127 U. S. 411. See also *Leloup v. Port of Mobile*, 127 U. S. 640; *Western Union Tel. Co. v. Alabama*, 132 U. S. 472.

<sup>3</sup> *Foster v. Kansas*, 112 U. S. 201.

unless the consent of Congress, express or implied, is first obtained.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE IX.  
Spirituuous  
liquors.

The sale of spirituous liquors by retail and in small quantities may be regulated or prohibited by State legislation, without violating the Constitution or laws of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

### 9. *Discriminating License Taxes.*

The act of the legislature of Tennessee providing that "all drummers and all persons not having a regular licensed house of business in the taxing district of Shelby County, offering for sale or selling goods, wares, or merchandise therein, by sample, shall be required to pay to the county trustee the sum of \$10 per week, or \$25 per month for such privilege," applies to persons soliciting the sale of goods on behalf of individuals or firms doing business in another State; and, so far as it applies to them, it is a regulation of commerce among the States, and violates the provision of the Constitution, which grants to Congress the power to make such regulations.<sup>3</sup>

Discriminating  
license taxes.

### 10. *Discriminating Taxes.*

A tax imposed by a State statute upon an occupation which necessarily discriminates against

Discriminating  
taxes.

<sup>1</sup> *Bowman v. Chicago & Northwestern Railway Co.*, 125 U. S. 465. See *Mugler v. Kansas*, 123 U. S. 623; *Kidd v. Pearson*, 128 U. S. 1; *Leisy v. Hardin*, 135 U. S. 100; *Crowley v. Christensen*, 137 U. S. 86.

<sup>2</sup> *Crowley v. Christensen*, 137 U. S. 86.

<sup>3</sup> *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489. See also *Corson v. Maryland*, 120 U. S. 502; *Asher v. Texas*, 128 U. S. 129; *Stoutenburgh v. Hennick*, 129 U. S. 141; *McCall v. California*, 136 U. S. 104.



LECTURE IX.  
Discriminating  
taxes.

the introduction and sale of the products of another State, or against the citizens of another State, is repugnant to the Constitution of the United States.<sup>1</sup>

11. *Food Inspection.*

Food inspection.

A law providing for the inspection of animals, whose meats are designed for human food, cannot be regarded as a rightful exercise of the police power of the State, if the inspection prescribed is of such a character, or is burdened with such conditions, as will prevent the introduction into the State of sound meats, the product of animals slaughtered in other States.<sup>2</sup>

The Virginia statute of February 18, 1890, makes it unlawful to offer for sale, within the limits of that State, any beef, veal, or mutton from animals slaughtered one hundred miles or more from the place at which it is offered for sale, unless it has been previously inspected and approved by local inspectors appointed under that act. It fixes the inspector's compensation at one cent a pound, to be paid by the owner of the meats. It does not require the inspection of fresh meats from animals slaughtered within one hundred miles from the place in Virginia at which such meats are offered for sale. The act was held to be void, as being in restraint of commerce among the States, and as imposing a discriminating tax.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Walling v. Michigan*, 116 U. S. 446.

<sup>2</sup> *Minnesota v. Barber*, 136 U. S. 313.

<sup>3</sup> *Brimmer v. Rebman*, 138 U. S. 78.

## X.

### THE RIGHT OF TRIAL BY JURY.<sup>1</sup>

---

ARTICLE I, SECTION 9, PARAGRAPH 2. The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it. LECTURE X.

ARTICLE III, SECTION 2, PARAGRAPH 1. The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in . . . Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority.

ARTICLE III, SECTION 2, PARAGRAPH 3. The trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

ARTICLE V OF THE AMENDMENTS. No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any Criminal Case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI OF THE AMENDMENTS. In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a

---

<sup>1</sup> C'est donc le jury civil qui a réellement sauvé les libertés de l'Angleterre. De Tocqueville.

## LECTURES ON CONSTITUTIONAL LAW.

X.

speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining Witnesses in his favour, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII OF THE AMENDMENTS. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

stitution  
upon  
law.

<sup>1</sup>No one familiar with the common law of England can read the Constitution of the United States without observing the great desire of the Convention which framed that instrument to make it conform as far as possible with that law. One would suppose that the leaders of a revolutionary movement of eight years' duration or more, the purpose of which was to emancipate the newly formed States from the dominion of Great Britain, would have come out of that struggle with resentments arising from a sense of injury at the hands of that government which would have created a prejudice against its laws and their system of administration. On the contrary, it seems obvious from the instrument which they produced as the fundamental and organic law of a new government for a new country, that their attachment for the old laws and even for the old general form of political government remained almost unaffected.

---

<sup>1</sup> This is Lecture VIII delivered before the classes of the University Law School.

To look at the general outlines organizing the new government into its various branches, there is but little departure from that of the English government. The President, the Senate, and the House of Representatives correspond in essential features with the King, Lords, and Commons of Great Britain. And although there was a necessity arising from the bringing together of thirteen different States into one general government, with a recognition of many of the most important powers of government left in the States themselves, to vary in some respects the powers which were confided to the President, the Senate, and the House of Representatives from those which had by immemorial usage come to be the powers of the King, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons of Great Britain, yet the analogy is very close. It has often been said that Mr. Hamilton, who perhaps of all other men in the Convention which framed this Constitution most strongly impressed his views upon that instrument, desired a still closer conformity to the British model in the matter of stronger powers in the Federal Government, and especially in the Senate and Executive.

LECTURE X.  
The Constitution  
founded upon  
English law.

The first great nation of the earth which succeeded us in the process of revolution and forming a new government, namely, the French, acted in a very different manner. They abolished at one blow the existence of the King, or of any recognized power which represented the functions of the Crown. They reposed all the power

Unsuccessful  
French attempts  
at framing con-  
stitutions.

**LECTURE X.**  
**Unsuccessful**  
**French attempts**  
**at framing con-**  
**stitutions.**

of the government in a single body elected directly by the people. They also abolished during the course of their revolutionary proceedings their entire body of civil law, and substituted therefor a new code called the "Code Napoleon," which has been supposed by many jurists to be the ablest code of laws ever formed for the government of a people. The instability of the government which resulted from this action of the French people and of all governments formed by that nation since the revolution of 1793, may well be used as an argument against such violent and sudden changes. Certainly if any deduction on that subject is to be made from the success and stability given to a new government by its adherence to the best maxims of the old one out of which it was formed, the history of the United States presents that argument in its best form.

**English features**  
**retained in the**  
**Constitution.**

Not only did the framers of the new Constitution follow as well as they might the general polity of the English system, but they evinced an ardent desire to preserve the principles which had been accepted as part of the general administration of the law among our ancestors. This is shown in many of the provisions of the Constitution. Among others, the article concerning the judicial powers of the new government establishes its jurisdiction as extending to all cases in admiralty, and in law, and in equity, thus recognizing the English separation of these three classes of legal controversies as being governed by a separate jurisdiction. At least such

**Distinction be-**  
**tween law and**  
**equity.**

has been the construction placed upon that instrument by the courts of the country without much question. It has been repeatedly decided that the jurisdiction in equity, which was a very peculiar one under the English system of legal administration, remains in the courts of the United States as it was at the time they separated from that country, and that one of the distinctive features of the difference between law and equity, namely, that at law there is a right to a trial by jury, and in equity there is none, has continued to the present day. And it is a very grave question, one which has never been brought to the attention of the courts, because Congress has never attempted to exercise any such authority, whether the Congress of the United States can make any change in the equitable jurisdiction of the courts of the United States, and if so, to what extent it can be done.

LECTURE X.  
Distinction between law and equity.

Another very important instance in which the venerable maxims of the common law have been thought worthy of a place in the organic law of this country, is that concerning the writ of habeas corpus, the great writ by which a person unjustly imprisoned may cause himself to be brought before the proper judicial tribunal, and have the nature, cause, and legality of that imprisonment inquired into. Among the limitations imposed by section 9 of Article I, is the declaration that "the privilege of a writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it."

Habeas corpus.

LECTURE X.  
Right of trial by  
jury.

Of a similar character, and perhaps of much more importance, is the subject to which I invite your attention this evening as it is found in the Constitution, namely, that of the right of trial by jury. This right has been the subject of such inquiry into its origin and history, and of such glowing eulogy by all those who believe in the beauties of the common law, and by many who do not, as well as of criticisms upon its value, which have become more frequent in modern times, that I must rely upon your general reading upon this subject without myself entering upon its discussion.<sup>1</sup>

The jury system  
of England.

Grand jury.

The jury system of the English at the time of the adoption of our Constitution divided itself into two branches. One of these was called the grand jury, whose purpose and function was to make inquiry as to crimes committed in the county, and presentments to the court of such charges as they thought proper growing out of that investigation; and also when indictments for crimes were submitted to them by the law officers of the government, it was their duty to pass upon them by endorsing them as true bills, or ignoring them as not supported by the

---

<sup>1</sup> In 1215 personal rights were secured to the subject by Magna Charta, which declared : "No freeman shall be taken or imprisoned, or be disseized of his freehold or liberties, or free customs, or be outlawed or exiled, or any otherwise damaged, nor will one pass upon him, nor send upon him, but by lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land." 2 Inst. 45.

Lord Coke says in his comments upon this clause that it "hath the first place, because the liberty of a man's person is more precious than all the rest which follows."

facts before them. This grand jury consisted of a number of jurors, varying from twelve or fifteen to twenty-four, but the concurrence of twelve of that number was always required in making a presentment or finding an indictment. LECTURE X.  
Grand jury.

The other form of jury is the one before which the trial actually takes place. "This means the examination before a competent tribunal, [the jury,] according to the laws of the land, of the facts put in issue for the purpose of determining such issue."<sup>1</sup> Petit jury.

This jury has always been composed, at least in modern times, of twelve men, and its finding of issues presented to it can only be made by the concurrence of all the twelve. These jurors are supposed to be impartial, and the manner of their appointment or selection has been prescribed by acts of Congress as regards trials in the Federal courts, and by statutes of the States so far as trials in the State courts are concerned, with a view to secure this object. Whether it is in the power of Congress to modify this system by prescribing a jury of less than twelve men, or by giving validity to a verdict which represents less than the whole number of twelve, are questions which have never been decided because Congress has never attempted to vary this rule. There have been decisions of various courts that this could not be done, that the word "jury" as used in the Constitution means "*ex vi termini*," a tribunal of twelve men,

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Curtis*, 4 Mason, 232.



LECTURE X.  
Petit jury.

and that its verdict must be unanimous to be the verdict of a jury under the Constitution. The question, so far as I am aware, has never been decided by the Supreme Court because no law has ever been passed by Congress to vary or change the common law rule. In no other way could it come before that court.

The Seventh  
Amendment.

The right of trial by jury has relation to civil cases and to prosecutions for crimes. The original Constitution contained no specific reference to such trial in civil cases, but the Seventh Article of the Amendments reads as follows: —

“In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact, tried by a jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.”

It has relation to the common law as understood in England.

The first thing to be observed about this Article is that it prescribes this mode of trial in “*suits at common law*.” It does not use the same words as the clause extending the judicial power “to all cases *in law* and equity.” It is to be inferred, therefore, that trial by jury, as imposed by the Constitution, has relation to the common law as it was understood in England and to the right to such a trial in that class of cases. This distinction may be important in regard to a class of cases where a summary remedy is given by a statute, which is itself a departure from the common law and at variance with it. How far in this anomalous class of cases, which, while they may be said to be cases

at law, as distinguished from cases in equity, are not "suits at common law," the parties would have a right to demand a trial by jury, it is not my purpose at present to inquire. Nor is it material why the sum of twenty dollars was established as the line above which the Constitution gave the right to a trial by jury and did not do so below it.

LECTURE X.  
It has relation to the common law as understood in England.

This Article of the Amendments to the Constitution, as well as all of the others from one to eight inclusive, applies to the powers exercised by the Government of the United States, and not to those of the States. This has been repeatedly decided.<sup>1</sup>

It applies only to the United States.

But while the effect given by this Article as to a fact tried by a jury has relation to such effect of a verdict. effect in the courts of the United States, it applies equally to verdicts found by juries in the State courts; that is to say, that in a court of the United States a fact once found by a jury of a State court or of a Federal court shall not be re-examined in any other manner than according to the rules of the common law. This conclusiveness given to the verdict of a jury is in accordance with the common law of England, and is an additional evidence of the sanctity with which the right of trial by jury is held both in that country and this. Let it also be observed that this Article does not prescribe as an arbitrary rule to the courts that all cases *must* be tried by a jury which are suits at com-

<sup>1</sup> *Livingston v. Moore*, 7 Pet. 469; *The Justices v. Murray*, 9 Wall. 274; *Edwards v. Elliott*, 21 Wall. 532.

LECTURE X.  
Effect of a verdict.

A jury may be waived.

mon law and exceed twenty dollars in value, but that it is the *right* of any party to such a suit to have a trial by a jury if he demands it. The parties can waive this right<sup>1</sup> and submit the case to the court without a jury, in which case the judgment of the court would be equally binding as if there had been a verdict of a jury; and in practice in this country, both in the Federal and State courts, a very large proportion of the trials of issues of fact are by the judge or judges of those courts without the aid of a jury. In the Federal courts the consent of all the parties concerned is essential to the validity of

---

<sup>1</sup> Though this right to a trial by jury embraces all suits not in equity or admiralty (*Parsons v. Bedford*, 3 Pet. 433); yet parties may waive the right (*Bond v. Brown*, 12 How. 254; *Morgan v. Gay*, 19 Wall. 81; *Baylis v. Travellers' Ins. Co.*, 113 U. S. 316; *Flanders v. Tweed*, 9 Wall. 425; *Henderson's Distilled Spirits*, 14 Wall. 44; *Phillips v. Preston*, 5 How. 278); and in a suit in equity the court may not only find the facts itself without impairing the right of trial by jury, but it may disregard the findings of fact by a jury, if it thinks them wrong (*Basey v. Gallagher*, 20 Wall. 670). So, too, the mode of proceeding in the Court of Claims, under the statutes, is constitutional. *McElrath v. United States*, 102 U. S. 426. This constitutional provision, so far as it relates to civil actions, is a restriction only upon courts of the United States. *Edwards v. Elliott*, 21 Wall. 532, 557. State courts are not forbidden, even by the provisions in the Fourteenth Amendment as to "due process of law." *Walker v. Souvinet*, 92 U. S. 90.

This guaranty of trial by jury is as operative in time of war as in time of peace; is equally binding upon rulers and people, at all times and under all circumstances. Military commissions organized during the late civil war, in a State not invaded and not engaged in rebellion, in which the Federal courts were open and in the proper and unobstructed exercise of their judicial functions, had no jurisdiction to try, convict, or sentence, for any criminal offence, a citizen who was not a resident in a rebellious State, nor a prisoner of war, nor a person in the military or naval service, and Congress could not invest them with that power. *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2.

this form of trial. Indeed it had been decided prior to the act of Congress of 1865<sup>1</sup> that there could be no writ of error or appeal to a judgment of an inferior court in a suit at common law in which the parties had submitted the case to the court without a jury, because, as was held by the Supreme Court of the United States, such judgment was in effect but a mere arbitration. But by that statute where the parties waive a jury by a stipulation in writing, the finding of the court upon the facts, which might be either general or special, was to have the same effect as the verdict of a jury, and the judgment might be reviewed by the Supreme Court upon a writ of error or upon appeal, the review extending to the sufficiency of the facts found to support the judgment, and to such exceptions as might have been taken and presented by a bill of exceptions during the progress of the trial.<sup>2</sup> These provisions of the act of 1865 are embodied in sections 649 and 700 of the Revised Statutes of the United States.

LECTURE X.  
Effect of such a judgment.

The language of this Article is that "no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law." The common law admitted of but two modes of re-examining the verdict of a jury. One of these was by a motion for a new trial in the same proceeding, and usually in the same court in

How judgments on a verdict could be re-examined at the common law.

<sup>1</sup> 13 Stat. 501, c. 86, § 4.

<sup>2</sup> *Norris v. Jackson*, 9 Wall. 125.

LECTURE X.  
How judgments  
on a verdict could  
be re-examined at  
the common law.

which the verdict was rendered. The other was by some supervisory or appellate court which had jurisdiction upon a writ of error in certain classes of cases to set aside the verdict and grant a new trial.

These two modes of re-examining a verdict and affirming it or setting it aside proceeded upon somewhat different principles. The court of original jurisdiction, in which the case was tried, had an almost unlimited power of setting aside the verdict for errors of law committed by the court itself during the progress of the trial, for insufficiency of the evidence to sustain the verdict of the jury, and for other causes so numerous and varying that they cannot even be enumerated here; but it may be said that the power of the court in that proceeding, upon a proper showing, to re-examine the verdict, was only governed by a sound legal discretion. The re-examination by an appellate court on a writ of error, or in any other mode by which such a case was carried to a superior court for review, extended only to errors of law committed by the court in the progress of the case, and which were presented by the record and by bills of exception. By this restriction the appellate court was forbidden at common law to enter into an examination of the weight of evidence and the soundness of the verdict of the jury, except as that was affected by some matter of law presented in the course of the trial. In the case of *Parsons v. Bedford*, 3 Pet. 433, 448, Mr. Justice Story, representing the court, says:—

“The only modes known to the common law, LECTURE X.  
How judgments  
on a verdict could  
be re-examined at  
the common law. to re-examine such facts, are the granting of a new trial by the court where the issue was tried, or to which the record was properly returnable; or the award of a *venire facias de novo*, by an appellate court, for some error of law which intervened in the proceedings. The judiciary act of 1789, c. 20, § 17, has given to all the courts of the United States ‘power to grant new trials in cases where there has been a trial by jury, for reasons for which new trials have usually been granted in the courts of law.’ And the appellate jurisdiction has also been amply given by the same act (§§ 22, 24) to this court, to redress errors of law; and for such errors to award a new trial, in suits at law which have been tried by a jury.”

The whole opinion in this case may be read by you with profit as explaining the objects and purposes of this amendment to the Constitution. See also *Insurance Co. v. Comstock*, 16 Wall. 258, 269, where the following language is used by the court:—

“Two modes only were known to the common law to re-examine such facts, to wit: the granting of a new trial by the court where the issue was tried or to which the record was returnable, or, secondly, by the award of a *venire facias de novo* by an appellate court for some error of law which intervened in the proceedings.”

As showing the extent to which this doctrine of the sacredness of a verdict, in a case which was once tried by a jury, even in the State

LECTURE X.  
How judgments  
on a verdict could  
be re-examined at  
the common law.

courts, has been carried, when the same case has been brought into a court of the United States. your attention is called to the case of *The Justices v. Murray*, 9 Wall. 274. It was there held that an act of Congress which provided for the removal of a judgment in a State court, where the cause had been tried by a jury, to the Circuit Court of the United States for a retrial of the facts and the law, was unconstitutional on account of the Article now under consideration, because such removal implied the necessity of a re-examination of the facts already found by the jury in the State court.

The Fourteenth  
Amendment.

The only other observation I have to make in regard to the effect of the Constitution of the United States as governing trials in civil actions is that it has been contended that by the Fourteenth Amendment the right of trial by jury in the States is guaranteed to every person by the phrase, "Nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law." This question was presented, examined, and decided otherwise in *Hurtado v. California*, 110 U. S. 516.

Article III, section 2, paragraph 3, is as follows:—

"The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place, or places, as the Congress may by law have directed."

And, as intimately connected with the same subject, Articles V and VI of the Amendments are here presented. LECTURE X.  
The Fourteenth Amendment.

“Article V. No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war, or public danger; nor shall any person be subject, for the same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation. The Fifth Amendment.

“Article VI. In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law; and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.” The Sixth Amendment.

You will see that the paragraph in Article III, above quoted, differs in its language from that which we have already considered in regard to trial by jury in civil cases as prescribed by Article VII of the Amendments. In the latter Article it is the mere right to demand the trial by



**LECTURE X.**  
**The Sixth Amend-**  
**ment.**

**Article III of the**  
**Constitution.**

**Finality of a ver-**  
**dict for defendant.**

jury which is guaranteed, and the parties may waive that right either by express agreement or by failing to demand a jury, while the language used in Article III is peremptory that "the trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, *shall* be by jury." This language excludes all other modes, whether with or without the consent of the party. A party may, however, confess his guilt by a plea of guilty, and judgment may be passed upon that plea, yet if there is an issue of fact which has to be tried, that trial can only be by a jury. Indeed it has been argued with a good deal of earnestness and plausibility that in criminal cases by virtue of that clause of the Constitution the jury are made the judge both of the facts and the law, and have a right upon their own view of what the law of the cases may be, without regard to the decisions of the court on the subject, to find a verdict. This contention has been supposed to be supported by the conceded fact that a verdict of not guilty, acquitting the party of the crime charged, has in practice always been held to be final, and that the court could not set aside such a verdict and subject the party to a new trial. Such action has, however, been founded upon that provision of Article V of the amendments, which declares that no person shall "be subject, for the same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb," it having been held that on a verdict of acquittal, however erroneous, the party has been put in jeopardy within the meaning of that clause of the Constitution. It is, however, the

doctrine of the present day, established by numerous authorities, that in a trial for a crime against the United States, the jury are legally bound in law and in conscience to be controlled by the law which may be applicable to such a case as laid down by the court before whom the issue is tried.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE X.  
But in the U. S. courts the jury must accept the law from the court.

The exception of cases of impeachment from those which must be tried by a jury demands but a moment's attention. Other clauses of the Constitution provide that all officers of the Government, from the President down, may be removed from office by impeachment, for treason, for felony, and other high crimes and misdemeanors. They provide that this impeachment shall be instituted by charges preferred by the House of Representatives, and that the issues shall be tried by the Senate of the United States; that it shall require two-thirds of the senators present to authorize a verdict of guilty, and that the punishment shall only extend to removal from office and a disqualification for the future to hold any office of honor or profit under the Government of the United States. This does not preclude a trial in the ordinary courts for any of the crimes which may be charged in the articles of impeachment.

This section of the Third Article of the Constitution then goes on to declare that the trial of all crimes, with the exception of cases of im-

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Morris*, 1 Curtis, 23; *United States v. Shive*, 1 Baldwin, 510; *United States v. Battiste*, 2 Sumner, 240.

LECTURE X.  
Impeachment.

peachment, which we have above considered, "shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place, or places, as the Congress may by law have directed."

Place of trial.

We have here, in this declaration, that the trial shall be held in the State where the crime shall have been committed, another evidence of the disposition of the Convention to adhere to what they supposed to be the safeguards of the common law. It was a part of the common law that every man charged with a crime should be tried by a jury of the vicinage, which vicinage was held to be the local jurisdiction of the hundred, or shire, or by whatever name the tribunal was called, which could try the offence. And though it has long since been discovered that the knowledge which the neighbors where the offence was committed might have of the crime itself, and of the character of the party charged, and the feeling which they might entertain on the subject, are in reality to a large extent disqualifications for the exercise of the functions of a juror, yet it is an undoubted fact that the principle of the trial by a jury of the vicinage was founded on these considerations. This policy of the common law, and the feeling that no man charged with a crime against the Government of the United States should be carried away from the State where the crime was committed, and tried in some other State, even though it was in

a court of the United States, lay at the foundation of this provision of the Constitution. The mention of crimes "not committed within any State" had reference to those committed upon the high seas, in the Territories of the United States and in the forts, arsenals, and other places, the jurisdiction in regard to which has been ceded to the Federal Government. In this class of cases Congress may prescribe the place where the trial shall be had.

LECTURE X.  
Place of trial.

The Fifth Article of the Amendments, which declares that "No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous, crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury," is one which has recently attracted the consideration of the courts. It has become quite common for the prosecuting officers of the Government to file informations against parties for offences against the United States, and to proceed to a trial on the charges presented in those informations without any action by a grand jury thereon. The question then presented is whether the charges thus preferred constitute infamous crimes. There is no difficulty in holding that all crimes for which the punishment is death are infamous crimes within the meaning of this clause of the Constitution, and no attempt has been made in the Federal courts to prosecute a person for any such offence in any other way than by an indictment by a grand jury. But a very large class of offences against the laws of the United States have recently been prosecuted on information, where the party

An infamous  
crime within the  
meaning of the  
Fifth Amend-  
ment.

LECTURE X.  
An infamous  
crime within the  
meaning of the  
Fifth Amend-  
ment.

charged has taken the ground that the offence charged was an infamous crime within the meaning of this clause of the Constitution, and could only be tried under an indictment or presentment of a grand jury. There has been great difficulty in deciding what was meant a hundred years ago by the phrase "infamous crime," which is used in this constitutional amendment. That difficulty is not diminished by the fact of the obscurity of the language itself as construed by what is known of the laws and usages of our ancestors at that time, in connection with the fact that both State and Federal legislation in regard to crimes may have made that infamous since which would not have been so considered then. While there are several decisions reported from the Circuit Courts of the United States on this subject, the question never came directly before the Supreme Court until recently.<sup>1</sup>

The opinion of the court in *Wilson's Case* shows the difficulty of arriving at any satisfactory and exclusive definition of the phrase "infamous crimes;" but after an examination of all the sources of light upon that subject the court held that "for the reasons above stated, having regard to the object and the terms of the first provision of the Fifth Amendment, as well as to the history of its proposal and adoption, and to the early understanding and practice under it,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ex parte Wilson*, 114 U. S. 417; *United States v. Petit*, 114 U. S. 429.

this court is of opinion that the competency of the defendant, if convicted, to be a witness in another case is *not* the true test; and that no person can be held to answer, without presentment or indictment by a grand jury, for any crime for which an infamous punishment may be imposed by the court.

LECTURE X.  
An infamous  
crime within the  
meaning of the  
Fifth Amend-  
ment.

“The question is whether the crime is one for which the statutes authorize the court to award an infamous punishment, not whether the punishment ultimately awarded is an infamous one. When the accused is in danger of being subjected to an infamous punishment if convicted, he has the right to insist that he shall not be put upon his trial, except on the accusation of a grand jury.”<sup>1</sup>

The court also said that “deciding nothing beyond what is required by the facts of the case before us, our judgment is that a crime, punishable by imprisonment for a term of years at hard labor, is an infamous crime, within the meaning of the Fifth Amendment of the Constitution.”<sup>2</sup> These views are adopted at the same time and governed the decision of the case of the *United States v. Petit*; and in *Mackin v. United States*, 117 U. S. 348, it is held that all crimes punishable by imprisonment in a State prison or penitentiary are infamous. Of course these cases decide no more than what was before the court, and many other crimes may be found to be infamous than those which are punishable by

<sup>1</sup> *Ex parte Wilson*, 114 U. S. 417, 426.

<sup>2</sup> *Ib.* 429.

LECTURE X.  
An infamous  
crime within the  
meaning of the  
Fifth Amend-  
ment.

Offences by per-  
sons in the land  
or naval forces or  
militia in actual  
service.

hard labor in the penitentiary. But the principles laid down in that opinion may serve in a general way as a guide in the decision of future cases. Such decisions must, however, depend in each case upon the facts peculiar to it.

There is an exception in regard to the necessity of finding a presentment or indictment by a grand jury in crimes against the United States of those "arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger." The reason for this was that soldiers of the regular forces of the United States, or of the militia when called into the service of the General Government, could not with convenience be tried by a jury. The necessity for strict discipline and subordination in the military service required that there should be prompt and speedy action in regard to all offences committed therein. From time immemorial our ancestors had subjected persons so engaged to trial by military courts of various kinds, and it was supposed by the framers of the Constitution that these courts, proceeding by their own methods, which were well understood, and inflicting punishments appropriate to the offences committed, would answer all the purposes of securing the rights of the persons charged with such offences, considering also the inconvenience and impossibility of convening grand juries and petit juries from men in civil life to try military offences, or any others, committed by officers or soldiers of the army of the United States. These considerations it was

thought justified the departure from the general rule.

As regards offences committed by persons in the militia the exception was limited to those "in actual service, in time of war, or public danger." And this has relation to what I said to you the other evening as to the power of the President under the second section of the Second Article as the commander-in-chief of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States. The militia is spoken of in other parts of the Constitution, and always has reference to a body of citizens of the States, organized under State authority into military divisions, subject to officers appointed by the States, and which may be called into the service of the Federal Government on special occasions mentioned in the Constitution. Therefore, if a person who is a member of the militia is charged with a crime against the United States, he cannot be proceeded against without an indictment or presentment of a grand jury unless he be "in the actual service of the United States" and "in time of war or public danger."

LECTURE X.  
Offences by persons in the land or naval forces or militia in actual service.

Article VI of the Amendments opens with a declaration that "in all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial." It may be supposed that this right thus placed in the foreground of one of these Articles would be considered a right of the gravest importance, but I am not aware of any act of Congress designed to secure it to a person so accused. In the absence of any such legisla-

A public and speedy trial guaranteed.



**LECTURE X.**  
**A public and**  
**speedy trial**  
**guaranteed.**

tion this right of a speedy trial as guaranteed by this provision must depend upon the control which the courts exercise over their prosecuting officers, by requiring them to proceed within a reasonable time to the trial when the accused so desires, but it is to be feared that the spirit of this constitutional provision has not always been enforced in favor of accused persons.

The trial, it is also declared, shall be "public," which was a wise provision, designed to prevent secret trials from which the public could be excluded, where the jury and the witnesses alone would be present with the officers of the court, and where any injustice that might be done to the prisoner could be covered up and kept from public notice.

**An impartial jury.** The provision that this trial shall be "by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed," we have already considered, to which is added that this "district shall have been previously ascertained by law." The object of this was to prevent the party from being taken out of the district or State for trial, and also to prevent such a change of the boundaries of a district by an act of Congress after the commission of the offence as might subject the prisoner to a trial in a part of the country less favorable to him than that in which the offence was committed.

**The rights of the**  
**accused.**

The remaining provisions of this Article are among the most important rights which are guaranteed by the Constitution to a person charged with offences against the United States.

He shall be "informed of the nature and cause of the accusation," so that he may know precisely what is charged against him. If the offence be prosecuted by indictment or presentment the instrument must contain a clear statement of the nature and character of the accusation and of the offence for which the prisoner is to be tried. He can be tried for no other offence than that thus charged. He has a right to be specifically informed of the exact nature of the violation of law for which he is to undergo a trial. The importance of this cannot well be questioned, and the books of reports are filled with decisions of what is necessary to be stated in such indictment and presentment, and in regard to the particularity and precision with which the charges shall be set out. A discussion, however, of the rules which have been established on this subject, would occupy more time than the present occasion justifies.

The accused is also "to be confronted with the witnesses against him;" that is to say, that no evidence shall be brought against him on his trial made up of depositions or affidavits or hearsay statements, but that the witnesses by whom his guilt is to be established shall be brought face to face with him in order that he may see them and hear them, witness their manner of testifying, and so that either by himself or his counsel they may be subjected to such cross-examination as he may consider of benefit to his interests.

He is also "to have a compulsory process for

LECTURE X.  
The rights of the  
accused.

LECTURE X.  
The rights of the  
accused.

obtaining witnesses in his favor," that is to say, that, however poor he may be, or however unable to pay the expenses of such witnesses as he may deem necessary, the court shall issue its process to compel their attendance for examination upon the trial.

And lastly, he is entitled "to have the assistance of counsel for his defence." Whether this provision requires the Government to provide him with counsel, it is not necessary for us now to inquire. The occasion for that provision in the Constitution undoubtedly was that up to a period long subsequent to its adoption a prisoner on trial in an English court accused of an offence against the Government was not entitled to the aid of counsel in the progress of his trial, except in a very limited degree, even when he was ready to pay for the same and such counsel was ready to act. This disgrace upon the English system of criminal jurisprudence was not removed until 1836.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE X.

---

### 1. *Definition of "Trial by Jury."*

THE references to the reported cases upon the subject of trial by jury come down to volume 117 of the United States Reports, leaving but little to be added. Before doing this I venture to quote, from a standard authority, a definition of the English and American jury, as distinguished from all other judicial modes for investigating disputed facts. The *Encyclopædia Britannica*,<sup>1</sup> in its article "Jury," says:—

LECTURE X.

What is trial by jury?

"The essential features of trial by jury, as practised in England and countries influenced by English ideas, are the following: The jury are a body of laymen, selected by lot to ascertain, under the guidance of a judge, the truth in questions of fact arising either in a civil litigation or in a criminal process. They are generally twelve in number, and their verdict, as a general rule, must be unanimous. Their province is strictly limited to questions of fact, and within that province they are still further restricted to the exclusive consideration of matters that have been proved by evidence in the course

---

<sup>1</sup> *Encyclopædia Britannica* (9th ed.), vol. 13, p. 783, tit. Jury.

LECTURE X.  
What is trial by jury?

of the trial. They must submit to the direction of the judge as to any rule or principle of law that may be applicable to the case; and even in deliberating on the facts, they receive, although they need not be bound by, the directions of the judge as to the weight, value, and materiality of the evidence submitted to them. Further, according to the general practice, they are selected from the inhabitants of the locality within which the cause of action has arisen, or the crime has been committed, so that they bring to the discharge of their duties a certain amount of independent local knowledge, an element in the institution which is by no means to be ignored. . . . What is the origin of this very remarkable and characteristic system? That is a question which has engaged the attention of many learned men. The fullest discussion of the subject is contained in Forsyth's 'Trial by Jury,' published in 1852."<sup>1</sup>

## 2. *Origin of the Jury System.*

The distinguishing features of the system.

It may not be inappropriate to refer very briefly to Mr. Forsyth's excellent work, which deserves all that the writer in the Encyclopædia says, to see how and where the jury originated, and how far it has been adopted into other systems of law.

The distinctive characteristic of the system is this: That the jury consists of a body of men

---

<sup>1</sup> History of Trial by Jury, by William Forsyth, M.A. London, 1852.

taken from the community at large, summoned to find the truth of disputed facts, who are quite distinct from the judges or court. They are to decide upon the effect of the evidence, and thus assist the court to pronounce a right judgment; but they have nothing to do with the sentence or judgment which follows the verdict. They are not, like the judges, members of a class, charged with the duty of judicial inquiry; they are taken from varied pursuits to make a special inquiry, and return to their ordinary avocations when the labor is over. This distinguishes the system from the Geschwornen-Gerichte of Germany, from the Scandinavian courts, Norwegian, Swedish, and Danish, and from the Anglo-Saxon courts, to each of which speculation has traced it. Even identity in details does not necessarily imply identity in origin, when history shows it to be most improbable—as Mr. Forsyth shows in a note in which he says: “The most remarkable approximation to our own institution seems to have existed at an early period in Russia for the trial of criminal cases. In the French translation of M. Karamsin’s *Histoire de Russie*, we find the following: *Le plus ancien code des lois russe porte que douze citoyens assermentés discutent suivant leur conscience les charges qui pèsent sur un accusé, et laissent aux juges le droit de déterminer la peine.*”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE X.

The distinguishing features of the system.

As distinguished from other systems.

Courts existed in England in the Anglo-Saxon period, presided over by a reeve, or judge, who

How the system grew up in England.

<sup>1</sup> Forsyth on Trial by Jury, 37 n.

LECTURE X.  
How the system  
grew up in Eng-  
land.

had no voice in the decision, and the number of persons who sat as judges (or jurors) was frequently twelve, or some multiple of that number; but it was not until the establishment of the assize in the time of Henry II, after these Saxon elements had been continued in force under the Anglo-Normans, that the institution of the jury was produced. There the jury is first found in its distinct form, although the elements of which it was composed were familiar to the jurisprudence of the time.

Before that time, and in the early Norman reigns, it was the practice to decide controversies by appealing to the knowledge of the neighborhood where the parties resided and the land lay. There was no difference in principle between such inquests and the recognitions by the knights of assize.

Passing by the constitutions of Clarendon (1164), the statute of Northampton (1176), and Magna Charta (1215), we find in a note in Forsyth an account of the earliest record extant of a trial by a regularly constituted *jurata*, respecting the right to the custody of the Hospital of St. Julian at Southampton. Twenty-four jurors were summoned; twelve acted, and gave their verdict for the king "*in cujus rei testimonium,*" they affixed their seals.<sup>1</sup>

During all this time the jury were both witnesses and jurors, rendering their verdicts on their personal knowledge respecting the matter

---

<sup>1</sup> Forsyth on Trial by Jury, 149 n.

in dispute, without hearing witnesses. The change to the present mode was made gradually. By the time of "the reign of Edward III trials by jury in criminal cases were nearly, if not quite, the same as at the present day. . . . Although the qualification of previous knowledge on the part of jurors empanelled to try a prisoner had long fallen into desuetude, the fiction was still kept up by requiring them to be summoned from the hundred where the crime was alleged to have been committed, until the passing of Stat. 6, Geo. IV, c. 50, by which the sheriff is now obliged to return for the trial of any issue, whether civil or criminal, twelve good and lawful men *of the body of his county* qualified according to law."

LECTURE X.  
How the system  
grew up in Eng-  
land.

As late as the time of Queen Elizabeth it was the custom in civil actions for the successful party to entertain the jury at dinner. "The party with whom they have given their sentence giveth the enquest their dinner that day most commonly, and this is all they have for their labour, notwithstanding that they come, some twenty, some thirty, or forty miles or more, to the place where they give their verdict; all the rest is of their own chuze."<sup>1</sup>

The jury system was brought by emigrants to this country, to Canada, to Australia, to South Africa, and wherever colonies have been planted by British emigrants. It extended to Scotland; but there, the Scottish system of law, derived

How the system  
came to this  
country.

---

<sup>1</sup> Forsyth on Trial by Jury, 242 n.



LECTURE X.  
How the system  
came to this  
country.

from the civil law, authorized the finding in criminal cases of a verdict of "not proven" when the jury were not prepared to find either "guilty" or "not guilty," like the "*non liquet*" in the Roman law.<sup>1</sup> The jury was introduced into France in 1789 in criminal cases, but not in civil cases; in Belgium in 1830; in Sardinia in 1850, from whence it has extended into Italy, and in Germany. De Tocqueville says of it, "Le jury est, avant tout, une institution politique. . . . L'homme qui juge au criminel est donc réellement le maître de la société. Or l'institution du jury place le peuple lui-même, ou du moins une classe de citoyens, sur le siège du juge. L'institution du jury met donc réellement la direction de la société dans les mains du peuple, ou de cette classe." "Le jury qui semble diminuer les droits de la magistrature, fond réellement son empire: et il n'y a pas de pays où les juges soient aussi puissans que ceux où le peuple entre en partage de leurs privilèges."

---

<sup>1</sup> "There [in Rome] we find a presiding judge, who was either the *prætor*, or a *iudex questionis* specially appointed by him, and a body of *judices* taken from a particular class, . . . whose duty it was to determine the fact of the guilt or innocence of the accused. At the close of the evidence they were said to be *missi in consilium* by the judge, that is, told 'to consider their verdict,' and to each were given three tablets marked respectively with the letters A. for *Absolvo*, C. for *Condemno*, and N. L. for *Non Liquet*, one of which he threw into an urn, and the result of the trial was determined by the majority of the letters that appeared." Forsyth, pp. 12, 13.

### 3. *Decisions on these Clauses in the Constitution.*

The Constitution, as has been seen, makes LECTURE IX. three provisions in regard to trial by jury.

The first is in Article III, Section 2, Paragraph 3, and relates only to the trial of crimes.

The second is Article VI of the Amendments, and also relates only to criminal prosecutions.

The third is in Article VII of the Amendments, and relates to suits at common law.

#### A. *Generally.*

At a trial by jury in a court of the United Generally. States, the judge may express his opinion upon the facts. The expression of such an opinion, when no rule of law is incorrectly stated, and all matters of fact are ultimately submitted to the determination of a jury, cannot be reviewed by writ of error. In this respect the powers of the courts of the United States are not controlled by State statutes forbidding judges to express any opinion on the facts.<sup>1</sup>

#### B. *In Criminal Cases.*

The provision in the Fifth Amendment, that Criminal cases. "no person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or an indictment of a grand jury," is jurisdictional, and no court of the United States has authority to try a prisoner without indictment or presentment in such cases.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vicksburg & Meridian Railroad v. Putnam*, 118 U. S. 545. See also *St. Louis, Iron Mountain, & Southern Railway v. Vickers*, 122 U. S. 360; and *Williams v. Conger*, 125 U. S. 397.

<sup>2</sup> *Ex parte Bain*, 121 U. S. 1.

LECTURE X.  
Criminal cases.

In some of the States a juror who has formed an opinion of the case from reading the newspaper is not competent to sit upon the jury which tries a person accused of committing a crime; and by his doing so it would cease to be an impartial jury. But in Illinois he is not thereby disqualified if he can swear that he believes that he can fairly and impartially render a verdict on the evidence. The statute which authorizes him in such case to sit upon the jury is held not to deprive the accused of his right to trial by an impartial jury.<sup>1</sup>

The provision in Article III of the Constitution that "the trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury," is to be construed in the light of the principles which, at common law, determined whether or not a person accused of crime was entitled to be tried by a jury; and, thus construed, it embraces not only felonies punishable by confinement in the penitentiary, but also some classes of misdemeanors the punishment of which may involve the deprivation of the liberty of the citizen.<sup>2</sup>

The provisions in the Constitution relating to trial by jury are in force in the District of Columbia.<sup>3</sup>

A person accused of a conspiracy to prevent another person from pursuing a lawful avocation, and by intimidation and molestation to reduce him to beggary and want, is entitled,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sptes v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131.

<sup>2</sup> *Callan v. Wilson*, 127 U. S. 540.

<sup>3</sup> *Ib.*

under the provisions of the Constitution, to a **LECTURE X.**  
trial by jury.<sup>1</sup> Criminal cases.

A Circuit Court of the United States, upon the commission of a contempt in its presence, may, upon its own knowledge of the facts, without further proof, without issue or trial by jury, immediately proceed to determine whether the facts justify punishment, and to inflict such punishment therefor as the law allows.<sup>2</sup>

A statute of Utah provided that every person guilty of murder in the first degree shall suffer death, or, upon the recommendation of the jury, be imprisoned at hard labor in the penitentiary for life, at the discretion of the court. It was held that it was the duty of the court, when a person was on trial, charged with the commission of murder in the first degree, to inform the jury of their right, under the statute, to recommend imprisonment for life at hard labor, in the place of death, and that failure to do so was error.<sup>3</sup>

In a very recent case these provisions relating to the place of trial came before the Supreme Court. A murder was committed in 1888 in the parallelogram of land south of Kansas and Colorado known as "No Man's Land." This tract was not at that time included within any organized judicial district of the United States, but in March, 1889, a court was established over it, with jurisdiction over offences previously

---

<sup>1</sup> *Callan v. Wilson*, 127 U. S. 540.

<sup>2</sup> *Ex parte Terry*, 128 U. S. 289.

<sup>3</sup> *Calton v. Utah*, 130 U. S. 83.

LECTURE X.  
Criminal cases.

committed. The persons alleged to have committed the murder were tried and convicted. Their case being brought to the Supreme Court for review, it was there held that the statute was intended to act retroactively; that such a provision was not unconstitutional; that the provision in Article III of the Constitution respecting the trial of crimes "not committed in any State" imposed no restriction as to the place of trial, except that it could not take place until Congress should designate the place, and might take place at any locality which should have been designated by Congress previous to the trial; that the provision in the Sixth Amendment respecting the place of trial had reference only to offences against the United States committed within a State; and that the act fixing the place of trial was in no sense an *ex post facto* law.<sup>1</sup>

If the trial court makes the decision of a motion for a new trial depend upon a remission of the larger part of the verdict, this is not a re-examination by the court of facts tried by the jury in a mode not known at the common law, and is no violation of the Seventh Article of Amendment to the Constitution.<sup>2</sup>

C. In Civil Cases.

Civil cases.

In regard to the right to a jury in civil cases, it is a right which may undoubtedly

---

<sup>1</sup> *Cook v. United States*, 138 U. S. 157.

<sup>2</sup> *Arkansas Valley Land & Cattle Co. v. Mann*, 130 U. S. 69.

be waived, and which is constantly waived in practice. But, unless waived, it cannot be taken away.

LECTURE X.  
Civil cases.

The restriction is to be found in the Seventh Amendment, and it relates to "suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars." It was to that extent a restriction upon the power of Congress, but did not limit the power of the State governments in respect to their own citizens.<sup>1</sup>

Several of the States have exercised their reserved right to curtail the right of trial by jury in civil cases.

The Constitution, in the second section of Article III, provides that the judicial power of the Federal Government shall extend to all cases in law and equity, arising under the Constitution, the laws of the United States, etc. The difference between law and equity was well settled when the Constitution was adopted, and the provisions of the Seventh Amendment relating to suits at the common law, had no application to suits in equity in the courts of the United States.

In process of time, as new States have been organized, and new legislation had under new influences, the terms of pleading have been modified and changed, and the dividing line between equity and law, and the corresponding remedies, have been likewise changed and modified in

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Cruikshank*, 92 U. S. 542, 552, and cases cited on page 552.

LECTURE X.  
Civil cases.

many States. The forms of proceedings in State courts having been adopted in the courts of the United States, held within the States respectively, these changes in equity jurisdiction naturally found an expression and formed the subject of litigation in cases pending in the Federal courts. In an early case Chief Justice Taney said "the adoption of the State practice must not be understood as confounding the principles of law and equity, nor as authorizing legal and equitable claims to be blended together in one suit."<sup>1</sup> In a very late case the cases are reviewed, and it was held that a Federal court could not take jurisdiction in Mississippi of a bill in equity to subject the property of the defendants to the payment of a simple contract debt of one of them, in advance of any proceedings at law, either to establish the validity and amount of the debt, or to enforce its collection, although that might be done in a State court under the provisions of the code of that State.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bennett v. Butterworth*, 14 How. 669, 674. See also *Hipp v. Babur*, 19 How. 271; *Lewis v. Cocks*, 23 Wall. 466; *Killian v. Ebbinghaus*, 110 U. S. 568; *Buzard v. Houston*, 119 U. S. 347; *Thompson v. Railroad Companies*, 6 Wall. 184; *Hutchins v. King*, 1 Wall. 53; *Holland v. Challen*, 110 U. S. 15; *Whitehead v. Statuck*, 138 U. S. 146.

<sup>2</sup> *Scott v. Neely*, 140 U. S.

## XI.

### IMPAIRMENT OF THE OBLIGATION OF CONTRACTS.<sup>1</sup>



ARTICLE I, SECTION 10. No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation ; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal ; coin Money ; emit Bills of Credit ; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts ; pass any Bill of Attainder, *ex post facto* Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

LECTURE XI.

THE topic for this discourse is taken from section 10, Article I, of the Constitution of the United States, which reads as follows : —

Laws impairing  
the obligation of  
contracts.

“No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.”

Out of that important sentence I have selected for a more careful consideration the words, “or law impairing the obligation of contracts.”

---

<sup>1</sup> This Lecture was Lecture IX of the Lectures delivered before the classes of the University Law School.



**LECTURE XI.**  
Laws impairing  
the obligation of  
contracts.

The first Article of the Constitution begins with provisions concerning the organization of the two houses of the legislative body, the Senate and the House of Representatives, and then section eight in affirmative language confers certain express powers upon the Congress of the United States, that is to say, upon the Federal Government, or the General Government, of the Union, as distinguished from the States, and the people of the States. In section nine certain limitations are laid down in regard to the power of the Federal legislature. Among other things it is provided that it shall not pass any bill of attainder, or any *ex post facto* law, and through a number of negotiations states what shall not be done by the Congress of the United States, or by the National Government.

This limitation is  
upon the States.

In section ten, above quoted, limitations are imposed upon the individual States, the language being that "no State" shall do any of the things which are here prohibited.

Bills of credit.

In passing, it may be remarked that the phrase "emit bills of credit" was for a long time the subject of judicial and political controversy. It was questioned whether it did not prevent any State from issuing bonds, or chartering banks of issue, but the better opinion seems to be, (and it was so decided in 1830, by Chief Justice Marshall<sup>1</sup>) that to "emit bills of credit" meant to issue in the name of the State some form of certificates of indebtedness which were "intended

---

<sup>1</sup> *Craig v. The State of Missouri*, 4 Pet. 408, 432.

to circulate through the community, for its ordinary purposes, as money, which paper was redeemable at a future day," and that if such was not the purpose their issue would not come within this clause.

LECTURE XI.  
Bills of credit.

No State is permitted to "make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts." The object of this provision was to correct what had grown to be an enormous evil at that time, that of a debased paper currency, in connection with the further prohibitions against any State passing any *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, in order to prevent the scaling of debts or the authorization of their payment in a depreciated and worthless paper. This was thought to be necessary because it was seen that statutes of the States passed for that purpose would constitute one of the great hindrances to the collection and payment of honest debts.

Legal tender.

In approaching this subject the following quotation from Mr. Bancroft's "History of the Constitution of the United States" will be of service in getting a better knowledge of the condition of the times when that instrument was framed. The whole work is the most valuable contribution to the history of the period preceding the time when it was adopted and subsequent thereto, that has yet been written. The author, speaking of the events which went before the formation of the Constitution, says:—

Circulating  
medium when the  
Constitution was  
framed.

"The thirteen American States had a larger experience of the baleful consequences of paper

LECTURE XI.  
Circulating  
medium when the  
Constitution was  
framed.

money than all the world besides. As each of them had a legislation of its own, the laws were as variant as they were inconvenient and unjust. The shilling had differing rates from its sterling value to an eighth of a dollar. The confusion in computing the worth of the currency of one State in that of another was hopelessly increased by the laws which discriminated between different kinds of paper issued by the same State; so that a volume could hardly hold the tables of the reciprocal rates of exchange. Moreover, any man loaning money or making a contract in his own State or in another, was liable at any time to loss by some fitful act of separate legislation. The necessity of providing effectually for the security of private rights and the steady dispensation of justice, more, perhaps, than anything else, brought about the new Constitution."<sup>1</sup>

History of this  
clause in the Con-  
stitution.

One of the earliest of the Constitutions proposed for the confederated States contained provisions for some of the items mentioned; for instance, as to coining money, emitting bills of credit, and passing *ex post facto* laws. That branch of the instrument had been passed over and committed to the charge of the committee on revision and style. For the purpose of preventing any interference with contracts the Convention had relied very largely upon the clause prohibiting the passage of any *ex post facto* law. The original draft had nothing in it about impairing the obligation of contracts when it was

<sup>1</sup> Bancroft's Hist. Const., vol. 1, book 2, c. 6; author's Last Revise, vol. 6, p. 167.

submitted to the committee. It was supposed that the expression "*ex post facto* law" necessarily included all laws bearing upon past transactions, and that, therefore, with this prohibition inserted against the passage of *ex post facto* laws, no State could pass any law impairing a contract already made. Another extract from the same work will be of interest in this connection.

LECTURE XI.  
History of this  
clause in the Con-  
stitution.

"It has already been told how the delegates from Connecticut had agreed among themselves 'that the legislatures of the individual States ought not to possess a right to make any laws for the discharge of contracts in any manner different from the agreement of the parties.' Stringent clauses in the Constitution already prohibited paper money. For the rest, King, as we have seen, proposed a clause forbidding the States to interfere in private contracts; but the motion had been condemned as reaching too far, and instead of it, at the instance of Rutledge, the Convention denied to the States the power 'to pass bills of attainder or *ex post facto* laws.' In this manner it was supposed that laws for closing the courts, or authorizing the debtor to pay his debts by more convenient instalments than he had covenanted for, were effectually prohibited. But Dickinson, as we have seen, after consulting Blackstone, mentioned to the House that the term *ex post facto* related to criminal cases only; and that restraint of the States from retrospective laws in civil cases would require some further provision. Before

LECTURE XI.  
History of this  
clause in the Con-  
stitution.

an explanatory provision had been made, the section came into the hands of the committee on revision and style. That committee had no authority to bring forward any new proposition, but only to make corrections of style. Gouverneur Morris retained the clause forbidding *ex post facto* laws; and, resolute not 'to countenance the issue of paper money and the consequent violation of contracts,' he of himself added the words: 'No State shall pass laws altering or impairing the obligation of contracts.' The Convention reduced the explanatory words to the shorter form: 'No State shall pass any law impairing the obligation of contracts.' In this manner an end was designed to be made to barren land laws, laws for the instalment of debts, and laws closing the courts against suitors. Sherman and Ellsworth, in their official letter recommending the Constitution to Connecticut, explained the intent of the Convention by saying: 'The restraint on the legislatures of the several States respecting emitting bills of credit, making anything but money a tender in payment of debts, or impairing the obligation of contracts by *ex post facto* laws, was thought necessary as a security to commerce, in which the interest of foreigners as well as of the citizens of different States may be affected.'"<sup>1</sup>

Importance of  
this provision.

I do not say that these words providing that no State shall pass any law "impairing the obli-

---

<sup>1</sup> Bancroft's History of the Const. of the U. S., vol. 2, book 3, c. 11; author's Last Revise, vol. 6, pp. 361, 362.

gation of contracts" are the most important in the Constitution. I do not believe it; but they have certainly been more frequently called into operation in the courts than any other single clause of that instrument, because they come into immediate connection with the great volume of business and traffic dependent upon the sacredness of contracts. Your critical attention is called to these few words, almost every one of which has received a construction by the judicial department of the Government, and almost every one of which is important.

LECTURE XI.  
Importance of  
this provision.

The first point of interest is that "no State" shall pass any such law. There is no such prohibition upon the United States, or Congress, contained in the Constitution. In the limitations upon the power of the Federal Government, contained in the ninth section of Article I, it will be noted that Congress is also forbidden to pass any bill of attainder, or any *ex post facto* law. But there the prohibition stops, and nothing is said about impairing the obligation of contracts. Indeed that could not have been forbidden consistently with other powers vested by that instrument in Congress; for section eight, clause four, confers upon Congress the power to establish "uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States." Of course, any system of bankruptcy with which we are familiar, however it may be in continental Europe, includes a discharge of the debtor from his debts, and a distribution of his property among his creditors. It, therefore,

**LECTURE XI.**  
**Importance of**  
**this provision.**

The legal tender  
 act constitutional  
 although it im-  
 paired existing  
 contracts.

necessarily implies the power of impairing the obligation of a contract, and even the discharge of it altogether.

So the legal tender statute, which declared that the Treasury notes of the United States should be lawful tender in payment of any debt due to the Government or between individuals, except for customs duties, necessarily impaired the obligation of a contract, because at the time the contract was made no man was bound to take anything but gold and silver. The contract was to pay coin dollars, and therefore when Congress authorized the debtor to pay it in legal tender notes it impaired the obligation of his contract. Yet that law has been held to be constitutional, although there are people who doubt it. I am not one of these, however; and I have no doubt that Congress had the power, in the emergency which then existed, to declare those notes a legal tender for the payment of debts.

The prohibition is  
 against State  
 legislation.

It will be further noted that the language is that no State shall pass "any law" impairing the obligation of contracts. This means that it is a statute of a State which is forbidden, or something which is equivalent to such a statute, possessing the same dignity and character, and passed or enacted by the authority of the State. It is unnecessary to go into details in regard to this point, for it has been repeatedly decided by all the courts with which I am familiar before whom the subject has come, that it must be either a Constitution or a statute of a State

which impairs such an obligation to bring it within the meaning of these words used in the Federal Constitution. A judicial decision by the courts of a State that a certain contract is good or bad, is valid or invalid, is of this or that character, is not a "law" passed by a State, as has sometimes been supposed. It is not true, therefore, that every decision of a State or other court, adverse to the assertion of the rights of a promisee or claimant under a contract, violates this provision of the Constitution. What is meant is that after the contract has been made no State shall make a law which impairs its force, and it does not mean anything more than that.

LECTURE XI.  
The prohibition is  
against State  
legislation.

It has been held several times in the Supreme Court of the United States that no mere decision of a State court, or inferior Federal court, on the subject of the validity of a contract, or the mode of its discharge, is within the meaning of this provision, unless it be founded upon a statute or constitution of a State passed subsequent to the making of the contract.<sup>1</sup>

The Constitution of a State, or any act of its legislature, in existence at the time a contract is made, becomes thereby a part of that contract. It is a universal rule that every contract is made with a view to the laws extant at the place of execution, which become a part of it, and by the aid of which it is to be read and expounded.

Existing State  
laws enter into  
all contracts.

<sup>1</sup> *Railroad Co. v. Rock*, 4 Wall. 177; *University v. People*, 99 U. S. 309, 320; *Railroad Co. v. McClure*, 10 Wall. 511; *Knox v. Exchange Bank*, 12 Wall. 379.



LECTURE XI.  
Existing State  
laws enter into  
all contracts.

Therefore no statute in existence at the time it was made could be a law impairing its obligation, within the meaning of the Constitution, because it would be a part of the contract itself.

This is well set forth in a case<sup>1</sup> in which the question raised was whether a contract was not void, within the meaning of this clause, by reason of some legislation antecedent to its execution, but the court said: "The inhibition of the Constitution is wholly prospective. The States may legislate as to contracts thereafter made, as they may see fit. It is only those in existence when the hostile law is passed that are protected from its effects." It is clear, therefore, that the constitutional provision applies only to statutes passed after the contract is made.

The Dartmouth  
College Case.

There have been numerous efforts by individual States at different times to make certain classes of contracts subject to future legislation. The celebrated Dartmouth College Case<sup>2</sup> was the earliest which decided that a charter granted to a private corporation was a contract between the corporation and the State which granted it. The result of that decision was that many statutes, which it had been supposed the State legislatures could repeal or modify, were found to be of such a character that they could not be changed.

Reservation  
clauses in acts of  
incorporation.

This principle, as applied to the efforts of the legislature of the States to escape the force of

<sup>1</sup> *Edwards v. Kearzey*, 96 U. S. 595, 603.

<sup>2</sup> *Dartmouth College v. Woodward*, 4 Wheat. 513.

this constitutional provision, was recently examined by this Court.

LECTURE XI.  
Reservation  
clauses in acts of  
incorporation.

The legislatures commenced by making what they called "reservation clauses" in all their acts of incorporation, which reserved to the legislature the power of making alterations, amendments, or of repealing those statutes, and many of the States went so far as to pass a general law that all acts of incorporation should be subject to repeal, modification, or alteration by the legislature. The argument, which has been sustained, was that, since these charters were granted with this provision in them, either specifically stated or contained in the general law under which the corporation was organized, it thus became a part of the contract, and such charters could be repealed, altered, or modified. Therefore, any such action on the part of the legislature could not be a violation or impairment of the obligation of a contract, since the permission to do it was a part of the contract. This court said:—

"A short reference to the origin of this reservation of the right to repeal charters of corporations may be of service in enabling us to decide upon its office and effect when called into operation by the legislative exercise of the power.

"As early as 1806, in the case of *Wales v. Stetson*, 2 Mass. 143, the Supreme Court of that State made the declaration 'that the rights legally vested in all corporations cannot be controlled or destroyed by any subsequent statute, unless a power for that purpose be reserved to

LECTURE XI.  
Reservation  
clauses in acts of  
incorporation.

the legislature in the act of incorporation.' In *Trustees of Dartmouth College v. Woodward*, 4 Wheat. 518, decided in 1819, this court announced principles on the subject of the protection that the charters of private corporations were entitled to claim, under the clause of the Federal Constitution against impairing the obligation of contracts, which, though received at the time with some dissatisfaction, have never been overruled in this court. The opinion in that case carried the protection of the constitutional provision somewhat in advance of what had been decided in *Fletcher v. Peck*, 6 Cranch, 87, and the preceding cases, and held that it applied not only to contracts between individuals, and to grants of property made by the State to individuals, or to corporations, but that the rights and franchises conferred upon private as distinguished from public corporations by the legislative acts under which their existence was authorized, and the right to exercise the functions conferred upon them by the statute, were, when accepted by the corporators, contracts which the State could not impair.

"It became obvious at once that many acts of incorporation which had been passed as laws of a public character, partaking in no general sense of a bargain between the States and the corporations which they created, but which yet conferred private rights, were no longer subject to amendment, alteration, or repeal, except by the consent of the corporate body, and that the general control which the legislatures creating such bodies

had previously supposed they had the right to exercise, no longer existed. It was, no doubt, with a view to suggest a method by which the State legislatures could retain in a large measure this important power, without violating the provision of the Federal Constitution, that Mr. Justice Story, in his concurring opinion in the *Dartmouth College Case*, suggested that when the legislature was enacting a charter for a corporation, a provision in the statute reserving to the legislature the right to amend or repeal it must be held to be a part of the contract itself, and the subsequent exercise of the right would be in accordance with the contract, and could not, therefore, impair its obligation. And he cites with approval the observations we have already quoted from the case of *Wales v. Stetson*, 2 Mass. 143.

LECTURE XI.  
Reservation  
clauses in acts of  
incorporation.

“ It would seem that the States were not slow to avail themselves of this suggestion, for while we have not time to examine their legislation for the result, we have in one of the cases cited to us as to the effect of a repeal, *McLaren v. Pennington*, 1 Paige, 102, in which the legislature of New Jersey, when chartering a bank with a capital of \$400,000 in 1824, declared by its seventeenth section that it should be lawful for the legislature at any time to alter, amend, and repeal the same. And Kent, 2 Com. 307, speaking of what is proper in such a clause, cites as an example a charter by the New York legislature, of the date of February 25, 1822. How long the legislature of Massachusetts continued to rely on a special reservation of this power in

LECTURE XI.  
Reservation  
clauses in acts of  
incorporation.

each charter as it was granted, it is unnecessary to inquire; for in 1831 it enacted as a law of general application, that all charters of corporations thereafter granted should be subject to amendment, alteration, and repeal at the pleasure of the legislature, and such has been the law ever since.

“This history of the reservation clause in acts of incorporation supports our proposition, that whatever right, franchise, or power in the corporation depends for its existence upon the granting clauses of the charter, is lost by its repeal.”<sup>1</sup>

Retroactive laws. The objectionable feature of the legislation which we have discussed, where a legislative body attempted to exercise some authority over existing contracts, was that it was retrospective or retroactive, the two words being almost synonymous, the first meaning looking backwards or behind and the other acting backwards, being intended to operate upon some past transaction.

It is not all retrospective laws, however, that are forbidden by this clause of the Constitution, but only such as impair the obligation of a contract. *Ex post facto* laws are also forbidden in the same clause, but, as before explained, that term is only applied to criminal laws and procedure, and has no reference to contracts. There is a large class of retrospective legislation which is constitutional, not inconsistent with the principles above laid down, and sometimes necessary and proper, relating to rights not dependent

---

<sup>1</sup> *Greenwood v. Freight Co.*, 105 U. S. 13, 19, 21.

upon contract or affecting the individual by increasing his liability to a criminal prosecution. LECTURE XI.  
Retroactive laws.  
It will be observed, however, that this class of statutes is not favored, nor is it large, but that there is a class of legislation retrospective in its character, which is not forbidden by the Constitution, having no relation to contracts or to crimes, should not be overlooked.

Perhaps the best illustration of a valid retrospective law to be found in the reported decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States, not amenable to the objections already set forth, is contained in *Satterlee v. Matthewson*, 2 Pet. 380, decided in 1829. That was a case where a judgment had been rendered in a court of Common Pleas of the State of Pennsylvania, in favor of the plaintiff, who claimed land occupied by the defendant as a tenant under what was known as a "Connecticut title." This was reversed by the Supreme Court of the State on the ground that the relation of landlord and tenant could not subsist under such a title. Before the second trial took place the legislature passed a law which said that the relation of landlord and tenant could exist in such cases, and on the retrial, judgment being given for the plaintiff, it was, on the strength of this statute, affirmed. The case was then brought to the Supreme Court of the United States under the idea that this statute of the State of Pennsylvania was either an *ex post facto* law, or a law impairing the obligation of contracts, within the meaning of the clause of the Constitution we are now con-

LECTURE XI.  
Retroactive laws.

sidering. That court held, however, that it did not affect the obligation of a contract, nor was it an *ex post facto* law, and that it was not, therefore, repugnant to the Constitution of the United States, for "retrospective laws which do not impair the obligation of contracts, or partake of the character of *ex post facto* laws, are not condemned or forbidden by any part of that instrument." The opinion was delivered by Mr. Justice Washington, one of the ablest judges this country ever produced. He was over thirty years upon the bench of the Supreme Court of the United States at a period when very few of the associate justices delivered opinions. His four volumes of Circuit Court reports are also the most valued of any of those reports in existence, and are very difficult to obtain. He said in that case:—

"The objection, however, which was most pressed upon the court, and relied upon by the counsel for plaintiff in error, was that the effect of this act was to divest rights which were vested by law in Satterlee. There is certainly no part of the Constitution of the United States which applies to a State law of this description; nor are we aware of any decision of this, or of any Circuit Court, which has condemned such a law upon this ground; provided its effect be not to impair the obligation of a contract."<sup>1</sup>

In 1834 Mr. Justice Story, delivering the opinion of the court, said: "It is clear that this

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Pet. 413.

court has no right to pronounce an act of the State legislature void, as contrary to the Constitution of the United States, from the mere fact that it divests antecedent vested rights of property. The Constitution of the United States does not prohibit the States from passing retrospective laws generally, but only *ex post facto* laws.”<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XI.  
Retroactive laws.

He then goes on to state that the latter phrase “is not applicable to civil laws, but to penal and criminal laws;” so it will be seen that it is not every retrospective law which is forbidden by the Constitution of the United States as impairing the obligation of contracts.

Proceeding then in order with the critical examination of this short sentence, every word of which is important and has been the subject of judicial consideration, we come next to inquire, what is the “obligation” of a contract, which no State shall pass any law to impair? This is necessary as a preliminary to considering what it is that impairs it, for it is this obligation which cannot be impaired by the State. It has often been the subject of definition by the courts. In a recent case<sup>2</sup> may be found the following language:—

What is the obligation of a contract?

“‘Obligation’ is defined to be ‘the act of obliging or binding; that which obligates; the binding power of a vow, promise, oath, or contract.’ . . . The obligation of a contract includes everything within its obligatory scope. Among these elements nothing is more important than the

<sup>1</sup> *Watson v. Mercer*, 8 Pet. 88, 110.

<sup>2</sup> *Edwards v. Kearzey*, 96 U. S. 596, 600.



LECTURE XI.  
What is the obligation of a contract?

means of enforcement. This is the breath of its vital existence. Without it, the contract, as such, in the view of the law, ceases to be, and falls into the class of those 'imperfect obligations,' as they are termed, which depend for their fulfilment upon the will and conscience of those upon whom they rest. The ideas of right and remedy are inseparable."

In ordinary language, there is a moral and a legal obligation to do what we promise to do, and it is familiar thought and speech to draw the distinction between a moral and a legal obligation. The moral one addresses itself to the conscience, to the sense of duty, to the sense of right and wrong. As observed in the last quotation there is a binding power in a vow; there is a moral obligation to do anything which one promises to do, unless it is something wrong or wicked. A consideration is the essence of all legal contracts, and of all those obligations which do not depend upon it but rather upon the faith due to yourself and your own sense of moral right, and which address themselves to your own conscientious determination to do what you have said you would do, neither the law nor the Constitution takes any cognizance. So far as the law is concerned the obligation of a contract is the means by which the law enforces a legal duty, and it is that with which the law and the Constitution deals. In this sense the obligation of a contract consists in the authority or power which the law gives to enforce its performance, or to give a remedy for its non-performance.

The next thing in proper sequence to consider is what it is to "impair" this obligation, which is at once the means and the remedy given by the law to compel a man to perform his contracts, or in case of failure forces him to make proper compensation in damages. It follows that to impair this obligation by a State law is in some way to weaken or diminish the power which the courts had when the contract was made to enforce it, if enforceable specifically, or to give remedy by damages for failure to perform it.

LECTURE XI.  
What impairs the  
obligation of a  
contract?

It is needless here to advert to the difference between specific performance and damages for non-performance. In a very limited class of cases only are contracts capable of being specifically enforced by the court, such as conveyance of real estate, and some others, where the judicial power can take hold of a man and compel him to do what he has promised. In much the larger number of cases at law the remedy is by way of damages in a money judgment for not performing the thing promised. A State statute or law that impairs the obligation of a contract must be one which takes away the remedy for its violation. It may take away all remedy, or the most valuable one extant at the time the contract was made by which to secure its specific enforcement, or damages for its non-performance. Accordingly we find that nearly all the long list of cases that have come into the courts for relief against State laws and statutes, on the ground that they had the effect of impairing

LECTURE XI.  
What impairs the  
obligation of a  
contract?

the obligation of a contract, have had relation to enactments abolishing or changing the remedy for any infringement of such contract.

It is not every change of remedy, however, which impairs the obligation we are considering. It is not necessary that the legislature should always permit the same remedial forms to remain because contracts are in existence at the time it is thought advisable to change the mode by which a suitor may obtain relief. The amalgamation of the common law with the chancery system of procedure in different States is no impairment of the remedy if it can still be obtained by petition, or by any mode of procedure which is left. Indeed, the true line of distinction, between the change which impairs the obligation of a contract and that which does not, is found in considering whether such change of remedy leaves a sufficient and efficient remedy or provides a new and adequate one in its place.

This question has frequently been before the Supreme Court, and perhaps the best expression of its views on this subject is to be found in a recent case,<sup>1</sup> in which the language of the court is as follows:—

“If a particular form of proceeding is prohibited, and another is left or is provided which affords an effective and reasonable mode of enforcing the right, the obligation of the contract is not impaired.”

That was a case where the notes of the Bank

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tennessee v. Sneed*, 96 U. S. 69, 74.

of Tennessee had, when it was chartered in 1838, been made receivable for taxes by the State of Tennessee, which was interested as part owner in the bank. During the period immediately succeeding the rebellion the State wanted to get rid of the necessity of redeeming or allowing these notes to be used in the payment of taxes, and a statute was passed on that subject in 1873. At that time the remedy by mandamus existed, and if the tax receiver refused to take the banknotes for taxes the party offering them could apply to the proper court and by writ of mandamus have the tax receiver brought before the court, compelled to accept them, and give a receipt. The statute, however, which abolished the remedy by mandamus made provision for another, to wit, that if the notes were not received by the tax collector a suit might be brought against him which should be defended by the State, and, in case the plaintiff obtained a judgment, that the money should be paid to him out of the treasury of the State. The Supreme Court of the United States held that this latter remedy was a better one than the former, for "a suit at law to recover money unlawfully exacted was as speedy, as easily tried, and less complicated than a writ of mandamus," and was therefore a better proceeding for the purpose. It gave to the complainant a sufficient remedy, and was not therefore a law that impaired the obligation of a contract.

LECTURE XI.  
What impairs the  
obligation of a  
contract?

Statutes of limitations also present an instance in which it has been supposed that there

Statutes of limitations.

LECTURE XI.  
Statutes of limita-  
tions.

was an infringement of this clause of the Constitution. The cases in which that subject was discussed show very clearly the distinction and real difference between a law which impairs the obligation of a contract and one which does not. Suppose, for example, that the ordinary period of limitation within which an action may be brought upon a promissory note is ten years, but the legislature chooses to shorten it, as most of them have, to five or six years. Such a statute would not be held void, as contrary to the constitutional provision we are considering, if it gave the plaintiff a reasonable time within which to bring his suit before it took effect, although it would be if the remedy were at once extinguished.

In some instances statutes have been passed declaring that hereafter no remedy shall exist on contracts where the right of a claim has already run five years. Now, inasmuch as some of those contracts may have already been past due for five years, that would be cutting off all such cases absolutely, without giving any time under the new statute within which to bring suit, and in so far as these statutes have had that effect they have been held to be unconstitutional. These statutes of limitation, although they diminished the period within which a complainant is bound to sue, were, as early as the case of *Sturges v. Crowninshield*,<sup>1</sup> which was decided in 1819, declared not to impair the

---

<sup>1</sup> 4 Wheat. 122.

obligation of contracts; but in the recent case of *Terry v. Anderson*,<sup>1</sup> the subject is reviewed at length, and the distinction above taken suggested. The headnote of that case correctly states the doctrine decided by the court as follows:—

LECTURE XI.  
Statutes of limitations.

“An enactment reducing the time prescribed by the statute of limitations in force when the right of action accrued, is not unconstitutional, provided a reasonable time be given for the commencement of a suit before the bar takes effect.”

A very remarkable instance may be noted in this connection of a law operating upon a remedy, which was supposed to impair the obligation of a contract, but which was held by the Supreme Court not to have that effect; that is, the abolition of imprisonment for debt. At the time the Constitution of the United States was adopted it is probable that imprisonment, as a means of enforcing the collection of a judgment, was the law of every State in the Union. And yet soon after that, every State had abolished that method of compelling the collection of debts. Of course, when this was done, at different times in the different States, there were in existence many debts which had arisen under contracts made before that statute was passed. In such cases it is somewhat difficult to see how the Supreme Court came to the conclusion which they reached at that time, that those laws did not impair the obligation of such contracts. It

Abolition of imprisonment for debt.

---

<sup>1</sup> 95 U. S. 628.

**LECTURE XI.**  
Abolition of imprisonment for debt.

is hard to imagine a more stringent mode of compelling a man to pay his debts than seizing him and putting him in prison, unless corporal punishment is inflicted upon him. That right of arrest and imprisonment the creditor then had, and yet the Supreme Court in one or two well considered opinions, though not without dissent, held that the right to imprison a man was not a part of his contract, nor a part of the remedy that belonged to it when it was made.

The case which first announced this doctrine, although the question was not directly in issue, was that of *Sturges v. Crowninshield*, *ubi supra*. It was afterwards put directly in issue in a case<sup>1</sup> in which the opinion of the court was delivered by Justice Thompson, Justice Washington dissenting. It was again affirmed in 1835.<sup>2</sup>

Exemptions from execution.

Having thus discussed the various classes of statutes which have been held not to impair the obligation of contracts, although at one time supposed to do so, let us now examine those which do impair them. The latter have often been the subject of earnest contention in the courts. One of the first to be considered is a class of enactments known in this country as exemption laws, which exempt a certain amount of the property of a debtor from a forced judicial sale, either by execution or decree of the court. The enactment of these statutes was commenced, probably in every State in the Union, after the adoption of the Constitution, and has been con-

<sup>1</sup> *Mason v. Halle*, 12 Wheat. 370.

<sup>2</sup> *Beers v. Haughton*, 9 Pet. 329.

tinued in pursuance of a liberal policy of which everybody has come to approve. At first the value and amount of the property exempted was very small; such as beds and bedding and the cooking utensils of the family. These were generally the first articles exempted from a forced sale for debt. Afterwards their scope was enlarged to exempt the library of the lawyer, as well as the surgeon's implements and books, and gradually extended to larger amounts of personal property, as for instance, exempting from sale all the household furniture of a family. Then in some of the States they proceeded to exempt the homestead, as it is called. In nearly all of the Western States the house in which the debtor resides, together with the land on which it stands, have been brought within the purview of these statutes. This homestead is exempted either by a description of the quantity of land which it is permitted to cover, or by some limitation in its value, such as that it shall not exceed \$1000, or \$3000, or \$5000 in value, or go beyond one acre or forty acres.

There is, however, one difficulty inherent in these various modes of exempting the homestead. As for instance, where the exemption is by a description of the quantity which may be allowed without reference to its value, great injustice has frequently resulted. A debtor might have \$100,000 which his creditors could not touch where such an exemption was in force.

So far as these laws, or any of them, have had the effect to operate upon contracts in ex-

LECTURE XI.  
Exemptions from  
execution.



**LECTURE XI.**  
**Exemptions from**  
**execution.**

istence when they were passed they have been uniformly held by the Supreme Court of the United States, as well as by nearly all the other courts before whom the question has come, to be forbidden by the clause of the Constitution we are now considering. To the extent that they impair the obligation of contracts, or hinder the creditor from collecting his debt, they benefit the debtor and place him in a better position at the expense of the creditor, and so are repugnant to this clause of the Constitution. It matters not whether the sum involved be large or small, every law which has this effect in regard to past contracts, or those in existence when the law took effect, is void. As to future contracts the exemption becomes a part of the contract and therefore the law which is passed by the State is valid as to them. This is in brief a statement of the principles which may be deduced from a consideration of the cases in which this class of statutes has been considered.

**Redemption laws.** Another class of statutes, bearing a strong analogy to those we have just been considering, are called redemption laws. These relate to lands and houses sold under execution for debt. Most of the States of the Union have provided that when land is sold under execution the debtor shall have a certain time given him within which to pay the sum for which it sold, with costs and interest, and thus redeem it. So far as these statutes applied to contracts in existence at the time they were passed, they have been held to impair the obligation of con-

tracts. This they clearly do, for they allow the debtor a certain time, in some cases a year or more, after the time at which the creditor could have otherwise collected his debt, thus extending the time, compelling him to buy in the property, and permitting the debtor to redeem.<sup>1</sup>

Another class of enactments of the same character are called appraisement laws, and are very common in the Western States. All of these statutes, it will be observed, are made in the interest of struggling debtors, and show the consideration which the legislatures have had, especially in the new and poorer communities of the West, for those who are struggling with the hardships and vicissitudes incident to the development of a new State in the wilderness. An appraisement law is one which provided that in case of an execution being levied upon the real, and in some cases the personal estate of the debtor, he was authorized to demand of the proper officer that it should be appraised. This meant to have a certain value put upon it, and the method by which this should be done — generally by two or three disinterested persons — was pointed out. If upon being brought to a sale the property should not bring two-thirds, or three-fourths, or one-half, or whatever proportion the legislature might determine, of its appraised value, there would be no sale. In other words, the bids for the property must approximate within a certain limit of the value

<sup>1</sup> *Bronson v. Kinzie*, 1 How. 311; *Howard v. Bugbee*, 24 How. 461; *McCracken v. Hayward*, 2 How. 608.

LECTURE XI.  
Appraisement  
laws.

put upon it in the manner prescribed by the statute, or else it could not be sold. It will be seen that this might effectually prevent the creditor from ever realizing his debt, especially where the only property owned by the debtor happened to be real estate. It might be so valued that the creditor, or the purchaser, would have to pay a great deal more than it was worth if he bought it. Perhaps nobody else will buy it. Perhaps the creditor does not wish to buy it, and does not want it. He may, like many men, have more land than he wants, and may not wish to take any more for his debt. At any rate it was not his contract, and it is impairing its obligation whenever one of these appraisement laws or redemption laws interferes to make a harder rule than existed at the time the indebtedness was contracted, so that the collection of the debt is made more difficult than it otherwise would have been.

Stay laws.

There is still another class of statutes belonging to the same general category, known as the stay laws. Whenever there is a time of commercial and financial disturbance prevailing, when business is at a stand-still and there is every indication of a panic, when people are in debt and property is low in value, the debtor is very apt to imagine that, if he can get an extension of time, he will be enabled to realize upon his property and pay his indebtedness without a sacrifice. This idea has prompted one of the most frequent attempts on the part of the State legislatures to aid their own citizens in those

straits, by passing stay laws which were obnoxious to the true intent and meaning of this clause of the Constitution. These were laws by which it was provided that the creditor should not have an execution as soon as judgment was rendered, or within the time that the law allowed when the contract was made, but extended the time or stayed the execution, as it was said, for months and sometimes for years.

One of the best exemplifications of this kind of a statute was one which was passed in Kentucky about 1822, during a period of great financial distress which came on after the war with Great Britain. That State, like all the others at that time, had created State banks, which furnished the only circulating medium the country then had. One of those banks, chartered by the State, and in which it was interested as the owner of a large portion of the stock, was called the Bank of the Commonwealth of Kentucky. When this financial crisis came its notes began to depreciate in value; they went down to fifty cents on the dollar, and they probably would have gone down to nothing if the State had not been interested in the bank. They remained the only currency in circulation in the State. Gold and silver had practically disappeared, and the United States Bank had not yet sent out its branches. At this juncture the legislature passed a statute providing that when a man recovered a judgment, if the debtor offered to pay him in the notes of the Bank of the Commonwealth at par, or in common par-

LECTURE XI.  
Stay laws.

LECTURE XI.  
Stay laws.

lance at their face value, the creditor had a right to take them or to refuse them; but if he refused such offer that fact was to be entered upon the records of the court and he could have no execution to make his judgment for two years. In other words, it was a stay of execution unless the creditor would accept payment in money or notes only worth fifty cents on the dollar.

The passage of that act led to one of the most remarkable judicial and political struggles ever known in any country, but which it will be impossible to discuss in detail at this time. It may be remarked, however, that it involved two great constitutional questions, the substance of which may be briefly stated.

The first one was whether that stay law was forbidden by the provision of the Constitution we are now considering. A case involving this question came before the Court of Appeals of Kentucky, which held that the statute did impair the obligation of contracts, and was, therefore, void as to those in existence when it was passed. It thus nullified the law which had been passed under the pressure of public clamor, and was intended as a means of relief to many who could not meet their obligations or keep their contracts. But not to be thus thwarted, the legislature of the State met immediately after this decision and passed a statute abolishing that Court of Appeals and creating another in its stead. Now the Constitution of the State of Kentucky is almost identical in language

with that of the United States, so far at least as LECTURE XI.  
 regards the power of the legislature over the Stay laws.  
 courts. The Federal Constitution says that  
 "the judicial power of the United States shall  
 be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such  
 inferior courts as the Congress may, from time  
 to time, ordain and establish." This has always  
 been held by good constitutional lawyers to  
 mean that, while Congress may abolish all the  
 inferior courts, may change them, or give them  
 different names and jurisdictions, yet the one  
 Supreme Court of the United States it cannot  
 abolish or change, otherwise than by adding to  
 its members. This was the doctrine laid down  
 by the old Court of Appeals of Kentucky. The  
 Constitution of that State provided that there  
 should be a Court of Appeals, and such inferior  
 courts as the legislature might from time to  
 time ordain. This Court of Appeals held that  
 the law abolishing it was unconstitutional; so  
 they sat with their clerk, their marshal, and  
 other officers, in their own room, and proceeded  
 to consider all business that came before them.  
 In pursuance, however, of the new law, the gov-  
 ernor of the State appointed another set of  
 judges as a new Court of Appeals, who organ-  
 ized, selected a clerk and marshal, and pro-  
 ceeded to decide such cases as were brought  
 before them.

This was the serious condition of affairs that  
 then existed, arising out of the determination to  
 enforce this stay law which had been passed by  
 the legislature of the State. The matter then

LECTURE XI.  
Stay laws.

came before the people at the next election for members of the legislature; and, with some of the most remarkable exhibitions of learning and ability that any young State ever had, these subjects were canvassed on the stump, in the papers, by pamphlets and magazines, and the whole country was aroused by them, involving as they did not only the validity of the decision of the Court of Appeals, as well as its very existence, but the upholding of this important stay law. First it was relief and anti-relief, and then it was new-court and old-court. At the ensuing election, by a very considerable majority, men were elected who decided for the old court, and left it in the full possession of all its powers; so that was the end of stay laws in the State of Kentucky.

What is a contract?

In the consideration of this clause of the Constitution there remains only the principal word of the sentence, the "contract" itself. It is probably unnecessary to undertake here to define a contract in general, or even what it is within the meaning of that instrument. The general subject is one of the most important in the study of the law, and about which no true lawyer can ever know too much. The recent work on this subject by Wharton, in two volumes, is, I am inclined to think, the best and most philosophical, as well as the one best suited to the American lawyer and student, of any treatise on contracts with which I am acquainted. He gives several pages to the different definitions to be found in the laws and treatises of

continental Europe, the ancient Roman law, and in the reported decisions of the courts of this country. A reference to that treatise, therefore, will be more satisfactory than any brief definition which might be attempted here, and will give also many appropriate citations for further investigation.

LECTURE XI.  
What is a contract?

It has seemed probable to many judges and lawyers who have considered this clause of the Constitution that it was not designed by the framers of that instrument to do anything more than protect private contracts, those between individuals, and those between individuals and private corporations, that is, not municipal corporations, but those organized for purposes of profit; and if it were now an original question, it is by no means certain but that this would be held to be a sound view of it. But those eminent men who at an early day had the duty of defining the meaning of this provision thought otherwise. They held it to apply very largely to contracts made by a State, and not only to those made by it, but to contracts arising out of State statutes and legislation.

The first case<sup>1</sup> on this subject before the Supreme Court of the United States came from Georgia. That State, under an act passed in 1795, sold to a number of individuals a large tract of the unappropriated public lands within its limits, and which belonged to it. The purchasers came forward, paid their money, and

*Fletcher v. Peck*,  
6 Cranch, 87.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Fletcher v. Peck*, 6 Cranch, 87.



LECTURE XI.  
*Fletcher v. Peck*,  
6 Cranch, 87.

took the patent, which the State authorized, from the proper officer. A few years afterward it was alleged that the passage of the statute was obtained by fraud and misrepresentation on the part of those purchasers, and the legislature passed an act annulling that contract, setting aside the sealed conveyance, and authorizing the sale of the same land to other individuals, which was accordingly done. These two parties, each with a title, or a supposed title, from the State of Georgia, came before the Supreme Court of the United States in the ordinary way. The first purchasers of the land in question claimed that the second statute was a law impairing the obligation of their contract with the State of Georgia, and the Supreme Court, in a very learned opinion by Chief Justice Marshall, held that it was so; that the State was bound by its contracts as well as an individual, and could no more impair its obligation by a subsequent statute than an individual could defeat his sale of property by a declaration that the sale was invalid. That, however, was a case very fairly in the nature of a bargain. The State had sold the land, got the money and made a deed which the grantees held so that it was not going very far to say that this was a case of bargain and sale. It was an ordinary contract, and one of the parties to it could not pronounce it invalid even though that party was a sovereign State.

Dartmouth College Case, 5  
Wheat. 518.

In a subsequent case<sup>1</sup> the State of New Hampshire undertook to turn out the professors,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Dartmouth College Case*, 5 Wheat. 518.

faculty, and trustees of Dartmouth College by an act of the legislature and substitute others in their stead. The old trustees resisted, and the case came to the Supreme Court of the United States on the proposition that that act of the legislature was invalid as impairing the obligation of a contract. The contract which they set up was that, in the colonial times, the king by a royal charter had invested the college with certain rights and privileges, which had been accepted. It was held that in cases where a charter was granted to a corporation, even where it was organized for educational purposes, on the faith of which private citizens had invested money, which charter had been accepted by the corporation and its trustees, it constituted a contract between the State and the trustees, or other parties, which was within the protection of this clause of the Constitution, and could not be impaired by a subsequent statute of the State.

LECTURE XI.  
Dartmouth Col-  
lege Case, 5  
Wheat. 518.

That decision took the country a good deal by surprise, because it meant that, whenever a corporation is chartered by a statute or act of the legislature, or by the crown, and certain rights are granted to it and accepted, on which it acts, that constitutes a contract directly between the State and the corporation which the State cannot repeal. It is an interesting chapter in the legal history of this country to consider how, after this decision was rendered, the States sought to, and did practically, avoid the worst effects of it, by putting into all statutes

LECTURE XI.  
Dartmouth Col-  
lege Case, 5  
Wheat. 518.

granting corporate privileges and powers, the condition that the charter should be subject to amendment, alteration, or repeal at the pleasure of the legislature. This, of course, entered into and became a part of the contract, which was not, therefore, violated or impaired by a subsequent statute abolishing or changing the corporation.

Classification of  
contracts which  
have been the  
subject of adju-  
dication.

Having thus considered the different parts of this important clause of the Constitution, let us briefly look at the class of contracts which have been most frequently brought before the courts on the allegation that subsequent statutes have impaired their obligation. These are not generally private contracts. The nature, character, and general principles governing those between man and man have come to be so well understood, as well as what it is to impair their obligation, that they are now somewhat rarely met with in the court of last resort. It is still rarer that any State legislature attempts to impair or change the nature of a private contract. Most of the cases that now come to the Supreme Court of the United States, involving a consideration of this subject, are those in which a State has sought to get rid of a promise or statute or grant made by it, and which other parties have accepted, and where it has sought to do this by some new statute which impairs the obligation of that contract.

Charters of incor-  
poration.

A large portion of the contracts which the States have sought to modify, alter, or impair, have related to the creation of corporations and

grants to them of certain powers. In this category are included railroad, transportation, insurance, and other companies. All of these depend for their existence on State statutes, and the States have often endeavored to get some relief against what they have said and done, by impairing the obligation of the contract they have made with the incorporators.

LECTURE XI.  
Charters of incorporation.

Another class of cases more frequently brought before the Supreme Court now than any other is that of contracts made by some State in regard to taxation. The reason for this is very obvious. The burden of taxation has grown much greater since the war, and is frequently very heavy. An immense amount of money has been collected to pay off the public debt, which is being rapidly decreased. The obligations which have been incurred by States, counties, and towns, and other municipal corporations, by borrowing money both in Europe and the United States, render the taxation necessary to meet the interest and principal upon this enormous indebtedness, a heavy burden upon everybody who has property upon which it can be levied. It is but natural that those whose taxes are large enough to make it an object for them to fight about it, litigate, and try to avoid their payment as long as possible.

Exemptions from taxation.

In many cases the States have passed statutes favoring certain parties in regard to taxation. In the early days of the West, when there was but little money in circulation, the States frequently passed laws chartering banks and other

LECTURE XI.  
Exemptions from  
taxation.

corporations, because they were anxious to get the capital which would naturally come to them from the East or Europe for investment, and for the purposes of business in that country. So in granting the charters they often offered inducements to capitalists in the way of relief from taxation. Some of the States excepted banking houses and bank bills: in some cases this was for a period of years, in some the circulation alone was excepted, in others the stock alone, and in still others the capital of the bank as distinguished from the shares of the stockholders. Innumerable statutes of this character were passed to induce people to start banks. But after a while the banks became rich, the communities were in a flourishing condition, and the people saw that a very large amount of capital in this way escaped taxation. The legislatures that chartered these banks had long since passed away, and the new ones, who did not know them, passed laws that they should be taxed. Of course those whose privileges were infringed would not submit without a struggle. So these questions were made the subject of litigation, and there are a number of cases in the Supreme Court of the United States in which they have been discussed.

Capitalists knew very well what they were doing when they contracted with a State under the form of a statute that they should not be taxed at all, or only a certain per cent and no more. When it came to exceed that in the community they rebelled, said it was unjust, and

tried to escape its payment by every means in their power. Of course those who did not share in these privileges claimed that everybody in the community should be treated alike, and insisted that these exceptions were not valid. Indeed, it may be generally said that every total or limited exemption from taxation, either for all time or for a limited period, some later legislature has by subsequent legislation attempted to break down.

LECTURE XI.  
Exemptions from  
taxation.

The first question that arises in regard to the subject is, had the States the constitutional power to pass the first statute of exemption? Has a legislature sitting in the State of Pennsylvania or Maryland to-day a right to bargain with a taxpayer that he shall never pay a tax, or that he shall not be taxed for fifty years at a higher rate than one per cent on his business or property? Can it in that manner forestall a succeeding legislature, elected in that State, and bind their hands so that they shall not be able to impose a tax which shall be equal on everybody, or increase the taxes of these parties?

There are some general principles relative to this subject which I deem it proper here to make the subject of brief remark. The power of taxation is not given for the private benefit of anybody. Taxation is, in this country and in all civilized countries, the lifeblood of the existence of the government. Without it there could be no officers paid, no legislature elected, no laws enforced. When you undertake to cripple and tie up this power of taxation in an organized

LECTURE XI.  
Exemptions from  
taxation.

A legislature  
cannot limit the  
taxing power of  
its successor.

government, it is equivalent to putting a ligature around an artery of a living body.

There are a great many intelligent and able lawyers in this country, and there has always been in the Supreme Court of the United States more than one justice, who have thought it not within the constitutional power of one legislature to limit the taxing power of a succeeding one. I have no hesitation in saying that I am one of those. As late as 1869 Chief Justice Chase, Justice Field, and myself made a dissent on that subject.<sup>1</sup>

There has never been a time in the history of the court when there was not a dissenting justice who did not believe in the validity of that class of subsequent legislation; but the majority of the court has always held that these contracts were within the power of the legislatures to make, were binding on them as well as the State, and that, when subsequent legislatures sought to impair them, they were protected by the clause of the Constitution which we have been considering.

The theory upon which these decisions have been based is that the State is a corporation, and that all statutes passed by it which invite persons to invest their capital upon the promise of certain privileges granted, which are formally accepted by the grantees and acted upon, constitute a contract between the State and those parties. I concur with this statement of a general prin-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Washington University v. Rouse*, 8 Wall. 439, 441.

ciple when it is applied to anything which a State may properly do ; that is to say, that any contract about a matter which is within their power comes within this reasoning and should be protected. But where the power is wanting, as it is above intimated is my opinion in regard to limiting future taxation, of course this argument would not apply.

LECTURE XI.  
A legislature cannot limit the taxing power of its successor.

Perhaps I cannot do better at this point than to quote from the opinion that I had the honor to deliver in regard to this subject of taxation in its relations to the clause of the Constitution now under discussion. The following language was there used : —

“ As we have already said, since the legislature which passed the act of 1865 had the power to make a contract which should not be subject to repeal or modification by one of the parties to it without the consent of the other, the main question here is, did they intend to make such a contract ?

“ The principal function of a legislative body is not to make contracts, but to make laws. These laws are put into a form which, in all countries using the English language, and inheriting the English common law, is called a statute.

“ Unless forbidden by some exceptional constitutional provision, the same authority which can make a law can repeal it. The Constitution of the United States has imposed such a limitation upon the legislative power of all the States, by declaring that no State shall pass any law



LECTURE XI.  
A legislature  
cannot limit the  
taxing power of  
its successor.

impairing the obligation of a contract. The frequency with which this court has been called on to declare State laws void, because they do impair the obligation of contracts, shows how very important and far reaching that provision is.

“It may safely be said that in far the larger number of cases brought to this court under that clause of the Constitution, the question has been as to the existence and nature of the contract, and not the construction of the law which is supposed to impair it; and the greatest trouble we have had on this point has been in regard to what may be called legislative contracts, — contracts found in statute laws of the State, if they existed at all. It has become the established law of this court that a legislative enactment, in the ordinary form of a statute, may contain provisions which, when accepted as the basis of action by individuals or corporations, become contracts between them and the State within the protection of the clause referred to of the Federal Constitution.

“The difficulty in this class of cases has always been to distinguish what is intended by the legislature to be an exercise of its ordinary legislative function in making laws, which, like other laws, are subject to its full control by future amendments and repeals, from what is intended to become a contract between the State and other parties when the terms of the statute have been accepted and acted upon by those parties. This has always been a very nice point; and, when the supposed contract exists only in the form of a general statute, doubts

still recur, after all our decisions on that class of questions.

LECTURE XI.  
A legislature  
cannot limit the  
taxing power of  
its successor.

“These doubts are increased when the terms of the statute relate to a matter which is in its essential nature one of exclusive legislative cognizance, and which at the same time requires money or labor to be expended by individuals or corporations. In such cases the legislature may be supposed to be merely exercising its power of regulating the burdens which are to be borne for the public service, in which case it could be modified from time to time as legislative discretion might determine; or it might be a contract founded on a fair consideration moving from the party concerned to the State, and which in that case would be beyond the power of the State to impair. Statutes fixing the taxes to be levied on corporations, partake in a striking manner of this dual character, and require for their construction a critical examination of their terms, and of the circumstances under which they are created.

“The writer of this opinion has always believed, and believes now, that one legislature of a State has no power to bargain away the right of any succeeding legislature to levy taxes in as full a manner as the Constitution will permit. But, so long as the majority of this court adhere to the contrary doctrine, he must, when the question arises, join with the other judges in considering whether such a contract has been made.”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *New Jersey v. Yard*, 95 U. S. 104, 113, 114, 115.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE XI.

---

### LECTURE XI. Impairment of contracts.

THIS lecture, like the lecture upon the Regulation of Commerce, was evidently prepared some years ago, and has not been brought down by incorporating into it the later decisions. The latest case cited in it is from 105 U. S. So far as it comes it is thorough; and nothing is left for the editor to do except to take up the Reports at volume 106, and note the more important cases from that time on to the close of volume 140.

In deciding whether a State statute of incorporation created a contract, and whether a subsequent statute of the State, as construed by its courts, impaired that contract, the Supreme Court is not governed by previous decisions of the States, unless they are so firmly established as to have become a rule of property.<sup>1</sup>

The right to demand reimbursement from a municipal corporation for damages caused by a mob is not founded on contract; and the fact that a statutory right to demand such reimbursement has passed into a judgment does not convert the obligation into such a contract as is contemplated in the provision in the Constitu-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Louisville & Nashville Railroad v. Palms*, 109 U. S. 244.  
566

tion that no State shall pass any law impairing the obligation of contracts. The term contract, as used in the Constitution, signifies the agreement of two or more minds, for considerations proceeding from one to the other, to do or not to do certain acts.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XI.  
Impairment of  
contracts.

When a contract is made with a municipal corporation upon the faith that taxes will be levied, legislation repealing or modifying the taxing power of the corporation, so as to deprive the holder of the contract of all adequate and efficacious remedy, is within the inhibition of the Constitution. A judgment creditor of such a corporation, entitled by his contract to be paid out of specific tax levies, is further entitled, in mandamus proceedings, to a writ ordering the levy and collection of a sufficient tax to pay his judgment.<sup>2</sup>

The power of a State legislature to make a contract which, under the Constitution, cannot be modified or abrogated, does not extend to subjects affecting public health or public morals.<sup>3</sup>

The Funding Act of March 30, 1871, of the State of Virginia, and the issue of coupon bonds under it, constituted a valid contract between the State and the holders of the coupons that the coupons should be receivable at and after maturity for all taxes, debts, dues, and demands due the State, which the legislature of Virginia

<sup>1</sup> *Louisiana v. Mayor of New Orleans*, 109 U. S. 285.

<sup>2</sup> *Louisiana ex rel. Nelson v. St. Martin's Parish*, 111 U. S. 716.

<sup>3</sup> *Butchers' Union Co. v. Crescent City Live Stock Co.*, 111 U. S. 746.

LECTURE XI.  
Impairment of  
contracts.

was not at liberty to rescind or modify without the assent of the holders of the coupons.<sup>1</sup>

When a statute attaches a fixed compensation to a public office during the whole term of service of a person legally filling the office and performing the duties thereof, a complete, implied obligation arises to pay for the services at the fixed rate, which can be enforced by the remedies which the law then gives; and, as the prohibition of the Constitution against State laws impairing the obligations of contracts applies to implied contracts, it is not within the power of the State, by a change in its Constitution, to take away existing powers of taxation so as to deprive the incumbent of the means of collecting his salary.<sup>2</sup>

The remedy subsisting in a State when and where a contract is made and is to be performed is a part of its obligation. Any subsequent statute of the State which so affects that remedy as substantially to impair and lessen the value of the contract is forbidden by the Constitution, and is void. When it is a material part of a contract between a municipal corporation and the holders of its bonds that the creditor should always have the right to a special tax, to be levied and collected under laws then in force, in the same manner as county taxes at the same time might be levied, it is not within the power

---

<sup>1</sup> *Virginia Coupon Cases*, 114 U. S. 269. See also *McGahey v. Virginia*, 135 U. S. 662; *Hucless v. Childrey*, 135 U. S. 709; and *Vashon v. Greenhow*, 135 U. S. 713.

<sup>2</sup> *Fisk v. Jefferson Police Jury*, 116 U. S. 131.

of the legislature to repeal the existing laws, and substitute for them statutes regulating the assessment and collection of such taxes in a way which is not a legal equivalent.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XI.  
Impairment of  
contracts.

The provision in the Constitution in regard to the impairment of contracts is aimed at the legislative power of the State, and not at decisions of its courts, or acts of executive or administrative boards or officers, or doings of corporations or individuals. Hence the Supreme Court has no jurisdiction of a writ of error to the highest court of a State on the ground that the obligation of a contract has been impaired, unless some legislative act of the State is upheld by the judgment sought to be reviewed.<sup>2</sup>

The provision in the Constitution of West Virginia of 1872, that property of a citizen of the State should not "be seized or sold under final process issued upon judgments or decrees heretofore rendered, or otherwise, because of any act done according to the usages of civilized warfare in the prosecution of the 'war of the rebellion' by either of the parties thereto," does not impair the obligation of a contract within the meaning of the Constitution of the United States when applied to a judgment previously obtained, founded on a tort committed as an act of public war.<sup>3</sup>

The exemption of a railroad corporation, in-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Seibert v. Lewis*, 122 U. S. 284.

<sup>2</sup> *New Orleans Water Works v. Louisiana Sugar Refining Co.*, 125 U. S. 18.

<sup>3</sup> *Freeland v. Williams*, 131 U. S. 405.

LECTURE XI.  
Impairment of  
contracts.

incorporated by a State, from future general legislation of the State, either in its Constitution or by an act of its legislature, cannot be admitted to exist, unless it is expressly given, or unless it follows by an implication equally clear with express words.<sup>1</sup>

The fifteenth section of the act of the legislature of New York, approved June 6, 1885, provides that no action or special proceeding shall thereafter be maintained against the city of Brooklyn, or the Registrar of Arrears of that city, to compel the execution or delivery of a lease upon any sale for taxes, assessments, or water rates, made more than eight years prior to the above date, unless commenced within six months after that date, and notice thereof filed in the office of the Registrar of Arrears; also, that that officer shall, upon the expiration of such six months, cancel in his office all sales made more than eight years before the passage of the act, upon which no lease had been given, and no action commenced and notice thereof filed, within the period limited as aforesaid, and that thereupon the lien of all such certificates of purchase should cease and determine.

On these facts the court held (1) That this section was not repugnant to the clause of the Constitution of the United States forbidding a State to pass any law impairing the obligation of contracts, or to the clause declaring that no State shall deprive any person of property with-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Pennsylvania Railroad Co. v. Miller*, 132 U. S. 75.

out due process of law; (2) That, consistently with those clauses, the legislature might prescribe a limitation for the bringing of suits where none previously existed, as well as shorten the time within which suits to enforce existing causes of action should be commenced, provided, in each case, a reasonable time, taking all the circumstances into consideration, be given by the new law for the commencement of suit before the bar took effect.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XI.  
Impairment of  
contracts.

On December 12, 1883, the city of Sioux City, in Iowa, by ordinance, conferred on a street railway company, incorporated December 6, 1883, under the general laws of Iowa, the right of operating a street railway, with the requirement that it should pave the street between the rails. Subsequently, under an act of 1884, the city, by ordinance, required the company also to pave the street for one foot outside of the rails, and assessed a special tax against it for the cost of the paving outside of the rails. On these facts it was held that there was no contract between the company and the State or the city, the obligation of which was impaired by the laying of the tax: and that, under section 1090 of the Code of Iowa, which was in force when the company was incorporated, its franchise was subject to such conditions as the legislature should thereafter impose as necessary for the public good.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Wheeler v. Jackson*, 137 U. S. 245.

<sup>2</sup> *Sioux City Street Railway Co. v. Sioux City*, 138 U. S. 98.



LECTURE XI.  
Impairment of  
contracts.

A ferry connecting Wheeling with Wheeling Island was licensed at an early day in Virginia. Subsequently a general law of that State prohibited the courts of the different counties from licensing a ferry within a half a mile in a direct line from an established ferry. Still later the defendant purchased the ferry and its rights. On these facts the court held (1) That the general law of Virginia had in it nothing in the nature of a contract; (2) That the transfer of the existing rights from the vendor to the vendee added nothing to them.<sup>1</sup>

An executive agency, created by a statute of a State for the purpose of improving public highways, and empowered to assess the cost of its improvements upon adjoining lands, and to put up for sale, and buy in for a term of years for its own use, any such lands delinquent in the payment of the assessment, does not, by such a purchase, acquire a contract right in the land so bought which the State cannot modify without violating the provisions of the Constitution of the United States. Such a transaction is matter of law and not of contract, and as such is not open to constitutional objections. Even as to third parties an assessment is not a contract in the sense in which the word is used in the Constitution of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Wheeling & Belmont Bridge Co. v. Belmont Bridge Co.*, 138 U. S. 287.

<sup>2</sup> *Essex Public Road Board v. Skinkle*, 140 U. S. 334.

## XII.

### LIMITATIONS UPON THE POWERS OF STATES.<sup>1</sup>



ARTICLE I, SECTION 8, PARAGRAPH 18. The CON- LECTURE XII.  
gress shall have power . . .

To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 10. No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Controul of the Congress.

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of Delay.

---

<sup>1</sup> This Lecture was Lecture X of the Lectures delivered before the classes of the University Law School.

## LECTURE XII.

ARTICLE IX OF THE AMENDMENTS. The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X OF THE AMENDMENTS. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the State respectively, or to the people.<sup>1</sup>

General considerations.

THE Constitution of the United States may be looked at under various views, and many classifications may be made of it, all of which tend to give clearer ideas of its scope and meaning. The most important arrangement and classification of its contents is into three divisions, which relate to the legislative, the executive, and the judicial powers.

I have considered the Second and Third Articles of the Constitution, as they refer to the subjects of the executive and the judiciary. Another classification of its provisions may be profitably made into first, the grants of powers to the Federal Government; second, the limitations upon the powers of that Government; and third, the limitations upon the powers of the States. In order to enable you to understand more clearly these limitations, it is necessary to state a few propositions in regard to the general theory of the constitutional powers of the Government of the United States.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments are also briefly alluded to in this lecture; but, as they are dismissed with the remark that they are "too important to be considered at the close of a lecture," they are not placed in this headnote. In the next, and concluding paper, they are treated more at length, and will be found in that headnote.

As a general rule, governments are unlimited in their powers. All free governments, perhaps all other governments, are entitled in some shape or other, to make laws, and to repeal, or amend them. This is called the legislative power of the government. There are, however, in the United States, two sets of governments, both occupying a part of the domain of the great functions of governments, including the executive, the legislative, and the judicial powers. The Government of the United States was created by the voluntary action of the people of the different States. When this was originally done there were thirteen States whose people united in forming the General Government called the United States of America. In doing this the States parted with all the powers of government which were thought necessary to establish that of the United States, but those which they did not thus surrender and give up to the National Government, were retained by each State as a part of its own system of political power. The powers thus ceded to the United States and parted with by the several States, are much the smaller part of the general functions of government of civil society, and it resulted that all the powers not conferred upon the United States were to remain, and did remain, with the States themselves. This purpose was so important that it was not left to the natural inference arising from the sources of its powers and the manner in which the Constitution was framed, but it is more than once referred to, and at least

LECTURE XII.  
Relations between  
the State govern-  
ments and the  
United States.

LECTURE XII.  
Relations between  
the State govern-  
ment and the  
United States.

once expressly stated in the Constitution and amendments thereto. The eighteenth clause of the eighth section of the First Article of the Constitution closes the enumeration of the powers conferred upon Congress by the following language:—

“The Congress shall have power . . . to make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.”

Articles IX and X of the first set of amendments to the Constitution, made to give expression to the opinion of those who were jealous of the powers of the Federal Government, still more clearly state this view.

“Article IX. The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

“Article X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.”

Section 8 of the First Article is devoted to the grant of powers to the legislative branch of the Government of the United States; section 9 is devoted to the restrictions upon those powers, and section 10 to express limitations upon the powers of the States. If you will take the trouble to compare these limitations upon the powers of the States with those upon

the powers of the Federal Government in the preceding section, you will see that in many instances they are the same, and of course where that is the case they forbid entirely the exercise of the powers thus specified by either the National or State Governments. Such is the case in reference to the prohibition against granting titles of nobility, and others to be found in both sections.

LECTURE XII.  
Relations between  
the State govern-  
ment and the  
United States.

The tenth section, to which I more especially invite your attention, reads as follows : —

Limitations upon  
the powers of the  
States.

“Section 10. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

“No State shall without the consent of Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws ; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of Congress.

“No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless

LECTURE XII.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of the  
States.  
Making treaties,  
alliances, etc.

actually invaded, or in such imminent danger, as will not admit of delay."

The first of these items of prohibition, namely, against making treaties, alliances, or confederations, granting letters of marque and reprisal, and coining money, are directed to the exercise of powers which are in their essential nature appropriate alone to the sovereign power of the State. No government ought to have the power of making a treaty, or alliance, or a confederation with another government, unless it is in such a position of independence, and in full possession of all the faculties which will enable it to keep up its relations with other independent governments or to maintain a confederation or alliance with other sovereign powers. This prohibition was taken in substance from Article VI of the Articles of Confederation.

If one of the States of the Union could have made a treaty with France or Great Britain in the early days of our Government, or could have entered into a confederation with one of those powers, it is very obvious that the Government of the American Union would have been a rope of sand; temptations would have been offered by other nations to induce one or more of the States to withdraw from the Federal Union, which must in the struggle through which they passed in their early history have been successful. Indeed, during Washington's administration, constant efforts were made by France and by Great Britain to influence the conduct of our affairs upon the idea that our Government was

too weak to protect itself, and that it would be open to the approaches which their ambition and interest induced them to make. The late civil war also presents an instance where, if the States which attempted to secede could, in the lawful exercise of the power to do so, have made treaty arrangements or articles of confederation with other powerful States of Europe before they attempted to separate themselves from the Union of the States, they would probably have done so with fatal effect. And what they did in the way of an alliance among themselves in the attempt to create a confederacy between several of the States is also expressly prohibited by the language of this section that no State shall, without the consent of Congress, "enter into any agreement with another State, or with a foreign power."

LECTURE XII.  
Making treaties,  
alliances, etc.

It is also provided that no State shall grant letters of marque and reprisal. This form of hostilities against a people and its government has almost passed out of use among the nations of the earth. A letter of marque and reprisal is defined in the following terms: "A commission granted by the Government to a private individual, to take the property of a foreign State, or of the citizens or subjects of such State, as a reparation for an injury committed by such State, its citizens or subjects."<sup>1</sup>

Letters of marque  
and reprisal.

It was a mode of asserting a remedy for a supposed injustice, sometimes in the absence of

---

<sup>1</sup> Bouvier's Law Dictionary.



**LECTURE XII.**  
**Letters of marque**  
**and reprisal.**

actual war, and frequently in the midst of war, as a means of inducing the private citizens of other nations to engage in the spoliation of the enemy. As it is fairly one of the war powers, and as, when exercised under the authority of the State against a nation with whom the United States was not at war, it might, and almost certainly would, lead to war against that State, it was forbidden to the States to exercise the authority to issue such commissions. It is easy to be seen that if each State of the Union were at liberty to so conduct itself toward any of the foreign nations of the world as to justify them in making war upon that State, the Federal Government must either permit such State to struggle in its own defence as best it could, or to be overrun, conquered, and subjected to the power of the hostile nation; or else it must intervene and protect the State. This latter alternative would leave the question of peace or war to the caprices and interests of a single State, a war which must involve the whole nation for the benefit of that State, without any control on the part of the nation over the causes which led to such a conflict. Hence, while the eighth section of this Article declares that Congress alone shall make war, the tenth section, which we are now considering, declares not only that a State shall not engage in war unless actually invaded, but to prevent the approach to such a condition of affairs refuses to the State the right to grant letters of marque and reprisal.

So also in regard to the coining of money, LECTURE XII.  
Coining of money. which by this clause is forbidden to the States, and which by another clause of the same Article is given in positive terms to the Congress of the United States, to wit, "to coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coins." This is a power, the exercise of which was in past times claimed as an attribute of sovereignty by all the semi-independent principalities of Europe. It is a sovereign power, and for wise reasons is expressly denied to the States.

In the same connection and for the same rea- Legal tender. sons the States are forbidden to make anything but gold or silver coin a tender in payment of debts, or to emit bills of credit. What was meant by the phrase "bills of credit" in this Bills of credit. clause of the Constitution has been the subject of very considerable discussion. The constitutional meaning of the phrase was perhaps best defined in the case of *Craig v. State of Missouri*, 4 Pet. 410, 431. In the opinion of the court, delivered by Chief Justice Marshall, he asks, "What is a bill of credit? What did the Constitution mean to forbid?" To these questions he replies in the following language: "In its enlarged, and perhaps its literal sense, the term 'bill of credit' may comprehend any instrument by which a State engages to pay money at a future day; thus including a certificate given for money borrowed. But the language of the Constitution itself, and the mischief to be prevented, which we know from the history of our country, equally limit the interpretation of the

LECTURE XII.  
Bills of credit.

terms. The word 'emit,' is never employed in describing those contracts by which a State binds itself to pay money at a future day for services actually received, or for money borrowed for present use; nor are instruments executed for such purposes, in common language, denominated 'bills of credit.' To 'emit bills of credit,' conveys to the mind the idea of issuing paper intended to circulate through the community, for its ordinary purposes, as money, which paper is redeemable at a future day. This is the sense in which the terms have been always understood."

He then goes into a history of the times previous to and during the revolution in regard to the excessive issues of paper money, much of which was never redeemed, and shows that it was the prevention of this evil which was aimed at by this constitutional provision.

Thus far, these provisions of section 10 are not among the classes of powers expressly forbidden to the Federal Government. How far that Government may make other things beside gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts, and how far a State may organize banking corporations with the power to issue circulating notes, are questions of very great interest, and which have been very much discussed, with varying opinions, among the ablest and wisest statesmen and constitutional lawyers of the country. So far as the weight of judicial decisions may determine these questions, especially the decisions of the Supreme Court of the United

States, it may be said to be settled that the **Federal Government has the power to emit bills of credit in the way of circulating notes and to endow them with the capacity of being a tender in payment of debts; and that the States have the power to create banks and banking corporations with the power to issue such notes which do not depend upon the credit of the State for their value and which are not attempted to be made by the State a legal tender for debts, and that such laws are valid.** It seems that the laws authorizing the States to create banks of issue are held not to violate the prohibition against emitting bills of credit, because it is not the State that emits those bills, and because for the bills thus issued the State is not responsible, as they are not issued or received on the credit of the State. In relation to some of the banks thus issuing circulating notes, in which the State owned a part of the stock but for the redemption of the notes of which the State was not legally liable, a closer question was raised, but it has been decided in favor of the validity of such issues. The exercise of this power of creating a bank with power to issue circulating notes, in which although the bank assumes the nature and character of a corporation doing business in the name of trustees and directors, yet the State itself is the sole owner of the capital stock, is more doubtful and probably would not be sustained at this day.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See on this subject *Briscoe v. Bank of the Commonwealth of Kentucky*, 11 Pet. 257; *Woodruff v. Trapnall*, 10 How. 190; *Curran v. Arkansas*, 15 How. 304.

## LECTURE XII.

## Bills of attainder.

The prohibition against passing bills of attainder is one which was intended to guard against a danger which has passed out of the memory of the present generation. Up to the time of the formation of this Constitution the Parliament of England had been in the habit by legislative enactments of declaring individuals attainted for treason, for murder, for conspiracies, and for other crimes, especially crimes against the Government. This declaration of attainder by the legislative body was accompanied, either impliedly or by the express terms of the bill, with a deprivation of all rights of property and of all capacity to transmit property by descent or acquire it in that manner, in addition to punishments such as death and other cruelties. This kind of proceeding was had, not in a court of justice, nor with a trial by jury, nor with any of the usual modes of ascertaining the guilt or innocence of the party accused, but the legislature, the Parliament, either with or without inquiry, or with such insufficient inquiry as they chose to make, generally in the absence of the victim, proceeded at once to make charges, decide upon the guilt of the party and announce the punishment, thus acting in all instances as the sovereign, the legislative, and judicial power at the same time. This was done without any regularly established mode of procedure or rules of decision. Our ancestors who had just come through the revolutionary struggle for independence, and who felt that most of them might have been subjected to this form of punishment

by the Parliament of Great Britain, determined to eradicate this system entirely from the powers confided either to the Federal Government or to the States, and hence this prohibition.

LECTURE XII.  
Bills of attainder.

There is also in this instrument, in addition to the prohibition of bills of attainder, the declaration in the second clause of the third section of Article III, that "no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted," which probably has reference to the fact that attainder might be a mode of punishment under a judicial sentence, but even in that case it should not work corruption of blood or extend to forfeiture of property beyond the life of the person attainted.<sup>1</sup>

*Ex post facto* laws, which the States are here forbidden to pass, are laws intended to operate in the way of punishing crimes, which are passed after the offence or crime for which the party is being tried was committed. It was at one time suggested that this kind of enactment, equally forbidden to the General Government and to the States, might be held to be any law which affected the rights of a person civilly or criminally after those rights had been acquired or established in accordance with existing laws. This, however, is a mistake, and the phrase "*ex post facto* laws" has application alone to laws which relate to crimes and criminal proceedings, because it was used in that limited

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Cummings v. Missouri*, 4 Wall. 277.

LECTURE XII.  
*Ex post facto*  
 laws.

sense by our English ancestors long previous to the formation of the Constitution. The contemporary accounts of its adoption show that such was the sense in which the Convention understood it. And it was because it was understood that it did not forbid laws "impairing the obligation of contracts," that those words were added in the same clause.

This clause of the Constitution in regard to *ex post facto* laws was very early brought into question and came before the Supreme Court of the United States in the case of *Calder v. Bull*, 3 Dall. 386. Mr. Justice Chase, who seems to have spoken for the court on that occasion, although several other judges delivered separate opinions, takes a distinction between laws affecting civil rights, which may be retrospective, and those for the punishment of crime, which are *ex post facto*; and as his definition has been frequently repeated and always with approval by the Supreme Court of the United States, and other courts, it is here quoted :

"I will state what laws I consider *ex post facto* laws, within the words and intent of the prohibition. 1st. Every law that makes an action done before the passing of the law, and which was innocent when done, criminal; and punishes such action. 2d. Every law that aggravates a crime, or makes it greater than it was, when committed. 3d. Every law that changes the punishment, and inflicts a greater punishment, than the law annexed to the crime, when committed. 4th. Every law that alters the legal

rules of evidence, and receives less, or different, LECTURE XII.  
 testimony, than the law required at the time Ex post facto  
 of the commission of the offence, in order to laws.  
 convict the offender.

“All these and similar laws are manifestly unjust and oppressive. In my opinion, the true distinction is between *ex post facto* laws and retrospective laws. Every *ex post facto* law must necessarily be retrospective; but every retrospective law is not an *ex post facto* law: the former, only, are prohibited. Every law that takes away, or impairs, rights vested, agreeable to existing laws, is retrospective, and is generally unjust, and may be oppressive; and it is a good general rule, that a law should have no retrospect: but there are cases in which laws may justly, and for the benefit of the community, and also of individuals, relate to a time antecedent to their commencement; as statutes of oblivion, or of pardon. They are certainly retrospective, and literally both concerning, and after, the facts committed.

“But I do not consider any law *ex post facto*, within the prohibition, that mollifies the rigor of the criminal law; but only those that create, or aggravate, the crime; or increase the punishment, or change the rules of evidence, for the purpose of conviction. Every law that is to have an operation before the making thereof, as to commence at an antecedent time; or to save time from the statutes of limitations; or to excuse acts which were unlawful, and before committed, and the like, is retrospective. But



LECTURE XII.  
*Ex post facto*  
 laws.

such laws may be proper or necessary, as the case may be. There is a great and apparent difference between making an unlawful act lawful, and the making an innocent action criminal, and punishing it as a crime.

"The expressions '*ex post facto* laws' are technical; they had been in use long before the revolution, and had acquired an appropriate meaning, by legislators, lawyers, and authors. The celebrated and judicious Sir William Blackstone, in his Commentaries, considers an *ex post facto* law precisely in the same light as I have done. His opinion is confirmed by his successor, Mr. Wooddeson, and by the author of the Federalist, whom I esteem superior to both, for his extensive and accurate knowledge of the true principles of government."<sup>1</sup>

Impairing the  
 obligation of con-  
 tracts.

The prohibition that the States shall pass no law impairing the obligation of contracts is one of the clauses of the Constitution which has been the subject of as much judicial consideration as almost any part of that instrument. I have, however, devoted an entire lecture to that subject, and shall, therefore, say very little about it now. There is no such limitation upon the power of Congress; on the contrary, that body

---

<sup>1</sup> See also on this subject the case of *Watson v. Mercer*, 8 Pet. 88, 110; *Satterlee v. Matthewson*, 2 Pet. 380; *Kring v. Missouri*, 107 U. S. 221.

During the revolutionary war, bills of attainder and *ex post facto* acts of confiscation, were passed to a wide extent; and the evils resulting therefrom were supposed, in times of more cool reflection, to have outweighed any imagined good. 2 Story on Const. 237.

is expressly invested with the power to pass a uniform system of bankruptcy, which in its essential nature has always been supposed to embrace the power of releasing the bankrupt from the obligation of his contracts upon the surrender of all his property. The contracts with the obligations of which the States are forbidden to interfere by this clause have by judicial decisions been held to be almost all classes of contracts capable of judicial enforcement or judicial remedy, contracts of States themselves whereby they have granted for a valuable consideration rights to private parties or to corporations, such as exemption from taxation, rights to carry on a particular kind of business, as banking powers and others. This prohibition extends without distinction to implied and express contracts, and includes executory as well as executed contracts. It is not, however, directed against a violation of the contract by a party, but the declaration is that "no State" *shall pass any law* impairing the obligation of contracts. In all instances in which this provision is called in question it must be in reference to a law of a State, and not to the action of its judicial or executive powers. The State as a State is not forbidden to violate contracts, but it is forbidden to pass a law the effect of which is to impair their obligation.<sup>1</sup> With these general remarks on this subject I must pass it for the present.

The prohibition that the State shall not grant

Titles of nobility.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Railroad Company v. Rock*, 4 Wall. 177, 180.

**LECTURE XII.**  
**Titles of nobility.**

any title of nobility may have had some significance at the time of the formation of the Constitution of which we are not now fully sensible. It is one of that class of provisions in that instrument by which the influence of powerful individuals and of foreign nations in the domestic affairs of our Government was attempted to be repelled in all the modes which its framers could devise. Thus no man in the public service was permitted to accept a present from any foreign potentate or power, or to accept a title of nobility, and no State was permitted to create or confer any such title. These things have passed very much away, and it has become such a well settled practice, in the absence of any attempt to exercise such powers for so long a period, that it has made us indifferent and thoughtless about it. But the aspiration of many of our wealthy families for social distinction, by making alliances of marriage or otherwise with the members of the nobility of foreign States, leaves little doubt that, if patents of nobility could be issued, either by the States or the Federal Government, applications would be sufficiently numerous for them, whatever may be said of republican policy and of republican simplicity.

**Duties on imports  
or exports.**

The second clause of this section prohibits certain acts of the States unless with the consent of Congress. "No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspec-

tion laws." The word "imports" here has reference to goods imported from a foreign country, and not to such as may be carried from one State into another.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XII.  
Duties on imports  
or exports.

But a State is prohibited from taxing goods brought into it from neighboring States by that provision of section 8 of the same Article which declares that Congress shall regulate commerce among the several States.<sup>2</sup>

As no attempt is known to have been made by any of the States to levy directly or incidentally imposts or duties on goods imported from foreign nations we need not say much about it, except perhaps to refer to the case of *Brown v. Maryland*. There an attempt was made to tax goods which had been imported into Maryland from abroad, but which had not been distributed from the original packages, and it was held that such goods were entitled to the character of imports so long as they remained in the packages in which they were brought into this country, but that when these packages were broken and the goods were used or offered for sale outside of such original packages, they had become incorporated into the general property of the State, and were liable to such taxation as the State imposed on other property. The prohibition in regard to duties on exports, which, by another clause, is also a limitation upon the power of the Federal Government, makes it very clear

<sup>1</sup> *Brown v. Maryland*, 12 Wheat. 419; *Woodruff v. Parham*, 8 Wall. 123; *Hinson v. Lott*, 8 Wall. 148.

<sup>2</sup> See *Woodruff v. Parham* and *Hinson v. Lott*, *supra*.

LECTURE XII.  
Duties on imports  
or exports.

that the Constitution intended that no product of a State which was in the process of exportation should be taxed either by a State or by the Federal Government; in other words, that the process of exporting the products of a State, the goods, chattels, and property of the people of the several States, should not be obstructed or hindered by any burden of taxation imposed by either State or Federal authority.

What is a duty on  
exports.

The Congress of the United States, during the late civil war, imposed a tax upon cotton and tobacco, which tax was not limited to those products when in the process of transportation, but was assessed on all the cotton and tobacco in the country. It was argued that because the larger part of these products was exported out of the country and sold to foreign nations, and because their production was limited to a particular part of the country, the tax was forbidden by the corresponding clause of the Constitution prohibiting Congress from levying a tax on exports. Although the question came at that time to the Supreme Court of the United States, it was not then decided, because of a division of opinion in that court. The recent cases, however, of *Coe v. Errol*, 116 U. S. 517, and *Turpin v. Burgess*, 117 U. S. 504, seem to decide that the objection was not valid, and hold that only such property as is in the actual process of exportation, and which has begun its voyage or its preparation for the voyage, can be said to be an export.

The clause which declares that "the net

produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States," and that "all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress," needs no comment, as no such duties or imposts have been laid during the existence of the government.

LECTURE XII.  
What is a duty on exports.

The further provision that "no State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage," has been the subject of frequent decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States. In many instances the States have levied taxes and assessments on vessels engaged in navigation in cases where they had a right to make such assessments as on other property, but unfortunately measured the amount of it by the size of the vessel, taking her tonnage as a mode of measurement; and, looking at the literal language of such statutes, since they impose a tax or duty of so much per ton or per hundred tons, it is apparently a tonnage tax. The question has been one of considerable difficulty, and the decisions are not perhaps always in accord. But it may now be taken to be the settled doctrine of the Supreme Court that only a tax which may be said to be laid for the privilege of a vessel to enter a port can be held to be a tonnage tax. The prohibition against the States' levying a duty of tonnage is intended to prevent any interference with commerce with foreign nations or between one State and another, and is not intended to prevent a rightful assessment to secure a compensation for services ren-

LECTURE XII.  
Duty on tonnage.

dered to vessels using the waters of a State, such as wharfage and the like. The question is considered and the authorities reviewed in a late case.<sup>1</sup> It was there held that in almost all cases relied on as showing that there was a reference to the tonnage capacity of the vessel as a measure of the tax there was an absence of any service rendered for which the assessment was a compensation, and generally the tax was held to be imposed for the privilege of entering and anchoring in the port.<sup>2</sup>

Then follows the provision that no State shall, without the consent of Congress, "keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay." These provisions need no explanation. They explain themselves. They are additional safeguards against the dangers mentioned under the first clause which we have just passed over, and are designed to incapacitate the States from making war against each other or against the General Government, or from putting themselves in a position to defy that government and overthrow its authority, withdrawing from them at the same time the power to do this successfully and discouraging the inclination to attempt it. They are prohibited from keeping troops or ships of war, thus dis-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Morgan's Steamship Co. v. Louisiana*, 455.

<sup>2</sup> See also *Cannon v. New Orleans*, 20 Wall. 577; *Packet Co. v. Keokuk*, 95 U. S. 80, 84.

abling them from any active belligerent operations; nor shall they enter into any agreement or compact with any other State, meaning any other State of this Union, by which they are deprived of the power of co-operation in any hostile movement, either against a State or against the Federal Government; nor shall they do this with any foreign power, which would be still more objectionable; nor shall they for any reasons mentioned in reference to letters of marque engage in war unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay. That is to say, the only war power which a State can exercise is one of defence, when actually invaded, or in the most imminent danger of such invasion. This last clause in regard to imminent danger is perhaps best illustrated by the wars with the Indian tribes, in which the States have been compelled to organize forces of their own to protect their inhabitants and citizens from the terrible onslaughts of the savages who make no proclamation of war and whose first intimation of hostilities is the destruction of women and children who are unprepared and unaware of their danger.

These provisions show the skill and wisdom with which the framers of the original Constitution guarded against the exercise of such powers by the States as might seriously endanger the existence of the Federal Union.

The earliest amendments to that instrument, namely, the first ten, passed almost immediately after the formation of the Union, were intended

LECTURE XII.  
Duty on tonnage.

The first ten amendments.



**LECTURE XII.**  
**The first ten**  
**amendments.**

to operate as restraints upon the national Government, and represent the fears of those whose distrust of it were greater than their fears from the power of the States. This distrust continued to be the prevailing sentiment of many politicians of the country until the recent civil war broke out in 1861. The actual events of that war, the circumstances which led to it, and its results, impressed upon the American people the fact that the main danger to the perpetuity of our national Government was to be found in the powers exercised by the States, and several amendments to the Constitution, the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth, were almost exclusively devoted to limitations upon such powers. These are in themselves so important that I cannot in this lecture attempt to comment upon them. It is sufficient to say that the Thirteenth abolishes slavery in all the States of the Union, its existence before that time being entirely dependent upon the laws of the several States, and it gives to Congress the power to enforce the prohibition by appropriate legislation. The Fourteenth Amendment, after defining what citizenship of the United States is, makes these important limitations upon the powers of the States: "No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws."

**The Thirteenth**  
**Amendment.**

**The Fourteenth**  
**Amendment.**

The Fifteenth Amendment declares that "the right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude."

LECTURE XII.  
The Fifteenth  
Amendment.

These provisions of the amendments to the Constitution, adopted immediately after the close of the civil war as part of the system of reconstruction made necessary by that war, have been the subject of much discussion in the public prints, in both Houses of Congress, and of decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States. A moment's glance at them will show that they are too important to be considered at the close of a lecture already sufficiently long.

## NOTES UPON LECTURE XII.

---

**LECTURE XII.**  
**Notes.**

THIS lecture closes with a reference to the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments, but without discussing them. They are treated in the Supplementary Paper, No. XIII, which is devoted to the consideration of subjects not discussed elsewhere.

In previous lectures, Mr. Justice Miller has referred to a class of powers which States may not exercise, because exclusively conferred upon Congress. The most prominent among these is the power to regulate commerce, which the Supreme Court, after considerable fluctuation, held, in a case in which the opinion was written by Mr. Justice Miller, to be so exclusively vested in Congress that a State could not legislate upon the subject. In the headnote, which was also prepared by him, the proposition is laid down that "a statute of a State, intended to regulate, or to tax, or to impose any other restriction upon the transmission of persons or property or telegraphic messages from one State to another, is not within that class of legislation which the States may enact in the absence of legislation by Congress; and such statutes are void, even

as to that part of such transaction which may be within the State." <sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XII.  
Notes.

While the Constitution, by the tenth section of the First Article, took away from the States the power of passing bills of attainder and *ex post facto* laws, by the second paragraph in the third section of the Third Article it conferred upon Congress the "power to declare the punishment of treason," but added: "but no attainder shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted." As pertinent to the general subject of attainder, though not to the limitation of the powers of States, I will briefly notice the action of Congress and of the Supreme Court in respect of this power.

In 1861 Congress passed an act for the confiscation of property used in aid of the rebellion.<sup>2</sup> This was followed the next year by "an act to suppress insurrection, to punish treason and rebellion, to seize and confiscate the property of rebels, and for other purposes,"<sup>3</sup> which made provision for the seizure, judicial confiscation, and sale of the property of persons giving aid and comfort to the rebellion. The latter act was accompanied by a joint resolution of Congress, also approved by the President, in which, after referring to that act, it was said: "Nor shall any punishment or proceedings under said act be

---

<sup>1</sup> *Wabash, St. Louis & Pacific Railway Co. v. Illinois*, 118 U. S. 557.

<sup>2</sup> Act of August 6, 1861, 12 Stat. 319 c. 60.

<sup>3</sup> Act of July 17, 1862, 12 Stat. 589 c. 195.

## LECTURE XII.

## Notes.

so construed as to work a forfeiture of the real estate of the offender beyond his natural life."<sup>1</sup>

The court held that the joint resolution was intended to protect the interest of the heirs only; and that the interest of the offender in the real estate could be seized and confiscated, leaving him without further interest or ownership in it.<sup>2</sup> But in a later case it held that if the offender was pardoned, a remainder was left in him after the confiscated life estate which he could dispose of.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Joint Resolution of July 17, 1862, 12 Stat. 627, No. 63.

<sup>2</sup> *Wallach v. Van Renswick*, 92 U. S. 202.

<sup>3</sup> *Illinois Central Railroad Co. v. Bosworth*, 133 U. S. 92.

### XIII.

## SUPPLEMENTARY: SUBJECTS NOT DISCUSSED ELSEWHERE.



CONSTITUTION, ARTICLE I, SECTION 1. All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives. LECTURE XIII. Supplementary.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 2, PARAGRAPHS 1, 2, AND 3. The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty-five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

[Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other Persons.]<sup>1</sup> The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have

---

<sup>1</sup> The portion of this clause within brackets has been amended by the Fourteenth Amendment.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.

at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one-third may be chosen every second Year; and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 4, PARAGRAPHS 1 AND 2. The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the places of chusing Senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 5, PARAGRAPHS 1 AND 2. Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Be-

haviour, and, with the Concurrence of two-thirds, **LECTURE XIII.**  
expel a Member. **Supplementary.**

**ARTICLE I, SECTION 8, PARAGRAPH 1 TO PARAGRAPH 17.** The Congress shall have Power

To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow Money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

To establish a uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;

To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States;

To establish Post Offices and post Roads;

To promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries;

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;

To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;

To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;

To provide and maintain a Navy;

To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;

To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as



**LECTURE XIII.**  
**Supplementary.**

may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the Discipline prescribed by Congress ;

To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, Dock-yards, and other needful Buildings.

ARTICLE I, SECTION 9, PARAGRAPHS 1, 2, 3, 4. The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or Duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

No Capitation, or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

ARTICLE II, SECTION 1, PARAGRAPHS 5 AND 7. In case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation, or Inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

Before he enter on the execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation : —

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

ARTICLE IV, SECTION 1. Full Faith and Credit LECTURE XIII. shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, Supplementary. and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

ARTICLE IV, SECTION 2, PARAGRAPHS 2, 3. A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.

ARTICLE IV, SECTION 3, PARAGRAPHS 1, 2. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State ; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

ARTICLE IV, SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion, and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.

ARTICLE VI, PARAGRAPHS 1, 2. All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof ; and

**LECTURE XIII.**  
**Supplementary.**

all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land ; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

**FIRST AMENDMENT.** Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press ; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

**SECOND AMENDMENT.** A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

**THIRD AMENDMENT.** No Soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

**FOURTH AMENDMENT.** The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

**FIFTH AMENDMENT.** No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb ; nor shall be compelled in any Criminal Case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

**EIGHTH AMENDMENT.** Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

**NINTH AMENDMENT.** The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

**TENTH AMENDMENT.** The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited

by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively or to the people. LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.

**THIRTEENTH AMENDMENT. SECTION 1.** Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

**SECTION 2.** Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

**FOURTEENTH AMENDMENT. SECTION 1.** All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

**SECTION 2.** Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

**SECTION 3.** No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may,

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.

by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

FIFTEENTH AMENDMENT. SECTION 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

SOME of the minor provisions of the Constitution have not been treated by Mr. Justice Miller, or they have been touched upon only in a cursory way. It will be the aim of this supplementary paper to treat these subjects briefly, and in their order as they stand in that instrument.

### 1. *Congress: its Organization and Parliamentary Powers.*

Congress: its organization and parliamentary powers.

The legislative powers granted to the Union by the Constitution are, by section 1, Article I, "vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives."

In Lecture IV the separate powers confided

by the Constitution to the Senate and to the House of Representatives respectively were fully discussed. In other lectures the legislative powers reposed in them jointly, as "The Senate and the House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled," were treated in detail; and those which are denied to them and retained by the States were also pointed out and discussed in detail.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Congress: its  
organization and  
parliamentary  
powers.

From the opening of the Convention it was determined that, following the settled precedents of the English race, the power of the new legislative body to be created by it should be reposed in two Houses. It was not until the 25th of May, 1787, that a quorum of States was attained; and, as early as the 29th of that month, two projects were launched, which eventually resulted in the Constitution. The first of these was the Virginia plan in sixteen resolutions, offered by Edmund Randolph; and the second a draft for a Constitution, presented by Charles Pinckney of South Carolina. These papers will be found in the Appendix. Each made provision for a national legislature, to consist of two Houses; and in each it was provided that the members of the House of Representatives should be elected by the people.

The basis thus recommended for the House of Representatives was substantially adopted in section 2 of Article I of the Constitution, which provides that "the House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States,

The House: how  
elected.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The House: how  
elected.

Number of mem-  
bers.

and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature."

As originally constituted, the House of Representatives consisted of sixty-five members, of whom the Constitution made the first apportionment; but, under further provision in the same section, an enumeration or census was taken, which was made the basis of a new apportionment. Once in each succeeding ten years, under the provisions of the same section, a new census or enumeration has been taken, and a new apportionment made by Congress. Under the last enumeration and apportionment<sup>1</sup> the House of Representatives consists of three hundred and fifty-six members, not including Delegates from the Territories. The District of Columbia also at one time enjoyed the privilege of being rep-

---

<sup>1</sup> 26 Stat. 735, c. 116. An act making an apportionment of Representatives in Congress among the several States under the Eleventh Census.

*Be it enacted, etc.,* That after the third of March, eighteen hundred and ninety-three, the House of Representatives shall be composed of three hundred and fifty-six members, to be apportioned among the several States as follows: Alabama, nine; Arkansas, six; California, seven; Colorado, two; Connecticut, four; Delaware, one; Florida, two; Georgia, eleven; Idaho, one; Illinois, twenty-two; Indiana, thirteen; Iowa, eleven; Kansas, eight; Kentucky, eleven; Louisiana, six; Maine, four; Maryland, six; Massachusetts, thirteen; Michigan, twelve; Minnesota, seven; Mississippi, seven; Missouri, fifteen; Montana, one; Nebraska, six; Nevada, one; New Hampshire, two; New Jersey, eight; New York, thirty-four; North Carolina, nine; North Dakota, one; Ohio, twenty-one; Oregon, two; Pennsylvania, thirty; Rhode Island, two; South Carolina, seven; South Dakota, two; Tennessee, ten; Texas, thirteen; Vermont, two; Virginia, ten; Washington, two; West Virginia, four; Wisconsin, ten; Wyoming, one. [Approved February 7, 1891.]

resented in the House as a Territory, without the right of voting. But this privilege, conferred at a late hour, was soon withdrawn.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Number of mem-  
bers.

The Senate was organized by the Constitution on a very different basis from that thrown out in either of the programmes. It was the result of discussion and compromise. The equality of representation of the small and the large States contributed sensibly toward securing the assent of the former to the Constitution, and thus aided in bringing about the Union.

The Senate.

The third section of Article I contains two clauses providing as follows: "The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years and each Senator shall have one Vote." The first of these clauses gives to the States the equality of representation which each enjoyed under the Articles of Confederation. The second takes away the voting by States, and puts that responsibility upon each individual Senator. The same section, in another paragraph, requires that each Senator shall have attained the age of thirty years, that he shall have been nine years a citizen of the United States, and that, at the time of his election, he shall be an inhabitant of the State which he represents.

The Senate is divided into three classes, as nearly equally as possible, so that one-third shall go out at the expiration of each Congress. The first division was made under the provisions of section 3, and as representatives from new States

Number of mem-  
bers.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Number of mem-  
bers.

have appeared they have successively been classified by lot. At its inception it consisted of twenty-six members. It now consists of eighty-eight members.

The same section confers upon the House of Representatives the power of choosing its Speaker and other officers, and upon the Senate the power of choosing its officers, and a President *pro tempore* in the absence of the Vice-President, who is made its President by the Constitution, but without a vote except when the Senate is equally divided. In practice a President *pro tempore* is usually elected, who serves in all absences of the Vice-President until he resigns or is replaced by another by vote of the Senate.

How elected.

Article I, section 4, provides that "The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators."

This power was first exercised in 1842.<sup>1</sup> It had become the custom in some of the States to elect the entire State representation in the House of Representatives on a general ticket, voted upon as a whole throughout the State, thus securing a solid delegation of one political faith. To break up this custom Congress enacted that when a State was entitled to more than one member, the members should be elected by dis-

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of June 25, 1842, 5 Stat. 491, c. 47.

tricts composed of contiguous territory. This system has been since retained.<sup>1</sup> In 1872 Congress further provided that such elections should take place on the Tuesday next after the first Monday of November, 1876, and the like day of that month in every second year thereafter,<sup>2</sup> which is now the law.<sup>3</sup> It is further provided that vacancies may be filled at such times as State laws may prescribe,<sup>4</sup> and that all elections shall be by ballot.<sup>5</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
How elected.

The first legislation for regulating the election of Senators was in 1866.<sup>6</sup> The statute then enacted is practically codified in the Revised Statutes.<sup>7</sup> The legislature of each State chosen next preceding the expiration of the time for which any Senator was elected to represent the State in Congress, is on the second Tuesday after its meeting and organization, to elect a Senator in the manner pointed out by that act. Provisions are also made for filling vacancies.

Congress is required to assemble at least once in each year on the first Monday in December, unless it appoints by law a different day. In 1867 it was enacted that there should be a meeting of the Fortieth Congress and of each succeeding Congress on the day on which

Day of meeting  
of Congress.

<sup>1</sup> Acts of August 30, 1856, 11 Stat. 160, c. 80; July 14, 1862, 12 Stat. 572, c. 170; March 11, 1868, 15 Stat. 41, c. 25; February 2, 1872, 17 Stat. 28, c. 11; Rev. Stat. § 23.

<sup>2</sup> Act of February 2, 1872, 17 Stat. 28, c. 11.

<sup>3</sup> Rev. Stat. § 25.

<sup>4</sup> Ib. § 26.

<sup>5</sup> Ib. § 27.

<sup>6</sup> Act of July 25, 1866, 14 Stat. 243, c. 245.

<sup>7</sup> Rev. Stat. §§ 14-19.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Day of meeting  
of Congress.

the term begins for which the Congress is elected (March 4);<sup>1</sup> but this act was repealed in 1871.<sup>2</sup>

The House is the judge of the election returns and qualifications of its own members. A majority constitutes a quorum, but a less number may adjourn from day to day.<sup>3</sup>

Paragraph 2,  
section 5.

The second paragraph of section 5 confers upon each House the power "to determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two-thirds, expel a Member." We have already seen, in the comments on *Kilbourn v. Thompson*,<sup>4</sup> ante, 412, that the House, not being a judicial body, cannot convict for contempt, and cannot punish persons who are not members. The opinion in that case was written by Mr. Justice Miller. It practically overruled *Anderson v. Dunn*.<sup>5</sup>

The other provisions in that section are, that each House shall keep a journal, which shall be made public unless, in its judgment, secrecy is required; that the yeas and nays may be called for by one-fifth of the members present, and that neither House, without the consent of the

<sup>1</sup> Act of January 22, 1867, 14 Stat. 378, c. 10.

<sup>2</sup> Act of April 20, 1871, 14 Stat. 12, c. 21, § 30.

<sup>3</sup> Rule XV, paragraph 3. "On the demand of any member, or at the suggestion of the Speaker, the names of members sufficient to make a quorum in the hall of the House who do not vote shall be noted by the clerk and recorded in the journal, and reported to the Speaker with the names of the members voting, and be counted and announced in determining the presence of a quorum to do business."

<sup>4</sup> 103 U. S. 168.

<sup>5</sup> 6 Wheat. 204.

other, shall adjourn for more than three days, or to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Paragraph 2,  
section 5.

Section 6 relates to the compensation and privileges of members. The former is to be determined by law, and the latter includes privilege from arrest<sup>1</sup> in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace during attendance at a session of Congress, going there and returning thence; and also exemption from being questioned elsewhere for speeches in debate. It also provides that no member can hold an office created or of which the emoluments were increased during the time for which he was elected, and that no person can hold an office under the United States, and be at the same time a member of either House of Congress.

Section 6.

## 2. *Powers conferred on Congress by Article I, Section 8.*

### A. *Power to enact Bankrupt Laws.*

Article I, section 8, conferring on Congress power "to establish . . . uniform laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States" was added to the draft of the Constitution as late as September 1, 1787, and on Monday, the 3d September, it was adopted, Connecticut alone voting in the negative. Mr. Sherman of Connecticut gave as the reason for his opposition "that bankruptcies were, in some

Bankruptcy.

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Cox v. McClenahan*, 3 Dall. 478.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Bankruptcy.

cases punishable with death by the laws of England, and he did not choose to grant a power by which that might be done here." The power to enact a bankrupt law was first exercised in 1800.<sup>1</sup> In 1803 that law was repealed.<sup>2</sup> In 1841<sup>3</sup> it was again exercised by an act which was repealed in 1843.<sup>4</sup> It was again exercised in 1867<sup>5</sup> by an act which, after being several times amended,<sup>6</sup> was finally repealed in 1878.<sup>7</sup>

The grant of this power to Congress does not divest the several States of the right to enact insolvent laws in the nature of bankrupt laws, both voluntary and involuntary, and to provide for the settlement of estates of insolvent persons by process of law, the distribution of their proceeds and the discharge of the debtors; but such exercise of power by a State is subject to be suspended by the enactment of a bankrupt law by Congress, and will remain suspended so long as such a law is in force; and a discharge so obtained through State proceedings does not operate upon the claim of a citizen of another State who has not proved his debt.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Act of April 4, 1800, 2 Stat. 19, c. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Act of December 19, 1803, 2 Stat. 248, c. 6.

<sup>3</sup> Act of August 19, 1841, 5 Stat. 440, c. 9.

<sup>4</sup> Act of March 3, 1843, 5 Stat. 614, c. 82.

<sup>5</sup> Act of March 2, 1867, 14 Stat. 517, c. 176.

<sup>6</sup> Act of July 27, 1868, 15 Stat. 227, c. 258; Act of February 13, 1873, 17 Stat. 436, c. 135; Act of March 3, 1873, 17 Stat. 509, c. 226, § 4; Act of June 8, 1872, 17 Stat. 334, c. 339; Act of March 3, 1873, 17 Stat. 577, c. 235; Act of June 22, 1874, 18 Stat. 178, c. 390; Act of July 26, 1876, 19 Stat. 102, c. 234.

<sup>7</sup> Act of June 7, 1878, 20 Stat. 99, c. 160.

<sup>8</sup> *Boese v. King*, 108 U. S. 379; *Baldwin v. Hale*, 1 Wall. 223.

B. *Coinage: Bills of Credit: Weights and Measures.*

Mr. Pinckney's draft proposed to confer upon Congress the "power to borrow money and emit bills of credit," the power "to coin money and regulate the value of all coins," and the power "to fix the standard of weights and measures." In the discussions the power "to emit bills of credit" was stricken out by a vote of nine States to two. Otherwise, with some change of language, these powers were placed by the Convention in the Constitution.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Coinage.

That draft also contained a clause forbidding States to emit bills of credit. The Constitution, as completed, goes beyond this. It provides that "No State shall . . . coin money, emit bills of credit," etc.

Bills of credit.

The people of the United States had greatly suffered from the over-issues of bills of credit having the character of legal tender, by the States, and the Convention made it clear that the power to make such issues in the future was to be taken away from them, as well as the power to coin money.<sup>1</sup>

The authority to fix the standard of weights and measures has been exercised by Congress only partially. It has provided a standard troy pound for the regulation of the coinage,<sup>2</sup> and it has authorized the use of the metric system throughout the United States.<sup>3</sup> Otherwise each State regulates this subject for itself.

Weights and  
measures.

<sup>1</sup> See *ante*, pp. 138, 139.

<sup>2</sup> Rev. Stat. § 3548.

<sup>3</sup> Rev. Stat. §§ 3569, 3570.

*C. Punishment for Counterfeiting.*

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Counterfeiting.

The Constitution further confers upon Congress the power "to provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States." It is held that this grant of power does not prevent a State from enacting laws to punish counterfeiting; and that, being bound to protect to other nations rights secured to them by the law of nations, Congress has the power to enact laws punishing the counterfeiting of foreign securities.<sup>1</sup>

*D. Post-office and Post-roads.*

Post-office and  
Post-roads.

Section 8, paragraph 7, confers power to "establish Post-offices and Post-roads." Mr. Pinckney's draft proposed to confer authority "to establish post-offices," without conferring any power over the means of maintaining communication between them. The essential words "and post-roads," under which the mail service of the country is carried on, were added during the discussion. Post routes are established by law, and the compensation for carriage over them fixed in the same way. And when a part of an established route is found to be impracticable, by reason of being almost or quite impassable, the Post-office Department may change that part without thereby creating a new route, not authorized by law.<sup>2</sup>

In one notable case Congress practically ter-

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Arjona*, 120 U. S. 479.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. Barlow*, 132 U. S. 271.

minated an important suit in equity by the exercise of this power.<sup>1</sup> The State of Virginia, having authorized a corporation to construct a bridge across the Ohio River at Wheeling, the State of Pennsylvania filed a bill in equity in the Supreme Court of the United States to enjoin its construction, upon the ground that it was an unconstitutional obstruction of a navigable river. As a result of proceedings, which are reported in several volumes of Howard, a writ of injunction issued from that court in June, 1854. Counsel then brought to the attention of the court that, in the Post-office Appropriation Act of 1852,<sup>2</sup> the bridge in controversy had been declared to be a lawful structure, and to be an "established post-road for the passage of the mails of the United States." The court said: "So far as this bridge created an obstruction to the free navigation of the river, in view of the previous acts of Congress, they are to be regarded as modified by this subsequent legislation; and, although it may still be an obstruction in fact, is not so in the contemplation of law. . . . We do not enter upon the question whether or not Congress possesses the power under the authority in the Constitution to establish 'post-offices and post-roads,' to legalize this bridge; for, conceding that no such powers can be derived from this clause, it must be admitted that it is, at least, necessarily included in the power con-

<sup>1</sup> *Pennsylvania v. Wheeling and Belmont Bridge Co.*, 9 How. 647; 11 How. 528; 13 How. 518; 18 How. 421.

<sup>2</sup> Act of August 31, 1852, 10 Stat. 110, 112, c. 111, §§ 6, 7.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Post-office and  
Post-roads.

ferred to regulate commerce among the several States.”<sup>1</sup>

E. *Copyright, Patents and Trade Marks.*

Copyrights.

Article I, section 8, paragraph 8. “To promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries.” In regard to copyrights, Congress early exercised the power thus conferred,<sup>2</sup> and still does so. It is held that an author’s right of property in his published works exists only under the provisions of the statutes thus enacted.<sup>3</sup>

The Act of March 3, 1891, amending the Revised Statutes, authorizes a copyright to be granted to a foreigner; but it provides in section 13 that “this act shall only apply to a citizen or subject of a foreign state or nation, when such foreign state or nation permits to citizens of the United States of America the benefit of copyright on substantially the same basis as its

<sup>1</sup> *Pennsylvania v. Wheeling and Belmont Bridge Co.*, 18 How. 421, 430.

<sup>2</sup> Act of May 31, 1790, 1 Stat. 124, c. 15; Act of April 29, 1802, 2 Stat. 171, c. 36; Act of February 3, 1831, 4 Stat. 436, c. 16; Act of August 10, 1846, 9 Stat. 106, c. 178, § 10; Act of March 3, 1855, 10 Stat. 685, c. 199, § 5; Act of August 18, 1858, 11 Stat. 138, c. 169; Act of February 5, 1859, 11 Stat. 380, c. 22, § 8; Act of February 18, 1867, 14 Stat. 395, c. 43; Act of July 8, 1870, 16 Stat. 198, c. 230, §§ 85–110; Rev. Stat. §§ 4948–4971; Act of June 18, 1874, 18 Stat. 78, c. 301; Act of March 3, 1879, 20 Stat. 359, c. 180, § 15; Act of August 1, 1882, 22 Stat. 181, c. 366.

<sup>3</sup> *Wheaton v. Peters*, 8 Pet. 591. See also *Banks v. Manchester*, 128 U. S. 244; *Callaghan v. Myers*, 128 U. S. 617; and *Burrow-Giles Lithographic Co. v. Sarony*, 111 U. S. 53.

own citizens; or when such foreign state or nation is a party to an international agreement which provides for reciprocity in the granting of copyright, by the terms of which agreement the United States of America may, at its pleasure, become a party to such agreement.”<sup>1</sup>

Legislation was also had upon the subject of patents for inventions in the First Congress. The act was entitled “An act to promote the progress of useful arts.”<sup>2</sup> As in the case of copyrights, etc., so here, after changes and amendments, the statutes were consolidated in 1871<sup>3</sup> into one statute which embraced the three subjects of Patents, Copyrights and Trade Marks, and from thence was codified into the Revised Statutes.<sup>4</sup> The law as thus codified has been since amended.<sup>5</sup>

It has been held, over and over again, that unless a machine is novel, and unless it called for the inventive faculty to produce it, as distinguished from what existed before it, it is not patentable. It is also held that the discovery that a force of nature can be applied to a useful result is not patentable, unless some practicable way is pointed out for its application.<sup>6</sup>

The subject of trade marks is now classified with copyrights and patents in the legislation of

<sup>1</sup> 26 Stat. 1106, c. 565.

<sup>2</sup> Act of April 10, 1800, 1 Stat. 109, c. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Act of July 8, 1870, 16 Stat. 198, c. 230, §§ 1-76.

<sup>4</sup> Revised Stat. §§ 4882-4936.

<sup>5</sup> Act of February 4, 1887, 24 Stat. 387, c. 105.

<sup>6</sup> *O'Reilly v. Morse*, 15 How. 62; *The Telephone Cases*, 126 U. S. 1.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Trade marks.

Congress, already referred to, subsequent to 1869. In the *Trade Mark Cases*,<sup>1</sup> which were decided at October Term, 1879, this legislation was before the Supreme Court, and it was held that a trade mark being "neither an invention, a discovery, nor a writing, within the meaning of the eighth clause of the eighth section of the First Article of the Constitution, and the legislation respecting it not being limited to the use of trade marks in 'commerce with foreign nations and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes,'" it was "void for want of constitutional authority."

But, although the right of property in it might not have been derived from legislation of Congress under its constitutional powers, it was clear, and was so held, that the right to such property had long been recognized by the common law and by the Chancery courts of England. Congress at once legislated under the powers conferred upon it by the commerce clause of the Constitution.<sup>2</sup> The title to such property is now sustained when the person who asserts ownership in it shows a just claim to protection.<sup>3</sup>

F. *Piracies and Felonies on the High Seas.*

Piracy, etc.

Article I, section 8, paragraph 10, authorizes Congress "to define and punish Piracies and

<sup>1</sup> *Trade Mark Cases*, 100 U. S. 82, 92.

<sup>2</sup> Act of March 3, 1881, 21 Stat. 502, c. 138; Act of August 5, 1882, 22 Stat. 298, c. 393.

<sup>3</sup> *Canal Co. v. Clark*, 13 Wall. 311; *Menendez v. Holt*, 128 U. S. 514; *Corbin v. Gould*, 133 U. S. 308; *Liggett and Myers Tobacco Co. v. Finzer*, 128 U. S. 514.

Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations." The Articles of Confederation conferred power "to appoint courts for the trial of piracies and felonies committed on the high seas." The Virginia draft extended this power by providing that Congress might "declare the law and punishment of piracies and felonies at sea;" and the Constitution, as adopted, adds to those "offences against the law of nations." A foreign vessel, "by assuming a piratical character, is no longer included in the description of a foreign vessel;" and the vessel, if the piratical act be committed "in an open road, may well be found by a jury to be on the seas."<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Piracy, etc.

The provisions in the Act of Congress of August 18, 1856, codified in Title 72 of the Revised Statutes, which authorize the President to declare guano islands to be "appertaining to the United States, and which provide that crimes and offences committed on such islands shall be deemed to have been done or committed on the high seas on board a merchant ship or vessel belonging to the United States, and be punished according to the laws of the United States relating to such ships or vessels and offences on the high seas," was lately before the Supreme Court for construction. It was held that that act did "not assume to extend the admiralty jurisdiction over land, but merely extends the provisions of the statutes of the United States for the pun-

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. The Pirates*, 5 Wheat. 184, 198, 200.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Piracy, etc.

ishment of offences upon the high seas to like offences upon guano islands, which the President has determined should be considered as appertaining to the United States ;” and that a person charged with the offence of “murder committed on a guano island, which has been determined by the President to appertain to the United States, may be tried in the courts of the United States for the district into which the offender is first brought.”<sup>1</sup>

G. *The National Defence.*

National defence.

Article I, section 8, paragraphs 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16 conferred upon Congress power “to declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water; to raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years; to provide and maintain a Navy; to make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces; to provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions; to provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the Discipline prescribed by Congress.”

---

<sup>1</sup> *Jones v. United States*, 137 U. S. 202.

These provisions relating to the means of LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
National defence. national defence and self-protection are simple, and the most natural division of powers in a Federal Government. The provision as to appropriations for paying the land forces was not in either draft. It was put in by the Convention, undoubtedly prompted by the same jealousy of executive power which had established a similar custom in Great Britain. The Pinckney draft gave the United States power "to subdue a rebellion in any State on application of its legislature, and to call forth the aid of the militia," not only "to execute the laws of the Union," "enforce treaties," and "repel invasions," but also "to suppress insurrections."

In the war of 1812 the right of the President to order State militia to duty outside the State was denied by the State of Massachusetts; but, in the much greater war of the rebellion, the militia of most of the Northern States was more than once ordered on duty outside of its own State, and responded without question or hesitation.

The power over the militia thus reserved to the States is so complete that a State may, unless restrained by its own constitution, enact laws to prevent any body of men whatever, other than the regularly organized volunteer militia of the State, and the troops of the United States, from associating themselves together as a military company or organization, or to drill or parade with arms in any place within the State, without the consent of the governor of the State.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Presser v. Illinois*, 116 U. S. 252.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
National defence.

The power to declare war, and thus make active use of the other powers necessary, found its place in the Constitution from necessity. There could be no sovereignty without it. But the necessity for such active use can be made equally necessary by a declaration of war against the United States, as in the case of the war with Mexico, or by an active war against it, as in the war of the rebellion.

A state of war does not change the relation of a citizen to his government, or displace the civil authorities outside the theatre of conflict;<sup>1</sup> what it may do there depends upon the circumstances and exigencies of the case.<sup>2</sup>

#### H. *The District of Columbia.*

District of Columbia.

Article I, section 8, paragraph 17, authorizes Congress "to exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, Dock Yards and other needful Buildings."

Under this authority the cession of the District of Columbia was made to the United States

<sup>1</sup> *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Mitchel v. Harmony*, 13 How. 115.

by the States of Maryland and Virginia.<sup>1</sup> The portion ceded by Virginia was subsequently retroceded to that State.<sup>2</sup> The local laws of each State existing at the time of the cession remained in force, so far as they affected rights of property, and except as changed by Congress.<sup>3</sup> The municipal forms of government in the several municipalities also continued, except as changed by Congress. For a short time a Territorial government was put in operation in the District,<sup>4</sup> but this was soon discontinued,<sup>5</sup> and the District is now only a municipal corporation.<sup>6</sup> A most competent authority has questioned the power of Congress to delegate the legislative authority once acquired through this clause of the Constitution.<sup>7</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
District of Columbia.

### 3. *Restrictions in Section 9 upon the Power of Congress.*

#### A. *The African Slave Trade.*

Article I, section 9. This section is entirely taken up with statements of what Congress may not do. All the important provisions in it have

<sup>1</sup> Act of July 16, 1790, 1 Stat. 130, c. 28; Act of March 3, 1791, 1 Stat. 214, c. 17; Proclamation of President Washington, January 24, 1791, 11 Stat. 751.

<sup>2</sup> Act of July 9, 1846, 9 Stat. 35, c. 35; President Polk's proclamation of September 7, 1846, 9 Stat. 1000.

<sup>3</sup> *Thaw v. Ritchie*, 136 U. S. 519.

<sup>4</sup> Act of February 21, 1871, 16 Stat. 419, c. 62.

<sup>5</sup> Act of June 20, 1874, 18 Stat. 116, c. 337.

<sup>6</sup> *Metropolitan Railroad Co. v. District of Columbia*, 132 U. S. See *Geofroy v. Riggs*, 133 U. S. 258.

<sup>7</sup> Cooley's Principles of Constitutional Law, 90, 91.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Slave trade.

been treated by Mr. Justice Miller. It only remains to notice a few of the less important ones. Paragraph 1 provides that "The Migration of Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or Duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person." This is a euphonious way of referring to the African slave trade, and it was a settlement by compromise of a question which caused some trouble in the Convention. The capitation tax was never imposed; and, on the 2d of March, 1807, Congress prohibited the importation of slaves into any port or place within the jurisdiction of the United States from and after January 1, 1808.<sup>1</sup>

B. *Direct Taxes.*

Direct taxes.

Paragraph 4. "No Capitation, or other direct Tax, shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken." It has been held by the Supreme Court, in construing this clause of the Constitution, that "only capitation taxes as expressed in that instrument, and taxes on real estate" are direct taxes.<sup>2</sup> The same authority has settled that a carriage tax,<sup>3</sup> or an income

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of March 2, 1807, 2 Stat. 426, c. 22.

<sup>2</sup> *Springer v. United States*, 102 U. S. 586.

<sup>3</sup> *Hylton v. United States*, 3 Dall. 171.

tax,<sup>1</sup> or a tax on the circulation of banks,<sup>2</sup> or an internal revenue license tax,<sup>3</sup> is not a direct tax within the meaning of the Constitution. In 1861 Congress resorted to this mode of taxation, and enacted "that a direct tax of twenty millions of dollars be, and is hereby, annually laid upon the United States ;<sup>4</sup> but in 1862, after one such tax had been assessed, it was suspended until April 1, 1865.<sup>5</sup> And in 1864 it was suspended until Congress should enact another law requiring it.<sup>6</sup> No such law was enacted ; and during the late session of Congress the sums collected under the act of 1861 were restored to the States which paid them.<sup>7</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Direct taxes.

#### 4. *Article II. The President.*

Section 1, paragraph 5. This paragraph confers upon the Vice-President the powers and functions of the President, in case of his removal, death, resignation, or inability. It was called into play four times during the first century of the Government — twice in consequence of the assassination of the President. The paragraph also authorizes Congress to declare what officer shall act as President in case of the removal, etc., of both President and Vice-President. The

Succession on the  
death of a President.

<sup>1</sup> *Pacific Insurance Co. v. Soule*, 7 Wall. 433.

<sup>2</sup> *Veazie Bank v. Fenno*, 8 Wall. 533.

<sup>3</sup> *License Tax Cases*, 5 Wall. 462.

<sup>4</sup> Act of August 5, 1861, 12 Stat. c. 45, § 8, p. 294.

<sup>5</sup> Act of July 1, 1862, 12 Stat. c. 119, § 119, p. 489.

<sup>6</sup> Act of June 30, 1864, 13 Stat. c. 173, § 173, p. 304.

<sup>7</sup> Act of March 2, 1891, 26 Stat. 822, c. 496.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Succession on the  
death of a President.

latest action of Congress in this matter confers the power and duty in such case, first upon the Secretary of State; then upon the Secretary of the Treasury; then upon the Secretary of War; then upon the Attorney General; then upon the Postmaster General; then upon the Secretary of the Navy; and, lastly, upon the Secretary of the Interior.<sup>1</sup> In the time of Washington the Secretary of State, then called Secretary for Foreign Affairs, was the ranking officer of the Cabinet. The others ranked according to the creation of the department over which each presided. Jefferson followed this rule in all the departments, thus giving the Secretary of State the ranking place. The rule has been steadily adhered to since, until Congress, for some unknown reason, gave to the Attorney General and the Postmaster General precedence over the Secretary of the Navy in this statute.

Oath of office.

Paragraph 7 of this section relates to the oath of office to be taken by the President. This is usually taken in front of the Capitol, and in the presence of both Houses of Congress. In President Hayes's case, however, as the fourth of March fell upon Sunday, it was deemed wise, in view of the peculiar circumstances, to have it also administered at the Executive Mansion in advance of its administration at the Capitol on the fifth of March.

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of January 19, 1886, 24 Stat. 1, c. 4.

5. *Article IV. Interstate relations and duties. The Territories. Republican form of Government.*

Article III, relating to judicial power, has LECTURE XIII. been fully treated by Mr. Justice Miller in Lectures VII and VIII, leaving nothing further to be said. We will confine ourselves therefore to Article IV.

A. *Judicial Proceedings and Public Acts and Records of a State.*

Section 1. "Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the Public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State." They are to have full faith and credit in other States.

It was held in a recent case, following a long line of decisions, that this "does not preclude inquiry into the jurisdiction of the court, in which a judgment is rendered over the subject matter or the parties affected by it, nor into the facts necessary to give such jurisdiction."<sup>1</sup> In a still more recent case<sup>2</sup> the matter came up in a novel form, the question being whether a judgment in a State court which was not responsive to the pleadings, rendered against a defendant who appeared, but took no part in the subsequent litigation which ended in the judgment, estopped him from contesting the matter on the merits in an action brought in another State. The court held that he was not estopped, and, in the course of its opinion, delivered by Mr. Justice Brewer, said: "The section of the Federal Con-

<sup>1</sup> *Simmons v. Saul*, 138 U. S. 439.

<sup>2</sup> *Reynolds v. Stockton*, 140 U. S. 254.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
They are to have  
full faith and  
credit in other  
States.

stitution which is invoked by plaintiffs is section 1 of Article IV, which provides that 'full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State.' Under that section the full faith and credit demanded is only that faith and credit which the judicial proceedings had in the other State in and of themselves require. It does not demand that a judgment rendered in a court of one State, without the jurisdiction of the person, shall be recognized by the courts of another State as valid, or that a judgment rendered by a court which has jurisdiction of the person, but which is in no way responsive to the issues tendered by the pleadings and is rendered in the actual absence of the defendant, must be recognized as valid in the courts of any other State. The requirements of that section are fulfilled when a judgment rendered in a court of one State, which has jurisdiction of the subject matter and of the person, and which is substantially responsive to the issues presented by the pleadings, or is rendered under such circumstances that it is apparent that the defeated party was in fact heard on the matter determined, is recognized and enforced in the courts of another State. The scope of this constitutional provision has often been presented to and considered by this court, although the precise question here presented has not as yet received its attention. It has been adjudged that the constitutional provision does not make a judgment rendered in one State a judgment in

another State upon which execution or other process may issue; that it does not forbid inquiry in the courts of the State to which the judgment is presented, as to the jurisdiction of the court in which it was rendered over the person, or in respect to the subject matter, or, if rendered in a proceeding *in rem*, its jurisdiction of the *res*. Without referring to the many cases in which this constitutional provision has been before this court, it is enough to notice the case of *Thompson v. Whitman*, 18 Wall. 457. The view developed in the opinion in that case, as well as in prior opinions cited therein, paves the way for inquiry into the question here presented. If the fact of a judgment rendered in a court of one State does not preclude inquiry in the courts of another, as to the jurisdiction of the court rendering the judgment over the person or the subject matter, it certainly also does not preclude inquiry as to whether the judgment so rendered was so far responsive to the issues tendered by the pleadings as to be a proper exercise of jurisdiction on the part of the court rendering it."

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
They are to have  
full faith and  
credit in other  
States.

Another recent case<sup>1</sup> is instructive. One Bird, a citizen of Massachusetts, suspended payment March 2, 1885, Aaron Claflin & Co., a New York firm, being largely indebted to him. Butler, Hayden & Co., a Boston firm, citizens of Massachusetts, had a claim against Bird which, on the 6th of March they assigned to Fayer-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Cole v. Cunningham*, 133 U. S. 107.

**LECTURE XIII.**  
**Supplementary.**  
They are to have  
full faith and  
credit in other  
States.

weather, a citizen of New York. On the 11th of March Fayerweather brought an action as such assignee against Bird as defendant, and Aaron Claflin & Co. as garnishees, to recover the amount of the assigned claim. On the 25th of March another similar suit was commenced by Fayerweather. The court found that these suits "were brought in a court of competent jurisdiction, and the attachments and proceedings were regular and in conformity with the laws of New York."

Subsequent to the commencement of these suits proceedings were had against Bird under the insolvent laws of Massachusetts, and on the 1st of June, 1885, assignees were duly appointed, to whom the insolvent's property was assigned. It was stated by the court in its opinion that "under these insolvent laws all preferences were avoided, and all attachments in favor of particular creditors dissolved."

On the 19th of June, 1885, the assignees filed a bill in equity in the Supreme Court of Massachusetts, to restrain Butler, Hayden & Co. from prosecuting the New York suits to judgment and to compel them to transfer to the assignees all the rights assigned to Fayerweather. The State court rendered the decree prayed for by the assignees; and that judgment being brought to the Supreme Court of the United States by writ of error, was affirmed by a majority of the court.

The opinion of the court was delivered by Chief Justice Fuller, who, in an opinion reviewing the authorities, said: —

“The question to be determined is, whether a decree of the Supreme Judicial Court of Massachusetts, restraining citizens of that Commonwealth from the prosecution of attachment suits in New York, brought by them for the purpose of evading the laws of their domicil, should be reversed upon the ground that such judicial action in Massachusetts was in violation of Article IV, sections 1 and 2, of the Constitution of the United States. . . . The Constitution did not mean to confer any new power upon the States, but simply to regulate the effect of their acknowledged jurisdiction over persons and things within their territory. It did not make the judgments of the States domestic judgments to all intents and purposes, but only gave a general validity, faith, and credit to them as evidence. No execution can be issued upon such judgments without a new suit in the tribunals of other States, and they enjoy, not the right of priority or privilege or lien which they have in the State where they are pronounced, but that only which the *lex fori* gives to them by its own laws, in their character of foreign judgments. . . . Great contrariety of State decision exists upon this general topic, and it may be fairly stated that, as between citizens of the State of the forum and the assignee appointed under the laws of another State, the claim of the former will be held superior to that of the latter by the courts of the former; while, as between the assignee and citizens of his own State and the State of the debtor, the laws of such State will

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
They are to have  
full faith and  
credit in other  
States.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
They are to have  
full faith and  
credit in other  
States.

ordinarily be applied in the State of the litigation, unless forbidden by, or inconsistent with, the laws or policy of the latter. . . . In the case at bar the attachment suits have not gone to judgment, and the assignees in insolvency have proceeded with due diligence as against these creditors, citizens of Massachusetts, who are seeking to evade the laws of their own State; nor is there anything in the law or policy of New York opposed to the law or policy of Massachusetts in the premises."

Mr. Justice Miller delivered a dissenting opinion in which Mr. Justice Field and Mr. Justice Harlan concurred. He said: "The record introduced from the court of New York in this case had the effect, in that State, to give Butler, Hayden & Co. a lien on the indebtedness of Aaron Claflin & Co. to their creditor, Bird, which in that court would have ripened into a judgment and been enforced. That was the faith and credit which the laws of New York gave to that proceeding, . . . and there was no power in the courts of Massachusetts to interrupt the course of these proceedings to the final result. . . . When, therefore, Butler, Hayden & Co. were sued in equity in the courts of Massachusetts, and there was produced the record of these proceedings in the court of New York, the question was presented to the courts of Massachusetts what effect they would give to those proceedings. They did not give the effect which the laws of New York gave to them. . . . It is no answer to this to say that Butler, Hayden &

Co. were citizens of Massachusetts, and were found within its jurisdiction. The higher law of the Constitution of the United States places this restraint upon the courts of Massachusetts in dealing even with her own citizens, and if her citizens have obtained rights in the courts of New York which have become a part of the records and judicial proceedings of those courts, no matter how the law under which those rights may be established may be opposed to the law of the State of Massachusetts, they are to be respected by the courts of Massachusetts because they are effectual over the parties and subject matter in New York, and because the Constitution of the United States and the Act of Congress of May 26, 1790,<sup>1</sup> assert the principle that the courts of Massachusetts must give full credit, by which is meant the same effect to the proceedings in New York, which that State gives to them."

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
They are to have full faith and credit in other States.

*B. Surrender of Fugitives from Justice.*

Article IV, section 2, paragraph 2, providing for the surrender of fugitives from justice, is found in the Articles of Confederation in substantially the same language. The legislation of Congress upon this subject will be found in sections 5278, 5279, of the Revised Statutes. The responsibility of determining whether the person demanded is a fugitive from the justice of the demanding State, rests with the Executive of the State or Territory in which the accused is

Fugitives from justice.

<sup>1</sup> 1 Stat. 122, c. 11. Rev. Stat. § 905.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fugitives from  
justice.

found.<sup>1</sup> The case of the demanding State should be presented in some official form; either by official copy of an indictment, or by a complaint under oath. The right to demand surrender and the obligation to comply with the demand extend to all crimes and offences made punishable by the laws of the State where the offence was committed; but if the Governor of the State in which the accused is found refuses to surrender him, he cannot, through the judiciary department, be compelled to deliver him up.<sup>2</sup>

#### C. *Fugitive Slaves.*

Fugitive slaves.

Article IV, section 2, paragraph 3, of the same section provides for the surrender of fugitive slaves, and other persons "held to Service or Labor in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another." It was taken from the proviso in the Sixth Article of the Ordinance of 1787 for the government of the Northwest Territory,<sup>3</sup> passed in Congress while the Convention was sitting.

#### D. *The Territories.*

The Territories.

Article IV, section 3, paragraph 2, respecting the power of Congress over the Territories, was carefully considered in a late case, and it was held that this power is general and plenary, arising from the right to acquire them. This right arises from the power of the Government

<sup>1</sup> *Ex parte Reggel*, 114 U. S. 642.

<sup>2</sup> *Kentucky v. Dennison*, 24 How. 66.

<sup>3</sup> Rev. Stat. 2d ed. p. 16.

to declare war and make treaties of peace, and in part from the power to make all needful rules and regulations respecting the Territory or other property of the United States. This plenary power extends to the acts of the legislatures of the Territories.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Territories.

In the case relating to the guano islands, already referred to,<sup>2</sup> it was held that "by the law of nations, when citizens or subjects of one nation, in its name and by its authority, or with its assent, take and hold actual, continuous, and useful possession of territory unoccupied by any other government or its citizens, the nation to which they belong may exercise such jurisdiction and for such period as it sees fit over territory so acquired;" and that "courts of justice are bound to take judicial notice of the territorial extent of the jurisdiction exercised by the government whose laws they administer, or of its recognition or denial of the sovereignty of a foreign power, as appearing from the public acts of the legislature and executive, although those acts are not formally put in evidence, nor in accord with the pleadings;" and, further, that "the island of Navassa, in the Caribbean Sea, must, by reason of the action of the President," "be considered as appertaining to the United States."

#### E. *Guaranty of a Republican Form of Government.*

Article IV, section 4. "The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican form of government."

<sup>1</sup> *Mormon Church v. United States*, 136 U. S. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Jones v. United States*, 137 U. S. 202.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Republican form  
of government.

Republican Form of Government." No such provision was in the Articles of Confederation. It first appeared in the Virginia plan, of which it formed the eleventh resolution. A recent case, Chief Justice Fuller delivering the opinion, commented upon this as follows :

"By the Constitution, a republican form of government is guaranteed to every State in the Union, and the distinguishing feature of that form is the right of the people to choose their own officers for governmental administration, and pass their own laws in virtue of the legislative power reposed in representative bodies, whose legitimate acts may be said to be those of the people themselves ; but while the people are thus the source of political power, their governments, National and State, have been limited by written constitutions, and they have themselves thereby set bounds to their own power, as against the sudden impulses of mere majorities.

"In *Luther v. Borden*, 7 How. 1, it was held that the question which of the two opposing governments of Rhode Island, namely, the charter government or the government established by a voluntary convention, was the legitimate one, was a question for the determination of the political department, and when that department had decided, the courts were bound to take notice of the decision and follow it ; and also that, as the Supreme Court of Rhode Island, holding constitutional authority not in dispute, had decided the point, the well-settled rule applied that the courts of the United States

adopt and follow the decisions of the State courts on questions which concern merely the constitution and laws of the State. Mr. Webster's argument in that case took a wider sweep and contained a masterly statement of the American system of government, as recognizing that the people are the source of all political power, but that as the exercise of governmental powers immediately by the people themselves is impracticable, they must be exercised by representatives of the people; that the basis of representation is suffrage; that the right of suffrage must be protected and its exercise prescribed by previous law, and the results ascertained by some certain rule; that through its regulated exercise each man's power tells in the Constitution of the Government and in the enactment of laws; that the people limit themselves in regard to the qualifications of electors and the qualifications of the elected, and to certain forms for the conduct of elections; that our liberty is the liberty secured by the regular action of popular power, taking place and ascertained in accordance with legal and authentic modes; and that the Constitution and laws do not proceed on the ground of revolution or any right of revolution, but on the idea of results achieved by orderly action under the authority of existing governments, proceedings outside of which are not contemplated by our institutions. Webster's Works, vol. 6, p. 217." <sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Republican form  
of government.

---

<sup>1</sup> *In re Duncan, Petitioner*, 139 U. S. 449, 461.

### 6. *Article V. Amendments to the Constitution.*

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Amendments.

This article makes no provision for the withdrawal of its ratification by a State which has ratified the amendment, the withdrawal taking place before the necessary assent of three-fourths of the States is secured.

In the case of the Fourteenth Amendment there were some States which rejected the amendment and subsequently ratified it. Their votes were counted in making the necessary three-fourths. There were other States (New Jersey and Ohio) which ratified it and withdrew the ratification before the result was obtained. The votes of all were counted in making up the necessary two-thirds required by the Constitution.

In the case of the Fifteenth Amendment, one State attempted to withdraw its assent; but it was immaterial whether it was counted or not, as there were sufficient ratifying States without it.

The subject is considered further in connection with those amendments.

### 7. *Article VI. Debts of the United States. Supremacy of the Constitution.*

#### A. *Revolutionary Debt of the United States.*

Revolutionary  
debt of the United  
States.

Paragraph 1 provides for the assumption by the new Government of the existing debt of the old Government. This was done by an early act of Congress, in which, after reciting that "justice and the support of public credit require that provision should be made for fulfilling the

engagements of the United States in respect to their foreign debt, and for funding their domestic debt upon equitable and satisfactory terms," legislative provisions were enacted which restored confidence and credit, and inspired faith in the new Government. In a later section in the act, after reciting that "whereas a provision for the debts of the respective States by the United States, would be greatly conducive to an orderly, economical, and effectual arrangement of the public finances," a loan of \$21,500,000 was proposed to the different States, to assist them in restoring their credit.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Revolutionary  
debt of the United  
States.

B. *The Constitution the Supreme Law.*

Article VI, paragraph 2. "This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States, which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land." It is elementary that a State statute, in conflict with a law of Congress upon a subject about which Congress may constitutionally legislate, is void. So, too, a State statute is void if it relates to a subject which is vested exclusively in Congress by the

Supremacy of the  
Constitution.

<sup>1</sup> Act of August 4, 1790, 1 Stat. 138, c. 34. See also Act of August 10, 1790, 1 Stat. 180, c. 39; Act of August 12, 1790, 1 Stat. 186, c. 47; Act of December 27, 1790, 1 Stat. 188, c. 1; Act of May 8, 1792, 1 Stat. 281, c. 38; Act of March 2, 1793, 1 Stat. 338, c. 26; Act of May 30, 1794, 1 Stat. 370, c. 36; Act of January 28, 1795, 1 Stat. 410, c. 18; Act of February 19, 1796, 1 Stat. 448, c. 2; Act of March 3, 1797, 1 Stat. 516, c. 25.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Supremacy of the  
Constitution.

Constitution.<sup>1</sup> A treaty, although its obligations in regard to the other party to it remain in force, is, as a part of the supreme law of the land, subject to be revoked or modified as to its municipal operation, by act of Congress, like any other law.<sup>2</sup>

### 8. *The First Ten Amendments.*

The first ten  
amendments.

The first Congress proposed at its first session, in the manner prescribed by Article V of the Constitution, twelve amendments for the consideration of the several States. Ten of these were ratified by the States as shown in the margin.<sup>3</sup> The two which were never ratified are also printed in the margin.<sup>4</sup> The ratified articles

<sup>1</sup> *Head Money Cases*, 112 U. S. 580; *Wabash, St. Louis & Pacific Railway Co. v. Illinois*, 118 U. S. 557.

<sup>2</sup> *Head Money Cases*, 112 U. S. 580.

<sup>3</sup> By New Jersey, 20th November, 1789; by Maryland, 19th December, 1789; by North Carolina, 22d December, 1789; by South Carolina, 19th January, 1790; by New Hampshire, 25th January, 1790; by Delaware, 28th January, 1790; by Pennsylvania, 10th March, 1790; by New York, 27th March, 1790; by Rhode Island, 15th June, 1790; by Vermont, 3d November, 1791; by Virginia, 15th December, 1791.

<sup>4</sup> Article the First. After the first enumeration required by the First Article of the Constitution, there shall be one Representative for every thirty thousand, until the number shall amount to one hundred, after which, the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress, that there shall not be less than one hundred Representatives, nor less than one Representative for every forty thousand persons, until the number of Representatives shall amount to two hundred; after which the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress, that there shall not be less than two hundred Representatives, nor more than one Representative for every fifty thousand persons.

Article Second. No law, varying the compensation for the services of the Senators and Representatives, shall take effect, until an election of Representatives shall have intervened.

are known as the first ten amendments, and have been repeatedly held to be restraints upon the power of Congress, and not restraints upon the power of the States.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The first ten  
amendments.

#### A. Amendment I.

This amendment provides that "Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion or prohibiting the free exercise thereof," etc. In deciding the *Mormon Cases*, the Supreme Court held that the pretence of a religious belief in polygamy could not deprive Congress of the power to prohibit it, as well as all other open offences, against the enlightened sentiment of mankind.<sup>1</sup>

First Amendment.

#### B. Amendment II.

"A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to bear Arms shall not be infringed." This provision is a limitation only on the power of Congress, and not upon the power of the States; and, unless restrained by their own constitutions, State legislatures may enact statutes to control and regulate all organizations, drilling and parading of military bodies and associations, except those which are authorized by the militia laws of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

Second Amendment.

<sup>1</sup> *Mormon Church v. United States*, 136 U. S. 1. See also *Reynolds v. United States*, 98 U. S. 145; *Murphy v. Ramsey*, 114 U. S. 15.

<sup>2</sup> *Presser v. Illinois*, 116 U. S. 252.

C. *Amendment III.*

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Third Amend-  
ment.

“No Soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.” This amendment seems to have been thought necessary. It does not appear to have been the subject of judicial exposition; and it is so thoroughly in accord with all our ideas, that further comment is unnecessary.

D. *Amendments IV and V.*

Fourth Amend-  
ment.

“The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.”

Fifth Amend-  
ment.

“No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.”

These two amendments were considered together by the Supreme Court in a recent case,<sup>1</sup> in which a section of an act to amend the customs revenue laws,<sup>2</sup> which authorized a court of the United States, in revenue cases, on motion of the attorney for the Government, to require the defendant to produce in court his private books, invoices, and papers, or else the allegations of the Government be taken as confessed, was brought before it for construction.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fifth Amend-  
ment.

The court gave the case a careful consideration, and, in deciding it, delivered an opinion which may be read with profit. The substance of the decision was, that these provisions were repugnant both to the Fourth and Fifth Amendments to the Constitution.

As to the Fourth Amendment, it was held that no actual entry upon premises, and physical search for and seizure of papers, was necessary in order to constitute an unreasonable search and seizure within the meaning of that amendment; that a compulsory production of them, to be used against their owner in a criminal or penal proceeding, or for a forfeiture, was within the spirit and meaning of that amendment; and that it was equivalent to a compulsory production of papers, to make their non-production a confession of the allegations which it was pretended they would prove.

As to the Fifth Amendment, it was held that

---

<sup>1</sup> *Boyd v. The United States*, 116 U. S. 616.

<sup>2</sup> Act of June 22, 1874, c. 391, 18 Stat. 186.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fifth Amend-  
ment.

a proceeding to forfeit a person's goods for an offence against the law, though civil in form, and whether *in rem* or *in personam* was in fact a criminal case within the meaning of the provision in that amendment, that "no person shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself;" and that the seizure or compulsory production of a man's private papers, to be used in evidence against him, was equivalent to compelling him to be a witness against himself, and, in a prosecution for a crime, penalty, or forfeiture, was within the prohibition of that amendment.

As to both amendments, it was held that they related to the personal security of the citizen; that they nearly run into and mutually throw light upon each other; that when the thing forbidden in the Fifth Amendment — the compelling a man to be a witness against himself — is the object of a search and seizure of his private papers, it is an "unreasonable search and seizure," within the meaning of the Fourth Amendment; and that, as a rule, "constitutional provisions for the security of person and property should be liberally construed."

E. Amendments VI and VII.

Sixth and Seventh  
Amendments.

The Sixth Amendment relates to jury trials in criminal cases, and the Seventh Amendment to jury trials in suits at the common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars. Both have been fully considered.

F. *Amendment VIII.*

“Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.” These provisions apply to National and not to State legislation.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Eighth Amend-  
ment.

In *Kemmler's Case*,<sup>2</sup> where an attempt was made to convince the court that execution by the application of an electric current was a “cruel and unusual punishment within the intent of the Eighth Amendment,” the court said: “The provision in reference to cruel and unusual punishments was taken from the well-known Act of Parliament of 1688, entitled ‘An act declaring the rights and liberties of the subject, and settling the succession of the crown;’ in which, after rehearsing various grounds of grievance, and, among others, that excessive bail hath been required of persons committed in criminal cases, to elude the benefits of the laws made for the liberty of the subject; and excessive fines have been imposed; and illegal and cruel punishments inflicted. This Declaration of Rights had reference to the acts of the executive and judicial departments of the government of England; but the language in question, as used in the constitution of the State of New York, was intended particularly to operate upon the legislature of the State, to whose control the punishment of crime was almost entirely confided. So that, if the punishment prescribed for an

<sup>1</sup> *Pervear v. Commonwealth*, 5 Wall. 475.

<sup>2</sup> 136 U. S. 436.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Eighth Amend-  
ment.

offence against the laws of the State were manifestly cruel and unreasonable, as burning at the stake, crucifixion, breaking on the wheel, or the like, it would be the duty of the courts to adjudge such penalties to be within the constitutional prohibition. And we think this equally true of the Eighth Amendment, in its application to Congress."

G. *Amendment IX.*

Ninth Amend-  
ment.

"The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people." This principle of construction is manifestly just, and would doubtless have obtained, even if it had not been inserted in the Constitution.

H. *Amendment X.*

Tenth Amend-  
ment.

"The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively or to the people." The old Articles of Confederation presented this principle of construction in a much broader shape. Article II provided that "Each State retains its sovereignty, freedom, and independence, and every power, jurisdiction, and right which is not, by this confederation, expressly delegated to the United States in Congress assembled." As originally adopted the Constitution contained no equivalent for this canon of construction. The Tenth Amendment was intended to serve as a compromise between the two extreme

views. It will be observed that the controlling word, "expressly," found in the Articles of Confederation, is omitted in the amendment. Although the advocates of State's rights did not fail to contend that the two were substantial equivalents, notwithstanding the omission, their views were never adopted by the judicial department, and it may now be said to be well settled that Congress, under the operation of the eighteenth paragraph of section 8, Article I, which authorizes it "to make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers," has by implication every power necessary and proper for fully carrying into execution the powers expressly conferred.<sup>1</sup> One of the latest expressions of the court on this point is as follows: "A constitution, establishing a frame of government, declaring fundamental principles, and creating a national sovereignty, and intended to endure for ages, and to be adapted to the various crises of human affairs, is not to be interpreted with the strictness of a private contract. The Constitution of the United States, by apt words of designation or general description, marks the outlines of the powers granted to the national legislature; but it does not undertake, with the precision and detail of a code of laws, to enumerate the subdivisions of those powers, or to specify all the means by which they may be carried into execution."

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Tenth Amend-  
ment.

---

<sup>1</sup> *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Tenth Amend-  
ment.

Commenting upon the eighteenth paragraph of section 8, just cited, the court continued: "By the settled construction and the only reasonable interpretation of this clause, the words 'necessary and proper' are not limited to such measures as are absolutely and indispensably necessary, without which the powers granted must fail of execution; but they include all appropriate means which are conducive or adapted to the end to be accomplished, and which, in the judgment of Congress, will most advantageously effect it." And, referring to *McCulloch v. Maryland*, the court said: "The rule of interpretation thus laid down has been constantly adhered to and acted on by this court."<sup>1</sup>

### 9. *The Eleventh Amendment.*

Eleventh Amend-  
ment.

This amendment, which relates to suits against States, has been already fully considered both in the lectures, and in the notes upon them. *Chisholm v. Georgia*,<sup>2</sup> was the direct and impelling cause for it. The States came out from the war of the revolution burdened with debt. Although Congress had made provision for taking care of a part of that debt, a large amount was still outstanding. When they learned that a State could be sued in the Federal courts, they hurried to make that an impossibility thereafter, Massachusetts taking the lead. The Eleventh Amendment, which effected that result, was

<sup>1</sup> *Legal Tender Case*, 110 U. S. 421, 439, 440, 441.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Dall. 419.

proposed by Congress March 5, 1794, and was proclaimed January 8, 1798. It is a little remarkable that the decision which made it necessary should have been practically overruled nearly a hundred years after it was made.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Eleventh Amend-  
ment.

#### 10. *The Twelfth Amendment.*

This amendment grew out of the trouble in the election of Mr. Jefferson as President. It was proposed by Congress to the legislatures of the several States December 12, 1803, and was proclaimed as adopted September 25, 1804.

Twelfth Amend-  
ment.

#### 11. *The Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments.*

All these amendments were the outcome of the war and of the Reconstruction which followed it. The Thirteenth was proposed to the States by Congress by joint resolution dated February 1, 1865, before the close of the war, and was promulgated by the Secretary of State pursuant to law, as a part of the Constitution, December 18, 1865, having received the assent of the legislatures of twenty-seven States, being three-fourths of the States, thirty-six in all.<sup>2</sup>

Thirteenth, Four-  
teenth, and  
Fifteenth Amend-  
ments.

The Fourteenth Amendment was submitted by Congress to the States June 16, 1866,<sup>3</sup> after the majority in that body and President Johnson had separated on the question of reconstruction. Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State, issued

<sup>1</sup> *Hans v. Louisiana*, 134 U. S. 1.

<sup>2</sup> See 13 Stat. 774, 775.

<sup>3</sup> 14 Stat. 358 ; Joint Resolution No. 48.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment how  
ratified.

two promulgations of this amendment. The first was dated July 20, 1868.<sup>1</sup> It recited that no law "expressly or by conclusive implication, authorizes the Secretary of State to determine and decide doubtful questions as to the authenticity of the organization of State legislatures, or as to the power of any State legislature to recall a previous act or resolution of ratification of any amendment proposed to the Constitution." It then further recited that the assent of Arkansas, Florida, North Carolina, Louisiana, South Carolina, and Alabama had been given "by newly constituted and newly established bodies, avowing themselves to be and acting as the legislatures respectively" of those States; and that the assent of Ohio and New Jersey, once given, had been withdrawn by subsequent resolutions of their legislatures, and that it was "deemed a matter of doubt and uncertainty whether such resolutions are not irregular, invalid, and therefore ineffectual for withdrawing the consent of the said two States." The document closed by saying that "if the resolutions of the legislatures of Ohio and New Jersey, ratifying the aforesaid amendment, are to be deemed as remaining of full force and effect, . . . then the aforesaid amendment has been ratified."

This document, issued on the 20th. of June, 1868, was not accompanied by the order of publication required by the Act of April 20, 1818.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> 15 Stat. 706; Proclamation No. 11.

<sup>2</sup> 3 Stat. 439, c. 80, § 2.

On the next day, July 21, 1868, Congress, by a joint resolution, resolved: <sup>1</sup> "Whereas the legislatures of the States of . . . New Jersey . . . Ohio . . . Arkansas, Florida, North Carolina, Alabama, South Carolina, and Louisiana [naming twenty-nine States, including the Southern States supposed doubtful, and the Northern States which attempted to withdraw their ratifications] have ratified the Fourteenth Article of Amendment, . . . therefore *Resolved* . . . that said Fourteenth Article is hereby declared to be a part of the Constitution of the United States, and it shall be duly promulgated as such by the Secretary of State."

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment how  
ratified.

This seemed to solve Mr. Seward's doubts. On the 28th of July, 1868, he issued a second proclamation,<sup>2</sup> ordering the amendment published in the newspapers, and certifying that it had "been adopted" and that it had "become valid to all intents and purposes as a part of the Constitution of the United States." Since then many cases have been before the Supreme Court, involving the construction of this article; but in no one has any question been raised as to its ratification and incorporation into the Constitution.

In the case of the Fifteenth Amendment, the legislature of New York in 1870 attempted to withdraw the ratification given by its predecessor in 1869. The Secretary of State, Mr. Fish, in proclaiming the adoption of the amendment, said: "It appears from an official document on

---

<sup>1</sup> 15 Stat. 709.

<sup>2</sup> 15 Stat. 708.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment how  
ratified.

file that the legislature of the State of New York has since passed resolutions claiming to withdraw the said ratification."<sup>1</sup> In this case it would have made no difference in the result if the withdrawal had been treated as valid.

#### A. *The Thirteenth Amendment.*

Thirteenth  
Amendment re-  
lates to slavery.

This amendment relates entirely to slavery and involuntary servitude (which it abolishes); and, although by its reflex action, it establishes universal freedom in the United States, and Congress may probably pass laws directly enforcing its provisions, yet such legislative power extends only to the subject of slavery and its incidents; and the denial of equal accommodations in inns, public conveyances, and places of public amusement (which is forbidden by the sections in question), imposes no badge of slavery or involuntary servitude upon the party, but at most, infringes rights which are protected from State aggression by the Fourteenth Amendment.<sup>2</sup>

Mr. Justice Miller, in his opinion in the *Slaughter House Cases*, from which he quotes at length in Lecture VIII, makes this clear. In the headnote to that case, in the structure of which his hand is apparent, it is said of the three amendments which followed the war, that the main purpose of all was the freedom of the African race, the security and perpetuation of that freedom, and their protection from the

<sup>1</sup> 16 Stat. 1131.

<sup>2</sup> *Civil Rights Cases*, 109 U. S. 3.

oppressions of the white men who had formerly held them in slavery.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Thirteenth  
Amendment re-  
lates to slavery.

While the Thirteenth Article of Amendment was intended primarily to abolish African slavery, it equally forbids Mexican peonage or the Chinese coolie trade, when they amount to slavery or involuntary servitude; and the use of the word "servitude" is intended to prohibit all forms of involuntary slavery of whatever class or name.<sup>1</sup>

So, too, its effect is limited to matters subsequent to its adoption. A contract for the sale of a slave made before the war, was enforced in the courts after the adoption of this amendment;<sup>2</sup> and in another, and very recent case, a surviving partner, in possession of slaves and using them on the partnership plantation during the war, was held accountable for the value of their services.<sup>3</sup>

Is limited to mat-  
ters subsequent to  
its adoption.

The first and second sections of the Civil Rights Act of March 1, 1875, are unconstitutional enactments as applied to the several States, not being authorized either by the Thirteenth or Fourteenth Amendments.<sup>4</sup>

#### B. *The Fourteenth Amendment.*

This amendment is a much larger matter. (1) It relates to citizenship: and (2) to the priv-  
ileges and immunities of citizens. (3) It im-

The Fourteenth  
Amendment.

<sup>1</sup> *Slaughter House Cases*, 16 Wall. 36.

<sup>2</sup> *Osborn v. Nicholson*, 13 Wall. 654.

<sup>3</sup> *Clay v. Field*, 138 U. S. 464.

<sup>4</sup> *Civil Rights Cases*, 109 U. S. 3.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
(General considerations.

poses limitations upon State power. (4) It deals with the apportionment of representation. (5) It excludes certain classes of persons from the exercise of certain political privileges: and (6) it forbids the invalidating of the public debt of the United States, or the assumption of any debt incurred in aid of the rebellion or any claim for the loss or emancipation of slaves. I shall attempt to classify the leading cases under these heads. Before doing this some general propositions, decided by the Supreme Court, should be stated, which are applicable to all.

That amendment was ordained to secure equal rights to all persons. To render its purpose effectual, Congress is vested with power to enforce its provisions by appropriate legislation. Such legislation must act, not upon the abstract thing denominated a State, but upon the persons who are its agents in the denial of the rights which were intended to be secured. Such is the Act of March 1, 1875, and it is fully authorized by the Constitution.<sup>1</sup>

On the other hand, it was not designed to interfere with the power of a State to protect the lives, liberty, and property of its citizens, nor with the exercise of that power in the adjudications of the courts of the State in administering the process provided by its laws. Therefore, when a person accused of crime within a State is subjected, like all other persons in the State, to the law in its regular course

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ex parte Virginia*, 100 U. S. 339.

of administration in courts of justice, the judgment so arrived at cannot be held to be an unrestrained and arbitrary exercise of power, and therefore void.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
General considerations.

Nor can a State be deemed guilty of violating its obligations under the Constitution because its highest court, while acting within its jurisdiction, decides erroneously.<sup>2</sup>

In the *Civil Rights Cases*<sup>3</sup> it is held that this amendment is prohibitory upon the States only, and that the legislation authorized to be adopted by Congress for enforcing it is not *direct* legislation on the matters respecting which the States are prohibited from making or enforcing certain laws, or doing certain acts, but is *corrective* legislation, such as may be necessary or proper for counteracting and redressing the effects of such laws or acts.

Nor does this amendment impair in any way the police power of the States, nor limit the subjects in relation to which it may be exercised for the protection of its citizens.<sup>4</sup>

A municipal ordinance prohibiting from washing and ironing in public laundries and wash-houses, within defined territorial limits, from ten o'clock at night to six in the morning, is a purely police regulation, within the competency of a municipality possessed of the ordinary powers.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *In re Converse*, 137 U. S. 624.

<sup>2</sup> *Ib.*

<sup>3</sup> *Civil Rights Cases*, 109 U. S. 3.

<sup>4</sup> *Barbier v. Connolly*, 113 U. S. 27; *Soon Hing v. Crowley*, 113 U. S. 703.

<sup>5</sup> *Barbier v. Connolly*, 113 U. S. 27; see also *Powell v. Pennsylvania*, 127 U. S. 678.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
General considerations.

The guarantees of protection extend to all persons within the territorial jurisdiction of the United States, without regard to differences of race, color, or nationality;<sup>1</sup> and to corporations.<sup>2</sup>

It was not intended by it to compel the States to adopt an iron rule of equal taxation.<sup>3</sup>

#### 1. *Citizenship.*

Rights of citizenship.

The Fourteenth Amendment did not radically change the whole theory of the relations of the State and Federal Governments to each other, and of both governments to the people. The same person may be at the same time a citizen of the United States and a citizen of the State.<sup>4</sup>

The right to practice law in the State courts is not a privilege or immunity of a citizen of the United States, within the meaning of the first section of the Fourteenth Article of Amendment of the Constitution of the United States. The power of a State to prescribe the qualifications for admission to the bar of its own courts is unaffected by that amendment, and the courts cannot inquire into the reasonableness or propriety of the rules it may prescribe.<sup>5</sup>

The right of suffrage was not necessarily one of the privileges or immunities of citizenship before the adoption of the Fourteenth Amend-

<sup>1</sup> *Yick Wo. v. Hopkins*, 118 U. S. 356.

<sup>2</sup> *Santa Clara County v. Southern Pacific Railroad*, 118 U. S. 304.

<sup>3</sup> *Bell Gap Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 134 U. S. 232.

<sup>4</sup> *In re Kemmler*, 136 U. S. 436, 448.

<sup>5</sup> *Bradwell v. The State*, 16 Wall. 130.

ment, and that amendment does not add to these privileges and immunities. It simply furnishes additional guaranty for the protection of such as the citizen already had. At the time of the adoption of that amendment, suffrage was not coextensive with the citizenship of the States; nor was it at the time of the adoption of the Constitution. Neither the Constitution nor the Fourteenth Amendment made all citizens voters. A provision in a State Constitution which confines the right of voting to *male* citizens of the United States, "is no violation of the Federal Constitution. In such a State women have no right to vote."<sup>1</sup>

The Fourteenth Amendment prohibits a State from depriving any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, and from denying to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws; but it adds nothing to the rights of one citizen as against another. It simply furnishes an additional guaranty against any encroachment by the States upon the fundamental rights which belong to every citizen as a member of society. The duty of protecting all its citizens in the enjoyment of an equality of rights was originally assumed by the States, and it still remains there. The only obligation resting upon the United States is to see that the States do not deny the right. This the amendment guarantees, but no more. The power of the National

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Rights of citizen-  
ship.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Minor v. Happersett*, 21 Wall. 162.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Rights of citizen-  
ship.

Government is limited to the enforcement of this guaranty.<sup>1</sup>

An Indian, born a member of one of the Indian tribes within the United States, which still exists and is recognized as a tribe by the Government of the United States, who has voluntarily separated himself from his tribe, and taken up his residence among the white citizens of a State, but who has not been naturalized, or taxed, or recognized as a citizen, either by the United States or by the State, is not a citizen of the United States, within the meaning of the first section of the Fourteenth Article of Amendment of the Constitution.<sup>2</sup>

The provision in the Fourteenth Amendment that "no State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States," does not prevent a State from passing such laws to regulate the privileges and immunities of its own citizens as do not abridge their privileges and immunities as citizens of the United States.<sup>3</sup>

Those subjects of the Emperor of China who have the right to temporarily or permanently reside within the United States, are entitled to enjoy the protection guaranteed by the Constitution and afforded by the laws.<sup>4</sup>

Corporations are persons within the meaning of the clauses of the Fourteenth Amendment to

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Cruikshank*, 92 U. S. 542.

<sup>2</sup> *Elk v. Wilkins*, 112 U. S. 94.

<sup>3</sup> *Presser v. Illinois*, 116 U. S. 252.

<sup>4</sup> *Yick Wo v. Hopkins*, 118 U. S. 356.

the Constitution concerning the deprivation of property, and concerning the equal protection of the laws.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Rights of citizen-  
ship.

## 2. *Privileges and Immunities of Citizens.*

The privileges and immunities of citizens of the United States, as distinguished from the privileges and immunities of citizens of the States, are, indeed, protected by this amendment; but those are privileges and immunities arising out of the nature and essential character of the National Government, and granted or secured by the Constitution of the United States.<sup>2</sup>

Privileges and  
immunities which  
a State may not  
take away.

A trial by jury in suits at common law pending in the State courts is not a privilege or immunity of national citizenship, which the States are forbidden by the Fourteenth Amendment of the Constitution to abridge.<sup>3</sup>

## 3. *Limitations upon State Powers.*

The article provides that "no State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States." That limitation we have already considered. It further provides: "nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws." On these prohibitions there are many decisions.

Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

<sup>1</sup> *Santa Clara County v. Southern Pacific Railroad*, 118 U. S. 394, and *Pembina Mining Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 125 U. S. 181.

<sup>2</sup> *In re Kemmler*, 136 U. S. 436, 448.

<sup>3</sup> *Walker v. Sauvinet*, 92 U. S. 90.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

In a very late case it was held, on careful consideration of a statute of California, providing for the widening of a street in San Francisco, that it provided due process of law for taking the property necessary for that purpose; and that mere errors in the administration of a State statute which was not repugnant to the Constitution, would not authorize the court to hold that the State had deprived, or was about to deprive a party of his property without due process of law.<sup>1</sup>

Due process of  
law defined.

Law, in its regular course of administration through the courts of law, is due process of law, and, when it is secured by the law of the State, the requirements of the Fourteenth Amendment are satisfied. Due process of law, within the meaning of that amendment, is secured, if the laws operate on all alike, and do not subject the individual to an arbitrary exercise of the powers of government.<sup>2</sup>

Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

When a person accused of crime within a State is subjected, like all other persons in the State, to the law in its regular course of administration in the courts of justice, the judgments so arrived at cannot be held to be such an unrestrained and arbitrary exercise of power as to be utterly void.<sup>3</sup>

The section of the act entitled "An act to protect all citizens in their civil and legal rights," approved March 1, 1875, 18 Stat. 335, c. 114,

<sup>1</sup> *Lent v. Tillson*, 140 U. S. 316.

<sup>2</sup> *Leeper v. Texas*, 139 U. S. 712.

<sup>3</sup> *In re Converse*, 137 U. S. 624.

which enacts that "no citizen, possessing all other qualifications which are or may be prescribed by law, shall be disqualified from service as grand or petit juror in any court of the United States, or of any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude; and any officer or other person, charged with any duty in the selection or summoning of jurors, who shall exclude or fail to summon any citizen for the cause aforesaid, shall, on conviction thereof, be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor, and be fined not more than \$5000," was examined and held authorized by the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments of the Constitution. The inhibition contained in the Fourteenth Amendment means that no agency of the State, or of the officers or agents by whom her powers are exerted, shall deny to any person within her jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws. Whoever by virtue of his public position under a State government deprives another of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, or denies or takes away the equal protection of the laws, violates that inhibition, and as he acts in the name of and for the State, and is clothed with her power, his act is her act. Otherwise the inhibition has no meaning, and the State has clothed one of her agents with power to annul or evade it.<sup>1</sup>

The State of Louisiana passed an act entitled "An act to regulate proceedings in contestation between persons claiming a judicial office."

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ex parte Virginia*, 100 U. S. 339.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

*Held*, that the State, by proceedings under this act, which resulted in a judgment adverse to the title of the plaintiff in error to a certain judicial office, did not, through her judiciary, violate that clause of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States which declares, "nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law."<sup>1</sup>

Down to the time of the adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment, it was not supposed that statutes regulating the use, or even the price of the use, of private property necessarily deprived an owner of his property without due process of law. Under some circumstances they may, but not under all. The amendment does not change the law in this particular; it simply prevents the States from doing that which will operate as such deprivation.<sup>2</sup>

A law authorizing the imposition of a tax or assessment upon property according to its value does not infringe that provision of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which declares that no State shall deprive any person of property without due process of law, if the owner has an opportunity to question the validity or the amount of it, either before that amount is determined, or in subsequent proceedings for its collection.<sup>3</sup>

A statute of a State, authorizing any person

---

<sup>1</sup> *Kennard v. Louisiana*, 92 U. S. 480.

<sup>2</sup> *Munn v. Illinois*, 94 U. S. 113.

<sup>3</sup> *Hagar v. Reclamation District*, 111 U. S. 701.

to erect and maintain on his own land a water-mill and mill-dam upon and across any stream not navigable, paying to the owners of lands flowed damages assessed in a judicial proceeding, does not deprive them of their property without due process of law, in violation of the Fourteenth Amendment.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

An act making water rates a charge upon lands in a municipality, prior to the lien of all incumbrances, does no violation, so far as it affects mortgages on such lands made after the passage of the act, to that portion of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution which declares that no State shall deprive any person of property without due process of law.<sup>2</sup>

The statute of New Jersey of March 8, 1871, providing for the drainage of any tract of low or marshy land within the State, upon proceedings instituted by at least five owners of separate lots of land included in the tract, and for the assessment by commissioners, after notice and hearing, of the expenses upon all the owners, does not deprive them of their property without due process of law, nor deny to them the equal protection of the laws, within the meaning of the Fourteenth Amendment of the Constitution of the United States.<sup>3</sup>

A State statute for raising public revenue by the assessment and collection of taxes, which

<sup>1</sup> *Head v. Amoskeag Manufacturing Co.*, 113 U. S. 9.

<sup>2</sup> *Provident Institution for Savings v. Jersey City*, 113 U. S. 506.

<sup>3</sup> *Wurts v. Hoagland*, 114 U. S. 606.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

gives notice of the proposed assessment to an owner of property to be affected, by requiring him at a time named to present a statement of his property, with his estimate of its value, to a designated official charged with the duty of receiving the statement, which fixes time and place for public sessions of other officials, at which this statement and estimate are to be considered, where the official valuation is to be made, and when and where the party interested has the right to be present and to be heard; and which affords him opportunity in a suit at law for the collection of the tax, to judicially contest the validity of the proceeding, does not necessarily deprive him of his property without "due process of law," within the meaning of the Fourteenth Amendment.<sup>1</sup>

A State law for the valuation of property and the assessment of taxes thereon, which provides for the classification of property, subject to its provisions, into different classes, which makes for one class one set of provisions as to modes and methods of ascertaining the value, and as to right of appeal, and different provisions for another class as to those subjects, but which provides for the impartial application of the same means and methods to all constituents of each class, so that the law shall operate equally and uniformly on all persons in similar circumstances, denies to no person affected by it "equal protection of the laws" within the meaning of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Kentucky Railroad Tax Cases*, 115 U. S. 321.

the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States.<sup>1</sup>

A statute of a State requiring every railroad corporation in the State to erect and maintain fences and cattle guards on the sides of its road, and, if it does not do so, making it liable in double the amount of damages occasioned thereby and done by its agents, cars, or engines to cattle or other animals on its road, does not deprive a railroad corporation, against which such double damages are recovered, of its property without due process of law, or deny it the equal protection of the laws in violation of the Fourteenth Article of Amendment.<sup>2</sup>

The provisions in the Fourteenth Amendment, that "no State shall deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws," do not prohibit a State from requiring for the admission within its limits of a corporation of another State such conditions as it chooses.<sup>3</sup>

If the legislature of a State, in the exercise of its power of taxation, directs the expense of laying out, grading or repairing a street to be assessed upon the owners of lands benefited thereby; and determines the whole amount of the tax, and further determines what lands are benefited by the improvement; and provides for notice to and hearing of each owner, at some stage of the proceedings, upon the question what

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

<sup>1</sup> *Kentucky Railroad Tax Cases*, 115 U. S. 321.

<sup>2</sup> *Missouri Pacific Railway Co. v. Humes*, 115 U. S. 512.

<sup>3</sup> *Pembina Mining Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 125 U. S. 181.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

proportion of the tax shall be assessed upon his land ; there is no taking of his property without due process of law, in violation of the Fourteenth Amendment.<sup>1</sup>

The statute of Kansas, which provides that "every railroad company organized or doing business in this State shall be liable for all damages done to any employé of such company, in consequence of any negligence of its agents, or by any mismanagement of its engineers or other employés, to any person sustaining such damage," does not deprive a railroad company of its property without due process of law ; and does not deny to it the equal protection of the laws ; and is not in conflict with the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States in either of these respects.<sup>2</sup>

The Kentucky statute of March 24, 1882, which authorizes the city government of Louisville to open and improve streets and assess the cost thereof on the owners of adjoining lots, does not deprive such owners of their property without due process of law, and does not deny them the equal protection of the laws, and is not repugnant to Section 1 of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States.<sup>3</sup>

The provision in the Code of Iowa, Section 1289, which authorizes the recovery of "double the value of the stock killed or damages caused thereto," by a railroad, when the injury took place

---

<sup>1</sup> *Spencer v. Merchant*, 125 U. S. 345.

<sup>2</sup> *Missouri Pacific Railway Co. v. Mackey*, 127 U. S. 205.

<sup>3</sup> *Walston v. Nevins*, 128 U. S. 578.

at a point on the road where the corporation had a right to erect a fence and failed to do so, and when it was not "occasioned by the wilful act of the owner or his agent," is not in conflict with the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution, either as depriving the company of property without due process of law, or as denying to it the equal protection of the laws.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

A tax which is imposed by a State statute upon "the corporate franchise or business" of all corporations incorporated under any law of the State or of any other State or country, and doing business within the State, and which is measured by the extent of the dividends of the corporation in the current year, is a tax upon the right or privilege to be a corporation and to do business within the State in a corporate capacity, and is not a tax upon the privilege or franchise which, when incorporated, the company may exercise; and being thus construed, its imposition upon the dividends of the company does not violate the provisions of the statute exempting bonds of the United States from taxation, 12 Stat. 346, c. 33, § 2, although a portion of the dividends may be derived from interest on capital invested in such bonds.<sup>2</sup>

Such a tax is not in conflict with the last clause of the first section of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States, declaring that no State shall deprive any

<sup>1</sup> *Minneapolis & St. Louis Railway v. Beckwith*, 129 U. S. 26.

<sup>2</sup> *Home Insurance Company v. New York*, 134 U. S. 594.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

person within its jurisdiction of the equal protection of the laws.<sup>1</sup>

The provisions in the Revised Statutes of Texas, articles 1242-1245, which, as construed by the highest court of the State, convert an appearance by a defendant for the sole purpose of questioning the jurisdiction of the court, into a general appearance and submission to the jurisdiction of the court, do not violate the provision in the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution which forbids a State to deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process by law.<sup>2</sup>

No State can deprive particular persons or classes of persons of equal and impartial justice under the law, without violating the provisions of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution.<sup>3</sup>

State legislation, simply forbidding the defendant to come into court and challenge the validity of service upon him in a personal action without surrendering himself to the jurisdiction of the court, but which does not attempt to restrain him from fully protecting his person, his property, and his rights against any attempt to enforce a judgment rendered without due process of law, is not in violation of the Fourteenth Amendment.<sup>4</sup>

A person is not denied the equal protection of the laws, nor deprived of liberty without due

<sup>1</sup> *Home Insurance Company v. New York*, 134 U. S. 594.

<sup>2</sup> *York v. Texas*, 137 U. S. 15.

<sup>3</sup> *Caldwell v. Texas*, 137 U. S. 692.

<sup>4</sup> *Kauffman v. Wootters*, 188 U. S. 285.

process of law, in violation of the Fourteenth Amendment, by being tried and sentenced to imprisonment by a judge who, although appointed by the governor without authority, is a judge *de facto* of a court *de jure*, by the law of the State as declared by its highest court.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fourteenth  
Amendment.  
Limitations upon  
the powers of a  
State.

An ordinance passed by the city of New Orleans, under authority conferred by the legislature of Louisiana, prohibiting the keeping of any private market within six squares of any public market of the city, under penalty of being sentenced, upon conviction before a magistrate, to pay a fine of twenty-five dollars, and to be imprisoned for not more than thirty days if the fine is not paid, does not violate the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution.<sup>2</sup>

State Statutes regulating or prohibiting the sale of intoxicating liquors have been the subject of a great deal of litigation, and their constitutionality has been drawn in question. In most of the cases the question has been whether the statute before the court was or was not a regulation of commerce. That class of cases has already been noticed. There are, however, a few cases in which it has been claimed that the statute deprived the citizen of rights, privileges, or immunities protected by the Fourteenth Amendment.

Statutes regulat-  
ing sales of intoxi-  
cating liquors not  
affected by this  
amendment.

It is well settled that the sale of spirituous and intoxicating liquors by retail, and in small

<sup>1</sup> *In re Manning*, 139 U. S. 504.

<sup>2</sup> *Natal v. Louisiana*, 139 U. S. 621.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment does  
not affect statutes  
regulating sales  
of intoxicating  
liquors.

quantities, may be regulated, or may be absolutely prohibited by State legislation, without violating the Constitution or laws of the United States.<sup>1</sup> Even a municipal corporation, when thereto duly authorized by the law of the State, may, in the exercise of the police power of the State, license or refuse to license persons to sell intoxicating liquors in that way,<sup>2</sup> without violating either the commerce clause of the Constitution or the Fourteenth Amendment.

The usual and ordinary legislation of the States, regulating or prohibiting the sale of intoxicating liquors, raised no question under the Constitution of the United States prior to the Fourteenth Amendment of that instrument. The right to sell intoxicating liquors is not one of the privileges and immunities of citizens of the United States, which by that amendment the States were forbidden to abridge.<sup>3</sup>

The restraining provisions of the Fourteenth Amendment are not infringed by the Statutes of Iowa authorizing its courts, when a person violates an injunction restraining him from selling intoxicating liquors, to punish him as for contempt by fine or imprisonment or both. Proceedings according to the common law for contempt of court are not subject to the right of trial by jury, and are "due process of law," within the meaning of the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Crowley v. Christensen*, 137 U. S. 86.

<sup>2</sup>*Ib.*

<sup>3</sup> *Bartemeyer v. Iowa*, 14 Wall. 21.

<sup>4</sup> *Eilenbecker v. Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31.

If a State deems the absolute prohibition of the manufacture and sale, within its limits, of intoxicating liquors for other than medical, scientific, and manufacturing purposes, to be necessary to the peace and security of society, the courts cannot, without usurping legislative functions, override the will of the people thus expressed. And if, in the judgment of the legislature, the manufacture of intoxicating liquors for the maker's own use, as a beverage, would tend to cripple, if it did not defeat, the effort to guard the community against the evils attendant upon the excessive use of such liquors, it is not for the courts, upon their views as to what is best and safest for the community, to disregard the legislative determination of that question. It cannot be said that Government interferes with or impairs any one's constitutional rights of liberty or of property, when it determines that the manufacture and sale of intoxicating drinks, for general or individual use as a beverage, are, or may become, hurtful to society, and constitute, therefore, a business in which no one may lawfully engage. This conclusion is unavoidable unless the Fourteenth Amendment of the Constitution takes from the States of the Union those powers of police that were reserved at the time the original constitution was adopted.<sup>1</sup>

Following *Mugler v. Kansas*, it was again held that a State has the right to prohibit or

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment does  
not affect statutes  
regulating sales  
of intoxicating  
liquors.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mugler v. Kansas*, 123 U. S. 623, 662, 663.



LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth  
Amendment does  
not affect statutes  
regulating sales  
of intoxicating  
liquors.

restrict the manufacture of intoxicating liquors within its limits; to prohibit all sale and traffic in them in the State; to inflict penalties for such manufacture and sale; and to provide regulations for the abatement, as a common nuisance, of the property used for such forbidden purposes; and that such legislation does not abridge the liberties or immunities of citizens of the United States, nor deprive any person of property without due process of law, nor contravene the provisions of the Fourteenth Amendment of the Constitution of the United States.<sup>1</sup>

The Act of August 8, 1890, 26 Stat. 313, c. 728, enacting "that all fermented, distilled, or other intoxicating liquors or liquids transported into any State or Territory, or remaining therein for use, consumption, sale, or storage therein, shall upon arrival in such State or Territory be subject to the operation and effect of the laws of such State or Territory enacted in the exercise of its police powers, to the same extent and in the same manner as though such liquids or liquors had been produced in such State or Territory, and shall not be exempt therefrom by reason of being introduced therein in original packages or otherwise," is a valid and constitutional exercise of the legislative power conferred upon Congress; and, after that act took effect, such liquors or liquids, introduced into a State or Territory from another State, whether in original packages or otherwise, became subject to the operation of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Kidd v. Pearson*, 128 U. S. 1.

such of its then existing laws as had been properly enacted in the exercise of its police powers, among which was the statute in question as applied to the petitioner's offence.<sup>1</sup>

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The Fourteenth Amendment does not affect statutes regulating sales of intoxicating liquors.

#### 4. *The Apportionment of Representation.*

Before the war, or, to speak more accurately, before the adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment, the apportionment of representation among the States was determined "by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons." But when the slaves became freemen, "five-fifths" of those denominated as "all other persons" became subject to be counted in the enumeration; and thus the war resulted in increasing the political power of the South in Congress. By the second section of the Fourteenth Amendment it was intended to protect the emancipated slaves in the exercise of their new political privileges.

Fourteenth Amendment.  
Apportionment of representation.

#### 5. *Exclusion from the Exercise of Political Privileges.*

On the 4th of July, 1868, President Johnson proclaimed a full pardon and amnesty "unconditionally and without reservation, to all and to every person who directly or indirectly participated in the late insurrection or rebellion, excepting such person or persons as may be under presentment or indictment in any court of the

Political disabilities.

<sup>1</sup> *In re Rahrer, Petitioner*, 140 U. S. 545.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Political disabilities.

United States having competent jurisdiction, upon a charge of treason or other felony."<sup>1</sup> A few days later the Fourteenth Amendment was proclaimed, by which certain classes of the persons covered by the proclamation of pardon were made ineligible for holding certain offices, unless Congress should, "by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability."

The index of volume 16 of the Statutes at Large, from page 1181 to page 1206, is taken up with the names of persons whose disabilities were so removed. On the 22d of May, 1872, Congress enacted, two-thirds concurring, "that all political disabilities imposed by the third section of the Fourteenth Article of Amendments of the Constitution of the United States are hereby removed from all persons whomsoever, except Senators and Representatives of the Thirty-sixth and Thirty-seventh Congresses, officers in the judicial, military, and naval service of the United States, heads of departments, and foreign ministers of the United States."<sup>2</sup>

The whole number thus excepted from the operation of the statute could not have been very large. Since its passage the disabilities of one hundred and sixty-nine of that number have been removed by special acts of Congress.

#### 6. *Provisions as to Public Debts.*

The public debt.

Little comment is necessary upon the provisions of section 4, relating to the public debt of

<sup>1</sup> 15 Stat. 702, 703.

<sup>2</sup> 17 Stat. 142, c. 93.

the United States, to debts incurred in aid of the rebellion, and to claims for the loss or emancipation of slaves. As to the former, it is sufficient to say that it was looked upon by those who regarded the emission of bills of credit in the form of circulating notes as unconstitutional, as a constitutional assumption of the debt so created. As to the latter, nothing need be said.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
The public debt.

*C. The Fifteenth Amendment.*

The Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution does not confer the right of suffrage; but it invests citizens of the United States with the right of exemption from discrimination in the exercise of the elective franchise on account of their race, color, or previous condition of servitude, and empowers Congress to enforce that right by "appropriate legislation."

Fifteenth Amendment.

The power of Congress to legislate at all upon the subject of voting at State elections rests upon this amendment, and can be exercised by providing a punishment only when the wrongful refusal to receive the vote of a qualified elector at such elections is because of his race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

The third and fourth sections of the Act of May 31, 1870 (16 Stat. 140), not being confined in their operation to unlawful discrimination on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude, are beyond the limit of the Fifteenth Amendment, and unauthorized.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Reese*, 92 U. S. 214.

LECTURE XIII.  
Supplementary.  
Fifteenth Amend-  
ment.

An indictment which charges in the first count that the defendants conspired to intimidate A. B., a citizen of African descent, in the exercise of his right to vote for a member of the Congress of the United States, and that in the execution of that conspiracy they beat, bruised, wounded, and otherwise maltreated him; and in the second count that they did this on account of his race, color, and previous condition of servitude, by going in disguise and assaulting him on the public highway and on his own premises, contains a sufficient description of an offence embraced within the provisions of §§ 5508, 5520, Rev. Stat.

Although it is true that the Fifteenth Amendment gives no affirmative right to the negro to vote, yet there are cases, some of which are stated by the court, in which it substantially confers that right upon him. *United States v. Reese*, 92 U. S. 214, qualified and explained.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ex parte Yarbrough*, 110 U. S. 65.

# APPENDIX.

## I.

### [THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.]



WE THE PEOPLE of the United States, in Order to form Appendix.  
a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domes- The Constitution.  
tic Tranquility, provide for the common defence, pro-  
mote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of  
Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and  
establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of  
America.<sup>1</sup>

#### ARTICLE. I.

SECTION. 1. All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.<sup>2</sup>

SECTION. 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.<sup>3</sup>

No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty five Years, and been seven

---

<sup>1</sup> *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419; *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316; *Brown v. Maryland*, 12 Wheat. 419; *Barron v. The Mayor and City Council of Baltimore*, 7 Pet. 243; *Lane County v. Oregon*, 7 Wall. 71; *Texas v. White*, 7 Wall. 700.

<sup>2</sup> *Hayburn's Case*, 2 Dall. 409 (notes); *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Ex parte Yarbrough*, 110 U. S. 651; *In re Green*, 134 U. S. 377.

Appendix. Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not,  
The Constitution. when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other Persons. The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.<sup>1</sup>

When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

SECTION. 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Dodge v. Woolsey, 18 How. 331; Loughborough v. Blake, 5 Wheat. 317; Pacific Insurance Co. v. Soule, 7 Wall. 433; Veazie Bank v. Fenno, 8 Wall. 533; Scholey v. Rew, 23 Wall. 331; De Treville v. Smalls, 98 U. S. 517; Springer v. United States, 102 U. S. 586.

Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Ex- Appendix.  
 piration of the second Year, of the second Class at the The Constitution.  
 Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at  
 the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one third may be  
 chosen every second Year; and if Vacancies happen by  
 Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the  
 Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may  
 make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting  
 of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.

No Person shall be a Senator who shall not have  
 attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years  
 a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when  
 elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall  
 be chosen.

The Vice President of the United States shall be  
 President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless  
 they be equally divided.

The Senate shall chuse their other Officers, and also a  
 President pro tempore, in the Absence of the Vice Presi-  
 dent, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of  
 the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Im-  
 peachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall  
 be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the  
 United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside:  
 And no Person shall be convicted without the Concur-  
 rence of two thirds of the Members present.

Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend  
 further than to removal from Office, and disqualification  
 to hold and enjoy any Office of honor, Trust or Profit  
 under the United States: but the Party convicted shall  
 nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial,  
 Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.<sup>1</sup>

SECTION. 4. The Times, Places and Manner of hold-  
 ing Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be  
 prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but  
 the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter

---

<sup>1</sup> *In re Green*, 134 U. S. 377.



Appendix. such Regulations, except as to the Places of chusing  
The Constitution. Senators.<sup>1</sup>

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

SECTION. 5. Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.<sup>2</sup>

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two thirds, expel a Member.<sup>3</sup>

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the desire of one fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION. 6. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Reese*, 92 U. S. 218; *Ex parte Siebold*, 100 U. S. 371; *Ex parte Yarbrough*, 110 U. S. 651; *In re Coy*, 127 U. S. 731; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *In re Loney*, 134 U. S. 372.

<sup>3</sup> *Anderson v. Dunn*, 6 Wheat. 204; *Kilbourn v. Thompson*, 103 U. S. 168.

same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.<sup>1</sup>

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been encreased, during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his Continuance in Office.

SECTION. 7. All Bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States; If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a Law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.<sup>2</sup>

Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Con-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Coxe v. M'Clenachan*, 3 Dall. 478; *United States v. Cooper*, 4 Dall. 341.

<sup>2</sup> *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

currence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

SECTION. 8. The Congress shall have Power To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;<sup>1</sup>

To borrow Money on the credit of the United States;<sup>2</sup>

To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Hylton v. United States*, 3 Dall. 171; *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316; *Loughborough v. Blake*, 5 Wheat. 317; *Osborn v. Bank of the United States*, 9 Wheat. 738; *Weston v. City Council of Charleston*, 2 Pet. 449; *Dobbins v. The Commissioners of Erie County*, 16 Pet. 435; *License Cases*, 5 How. 504; *Cooley v. Board of Wardens of Port of Philadelphia*, 12 How. 239; *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *McGuire v. The Commonwealth*, 3 Wall. 387; *Van Allen v. The Assessors*, 3 Wall. 573; *Bradley v. The People*, 4 Wall. 459; *Pervear v. Commonwealth*, 5 Wall. 475; *Pacific Insurance Co. v. Soule*, 7 Wall. 433; *Woodruff v. Parham*, 8 Wall. 123; *Hinson v. Lott*, 8 Wall. 148; *Veazie Bank v. Fenno*, 8 Wall. 533; *The Collector v. Day*, 11 Wall. 113; *United States v. Singer*, 15 Wall. 111; *State tax on Foreign-held Bonds*, 15 Wall. 300; *United States v. Railroad Company*, 17 Wall. 322; *Railroad Company v. Peniston*, 18 Wall. 5; *Scholey v. Rew*, 23 Wall. 331; *Springer v. United States*, 102 U. S. 586; *Legal Tender Case*, 110 U. S. 421; *Edye v. Robertson*, 112 U. S. 580; *Van Brocklin v. Tennessee*, 117 U. S. 151; *License Tax Cases*, 5 Wall. 462.

<sup>2</sup> *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316; *Osborn v. United States Bank*, 9 Wheat. 738; *Weston v. City Council of Charleston*, 2 Pet. 449; *Bank of Commerce v. New York City*, 2 Black, 620; *Bank Tax Case*, 2 Wall. 200; *The Banks v. The Mayor*, 7 Wall. 16; *Bank v. Supervisors*, 7 Wall. 26; *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 8 Wall. 603; *National Bank v. Commonwealth*, 9 Wall. 353; *Parker v. Davis*, 12 Wall. 457; *Legal Tender Case*, 110 U. S. 421.

<sup>3</sup> *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 9 Wheat. 1; *Brown v. Maryland*, 12 Wheat. 419; *Willson v. Black Bird Creek Marsh Company*, 2 Pet. 245; *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1; *Worcester v. Georgia*, 6 Pet. 515; *City of New York v. Miln*, 11 Pet. 102; *United States v. Coombs*, 12 Pet. 72;

Holmes v. Jennison, 14 Pet. 540; License Cases, 5 How. 504; Passenger Appendix. Cases, 7 How. 283; Nathan v. Louisiana, 8 How. 73; Mager v. Grima, The Constitution. 8 How. 490; United States v. Marigold, 9 How. 560; Cooley v. Board of Wardens of the Port of Philadelphia, 12 How. 299; The Propeller Genesee Chief v. Fitzhugh, 12 How. 443; Pennsylvania v. The Wheeling Bridge Co., 13 How. 518; Veazie v. Moor, 14 How. 568; Smith v. Maryland, 18 How. 71; Pennsylvania v. Wheeling and Belmont Bridge Co., 18 How. 421; Sinnot v. Davenport, 22 How. 227; Foster v. Davenport, 22 How. 244; Conway v. Taylor's Executor, 1 Black, 603; Steamship Co. v. Joliffe, 2 Wall. 450; United States v. Holliday, 3 Wall. 407; Gilman v. Philadelphia, 3 Wall. 713; The Passaic Bridges, 3 Wall. 782; License Tax Cases, 5 Wall. 462; Steamship Company v. Port Wardens, 6 Wall. 31; Crandall v. Nevada, 6 Wall. 35; White's Bank v. Smith, 7 Wall. 646; Waring v. The Mayor, 8 Wall. 110; Paul v. Virginia, 8 Wall. 168; Thomson v. Pacific Railroad, 9 Wall. 579; Downham v. Alexandria Council, 10 Wall. 173; Ducat v. Chicago, 10 Wall. 410; The Clinton Bridge, 10 Wall. 454; The Daniel Ball, 10 Wall. 557; Liverpool Insurance Company v. Massachusetts, 10 Wall. 566; The Montello, 11 Wall. 411; Ward v. Maryland, 12 Wall. 418; *Ex parte* McNeil, 13 Wall. 236; State Freight Tax, 15 Wall. 232; State Tax on Railway Gross Receipts, 15 Wall. 284; Osborne v. Mobile, 16 Wall. 479; Railroad Company v. Fuller, 17 Wall. 560; Bartemeyer v. Iowa, 18 Wall. 129; The Delaware Railroad Tax, 18 Wall. 206; Peete v. Morgan, 19 Wall. 581; Railroad Company v. Richmond, 19 Wall. 584; Minor v. Happersett, 21 Wall. 162; Railroad Company v. Maryland, 21 Wall. 456; The Lottawanna, 21 Wall. 558; Welton v. Missouri, 91 U. S. 275; Henderson v. The Mayor of the City of New York, 92 U. S. 259; Chy Lung v. Freeman, 92 U. S. 275; South Carolina v. Georgia, 93 U. S. 4; Sherlock v. Alling, 93 U. S. 99; United States v. Forty-three Gallons of Whiskey, 93 U. S. 188; Foster v. Master and Wardens of the Port of New Orleans, 94 U. S. 246; Railroad Co. v. Husen, 95 U. S. 465; Pensacola Telegraph Co. v. Western Union Telegraph Co., 96 U. S. 1; Beer Co. v. Massachusetts, 97 U. S. 25; Cook v. Pennsylvania, 97 U. S. 566; Trade Mark Cases, 100 U. S. 82; Packet Co. v. St. Louis, 100 U. S. 423; Tiernan v. Rinker, 102 U. S. 123; Lord v. Goodall &c. Steamship Co., 102 U. S. 541; Wilson v. McNamee, 102 U. S. 572; Mobile County v. Kimball, 102 U. S. 691; Webber v. Virginia, 103 U. S. 344; Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Texas, 105 U. S. 460; Newport &c. Bridge Co. v. United States, 105 U. S. 470; People v. Compagnie Générale Transatlantique, 107 U. S. 59; Wiggins Ferry Co. v. East St. Louis, 107 U. S. 365; Escanaba Co. v. Chicago, 107 U. S. 678; Miller v. New York, 109 U. S. 385; Moran v. New Orleans, 112 U. S. 69; Foster v. Kansas, 112 U. S. 201; Head Money Cases, 112 U. S. 580; Cardwell v. American Bridge Co., 113 U. S. 205; Cooper Manufacturing Co. v. Ferguson, 113 U. S. 727; Gloucester Ferry Co. v. Pennsylvania, 114 U. S. 196; Brown v. Houston, 114 U. S. 622; Starin v. New York, 115 U. S. 248; Fisk v. Jefferson Police Jury, 116 U. S. 131; Stone v. Illinois Central Railroad Co., 116 U. S. 347; Stone v. New Orleans and Northeastern Railroad, 116 U. S. 352; Walling v. Michigan, 116 U. S. 446; Coe v. Errol, 116 U. S. 517; Pickard v. Pullman Southern Car Co., 117 U. S. 34; Tennessee v. Pullman Southern Car Co., 117 U. S. 51; Sprague v. Thompson, 118 U. S. 90; Morgan Steamship

Appendix.

The Constitution.

To establish an uniform Rule of Naturalization,<sup>1</sup> and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;<sup>2</sup>

To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;<sup>3</sup>

To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States;<sup>4</sup>

To establish Post Offices and post Roads;<sup>5</sup>

---

*Co. v. Louisiana*, 118 U. S. 455; *Wabash &c. Railway Co. v. Illinois*, 118 U. S. 557; *United States v. Arjona*, 120 U. S. 479; *Robbins v. Shelby County Taxing District*, 120 U. S. 489; *Corson v. Maryland*, 120 U. S. 502; *Fargo v. Michigan*, 121 U. S. 230; *Philadelphia and Southern Steamship Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 122 U. S. 326; *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Pendleton*, 122 U. S. 347; *Sands v. Manistee River Improvement Co.*, 123 U. S. 288; *Mugler v. Kansas*, 123 U. S. 623; *Smith v. Alabama*, 124 U. S. 465; *Willamette Iron Bridge Co. v. Hatch*, 125 U. S. 1; *Pembina Consolidated Mining Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 125 U. S. 181; *Bowman v. Chicago &c. Railway Co.*, 125 U. S. 465; *California v. Central Pacific Railroad Co.*, 127 U. S. 1; *Ratterman v. Western Union Telegraph Co.*, 127 U. S. 411; *Leloup v. Port of Mobile*, 127 U. S. 640; *Kidd v. Pearson*, 128 U. S. 1; *Asher v. Texas*, 128 U. S. 129; *Stoutenburgh v. Hennick*, 129 U. S. 141; *Kimmish v. Ball*, 129 U. S. 217; *Western Union Telegraph Co. v. Alabama*, 132 U. S. 472; *Louisville, New Orleans &c. Railway Co. v. Mississippi*, 133 U. S. 587; *Leisy v. Hardin*, 135 U. S. 100; *Lyng v. Michigan*, 135 U. S. 161; *Cherokee Nation v. Southern Kansas Railway Co.*, 135 U. S. 641; *McCall v. California*, 136 U. S. 104; *Norfolk and Western Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 136 U. S. 114; *Minnesota v. Barber*, 136 U. S. 313; *Crowley v. Christensen*, 137 U. S. 86; *Wheeler v. Jackson*, 137 U. S. 245; *Brimmer v. Rebman*, 138 U. S. 78; *Munn v. Illinois*, 94 U. S. 113; *Chicago, Burlington &c. Railroad v. Iowa*, 94 U. S. 155; *Peck v. North Western Railway*, 94 U. S. 164.

<sup>1</sup> *Collet v. Collet*, 2 Dall. 294; *Chirac v. Chirac*, 2 Wheat. 259.

<sup>2</sup> *Sturges v. Crowninshield*, 4 Wheat. 122; *McMillan v. McNeill*, 4 Wheat. 209; *Houston v. Moore*, 5 Wheat. 1; *Farmers' and Mechanics' Bank of Pennsylvania v. Smith*, 6 Wheat. 131; *Ogden v. Saunders*, 12 Wheat. 213; *Boyle v. Zacharie and Turner*, 6 Pet. 348; *Gassies v. Ballou*, 6 Pet. 761; *Beers v. Haughton*, 9 Pet. 329; *Suydam v. Broadnax*, 14 Pet. 67; *Cook v. Moffat*, 5 How. 295; *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Briscoe v. The Bank of the Commonwealth of Kentucky*, 11 Pet. 257; *Fox v. Ohio*, 5 How. 410; *United States v. Marigold*, 9 How. 560; *Veazie Bank v. Fenno*, 8 Wall. 533; *Parker v. Davis*, 12 Wall. 457; *Legal Tender Case*, 110 U. S. 421.

<sup>4</sup> *Fox v. Ohio*, 5 How. 410; *United States v. Marigold*, 9 How. 560.

<sup>5</sup> *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316; *Pennsylvania v. Wheeling and Belmont Bridge Co.*, 18 How. 421; *Ex parte Jackson*, 96 U. S. 727.

To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts, by Appendix.  
 securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the The Constitution.  
 exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries;<sup>1</sup>

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;<sup>2</sup>

To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;<sup>3</sup>

To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;<sup>4</sup>

To provide and maintain a Navy;<sup>5</sup>

To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;

To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;<sup>6</sup>

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the

<sup>1</sup> *Grant v. Raymond*, 6 Pet. 218; *Wheaton v. Peters*, 8 Pet. 591; *Trade Mark Cases*, 100 U. S. 82; *Burrow-Giles Lithographic Co. v. Sarony*, 111 U. S. 53; *Banks v. Manchester*, 128 U. S. 244; *Callaghan v. Myers*, 128 U. S. 617.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. Palmer*, 3 Wheat. 610; *United States v. Wiltberger*, 5 Wheat. 76; *United States v. Smith*, 5 Wheat. 153; *United States v. Pirates*, 5 Wheat. 184; *United States v. Arjona*, 120 U. S. 479.

<sup>3</sup> *Brown v. United States*, 8 Cranch. 110; *American Insurance Co. v. Canter* (356 bales cotton), 1 Pet. 511; *Mrs. Alexander's Cotton*, 2 Wall. 404; *Miller v. United States*, 11 Wall. 268; *Tyler v. Defrees*, 11 Wall. 331; *Stewart v. Kahn*, 11 Wall. 493; *Hamilton v. Dillin*, 21 Wall. 73; *Lamar v. Browne*, 92 U. S. 187; *Prize Cases*, 2 Black, 635.

<sup>4</sup> *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35.

<sup>5</sup> *United States v. Bevans*, 3 Wheat. 336; *Dynes v. Hoover*, 20 How. 65.

<sup>6</sup> *Houston v. Moore*, 5 Wheat. 1; *Martin v. Mott*, 12 Wheat. 19; *Luther v. Borden*, 7 How. 1; *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35; *Texas v. White*, 7 Wall. 700.

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;<sup>1</sup>

To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings; — And<sup>2</sup>

To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.<sup>3</sup>

SECTION. 9. The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight,

<sup>1</sup> *Houston v. Moore*, 5 Wheat. 1; *Martin v. Mott*, 12 Wheat. 19; *Luther v. Borden*, 7 How. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Hepburn v. Ellzey*, 2 Cranch, 444; *Houston v. Moore*, 5 Wheat. 1; *Loughborough v. Blake*, 5 Wheat. 317; *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264; *American Insurance Co. v. Canter* (356 bales cotton), 1 Pet. 511; *Kendall, Postmaster-General, v. United States*, 12 Pet. 524; *Cross v. Harrison*, 16 How. 164; *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *United States v. Dewitt*, 9 Wall. 41; *Dunphy v. Kleinsmith*, 11 Wall. 610; *Willard v. Presbury*, 14 Wall. 676; *Phillips v. Payne*, 92 U. S. 130; *United States v. Fox*, 94 U. S. 315; *National Bank v. Yankton County*, 101 U. S. 129; *Fort Leavenworth Railroad Co. v. Lowe*, 114 U. S. 525; *Van Brocklin v. Tennessee*, 117 U. S. 151.

<sup>3</sup> *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316; *Wayman v. Southard*, 10 Wheat. 1; *Bank of United States v. Halstead*, 10 Wheat. 51; *Ableman v. Booth*; *United States v. Booth*, 21 How. 506; *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 8 Wall. 603; *National Bank v. Commonwealth*, 9 Wall. 353; *Thomson v. Pacific Railroad*, 9 Wall. 579; *Parker v. Davis* (Legal Tender Cases), 12 Wall. 457; *Railroad Company v. Johnson*, 15 Wall. 195; *Railroad Company v. Peniston*, 18 Wall. 5; *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *Legal Tender Case*, 110 U. S. 421; *Ex parte Yarbrough*, 110 U. S. 651; *United States v. Arjona*, 120 U. S. 479; *Stoutenburgh v. Hennick*, 129 U. S. 141; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

but a Tax or duty may be imposed on such Importation, **Appendix.**  
 not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.<sup>1</sup> **The Constitution.**

The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.<sup>2</sup>

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.<sup>3</sup>

No Capitation, or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.<sup>4</sup>

No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.<sup>5</sup>

No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another: nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *People v. Compagnie Générale Transatlantique*, 107 U. S. 59.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. Hamilton*, 3 Dall. 17; *Hepburn v. Ellzey*, 2 Cranch, 444; *Ex parte Bollman and Swartwout*, 4 Cranch, 75; *Ex parte Kearney*, 7 Wheat. 38; *Ex parte Tobias Watkins*, 3 Pet. 192; *Ex parte Milburn*, 9 Pet. 704; *Holmes v. Jennison*, 14 Pet. 540; *Ex parte Dorr*, 3 How. 103; *Luther v. Borden*, 7 How. 1; *Ableman v. Booth*; *United States v. Booth*, 21 How. 506; *Ex parte Vallandigham*, 1 Wall. 243; *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2; *Ex parte McCardle*, 7 Wall. 506; *Ex parte Yerger*, 8 Wall. 85; *Tarble's Case*, 13 Wall. 397; *Ex parte Lange*, 18 Wall. 163; *Ex parte Parks*, 93 U. S. 18; *Ex parte Karstendick*, 93 U. S. 396; *Ex parte Virginia*, 100 U. S. 339.

<sup>3</sup> *Fletcher v. Peck*, 6 Cranch, 87; *Ogden v. Saunders*, 12 Wheat. 213; *Watson v. Mercer*, 8 Pet. 88; *Carpenter v. Pennsylvania*, 17 How. 456; *Locke v. New Orleans*, 4 Wall. 172; *Cummings v. Missouri*, 4 Wall. 277; *Ex parte Garland*, 4 Wall. 333; *Drehman v. Stifle*, 8 Wall. 596; *Klinger v. Missouri*, 13 Wall. 257; *Pierce v. Carskadon*, 16 Wall. 234; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1; *Cook v. United States*, 138 U. S. 157.

<sup>4</sup> *Loughborough v. Blake*, 5 Wheat. 317; *License Tax Cases*, 5 Wall. 462; *Pacific Insurance Co. v. Soule*, 7 Wall. 433; *Springer v. United States*, 102 U. S. 586; *Gibbons v. District of Columbia*, 116 U. S. 404.

<sup>5</sup> *Cooley v. Board of Wardens of Port of Philadelphia*, 12 How. 299; *Pacific Insurance Co. v. Soule*, 7 Wall. 433; *Pace v. Burgess*, 92 U. S. 372; *Turpin v. Burgess*, 117 U. S. 504.

<sup>6</sup> *Cooley v. Board of Wardens of the Port of Philadelphia*, 12 How. 299; *State of Pennsylvania v. Wheeling and Belmont Bridge Company*, 18 How. 421; *Munn v. Illinois*, 94 U. S. 113; *Packet Co. v. St. Louis*, 100 U. S. 423; *Packet Co. v. Catlettsburg*, 105 U. S. 559; *Gloucester Ferry Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 114 U. S. 196; *Walling v. Michigan*, 116 U. S. 446; *Morgan's Steamship Co. v. Louisiana*, 118 U. S. 455; *Johnson v. Chicago and Pacific Elevator Co.*, 119 U. S. 388.



## Appendix.

## The Constitution.

No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.<sup>1</sup>

No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office or Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.<sup>2</sup>

SECTION. 10. No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Guthrie*, 17 How. 284.

<sup>2</sup> *Brashear v. Mason*, 6 How. 92.

<sup>3</sup> *Van Horne's Lessee v. Dorrance*, 2 Dall. 304; *Commonwealth v. Franklin*, 4 Dall. 255; *Calder and wife v. Bull and wife*, 3 Dall. 386; *Cooper v. Telfair*, 4 Dall. 14; *Fletcher v. Peck*, 6 Cranch, 87; *New Jersey v. Wilson*, 7 Cranch, 164; *Sturges v. Crowninshield*, 4 Wheat. 123; *McMillan v. McNeil*, 4 Wheat. 209; *Dartmouth College v. Woodward*, 4 Wheat. 518; *Houston v. Moore*, 5 Wheat. 1; *Owings v. Speed*, 5 Wheat. 420; *Farmers and Mechanics' Bank v. Smith*, 6 Wheat. 131; *Green v. Biddle*, 8 Wheat. 1; *Ogden v. Saunders*, 12 Wheat. 213; *Mason v. Haile*, 12 Wheat. 370; *Satterlee v. Matthewson*, 2 Pet. 380; *Hart v. Lamphire*, 3 Pet. 280; *Craig v. Missouri*, 4 Pet. 410; *Providence Bank v. Billings and Pitman*, 4 Pet. 514; *Byrne v. Missouri*, 8 Pet. 40; *Watson v. Mercer*, 8 Pet. 88; *Mumma v. Potomac Company*, 8 Pet. 281; *Beers v. Haughton*, 9 Pet. 329; *Briscoe v. The Bank of the Commonwealth of Kentucky*, 11 Pet. 257; *The Proprietors of Charles River Bridge v. The Proprietors of Warren Bridge*, 11 Pet. 420; *Armstrong v. The Treasurer of Athens County*, 16 Pet. 281; *Bronson v. Kinzie*, 1 How. 311; *Gwin v. Breedlove*, 2 How. 29; *McCracken v. Hayward*, 2 How. 608; *Gordon v. Appeal Tax Court*, 3 How. 133; *Maryland v. Baltimore and Ohio R. R. Co.*, 3 How. 534; *Neil, Moore & Co. v. Ohio*, 3 How. 720; *Cook v. Moffatt*, 5 How. 295; *Planters' Bank v. Sharp*, 6 How. 301; *West River Bridge Company v. Dix*, 6 How. 507; *Crawford v. Branch Bank of Mobile*, 7 How. 279; *Phalen v. Virginia*, 8 How. 163; *Woodruff v. Trapnall*, 10 How. 190; *Paup v. Drew*, 10 How. 218; *Baltimore and Susquehanna Railroad Co. v. Nesbit*, 10 How. 395; *Butler v. Pennsylvania*, 10 How. 402; *East Hartford v. Hartford Bridge Co.*, 10 How. 511; *Achison v. Huddleson*,

No State shall, without the Consent of the Congress, Appendix.  
lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, ex- The Constitution.  
cept what may be absolutely necessary for executing its  
inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and

12 How. 293; *Darrington v. The Bank of Alabama*, 13 How. 12; *Richmond &c. Railroad Co. v. The Louisa Railroad Co.*, 13 How. 71; *Trustees for Vincennes University v. Indiana*, 14 How. 268; *Curran v. Arkansas*, 15 How. 304; *State Bank of Ohio v. Knoop*, 16 How. 369; *Carpenter v. Pennsylvania*, 17 How. 456; *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *Mechanics' &c. Bank v. Thomas*, 18 How. 384; *Beers v. Arkansas*, 20 How. 527; *Aspinwall v. Commissioners of County of Daviess*, 22 How. 364; *Rector of Christ Church, Philadelphia, v. County of Philadelphia*, 24 How. 300; *Howard v. Bugbee*, 24 How. 461; *Jefferson Branch Bank v. Skelley*, 1 Black, 436; *Franklin Branch Bank v. Ohio*, 1 Black, 474; *Trustees of the Wabash and Erie Canal Company v. Beers*, 2 Black, 448; *Gilman v. City of Sheboygan*, 2 Black, 510; *Bridge Proprietors v. Hoboken Company*, 1 Wall. 116; *Hawthorne v. Calef*, 2 Wall. 10; *Florentine v. Barton*, 2 Wall. 210; *The Binghamton Bridge*, 3 Wall. 51; *The Turnpike Company v. The State*, 3 Wall. 210; *McGee v. Mathis*, 4 Wall. 143; *Locke v. New Orleans*, 4 Wall. 172; *Railroad Company v. Rock*, 4 Wall. 177; *Cummings v. Missouri*, 4 Wall. 277; *Ex parte Garland*, 4 Wall. 333; *Von Hoffman v. City of Quincy*, 4 Wall. 535; *Williamson v. Suydam*, 6 Wall. 723; *Mulligan v. Corbins*, 7 Wall. 487; *Furman v. Nichol*, 8 Wall. 44; *Home of the Friendless v. Rouse*, 8 Wall. 430; *The Washington University v. Rouse*, 8 Wall. 439; *Butz v. City of Muscatine*, 8 Wall. 575; *Drehman v. Stifle*, 8 Wall. 595; *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 8 Wall. 603; *Gut v. The State*, 9 Wall. 35; *Chicago v. Sheldon*, 9 Wall. 50; *City of Kenosha v. Lamson*, 9 Wall. 477; *Railroad Company v. McClure*, 10 Wall. 511; *Bethell v. Demaret*, 10 Wall. 537; *Parker v. Davis (The Legal Tender Cases)*, 12 Wall. 457; *Curtis v. Whitney*, 13 Wall. 68; *Pennsylvania College Cases*, 13 Wall. 190; *Wilmington Railroad v. Reid, Sheriff*, 13 Wall. 264; *Salt Company v. East Saginaw*, 13 Wall. 373; *White v. Hart*, 13 Wall. 646; *Osborn v. Nicholson et al.*, 13 Wall. 654; *Railroad Company v. Johnson*, 15 Wall. 195; *Case of the State Tax on Foreign-held Bonds*, 15 Wall. 300; *Tomlinson v. Jessup*, 15 Wall. 454; *Tomlinson v. Branch*, 15 Wall. 460; *Miller v. The State*, 15 Wall. 478; *Holyoke Company v. Lyman*, 15 Wall. 500; *Gunn v. Barry*, 15 Wall. 610; *Davis v. Gray*, 16 Wall. 204; *Pierce v. Carskadon*, 16 Wall. 234; *Humphrey v. Pegues*, 16 Wall. 244; *Walker v. Whitehead*, 16 Wall. 314; *Sohn v. Waterson*, 17 Wall. 598; *Boyce v. Tabb*, 18 Wall. 546; *Barings v. Dabney*, 19 Wall. 1; *Head v. The University*, 19 Wall. 526; *Pacific Railroad Co. v. Maguire*, 20 Wall. 36; *Garrison v. City of New York*, 21 Wall. 196; *Ochiltree v. Railroad Company*, 21 Wall. 249; *Erie Railroad v. Pennsylvania*, 21 Wall. 492; *Randall v. Kreiger*, 23 Wall. 137; *Wilmington &c. Railroad v. King, Exr.*, 91 U. S. 3; *County of Moultrie v. Rockingham Ten Cent Savings Bank*, 92 U. S. 631; *Home Insurance Company v. City Council of Augusta*, 93 U. S. 116; *West Wisconsin Railroad v. Supervisors*, 93 U. S. 595; *Tennessee v. Sneed*, 96 U. S. 69; *Williams v. Bruffy*, 96 U. S. 176; *Murray v. Charleston*, 96 U. S. 432;

Appendix. Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall  
 The Constitution. be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States;  
 and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and  
 Controul of the Congress.<sup>1</sup>

Edwards v. Kearzey, 96 U. S. 595; Beer Co. v. Massachusetts, 97 U. S. 25; Keith v. Clark, 97 U. S. 454; Fertilizing Co. v. Hyde Park, 97 U. S. 659; Railroad Co. v. Georgia, 98 U. S. 359; University v. People, 99 U. S. 309; Packet Co. v. St. Louis, 100 U. S. 423; Vicksburg v. Tobin, 100 U. S. 430; Guy v. Baltimore, 100 U. S. 434; Kirtland v. Hotchkiss, 100 U. S. 491; Newton v. Commissioners, 100 U. S. 548; Railroad Co. v. Tennessee, 101 U. S. 337; Wright v. Nagle, 101 U. S. 791; Stone v. Mississippi, 101 U. S. 814; Railroad Co. v. Alabama, 101 U. S. 832; Louisiana v. New Orleans, 102 U. S. 203; Hartman v. Greenhow, 102 U. S. 672; Hall v. Wisconsin, 103 U. S. 5; Wolff v. New Orleans, 103 U. S. 358; Penniman's Case, 103 U. S. 714; Railroad Co. v. Hamersley, 104 U. S. 1; Asylum v. New Orleans, 105 U. S. 362; Guaranty Co. v. Board of Liquidation, 105 U. S. 622; Greenwood v. Freight Co., 105 U. S. 13; Kring v. Missouri, 107 U. S. 221; Antoni v. Greenhow, 107 U. S. 769; Ewell v. Daggs, 108 U. S. 144; Louisiana v. New Orleans, 109 U. S. 285; Gilfillan v. Union Canal Co., 109 U. S. 401; Hoff v. County of Jasper, 110 U. S. 53; Nelson v. St. Martin's Parish, 111 U. S. 716; Chicago Life Insurance Co. v. Needles, 113 U. S. 574; Virginia Coupon Cases, 114 U. S. 269; Amy v. Shelby County, 114 U. S. 387; Effinger v. Kenney, 115 U. S. 566; New Orleans Gas Co. v. Louisiana Light Co., 115 U. S. 650; Louisville Gas Co. v. Citizens' Gas Co., 115 U. S. 683; New Orleans Waterworks Co. v. Rivers, 115 U. S. 674; Fisk v. Jefferson Police Jury, 116 U. S. 131; Stone v. Farmers' Loan and Trust Co., 116 U. S. 307; Stone v. Illinois Central Railroad Co., 116 U. S. 347; Stone v. New Orleans & Northeastern Railroad, 116 U. S. 352; Royall v. Virginia, 116 U. S. 572; Hagood v. Southern, 117 U. S. 52; St. Tammany Waterworks v. New Orleans Water Works, 120 U. S. 64; United States v. Arjona, 120 U. S. 479; Church v. Kelsey, 121 U. S. 283; Lehigh Water Co. v. Easton, 121 U. S. 388; Seibert v. Lewis, 122 U. S. 284; New Orleans Waterworks Co. v. Louisiana Sugar Refining Co., 125 U. S. 18; Bank of Redemption v. Boston, 125 U. S. 60; Maynard v. Hill, 125 U. S. 190; Jashne v. New York, 128 U. S. 189; Denny v. Bennett, 128 U. S. 489; Williamson v. New Jersey, 130 U. S. 189; Hunt v. Hunt, 131 U. S. appendix clxv; Freeland v. Williams, 131 U. S. 405; Campbell v. Wade, 132 U. S. 34; Pennsylvania Railroad Co. v. Miller, 132 U. S. 75; Crenshaw v. United States, 134 U. S. 99; Medley, Petitioner, 134 U. S. 160; McGahey v. Virginia, 135 U. S. 662; Bryan v. Virginia, 135 U. S. 662; Cuthbert v. Virginia, 135 U. S. 698; *In re* Brown, 135 U. S. 701; Hucless v. Childrey, 135 U. S. 709; Vashon v. Greenhow, 135 U. S. 713; Holden v. Minnesota, 137 U. S. 483; Sioux City Street Railway Co. v. Sioux City, 138 U. S. 98; Wheeling and Belmont Bridge Co. v. Wheeling Bridge Co., 138 U. S. 287.

<sup>1</sup> McCulloch v. Maryland, 4 Wheat. 316; Green v. Biddle, 8 Wheat. 1; Gibbons v. Ogden, 9 Wheat. 1; Brown v. Maryland, 12 Wheat. 419; Mager v. Grima, 8 How. 490; Cooley v. Board of Wardens of Port of

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of delay.<sup>1</sup>

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

## ARTICLE. II.

SECTION. 1. The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.<sup>2</sup>

---

*Philadelphia et al.*, 12 How. 299; *Almy v. California*, 24 How. 169; *License Tax Cases*, 5 Wall. 462; *Pervear v. Commonwealth*, 5 Wall. 475; *Steamship Co. v. Portwardens*, 6 Wall. 31; *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35; *Waring v. The Mayor*, 8 Wall. 110; *Woodruff v. Parham*, 8 Wall. 123; *Hinson v. Lott*, 8 Wall. 148; *State Tonnage Tax Cases*, 12 Wall. 204; *State Tax on Railway Gross Receipts*, 15 Wall. 294; *Inman Steamship Company v. Tinker*, 94 U. S. 238; *Cook v. Pennsylvania*, 97 U. S. 566; *Packet Co. v. Keokuk*, 95 U. S. 80; *Guy v. Baltimore*, 100 U. S. 434; *People v. Compagnie Générale Transatlantique*, 107 U. S. 59; *Wiggins Ferry Co. v. East St. Louis*, 107 U. S. 365; *Brown v. Houston*, 114 U. S. 622; *Walling v. Michigan*, 116 U. S. 446; *Coe v. Errol*, 116 U. S. 517; *Turpin v. Burgess*, 117 U. S. 504; *Collet v. Collet*, 2 Dall. 294.

<sup>1</sup> *Green v. Biddle*, 8 Wheat. 1; *Poole v. The Lessees of Fleegee*, 11 Pet. 185; *Virginia v. West Virginia*, 11 Wall. 39; *Cooley v. Board of Wardens of Port of Philadelphia*, 12 How. 299; *Peete v. Morgan*, 19 Wall. 581; *Cannon v. New Orleans*, 20 Wall. 577; *Inman Steamship Company v. Tinker*, 94 U. S. 238; *Transportation Co. v. Wheeling*, 99 U. S. 273; *Packet Co. v. St. Louis*, 100 U. S. 423; *Guy v. Baltimore*, 100 U. S. 434; *Packet Co. v. Keokuk*, 95 U. S. 80; *Vicksburg v. Tobin*, 100 U. S. 430; *Packet Co. v. Catlettsburg*, 105 U. S. 559; *Transportation Co. v. Parkersburg*, 107 U. S. 691; *Morgan v. Louisiana*, 118 U. S. 455; *Huse v. Glover*, 119 U. S. 543; *Ouachita Packet Co. v. Aiken*, 121 U. S. 444; *Indiana v. Kentucky*, 136 U. S. 479.

<sup>2</sup> *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419; *Leitensdorfer v. Webb*, 20 How. 176; *Ex parte Stebold*, 100 U. S. 371; *In re Green*, 134 U. S. 377.

## Appendix.

## The Constitution.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority, and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately chuse by Ballot one of them for President; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner chuse the President. But in chusing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote; A quorum for this Purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from two-thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall chuse from them by Ballot the Vice President.<sup>1</sup>

The Congress may determine the Time of chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty five

---

<sup>1</sup> This clause has been superseded by the Twelfth Amendment.

Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.<sup>1</sup> Appendix.  
The Constitution.

In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation:—“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION. 2. The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any Subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> English v. The Trustees of the Sailors' Snug Harbor, 3 Pet. 99.

<sup>2</sup> Houston v. Moore, 5 Wheat. 1; United States v. Wilson, 7 Pet. 150; *Ex parte* Wells, 18 How. 307; *Ex parte* Garland, 4 Wall. 333; Armstrong's Foundry, 6 Wall. 766; Texas v. White, 7 Wall. 700; The Grapeshot, 9 Wall. 129; United States v. Padelford, 9 Wall. 531; United States v. Klein, 13 Wall. 128; Armstrong v. United States, 13 Wall. 154; Par-goud v. United States, 13 Wall. 156; Hamilton v. Dillin, 21 Wall. 73; Mechanics and Traders' Bank v. Union Bank, 22 Wall. 276; Lamar v. Browne, 92 U. S. 187; Wallach v. Van Riswick, 92 U. S. 202; *In re* Neagle, 135 U. S. 1.

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.<sup>1</sup>

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.<sup>2</sup>

SECTION. 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the Officers of the United States.<sup>3</sup>

SECTION. 4. The President, Vice President and all civil

<sup>1</sup> *Ware v. Hylton*, 3 Dall. 199; *Marbury v. Madison*, 1 Cranch, 137; *United States v. Kirkpatrick*, 9 Wheat. 720; *American Insurance Company v. Canter* (356 bales cotton), 1 Pet. 511; *Foster and Elam v. Neilson*, 2 Pet. 253; *Cherokee Nation v. State of Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1; *Patterson v. Winn*, 5 Pet. 233; *Worcester v. State of Georgia*, 6 Pet. 515; *City of New Orleans v. De Armas*, 9 Pet. 224; *United States v. Le Baron*, 19 How. 73; *Holden v. Joy*, 17 Wall. 211; *United States v. Germaine*, 99 U. S. 508; *Ex parte Siebold*, 100 U. S. 371; *United States v. Arjona*, 120 U. S. 479; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *The United States v. Kirkpatrick*, 9 Wheat. 720; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Marbury v. Madison*, 1 Cranch, 137; *Kendall v. United States*, 13 Pet. 524; *Luther v. Borden*, 7 How. 1; *Mississippi v. Johnson*, President, 4 Wall. 475; *Stewart v. Kahn*, 11 Wall. 493; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

Officers of the United States, shall be removed from **Appendix.**  
Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, **The Constitution.**  
Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

## ARTICLE. III.

SECTION. 1. The judicial Power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behaviour, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services, a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.<sup>1</sup>

SECTION. 2. The Judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority;—to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls;—to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction;—to Controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to Controversies between two or more States;—between a State and Citizens of another State;—between Citizens of different States,—between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419; *Stuart v. Laird*, 1 Cranch, 299; *United States v. Peters*, 5 Cranch, 115; *Durousseau v. United States*, 6 Cranch, 308; *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304; *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264; *Osborn v. United States Bank*, 9 Wheat. 738; *Benner v. Porter*, 9 How. 235; *United States v. Ritchie*, 17 How. 525; *Murray's Lessee v. Hoboken Land and Improvement Co.*, 18 How. 273; *Ex parte Vallandigham*, 1 Wall. 243; *The Grapeshot*, 9 Wall. 129; *Mechanics' and Traders' Bank v. Union Bank of Louisiana*, 22 Wall. 276; *United States v. Union Pacific Railroad*, 98 U. S. 569; *Ames v. Kansas*, 111 U. S. 449; *In re Loney*, 134 U. S. 372.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. Ravara*, 2 Dall. 297; *Georgia v. Brailsford*, 2 Dall. 402; *Hayburn's Case* (note), 2 Dall. 410; *Oswald v. New York*, 2 Dall. 415; *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419; *Glass v. Sloop Betsey*, 3 Dall. 6; *Bingham v. Cabott*, 3 Dall. 19; *Penhallow v. Doane's Administrator*, 3 Dall. 54; *United States v. La Vengeance*, 3 Dall. 297; *Hollingsworth v.*



Appendix.  
The Constitution.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law

Virginia, 3 Dall. 378; *Mossman v. Higginson*, 4 Dall. 12; *Abercrombie v. Dupuis*, 1 Cranch, 343; *Marbury v. Madison*, 1 Cranch, 137; *Hepburn v. Ellzey*, 2 Cranch, 444; *United States v. Moore*, 3 Cranch, 159; *Strawbridge v. Curtiss*, 3 Cranch, 267; *Ex parte Bollman*, 4 Cranch, 75; *Rose v. Himely*, 4 Cranch, 241; *Chappedelaine v. Dechenaux*, 4 Cranch, 306; *United States v. Schooner Betsey*, 4 Cranch, 443; *Hope Insurance Company v. Boardman*, 5 Cranch, 57; *Bank of United States v. Deveaux*, 5 Cranch, 61; *Hodgson v. Bowerbank*, 5 Cranch, 303; *Owings v. Norwood's Lessee*, 5 Cranch, 344; *Durousseau v. The United States*, 6 Cranch, 307; *United States v. Hudson and Goodwin*, 7 Cranch, 32; *Town of Pawlet v. Clark*, 9 Cranch, 292; *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304; *United States v. Coolidge*, 1 Wheat. 415; *Colson v. Lewis*, 2 Wheat. 377; *Gelston v. Hoyt*, 3 Wheat. 246; *United States v. Bevens*, 3 Wheat. 336; *Houston v. Moore*, 5 Wheat. 1; *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264; *Ex parte Kearney*, 7 Wheat. 38; *Matthews v. Zane*, 7 Wheat. 164; *Osborn v. United States Bank*, 9 Wheat. 738; *United States v. Ortega*, 11 Wheat. 467; *American Insurance Company v. Canter* (356 bales of cotton), 1 Pet. 511; *Jackson v. Twentyman*, 2 Pet. 136; *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1; *New Jersey v. New York*, 5 Pet. 283; *Worcester v. Georgia*, 6 Pet. 515; *Davis v. Packard*, 6 Pet. 41; *United States v. Arredondo*, 6 Pet. 691; *Davis v. Packard*, 7 Pet. 276; *Breedlove v. Nicolet*, 7 Pet. 413; *Brown v. Keene*, 8 Pet. 112; *Davis v. Packard*, 8 Pet. 312; *City of New Orleans v. De Armas*, 9 Pet. 224; *Rhode Island v. Massachusetts*, 12 Pet. 657; *Bank of Augusta v. Earle*, 13 Pet. 519; *Commercial and Railroad Bank of Vicksburg v. Slocomb*, 14 Pet. 60; *Suydam v. Broadnax*, 14 Pet. 67; *Prigg v. Pennsylvania*, 16 Pet. 539; *Louisville, Cincinnati and Charleston Railroad Co. v. Letson*, 2 How. 497; *Cary v. Curtis*, 3 How. 236; *Waring v. Clark*, 5 How. 441; *New Jersey Steam Navigation Co. v. Merchants' Bank*, 6 How. 344; *Luther v. Borden*, 7 How. 1; *Sheldon v. Still*, 8 How. 441; *The Propeller Genesee Chief v. Fitzhugh*, 12 How. 443; *Fretz v. Bull*, 12 How. 466; *Neves v. Scott*, 13 How. 268; *Pennsylvania v. The Wheeling &c. Bridge Company*, 13 How. 518; *Marshall v. Baltimore and Ohio Railroad Co.*, 16 How. 314; *United States v. Guthrie*, 17 How. 284; *Smith v. Maryland*, 18 How. 71; *Jones v. League*, 18 How. 76; *Murray's Lessee v. Hoboken Land and Improvement Company*, 18 How. 272; *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *Hyde v. Stone*, 20 How. 170; *Jackson v. Steamboat Magnolia*, 20 How. 296; *Irvine v. Marshall*, 20 How. 558; *Fenn v. Holme*, 21 How. 481; *Morewood v. Enequist*, 23 How. 491; *Kentucky v. Dennison, Governor*, 24 How. 66; *Ohio and Mississippi Railroad Company v. Wheeler*, 1 Black, 286; *The Steamer Saint Lawrence*, 1 Black, 522; *The Propeller Commerce*, 1 Black, 574; *Ex parte Vallandigham*, 1 Wall. 243; *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2; *The Moses Taylor*, 4 Wall. 411; *Mississippi v. Johnson, President*, 4 Wall. 475; *The Hine v. Trevor*, 4 Wall. 555; *Philadel-*

and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.<sup>1</sup> Appendix.  
The Constitution.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the

*phia v. The Collector*, 5 Wall. 720; *Georgia v. Stanton*, 6 Wall. 50; *Payne v. Hook*, 7 Wall. 425; *The Alicia*, 7 Wall. 571; *Cowles v. Mercer County*, 7 Wall. 118; *The Belfast*, 7 Wall. 624; *Ex parte Yerger*, 8 Wall. 85; *Insurance Company v. Dunham*, 11 Wall. 1; *Virginia v. West Virginia*, 11 Wall. 39; *Coal Co. v. Blatchford*, 11 Wall. 172; *Railway Co. v. Whitton's Adm.*, 13 Wall. 270; *Tarble's Case*, 13 Wall. 397; *Blyew v. United States*, 13 Wall. 581; *Davis v. Gray*, 16 Wall. 203; *Steamboat Co. v. Chase*, 16 Wall. 522; *Case of the Sewing Machine Companies*, 18 Wall. 553; *Insurance Co. v. Dunn*, 19 Wall. 214; *The Mohler*, 21 Wall. 230; *Insurance Company v. Morse*, 20 Wall. 445; *Vannevar v. Bryant*, 21 Wall. 41; *The Lottawanna*, 21 Wall. 558; *Gaines v. Fuentes*, 92 U. S. 10; *Muller v. Dows*, 94 U. S. 444; *Doyle v. Continental Insurance Company*, 94 U. S. 535; *United States v. Hall*, 98 U. S. 343; *United States v. Union Pacific Railroad Co.*, 98 U. S. 569; *Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257; *Ex parte Boyd*, 105 U. S. 647; *New Hampshire v. Louisiana*, 108 U. S. 76; *New York v. Louisiana*, 108 U. S. 76; *Johnson v. Chicago &c. Elevator Co.*, 119 U. S. 388; *Barron v. Burnside*, 121 U. S. 186; *De Sausure v. Gaillard*, 127 U. S. 216; *Wisconsin v. Pelican Insurance Co.*, 127 U. S. 265; *Hans v. Louisiana*, 134 U. S. 1; *Johnson v. Risk*, 137 U. S. 300; *Cook County v. Calumet &c. Canal & Dock Co.*, 138 U. S. 635.

<sup>1</sup> *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419; *Wiscart v. Dauchy*, 3 Dall. 321; *Marbury v. Madison*, 1 Cranch, 137; *Ex parte Bollman*, 4 Cranch, 75; *Durousseau v. United States*, 6 Cranch, 307; *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304; *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264; *Ex parte Kearney*, 7 Wheat. 38; *Wayman v. Southard*, 10 Wheat. 1; *Bank of the United States v. Halstead*, 10 Wheat. 51; *United States v. Ortega*, 11 Wheat. 467; *The Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1; *Ex parte Crane*, 5 Pet. 189; *New Jersey v. New York*, 5 Pet. 283; *Davis v. Packard*, 7 Pet. 276; *Ex parte Sibbald v. United States*, 12 Pet. 488; *Rhode Island v. Massachusetts*, 12 Pet. 657; *Pennsylvania v. The Wheeling &c. Bridge Company*, 13 How. 518; *In re Kaine*, 14 How. 103; *Ableman v. Booth*; *United States v. Booth*, 21 How. 506; *Ex parte Vallandigham*, 1 Wall. 243; *Kentucky v. Dennison*, 24 How. 66; *Freeborn v. Smith*, 2 Wall. 160; *Ex parte McCordle*, 6 Wall. 318; *Ex parte McCordle*, 7 Wall. 506; *Texas v. White*, 7 Wall. 700; *Ex parte Yerger*, 8 Wall. 85; *The Lucy*, 8 Wall. 307; *The Justices v. Murray*, 9 Wall. 274; *Pennsylvania v. Quicksilver Company*, 10 Wall. 553; *Virginia v. West Virginia*, 11 Wall. 39; *Murdock v. City of Memphis*, 20 Wall. 590; *Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257; *The Francis Wright*, 105 U. S. 381; *Börs v. Preston*, 111 U. S. 252; *Ames v. Kansas*, 111 U. S. 449; *Wisconsin v. Pelican Insurance Co.*, 127 U. S. 265; *In re Balz*, 135 U. S. 403.

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.<sup>1</sup>

SECTION. 3. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.<sup>2</sup>

The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.<sup>3</sup>

#### ARTICLE. IV.

SECTION. 1. Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. Dawson*, 15 How. 467; *United States v. Jackalow*, 1 Black, 484; *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2; *Callan v. Wilson*, 127 U. S. 540; *Nashville, Chattanooga &c. Railway Co. v. Alabama*, 128 U. S. 96; *Ellenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 32; *Jones v. United States*, 137 U. S. 202; *Cook v. United States*, 138 U. S. 157.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. The Insurgents*, 2 Dall. 335; *United States v. Vigol*, 2 Dall. 346; *United States v. Mitchell*, 2 Dall. 348; *Ex parte Bollman and Swartwout*, 4 Cranch, 75; *United States v. Aaron Burr*, 4 Cranch, 470.

<sup>3</sup> *Bigelow v. Forest*, 9 Wall. 339; *Day v. Micou*, 18 Wall. 156; *Ex parte Lange*, 18 Wall. 163; *Wallach v. Van Rieck*, 92 U. S. 202.

<sup>4</sup> *Armstrong v. Carson's Executors*, 2 Dall. 302; *Mills v. Duryee*, 7 Cranch, 481; *Hampton v. McConnel*, 3 Wheat. 234; *Mayhew v. Thatcher*, 6 Wheat. 129; *Darby's Lessee v. Mayer*, 10 Wheat. 465; *United States v. Amedy*, 11 Wheat. 392; *Caldwell v. Carrington's Heirs*, 9 Pet. 86; *M'Elmoyle v. Cohen*, 13 Pet. 312; *Bank of Augusta v. Earle*, 13 Pet. 519; *Bank of the State of Alabama v. Dalton*, 9 How. 522; *D'Arcy v. Ketchum*, 11 How. 165; *Kentucky v. Dennison, Governor, &c.*, 24 How. 66; *Christmas v. Russell*, 5 Wall. 280; *Green v. Van Buskirk*, 7 Wall. 139; *Paul v. Virginia*, 8 Wall. 168; *Cheever v. Wilson*, 9 Wall. 108; *Board of Public Works v. Columbia College*, 17 Wall. 521; *Thompson v. Whitman*, 18 Wall. 457; *Bonaparte v. Tax Court*, 104 U. S. 593; *Robertson v. Pickrell*, 108 U. S. 608; *Hanley v. Donoghue*, 116 U. S. 1;

**SECTION. 2.** The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.<sup>1</sup> Appendix.  
The Constitution.

A person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.<sup>2</sup>

No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.<sup>3</sup>

**SECTION. 3.** New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State;

*Renaud v. Abbott*, 116 U. S. 277; *Chicago & Alton Railroad v. Wiggins Ferry Co.*, 119 U. S. 615; *Wisconsin v. Pelican Insurance Co.*, 127 U. S. 265; *Cole v. Cunningham*, 133 U. S. 107; *Simmons v. Saul*, 138 U. S. 439.

<sup>1</sup> *Bank of United States v. Deveaux*, 5 Cranch, 61; *Gassies v. Ballou*, 6 Pet. 761; *Rhode Island v. Massachusetts*, 12 Pet. 657; *The Bank of Augusta v. Earle*, 13 Pet. 519; *Moore v. The People of the State of Illinois*, 14 How. 13; *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *Conner v. Elliott*, 18 How. 591; *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35; *Woodruff v. Parham*, 8 Wall. 123; *Paul v. Virginia*, 8 Wall. 168; *Downham v. Alexandria Council*, 10 Wall. 173; *Ducat v. Chicago*, 10 Wall. 410; *Liverpool Insurance Company v. Massachusetts*, 10 Wall. 566; *Ward v. Maryland*, 12 Wall. 418; *Slaughterhouse Cases*, 16 Wall. 36; *Bradwell v. The State*, 16 Wall. 130; *Minor v. Happersett*, 21 Wall. 162; *Chemung Bank v. Lowery*, 93 U. S. 72; *McCready v. Virginia*, 94 U. S. 391; *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *Brown v. Houston*, 114 U. S. 622; *Pembina Consolidated Mining Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 125 U. S. 181; *Kimmish v. Ball*, 129 U. S. 217; *Cole v. Cunningham*, 133 U. S. 107; *Norfolk and Western Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 136 U. S. 114; *Minnesota v. Barber*, 136 U. S. 313.

<sup>2</sup> *Holmes v. Jennison*, 14 Pet. 540; *Kentucky v. Dennison, Governor*, 24 How. 66; *Taylor v. Taintor*, 16 Wall. 366; *Robb v. Connolly*, 111 U. S. 624.

<sup>3</sup> *Prigg v. Pennsylvania*, 16 Pet. 539; *Jones v. Van Zandt*, 5 How. 215; *Strader v. Graham*, 10 How. 82; *Moore v. The People of the State of Illinois*, 14 How. 13; *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *Ableman v. Booth*; *United States v. Booth*, 21 How. 506.

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.<sup>1</sup>

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.<sup>2</sup>

SECTION. 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.<sup>3</sup>

## ARTICLE. V.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case,<sup>4</sup> shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided

<sup>1</sup> *American Insurance Company v. Canter* (356 Bales of Cotton), 1 Pet. 511; *Pollard's Lessee v. Hagan*, 3 How. 212; *Cross v. Harrison*, 16 How. 164.

<sup>2</sup> *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316; *American Insurance Company v. Canter*, 1 Pet. 511; *United States v. Gratiot*, 14 Pet. 526; *United States v. Rogers*, 4 How. 567; *Cross v. Harrison*, 16 How. 164; *Mackey v. Coxe*, 18 How. 100; *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *Freeborn v. Smith*, 2 Wall. 160; *Gibson v. Chouteau*, 13 Wall. 92; *Clinton v. Englebrecht*, 13 Wall. 434; *Beall v. New Mexico*, 16 Wall. 535; *United States v. Waddell*, 112 U. S. 76; *Van Brocklin v. Tennessee*, 117 U. S. 151; *Wisconsin Central Railroad Co. v. Price County*, 133 U. S. 496; *Mormon Church v. United States*, 136 U. S. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Luther v. Borden*, 7 How. 1; *Texas v. White*, 7 Wall. 700; *Minor v. Happersett*, 21 Wall. 162.

that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year One thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

## ARTICLE. VI.

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.<sup>1</sup>

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the Authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.<sup>2</sup>

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393.

<sup>2</sup> *Hayburn's Case*, 2 Dall. 409; *Ware v. Hylton*, 3 Dall. 199; *Calder and Wife v. Bull and Wife*, 3 Dall. 386; *Marbury v. Madison*, 1 Cranch, 137; *Chirac v. Chirac*, 2 Wheat. 259; *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 4 Wheat. 316; *Society v. New Haven*, 8 Wheat. 464; *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 9 Wheat. 1; *Foster and Elam v. Neilson*, 2 Pet. 253; *Buckner v. Finley*, 2 Pet. 586; *Worcester v. Georgia*, 6 Pet. 515; *Kennett v. Chambers*, 14 How. 38; *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *New York v. Dibble*, 21 How. 366; *Ableman v. Booth*; *United States v. Booth*, 21 How. 506; *Sinnot v. Davenport*, 22 How. 227; *Foster v. Davenport*, 22 How. 244; *Society for Savings v. Coite*, 6 Wall. 594; *Provident Institution v. Massachusetts*, 6 Wall. 611; *Haver v. Yaker*, 9 Wall. 32; *The Cherokee Tobacco*, 11 Wall. 616; *Hauenstein v. Lynham*, 100 U. S. 483; *Edye v. Robertson*, 112 U. S. 580; *Van Brocklin v. Tennessee*, 117 U. S. 151; *United States v. Rauscher*, 119 U. S. 407; *Whitney v. Robertson*, 124 U. S. 190; *The Chinese Exclusion Case*, 130 U. S. 581; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *Ex parte Garland*, 4 Wall. 333; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

## ARTICLE. VII.

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

The word "the", being interlined between the seventh and eighth Lines of the first Page, The Word "Thirty" being partly written on an Erasure in the fifteenth Line of the first Page, The Words "is tried" being interlined between the thirty second and thirty third Lines of the first Page and the Word "the" being interlined between the forty third and forty fourth Lines of the second Page.

[NOTE BY PRINTER.—The interlined and rewritten words, mentioned in the above explanation, are in this edition, printed in their proper places in the text.]

DONE in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the Seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and Eighty seven and of the Independance of the United States of America the Twelfth  
**In Witness** whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names,

G<sup>o</sup>: WASHINGTON—*Presidt.*  
*and deputy from Virginia*

Attest WILLIAM JACKSON *Secretary*

*New Hampshire* { JOHN LANGDON  
NICHOLAS GILMAN }

*Massachusetts* { NATHANIEL GORHAM  
RUFUS KING }

*Connecticut* { WM: SAML. JOHNSON  
ROGER SHERMAN }

*New York* . . . ALEXANDER HAMILTON

*New Jersey* { WIL: LIVINGSTON  
DAVID BREARLEY.  
WM. PATERSON.  
JONA: DAYTON }

*Pennsylvania* { B FRANKLIN  
THOMAS MIFFLIN  
ROBT. MORRIS  
GEO. CLYMER  
THOS. FITZ SIMONS  
JARED INGERSOLL  
JAMES WILSON  
GOUV MORRIS }

|                       |   |                             |                                |
|-----------------------|---|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Delaware</i>       | { | GEO: READ                   | Appendix.<br>The Constitution. |
|                       |   | GUNNING BEDFORD jun         |                                |
|                       |   | JOHN DICKINSON              |                                |
|                       |   | RICHARD BASSETT             |                                |
| <i>Maryland</i>       | { | JACO: BROOM                 |                                |
|                       |   | JAMES MCHENRY               |                                |
|                       |   | DAN OF ST THOS. JENIFER     |                                |
|                       |   | DANL CARROLL                |                                |
| <i>Virginia</i>       | { | JOHN BLAIR—                 |                                |
|                       |   | JAMES MADISON JR.           |                                |
| <i>North Carolina</i> | { | WM: BLOUNT                  |                                |
|                       |   | RICHD. DOBBS SPAIGHT.       |                                |
|                       |   | HU WILLIAMSON               |                                |
| <i>South Carolina</i> | { | J. RUTLEDGE                 |                                |
|                       |   | CHARLES COTESWORTH PINCKNEY |                                |
|                       |   | CHARLES PINCKNEY            |                                |
|                       |   | PIERCE BUTLER.              |                                |
| <i>Georgia</i>        | { | WILLIAM FEW                 |                                |
|                       |   | ABR BALDWIN                 |                                |

## ARTICLES

IN

ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF  
THECONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES  
OF AMERICA,PROPOSED BY CONGRESS AND RATIFIED BY THE LEGISLA-  
TURES OF THE SEVERAL STATES, PURSUANT TO THE  
FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE CONSTITUTION.[ARTICLE I.]<sup>1</sup>Congress shall make no law respecting an establish-  
ment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof;<sup>1</sup> *Terrett v. Taylor*, 9 Cranch, 43; *Vidal v. Girard*, 2 How. 127; *Ex parte Garland*, 4 Wall. 333; *United States v. Cruikshank*, 92 U. S. 542; *Reynolds v. United States*, 98 U. S. 145; *Presser v. Illinois*, 116 U. S. 252; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Davis v. Beason*, 133 U. S. 333; *Ellenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31; *In re Neagle*, 135 U. S. 1.



Appendix.

The Constitution.

or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

## [ARTICLE II.]

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.<sup>1</sup>

## [ARTICLE III.]

No Soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.<sup>2</sup>

## [ARTICLE IV.]

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.<sup>3</sup>

## [ARTICLE V.]

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any Criminal Case to be a witness against himself, nor be

---

<sup>1</sup> *Presser v. Illinois*, 116 U. S. 252; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Eilenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31.

<sup>2</sup> *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Eilenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31.

<sup>3</sup> *Smith v. Maryland*, 18 How. 71; *Murray's Lessee v. Hoboken Land and Improvement Company*, 18 How. 272; *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2; *Ex parte Jackson*, 96 U. S. 727; *Boyd v. United States*, 116 U. S. 616; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Eilenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31.

deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.<sup>1</sup> Appendix. The Constitution.

## [ARTICLE VI.]

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining Witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Houston v. Moore*, 5 Wheat. 1; *United States v. Perez*, 9 Wheat. 579; *Barron v. The City of Baltimore*, 7 Pet. 243; *Fox v. Ohio*, 5 How. 410; *West River Bridge Company v. Dix*, 6 How. 507; *Mitchell v. Harmony*, 13 How. 115; *Moore v. The People of the State of Illinois*, 14 How. 13; *Murray's Lessee v. Hoboken Land and Improvement Company*, 18 How. 272; *Dynes v. Hoover*, 20 How. 65; *Withers v. Buckley*, 20 How. 84; *Gilman v. The City of Sheboygan*, 2 Black, 510; *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2; *Twitchell v. The Commonwealth*, 7 Wall. 321; *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 8 Wall. 603; *Miller v. United States*, 11 Wall. 268; *Legal Tender Cases*, 12 Wall. 457; *Pumpelly v. Green Bay Co.*, 13 Wall. 166; *Osborn v. Nicholson*, 13 Wall. 654; *Ex parte Lange*, 18 Wall. 163; *Minor v. Happersett*, 21 Wall. 162; *The Mohler*, 21 Wall. 230; *Secombe v. Milwaukee & St. Paul Railroad Co.*, 23 Wall. 108; *Kohl v. United States*, 91 U. S. 367; *Davidson v. New Orleans*, 96 U. S. 97; *Sinking Fund Cases*, 99 U. S. 700; *Transportation Co. v. Chicago*, 99 U. S. 635; *Kelly v. Pittsburgh*, 104 U. S. 78; *United States v. Lee*, 106 U. S. 196; *Ex parte Wall*, 107 U. S. 265; *United States v. Jones*, 109 U. S. 513; *Ex parte Wilson*, 114 U. S. 417; *Boyd v. United States*, 116 U. S. 616; *Mackin v. United States*, 117 U. S. 348; *Ex parte Bain*, 121 U. S. 1; *Parkinson v. United States*, 121 U. S. 281; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Callan v. Wilson*, 127 U. S. 540; *United States v. De Walt*, 128 U. S. 393; *Eilenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31; *Louisville and Nashville Railroad Co. v. Woodson*, 134 U. S. 614; *Cherokee Nation v. Southern Kansas Railway*, 135 U. S. 641; *In re Kemmler*, 136 U. S. 436.

<sup>2</sup> *United States v. Cooper*, 4 Dall. 341; *United States v. Coolidge*, 1 Wheat. 415; *Ex parte Kearney*, 7 Wheat. 38; *United States v. Mills*, 7 Pet. 142; *Barron v. City of Baltimore*, 7 Pet. 243; *Fox v. Ohio*, 5 How. 410; *United States v. Dawson*, 15 How. 467; *Withers v. Buckley*, 20 How. 84; *United States v. Jackalow*, 1 Black, 484; *Ex parte Milligan*, 4 Wall. 2; *Twitchell v. The Commonwealth*, 7 Wall. 321; *Miller v. United States*, 11 Wall. 268; *United States v. Cook*, 17 Wall. 168; *Walker v. Sauvinet*, 92 U. S. 90; *United States v. Cruikshank*, 92 U. S.

## Appendix.

## The Constitution.

## [ARTICLE VII.]

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.<sup>1</sup>

## [ARTICLE VIII.]

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.<sup>2</sup>

## [ARTICLE IX.]

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.<sup>3</sup>

## [ARTICLE X.]

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.<sup>4</sup>

---

542; *Reynolds v. United States*, 98 U. S. 145; *United States v. Union Pacific Railroad*, 98 U. S. 569; *Hayes v. Missouri*, 120 U. S. 68; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Brooks v. Missouri*, 124 U. S. 394; *Callan v. Wilson*, 127 U. S. 540; *Ellenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31; *Jones v. United States*, 137 U. S. 202; *Cook v. United States*, 138 U. S. 157.

<sup>1</sup> *United States v. La Vengeance*, 3 Dall. 297; *Whelan v. United States*, 7 Cranch, 112; *United States v. Schooner Betsey*, 4 Cranch, 443; *Bank of Columbia v. Okely*, 4 Wheat. 235; *Bank of Hamilton v. Dudley's Heirs*, 2 Pet. 492; *Parsons v. Bedford*, 3 Pet. 433; *Lessee of Livingston v. Moore*, 7 Pet. 469; *Webster v. Reid*, 11 How. 437; *Pennsylvania v. The Wheeling &c. Bridge Co.*, 13 How. 518; *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *The Justices v. Murray*, 9 Wall. 274; *Edwards v. Elliot*, 21 Wall. 532; *Walker v. Sauvinet*, 92 U. S. 90; *Pearson v. Yewdall*, 95 U. S. 294; *McElrath v. United States*, 102 U. S. 426; *Barton v. Barbour*, 104 U. S. 126; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Arkansas Land and Cattle Co. v. Mann*, 130 U. S. 69; *Ellenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31.

<sup>2</sup> *Pervear v. Commonwealth*, 5 Wall. 475; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Ellenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31; *In re Kemmler*, 136 U. S. 436.

<sup>3</sup> *Lessee of Livingston v. Moore*, 7 Pet. 469; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131.

<sup>4</sup> *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419; *Hollingsworth v. Virginia*, 3 Dall. 378; *Martin v. Hunter's Lessee*, 1 Wheat. 304; *McCulloch v. Maryland*,

## [ARTICLE XI.]

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be <sup>Appendix.</sup> construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.<sup>1</sup> <sup>The Constitution.</sup>

## [ARTICLE XII.]

The Electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for President and Vice President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—The President of the Senate shall, in pres-

4 Wheat. 316; *Anderson v. Dunn*, 6 Wheat. 204; *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264; *Osborn v. United States Bank*, 9 Wheat. 738; *Buckner v. Finley*, 2 Pet. 586; *Dodge v. Woolsey*, 18 How. 331; *Ableman v. Booth*, 21 How. 506; *The Collector v. Day*, 11 Wall. 113; *Claffin v. Houseman*, 93 U. S. 130; *Inman Steamship Co. v. Tinker*, 94 U. S. 238; *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *Civil Rights Cases*, 109 U. S. 3; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131.

<sup>1</sup> *Georgia v. Brailsford et al.*, 2 Dall. 402; *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 2 Dall. 419; *Hollingsworth v. Virginia*, 3 Dall. 378; *Bingham v. Cabot*, 3 Dall. 382; *United States v. Peters*, 5 Cranch, 115; *Cohens v. Virginia*, 6 Wheat. 264; *Osborn v. United States Bank*, 9 Wheat. 738; *United States Bank v. The Planters' Bank*, 9 Wheat. 904; *The Governor of Georgia v. Juan Madrazo*, 1 Pet. 110; *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia*, 5 Pet. 1; *Briscoe v. The Bank of the Commonwealth of Kentucky*, 11 Pet. 257; *Curran v. Arkansas*, 15 How. 304; *Davis v. Gray*, 16 Wall. 203; *Tennessee v. Davis*, 100 U. S. 257; *New Hampshire v. Louisiana*, 108 U. S. 76; *New York v. Louisiana*, 108 U. S. 76; *Clark v. Barnard*, 108 U. S. 436; *Virginia Coupon Cases*, 114 U. S. 269; *Hagood v. Southern*, 117 U. S. 52; *Rolston v. Missouri Fund Commissioners*, 120 U. S. 390; *In re Ayers*, 123 U. S. 443; *Wisconsin v. Pelican Insurance Co.*, 127 U. S. 265; *Lincoln County v. Luning*, 133 U. S. 529; *Christian v. Atlantic & North Carolina Railroad Co.*, 133 U. S. 233; *Hans v. Louisiana*, 134 U. S. 1; *North Carolina v. Temple*, 134 U. S. 22; *Louisiana ex rel. New York Guaranty &c. Co. v. Steele*, 134 U. S. 230.

Appendix.  
The Constitution.

ence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted; — The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.<sup>1</sup>

### [ARTICLE XIII.]

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

---

<sup>1</sup> *In re Green*, 134 U. S. 377.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this Appendix.  
 article by appropriate legislation.<sup>1</sup> The Constitution.

## [ARTICLE XIV.]

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 19 How. 393; *Osborn v. Nicholson*, 13 Wall. 654; *Slaughterhouse Cases*, 16 Wall. 36; *Ex parte Virginia*, 100 U. S. 339; *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *Civil Rights Case*, 109 U. S. 3.

<sup>2</sup> *Slaughterhouse Cases*, 16 Wall. 36; *Bradwell v. The State*, 16 Wall. 130; *Bartemeyer v. Iowa*, 18 Wall. 129; *Minor v. Happersett*, 21 Wall. 162; *United States v. Cruikshank*, 92 U. S. 542; *Davidson v. New Orleans*, 96 U. S. 97; *Railroad Co. v. Richmond*, 96 U. S. 521; *Strauder v. West Virginia*, 100 U. S. 303; *Virginia v. Rives*, 100 U. S. 313; *Ex parte Virginia*, 100 U. S. 339; *Missouri v. Lewis*, 101 U. S. 22; *Springer v. United States*, 102 U. S. 586; *Kelly v. Pittsburgh*, 104 U. S. 78; *Bush v. Kentucky*, 107 U. S. 110; *Pace v. Alabama*, 106 U. S. 583; *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *Gross v. United States Mortgage Co.*, 108 U. S. 477; *Vance v. Vance*, 108 U. S. 514; *Civil Rights Cases*, 109 U. S. 3; *United States v. Gale*, 109 U. S. 65; *Louisiana v. New Orleans*, 109 U. S. 285; *Hurtado v. California*, 110 U. S. 516; *Ex parte Yarbrough*, 110 U. S. 651; *Hagar v. Reclamation District*, 111 U. S. 701; *Elk v. Wilkins*, 112 U. S. 94; *Foster v. Kansas*, 112 U. S. 205; *Head v. Amoskeag Manufacturing Co.*, 113 U. S. 9; *Barbier v. Connolly*, 113 U. S. 27; *Provident Institution for Savings v. Mayor &c. of Jersey City*, 113 U. S. 506; *Soon Hing v. Crowley*, 113 U. S. 703; *Wurts v. Hoagland*, 114 U. S. 606; *Kentucky Railroad Tax Cases*, 115 U. S. 321; *Missouri Pacific Railway Co. v. Humes*, 115 U. S. 512; *Campbell v. Holt*, 115 U. S. 620; *Brown v. Grant*, 116 U. S. 207; *Presser v. Illinois*, 116 U. S. 252; *Stone v. Farmers' Loan and Trust Co.*, 116 U. S. 307; *Arrowsmith v. Harmoning*, 118 U. S. 194; *Yick Wo v. Hopkins*, 118 U. S. 356; *Santa Clara County v. Southern Pacific Railroad*, 118 U. S. 394; *Philadelphia Fire Association v. New York*, 119 U. S. 110; *Home Insurance Co. v. New York*, 119 U. S. 129; *Schmidt v. Cobb*, 119 U. S. 286; *Kerr v. Illinois*, 119 U. S. 436; *Hayes v. Missouri*, 120 U. S. 68; *Baldwin v. Franks*, 120 U. S. 678; *Church v. Kelsey*, 121 U. S. 282; *Spies v. Illinois*, 123 U. S. 131; *Sands v. Manistee River Improvement Co.*, 123 U. S. 288; *Mugler v. Kansas*, 123 U. S. 623; *Great Falls Manufacturing Co. v. Attorney-General*, 124

Appendix.

The Constitution.

**SECTION 2.** Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the Executive and Judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.<sup>1</sup>

**SECTION 3.** No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having pre-

---

U. S. 581; *Pembina Consolidated Mining Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 125 U. S. 181; *Spencer v. Merchant*, 125 U. S. 345; *Dow v. Beldelman*, 125 U. S. 680; *California v. Central Pacific Railroad Co.*, 127 U. S. 1; *Ro Bards v. Lamb*, 127 U. S. 58; *Missouri Pacific Railway Co. v. Mackey*, 127 U. S. 205; *Minneapolis and St. Louis Railway Co. v. Herrick*, 127 U. S. 210; *Powell v. Pennsylvania*, 127 U. S. 678; *Mahon v. Justices*, 127 U. S. 700; *Kidd v. Pearson*, 128 U. S. 1; *Nashville, Chattanooga &c. Railway Co. v. Alabama*, 128 U. S. 96; *Walston v. Nevin*, 128 U. S. 578; *Minneapolis and St. Louis Railway v. Beckwith*, 129 U. S. 26; *Dent v. West Virginia*, 129 U. S. 114; *Huling v. Kaw Valley Railway &c. Co.*, 130 U. S. 559; *Freeland v. Williams*, 131 U. S. 405; *Cross v. North Carolina*, 132 U. S. 131; *Pennie v. Reis*, 132 U. S. 464; *Sugg v. Thornton*, 132 U. S. 524; *Palmer v. McMahon*, 133 U. S. 660; *Eilenbecker v. District Court of Plymouth County*, 134 U. S. 31; *Bell's Gap Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 134 U. S. 232; *Chicago, Milwaukee &c. Railway Co. v. Minnesota*, 134 U. S. 418; *Minneapolis Eastern Railway Co. v. Minnesota*, 134 U. S. 467; *Home Insurance Co. v. New York*, 134 U. S. 594; *Louisville and Nashville Railroad Co. v. Woodson*, 134 U. S. 614; *Norfolk and Western Railroad Co. v. Pennsylvania*, 136 U. S. 114; *In re Kemmler*, 136 U. S. 436; *York v. Texas*, 137 U. S. 15; *Crowley v. Christensen*, 137 U. S. 86; *Wheeler v. Jackson*, 137 U. S. 245; *Holden v. Minnesota*, 137 U. S. 483; *In re Converse*, 137 U. S. 624; *Caldwell v. Texas*, 137 U. S. 692; *Kauffman v. Wootters*, 138 U. S. 285; *Leeper v. Texas*, 139 U. S. 462; *In re Manning*, 139 U. S. 504; *Natal v. Louisiana*, 139 U. S. 621.

<sup>1</sup> *Slaughterhouse Cases*, 16 Wall. 36.

viously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an <sup>Appendix.</sup> officer of the United States, or as a member of any State <sup>The Constitution.</sup> legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.<sup>1</sup>

#### [ARTICLE XV.]

SECTION 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Crandall v. Nevada*, 6 Wall. 35; *Paul v. Virginia*, 8 Wall. 168; *Ward v. Maryland*, 12 Wall. 418; *Slaughterhouse Cases*, 16 Wall. 36; *Bradwell v. The State*, 16 Wall. 130; *Bartemeyer v. Iowa*, 18 Wall. 129; *Minor v. Happersett*, 21 Wall. 162; *Walker v. Sauvinet*, 92 U. S. 90; *Kennard v. Louisiana, ex rel. Morgan*, 92 U. S. 480; *United States v. Cruikshank*, 92 U. S. 542; *Munn v. Illinois*, 94 U. S. 113; *Virginia v. Rives*, 100 U. S. 313; *Strauder v. West Virginia*, 100 U. S. 303; *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *Civil Rights Cases*, 109 U. S. 3.

<sup>2</sup> *Minor v. Happersett*, 21 Wall. 162; *United States v. Reese*, 92 U. S. 214; *United States v. Cruikshank*, 92 U. S. 542; *Neal v. Delaware*, 103 U. S. 370; *United States v. Harris*, 106 U. S. 629; *Ex parte Yarbrough*, 110 U. S. 651.



## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

## DEPARTMENT OF STATE.

Appendix. *To all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting :*

The Constitution. I certify that the documents hereto annexed are true copies, from the Archives of this Department, of the Constitution of the United States of America with the amendments; and that said copy has been carefully compared with the original and found to be correct in text, letter and punctuation.

In testimony whereof I, William F. Wharton, Acting Secretary of State of the United States, have hereto subscribed my name and caused the seal of the

[SEAL.] Department of State to be affixed.

Done at the City of Washington, this 15th day of June, A.D., 1891, and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and fifteenth.

WILLIAM F. WHARTON.

## II.

## [ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION—1777.]

Articles of  
Confederation.

*To all to whom these Presents shall come, we the undersigned Delegates of the States affixed to our Names send greeting.*

Whereas the Delegates of the United States of America in Congress assembled did on the fifteenth day of November in the Year of our Lord One Thousand Seven Hundred and Seventyseven, and in the Second Year of the Independence of America agree to certain articles of Confederation and perpetual Union between the States of Newhampshire, Massachusetts-bay, Rhodeisland and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North-Carolina, South-Carolina and Georgia in the Words following, viz.

*“ Articles of Confederation and perpetual Union between the States of Newhampshire, Mussachusetts-bay, Rhode-island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North-Carolina, South-Carolina and Georgia.*

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

ARTICLE I. The Stile of this confederacy shall be  
“ The United States of America.”

ARTICLE II. Each State retains its sovereignty, freedom and independence, and every Power, Jurisdiction and right, which is not by this confederation expressly delegated to the United States, in Congress assembled.

ARTICLE III. The said states hereby severally enter into a firm league of friendship with each other, for their common defence, the security of their Liberties, and their mutual and general welfare, binding themselves to assist each other, against all force offered to, or attacks made upon them, or any of them, on account of religion, sovereignty, trade, or any other pretence whatever.

ARTICLE IV. The better to secure and perpetuate mutual friendship and intercourse among the people of the different states in this union, the free inhabitants of each of these states, paupers, vagabonds and fugitives from justice excepted, shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several states; and the people of each state shall have free ingress and regress to and from any other state, and shall enjoy therein all the privileges of trade and commerce, subject to the same duties, impositions and restrictions as the inhabitants thereof respectively, provided that such restriction shall not extend so far as to prevent the removal of property imported into any state, to any other state of which the Owner is an inhabitant; provided also that no imposition, duties or restriction shall be laid by any state, on the property of the united states, or either of them.

If any Person guilty of, or charged with treason, felony, or other high misdemeanor in any state, shall flee from Justice, and be found in any of the united states,

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

he shall upon demand of the Governor or executive power, of the state from which he fled, be delivered up and removed to the state having jurisdiction of his offence.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each of these states to the records, acts and judicial proceedings of the courts and magistrates of every other state.

ARTICLE V. For the more convenient management of the general interests of the united states, delegates shall be annually appointed in such manner as the legislature of each state shall direct, to meet in Congress on the first Monday in November, in every year, with a power reserved to each state, to recall its delegates, or any of them, at any time within the year, and to send others in their stead, for the remainder of the Year.

No state shall be represented in Congress by less than two, nor by more than seven Members; and no person shall be capable of being a delegate for more than three years in any term of six years; nor shall any person, being a delegate, be capable of holding any office under the united states, for which he, or another for his benefit receives any salary, fees or emolument of any kind.

Each state shall maintain its own delegates in a meeting of the states, and while they act as members of the committee of the states.

In determining questions in the united states, in Congress assembled, each state shall have one vote.

Freedom of speech and debate in Congress shall not be impeached or questioned in any Court, or place out of Congress, and the members of congress shall be protected in their persons from arrests and imprisonments, during the time of their going to and from, and attendance on Congress, except for treason, felony, or breach of the peace.

ARTICLE VI. No state without the consent of the united states in congress assembled, shall send any embassy to, or receive any embassy from, or enter into any conference, agreement, alliance or treaty with any King prince or state; nor shall any person holding any

office of profit or trust under the united states, or any of them, accept of any present, emolument, office or title of any kind whatever from any king, prince or foreign state; nor shall the united states in congress assembled, or any of them, grant any title of nobility.

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

No two or more states shall enter into any treaty, confederation or alliance whatever between them, without the consent of the united states in congress assembled, specifying accurately the purposes for which the same is to be entered into, and how long it shall continue.

No state shall lay any imposts or duties, which may interfere with any stipulations in treaties, entered into by the united states in congress assembled, with any king, prince or state, in pursuance of any treaties already proposed by congress, to the courts of France and Spain.

No vessels of war shall be kept up in time of peace by any state, except such number only, as shall be deemed necessary by the united states in congress assembled, for the defence of such state, or its trade; nor shall any body of forces be kept up by any state, in time of peace, except such number only, as in the judgment of the united states, in congress assembled, shall be deemed requisite to garrison the forts necessary for the defence of such state; but every state shall always keep up a well regulated and disciplined militia, sufficiently armed and accoutred, and shall provide and constantly have ready for use, in public stores, a due number of field pieces and tents, and a proper quantity of arms, ammunition and camp equipage.

No state shall engage in any war without the consent of the united states in congress assembled, unless such state be actually invaded by enemies, or shall have received certain advice of a resolution being formed by some nation of Indians to invade such state, and the danger is so imminent as not to admit of a delay, till the united states in congress assembled can be consulted: nor shall any state grant commissions to any ships or vessels of war, nor letters of marque or reprisal, except it be

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

after a declaration of war by the united states in congress assembled, and then only against the kingdom or state and the subjects thereof, against which war has been so declared, and under such regulations as shall be established by the united states in congress assembled, unless such state be infested by pirates, in which case vessels of war may be fitted out for that occasion, and kept so long as the danger shall continue, or until the united states in congress assembled shall determine otherwise.

ARTICLE VII. When land-forces are raised by any state for the common defence, all officers of or under the rank of colonel, shall be appointed by the legislature of each state respectively by whom such forces shall be raised, or in such manner as such state shall direct, and all vacancies shall be filled up by the state which first made the appointment.

ARTICLE VIII. All charges of war, and all other expenses that shall be incurred for the common defence or general welfare, and allowed by the united states in congress assembled, shall be defrayed out of a common treasury, which shall be supplied by the several states, in proportion to the value of all land within each state, granted to or surveyed for any Person, as such land and the buildings and improvements thereon shall be estimated according to such mode as the united states in congress assembled, shall from time to time direct and appoint.

The taxes for paying that proportion shall be laid and levied by the authority and direction of the legislatures of the several states within the time agreed upon by the united states in congress assembled.

ARTICLE IX. The united states in congress assembled, shall have the sole and exclusive right and power of determining on peace and war, except in the cases mentioned in the sixth article — of sending and receiving ambassadors — entering into treaties and alliances, provided that no treaty of commerce shall be made whereby the legislative power of the respective states shall be restrained from imposing such imposts and duties on for-

eigners, as their own people are subjected to, or from prohibiting the exportation or importation of any species of goods or commodities whatsoever — of establishing rules for deciding in all cases, what captures on land or water shall be legal, and in what manner prizes taken by land or naval forces in the service of the united states shall be divided or appropriated — of granting letters of marque and reprisal in times of peace — appointing courts for the trial of piracies and felonies committed on the high seas and establishing courts for receiving and determining finally appeals in all cases of captures, provided that no member of congress shall be appointed a judge of any of the said courts.

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

The united states in congress assembled shall also be the last resort on appeal in all disputes and differences now subsisting or that hereafter may arise between two or more states concerning boundary, jurisdiction or any other cause whatever; which authority shall always be exercised in the manner following. Whenever the legislative or executive authority or lawful agent of any state in controversy with another shall present a petition to congress, stating the matter in question and praying for a hearing, notice thereof shall be given by order of congress to the legislative or executive authority of the other state in controversy, and a day assigned for the appearance of the parties by their lawful agents, who shall then be directed to appoint by joint consent, commissioners or judges to constitute a court for hearing and determining the matter in question: but if they cannot agree, congress shall name three persons out of each of the united states, and from the list of such persons each party shall alternately strike out one, the petitioners beginning, until the number shall be reduced to thirteen; and from that number not less than seven, nor more than nine names as congress shall direct, shall in the presence of congress be drawn out by lot, and the persons whose names shall be so drawn or any five of them, shall be commissioners or judges, to hear and finally determine the controversy, so always as a major part of the judges who shall hear the cause shall agree

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

in the determination : and if either party shall neglect to attend at the day appointed, without showing reasons, which congress shall judge sufficient, or being present shall refuse to strike, the congress shall proceed to nominate three persons out of each state, and the secretary of congress shall strike in behalf of such party absent or refusing ; and the judgment and sentence of the court to be appointed, in the manner before prescribed, shall be final and conclusive ; and if any of the parties shall refuse to submit to the authority of such court, or to appear or defend their claim or cause, the court shall nevertheless proceed to pronounce sentence, or judgment, which shall in like manner be final and decisive, the judgment or sentence and other proceedings being in either case transmitted to congress, and lodged among the acts of congress for the security of the parties concerned : provided that every commissioner, before he sits in judgment, shall take an oath to be administered by one of the judges of the supreme or superior court of the state, where the cause shall be tried, "well and truly to hear and determine the matter in question, according to the best of his judgment, without favour, affection or hope of reward:" provided also that no state shall be deprived of territory for the benefit of the united states.

All controversies concerning the private right of soil claimed under different grants of two or more states, whose jurisdictions as they may respect such lands, and the states which passed such grants are adjusted, the said grants or either of them being at the same time claimed to have originated antecedent to such settlement of jurisdiction, shall on the petition of either party to the congress of the united states, be finally determined as near as may be in the same manner as is before prescribed for deciding disputes respecting territorial jurisdiction between different states.

The united states in congress assembled shall also have the sole and exclusive right and power of regulating the alloy and value of coin struck by their own authority, or by that of the respective states — fixing

the standard of weights and measures throughout the united states, — regulating the trade and managing all affairs with the Indians, not members of any of the states, provided that the legislative right of any state within its own limits be not infringed or violated — establishing and regulating post-offices from one state to another, throughout all the united states, and exacting such postage on the papers passing thro' the same as may be requisite to defray the expenses of the said office — appointing all officers of the land forces, in the service of the united states, excepting regimental officers — appointing all the officers of the naval forces, and commissioning all officers whatever in the service of the united states — making rules for the government and regulation of the said land and naval forces, and directing their operations.

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

The united states in congress assembled shall have authority to appoint a committee, to sit in the recess of congress, to be denominated "a committee of the states," and to consist of one delegate from each state, and to appoint such other committees and civil officers as may be necessary for managing the general affairs of the united states under their direction — to appoint one of their number to preside, provided that no person be allowed to serve in the office of president more than one year in any term of three years ; to ascertain the necessary sums of Money to be raised for the service of the united states, and to appropriate and apply the same for defraying the public expenses — to borrow money, or emit bills on the credit of the united states, transmitting every half year to the respective states an account of the sums of money so borrowed or emitted, — to build and equip a navy — to agree upon the number of land forces, and to make requisitions from each state for its quota, in proportion to the number of white inhabitants in such state; which requisition shall be binding, and thereupon the legislature of each state shall appoint the regimental officers, raise the men and cloath, arm and equip them in a soldier like manner, at the expense of the united states, and the officers and men so cloathed, armed



Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

and equipped shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on by the united states in congress assembled: But if the united states in congress assembled shall, on consideration of circumstances judge proper that any state should not raise men, or should raise a smaller number than its quota, and that any other state should raise a greater number of men than the quota thereof, such extra number shall be raised, officered, clothed, armed and equipped in the same manner as the quota of such state, unless the legislature of such state shall judge that such extra number cannot be safely spared out of the same, in which case they shall raise officer, cloth, arm and equip as many of such extra number as they judge can be safely spared. And the officers and men so clothed, armed and equipped, shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on by the united states in congress assembled.

The united states in congress assembled shall never engage in a war, nor grant letters of marque and reprisal in time of peace, nor enter into any treaties or alliances, nor coin money, nor regulate the value thereof, nor ascertain the sums and expenses necessary for the defence and welfare of the united states, or any of them, nor emit bills, nor borrow money on the credit of the united states, nor appropriate money, nor agree upon the number of vessels of war, to be built or purchased, or the number of land or sea forces to be raised, nor appoint a commander in chief of army or navy, unless nine states assent to the same: nor shall a question on any other point, except for adjourning from day to day be determined, unless by the votes of a majority of the united states in congress assembled.

The congress of the united states shall have power to adjourn to any time within the year, and to any place within the united states, so that no period of adjournment be for a longer duration than the space of six Months, and shall publish the Journal of their proceedings monthly, except such parts thereof relating to treaties, alliances or military operations, as in their

judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the delegates of each state on any question shall be entered on the journal, when it is desired by any delegate; and the delegates of a state, or any of them, at his or their request shall be furnished with a transcript of the said Journal, except such parts as are above excepted, to lay before the legislatures of the several states.

Appendix:  
Articles of  
Confederation.

ARTICLE X. The committee of the states, or any nine of them, shall be authorized to execute, in the recess of congress, such of the powers of congress as the united states in congress assembled, by the consent of nine states, shall from time to time think expedient to vest them with; provided that no power be delegated to the said committee, for the exercise of which, by the articles of confederation, the voice of nine states in the congress of the united states assembled is requisite.

ARTICLE XI. Canada acceding to this confederation, and joining in the measures of the united states, shall be admitted into, and entitled to all the advantages of this union: but no other colony shall be admitted into the same, unless such admission be agreed to by nine states.

ARTICLE XII. All bills of credit emitted, monies borrowed and debt contracted by, or under the authority of congress, before the assembling of the united states, in pursuance of the present confederation, shall be deemed and considered as a charge against the united states, for payment and satisfaction whereof the said united states, and the public faith are hereby solemnly pledged.

ARTICLE XIII. Every state shall abide by the determinations of the united states in congress assembled, on all questions which by this confederation are submitted to them. And the Articles of this confederation shall be inviolably observed by every state, and the union shall be perpetual; nor shall any alteration at any time hereafter be made in any of them; unless such alteration be agreed to in a congress of the united states, and be afterwards confirmed by the legislatures of every state.

And whereas it has pleased the Great Governor of

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

the World to incline the hearts of the legislatures we respectively represent in congress, to approve of, and to authorize us to ratify the said articles of confederation and perpetual union. Know ye that we the undersigned delegates, by virtue of the power and authority to us given for that purpose, do by these presents, in the name and in behalf of our respective constituents, fully and entirely ratify and confirm each and every of the said articles of confederation and perpetual union, and all and singular the matters and things therein contained: And we do further solemnly plight and engage the faith of our respective constituents, that they shall abide by the determinations of the united states in congress assembled, on all questions, which by the said confederation are submitted to them. And that the articles thereof shall be inviolably observed by the states we respectively represent, and that the union shall be perpetual.

In witness whereof we have hereunto set our hands in Congress. Done at Philadelphia in the State of Pennsylvania the ninth Day of July in the Year of our Lord one Thousand seven Hundred and Seventy-eight, and in the third Year of the independence of America.

*On the part & behalf of the State of New Hampshire*

JOSIAH BARTLETT

JOHN WENTWORTH, Junr  
August 8th, 1778.

*On the part and behalf of the State of Massachusetts Bay*

JOHN HANCOCK  
SAMUEL ADAMS  
ELBRIDGE GERRY

FRANCIS DANA  
JAMES LOVELL  
SAMUEL HOLTEN

*On the part and behalf of the State of Rhode Island and  
Providence Plantations*

WILLIAM ELLERY  
HENRY MARCHANT

JOHN COLLINS

*On the part and behalf of the State of Connecticut*

ROGER SHERMAN  
SAMUEL HUNTINGTON  
OLIVER WOLCOTT

TITUS HOSMER  
ANDREW ADAMS

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

*On the part and Behalf of the State of New York*

JAS. DUANE  
FRA. LEWIS

WM. DUER,  
GOUV. MORRIS.

*On the part and in Behalf of the State of New Jersey,  
Novr. 26, 1778.*

JNO. WITHERSPOON

NATHL. SCUDDER.

*On the part and behalf of the State of Pennsylvania*

ROBT. MORRIS,  
DANIEL ROBERDEAU  
JONA. BAYARD SMITH

WILLIAM CLINGAN,  
JOSEPH REED, 22d July, 1778.

*On the part & behalf of the State of Delaware*

THO. M'KEAN, Feby. 12, 1779. NICHOLAS VAN DYKE,  
JOHN DICKINSON—May 5th, 1779.

*On the part and behalf of the State of Maryland*

JOHN HANSON, March 1, 1781. DANIEL CARROLL, do.

*On the Part and Behalf of the State of Virginia*

RICHARD HENRY LEE  
JOHN BANISTER  
THOMAS ADAMS

JNO. HARVIE  
FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE.

*On the part and Behalf of the State of No. Carolina*

JOHN PENN July 21st. 1778. JNO. WILLIAMS  
CORS. HARNETT

*On the part & behalf of the State of South Carolina*

HENRY LAURENS,  
WILLIAM HENRY DRAYTON  
JNO. MATHEWS

RICHD. HUTSON,  
THOS. HEYWARD, Junr.

*On the part & behalf of the State of Georgia*

JNO. WALTON, 24th July 1778. EDWD. LANGWORTHY.  
EDWD. TELFAIR

Endorsed : — Act of Confederation of the United States  
of America.

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

## DEPARTMENT OF STATE.

Appendix.  
Articles of  
Confederation.

*To all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting:*

I certify That the document hereto annexed is a true copy, from the Archives of this Department, of the original Articles of Confederation as engrossed and signed in Congress.

In testimony whereof I, William F. Wharton, Acting Secretary of State of the United States, have hereto subscribed my name and caused the seal of the

[SEAL.] Department of State to be affixed.

Done at the City of Washington this 12th day of June, A.D., 1891, and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and fifteenth.

WILLIAM F. WHARTON.

## III.

## RESOLUTIONS,

OFFERED BY MR. EDMUND RANDOLPH TO THE CONVENTION, MAY 29, 1787.

Randolph's Draft.

1. Resolved, that the Articles of the Confederation ought to be so corrected and enlarged, as to accomplish the objects proposed by their institution, namely, *common defence*, security of Liberty and *general welfare*.

2. Resolved, therefore, that the right of suffrage, in the National Legislature, ought to be proportioned to the quotas of contribution, or to the number of free inhabitants, as the one or the other may seem best, in different cases.

3. Resolved, that the National Legislature ought to consist of *two branches*.

4. Resolved, that the members of the *first* branch of the National Legislature ought to be elected by the people of the several States, every for the term

of            to be of the age of        years at least; to receive liberal stipends, by which they may be compensated for the devotion of their time to publick service; to be in-eligible to any office established by a particular state, or under the authority of the United States (except those peculiarly belonging to the functions of the first branch) during the term of service and for the space of        after its expiration; to be incapable of re-election for the space of        after the expiration of their term of service; and to be subject to recal.

5. Resolved, that the Members of the <sup>Second</sup><sub>2d</sub> branch of the National Legislature ought to be elected by those of the first, out of a proper number of persons nominated by the individual Legislatures; to be of the age of        years, at least; to hold their offices for a term sufficient to ensure their independency; to receive liberal stipend, by which they may be compensated for the devotion of their time to the publick service; and to be ineligible to any office established by a particular state, or under the authority of the United States (except those peculiarly belonging to the functions of the second branch) during the term of service; and for the space of        after the expiration thereof.

6. Resolved, that each branch ought to possess the right of originating acts; that the Nat'l Leg. ought to be empowered to enjoy the *Legislative right vested in Congress*, by the Confederation; and moreover to Legislate in all cases to which the separate States are incompetent, or in which the harmony of the United States may be interrupted by the exercise of individual legislation; to negative all laws passed by the several States, contravening, in the opinion of . . . the Nat'l Leg'e, the Articles of Union, or any Treaty subsisting under the authority of the Union; and to call forth the force of the Union against any member of the Union, failing to fulfil its duty under the Articles thereof.

7. Resolved, that a National *Executive* be instituted, to be chosen by the Nat'l Leg'e for the term of        years, to receive punctually, at stated times, a fixed compensa-

Appendix.  
Randolph's Draft.

Appendix.  
Randolph's Draft.

tion for the services rendered, in which no increase or diminution shall be made, so as to affect the Magistracy existing at the time of the increase or diminution; to be ineligible a second time; and that, besides a general authority to execute the National laws, it ought to enjoy the executive rights vested in Congress by the confederation.

8. Resolved, that the executive, and a convenient number of the national Judiciary, ought to compose a *Council of revision*, with authority to examine every act of the National Legislature, before it shall operate, and every act of a particular Legislature before a negative thereon shall be final; and that the dissent of the said Council shall amount to a rejection, unless the act of the National Legislature be again passed, or that of a particular Legislature be again negatived by of the Members of each branch.

9. Resolved, that a National Judiciary be established to hold their offices during good behaviour, and to receive punctually, at stated times, fixed compensation for their services, in which no increase or diminution shall be made, so as to affect the persons actually in office at the time of such increase or diminution. That the jurisdiction of the Inferior Tribunals, shall be, to hear and determine, in the first instance, and of the Supreme tribunal to hear and determine, in the dernier resort,

all piracies and felonies on the high seas; captures from an enemy; cases in which foreigners, or Citizens of other States, applying to such jurisdictions may be interested, or which respect the Collection of the National Revenue; impeachments of any National officer; and questions which involve the National peace or harmony.

10. Resolved, that provision ought to be made for the *admission of States*, lawfully arising within the limits of the United States, whether from a voluntary junction of government and territory, or otherwise, with the consent of a number of voices in the National Legislatures less than the whole.

11. Resolved, that a Republican Government, and the

territory of each state (except in the instance of a voluntary junction of Government and territory) ought to be guaranteed by the United States to each State. Appendix.  
Randolph's Draft.

12. Resolved, that provision ought to be made for the continuance of a Congress, and their authorities and privileges, until a given day, after the reform of the Articles of Union shall be adopted, and for the completion of all their engagements.

13. That provision ought to be made for the amendment of the articles of Union, whensoever it shall seem necessary; and that the assent of the National Legislature ought not to be required thereto.

14. Resolved, that the Legislative, Executive, and Judiciary powers within the several States ought to be bound by oath to support the articles of Union.

15. Resolved, that the Amendments, which shall be offered to the Confederation by the Convention, ought, at a proper time or times, after the approbation of Congress, to be submitted to an assembly or assemblies of representatives, recommended by the several Legislatures, to be expressly chosen by the people to consider and decide thereon.

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

### DEPARTMENT OF STATE.

*To all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting:*

I certify That the document hereto annexed is a true copy, from the Archives of this Department, of Randolph's resolutions of May 29, 1787, as found among the papers of David Brearley, one of the members of the Convention, furnished by his executor General Bloomfield.

In testimony whereof I, William F. Wharton, Acting Secretary of State of the United States, have hereunto subscribed my name and caused the seal of the

[SEAL.] Department of State to be affixed.

Done at the City of Washington, this 12th day of June, A.D., 1891, and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and fifteenth.

WILLIAM F. WHARTON.



## IV.

## THE PINCKNEY PLAN,

SUBMITTED MAY 29, 1787.

Appendix.

Pinckney's Draft.

We the people of the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island & Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, do ordain, declare, and establish the following constitution for the Government of ourselves and posterity.

## Article 1.

The Stile of this Government shall be the United States of America, and the Government shall consist of supreme legislative, Executive and judicial powers.

## 2.

The Legislative power shall be vested in a Congress, to consist of two separate Houses; one to be called the House of Delegates; and the other the Senate, who shall meet on the      day of      in every year.

## 3.

The Members of the House of Delegates shall be chosen every      year by the people of the several States; and the qualification of the electors shall be the same as those of the electors in the several States for their Legislatures. Each member shall have been a citizen of the United States for      years; shall be of      years of age, and a resident in the State he is chosen for until a census of the people shall be taken in the manner herein after mentioned. The House of Delegates shall consist of      to be chosen from the different States in the following proportions: For New Hampshire      for Massachusetts,      for Rhode Island,      for Connecticut for New York,      for New Jersey,      for Pennsylvania,      for Delaware,      for Maryland,      for Virginia,

for North Carolina, for South Carolina, for Georgia, and the Legislature shall hereafter regulate the number of Delegates by the number of inhabitants, according to the provisions herein after made, at the rate of one for every Thousand. All money Bills of every kind shall originate in the House of Delegates, and shall not be altered by the Senate. The House of Delegates shall exclusively possess the power of impeachment, and shall choose its own officers; and vacancies therein shall be supplied by the Executive authority of the State in the representation from which they shall happen.

## 4.

The Senate shall be elected and chosen by the House of Delegates; which House, immediately after their meeting, shall choose by ballot Senators from among the Citizens and residents of New Hampshire, from among those of Massachusetts, from among those of Rhode Island, from among those of Connecticut, from among those of New York, from among those of New Jersey, from among those of Pennsylvania, from among those of Delaware, from among those of Maryland, from among those of Virginia, from among those of North Carolina, from among those of South Carolina, from among those of Georgia — The Senators chosen from New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Connecticut, shall form one class; those from New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, one Class; — — — and those from Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, & Georgia, one class. The House of Delegates shall number these classes one, two, and three; and fix the times of their service by Lot. The first class shall serve for years; the second for years; & the third for years. As their times of service expire, the House of Delegates shall fill them up by Elections for years; and they shall fill all vacancies that arise from Death, or resignation, for the time of service remaining of the Members so dying or resigning. Each Senator shall be years of age at least; shall have been

Appendix.  
Pinckney's Draft.

Appendix. a Citizen of the United States <sup>four</sup><sub>4</sub> years before his elec-  
 Pinckney's Draft. tion; and shall be a resident of the State he is chosen  
 from. The Senate shall choose its own Officers

## 5.

Each State shall prescribe the time and manner of holding elections by the people for the House of Delegates; and the House of Delegates shall be the judges of the Elections, returns, and qualifications of their Members.

In each House a Majority shall constitute a quorum to do business. Freedom of Speech and Debate in the Legislature shall not be impeached, or questioned, in any place out of it; and the members of both Houses shall in all cases, except for Treason, felony, or breach of the Peace, be free from arrest during their attendance of Congress, and in going to and returning from it. Both Houses shall keep Journals of their proceedings, and publish them, except on Secret occasions; and the yeas and nays may be entered thereon at the desire of one of the Members present. Neither House, without the consent of the other, shall adjourn for more than days, nor to any place but where they are sitting

The Members of each house shall not be eligible to, or capable of holding any office under the Union, during the time for which they have been respectively elected, nor the Members of the Senate for one year after. The Members of each House shall be paid for their services by the States which they represent. Every Bill, which shall have passed the Legislature, shall be presented to the President of the United States for his revision; if he approves it he shall sign it; but if he does not approve it, he shall return it, with his objections, to the House it originated in; which House, if two-thirds of the Members present, notwithstanding the President's objections, agree to pass it, shall send it to the other House, with the President's objections; where, if two-thirds of the Members present also agree to pass it, the same shall become a law; and all bills sent to the Presi-

dent, and not returned by him within      days, shall be Appendix.  
 Laws, unless the Legislature, by their adjournment, Pinckney's Draft.  
 prevent their return; in which case they shall not be  
 laws.

## 6.

The Legislature of the United States shall have the power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises; To regulate commerce with all Nations and among the several States: —

To borrow money and emit bills of credit;

To establish post offices;

To raise Armies;

To build and equip Fleets;

To pass laws for Arming, organizing and disciplining the Militia of the United States;

To subdue a rebellion in any State, on application of is Legislature;

To coin Money, & regulate the value of all coins, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

To provide such Dock yards and arsenals, and erect such Fortifications as may be necessary for the United States, and to exercise exclusive jurisdiction therein;

To appoint a Treasurer, by ballot;

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

To establish Post & Military roads;

To establish and provide for a National University at the seat of the Government of the United States;

To establish uniform rules of Naturalization;

To provide for the establishment of a seat of Government for the United States, not exceeding      miles square, in which they shall have exclusive jurisdiction;

To make rules concerning captures from an Enemy;

To declare the Law and punishment of piracies and felonies at Sea, and of counterfeiting Coin, and of all offences against the Laws of Nations;

To call forth the aid of the Militia to execute the laws of the Union, enforce Treaties, suppress insurrections, & repel invasions;

And to make all laws for carrying the foregoing powers into execution.

Appendix.  
Pinckney's Draft.

The Legislature of the United States shall have the power to declare the punishment of treason, which shall consist only in levying War against the United States, or any of them, or in adhering to their Enemies. No person shall be convicted of Treason but by the Testimony of two Witnesses.

The proportion of direct Taxation shall be regulated by the whole number of inhabitants of every description; which number shall, within        years after the first meeting of the Legislature, and within the term of every year after, be taken in the manner to be prescribed by the Legislature

No Tax shall be laid on articles exported from the States; nor capitation Tax, but in proportion to the census before directed.

All Laws regulating commerce shall require the assent of two thirds of the Members present in each House.

The United States shall not grant any title of Nobility.

The Legislature of the United States shall pass no Law on the subject of Religion; nor touching nor abridging the Liberty of the press; nor shall the privilege of the writ of Habeas Corpus ever be suspended, except in case of Rebellion or invasion.

All acts made by the Legislature of the United States, pursuant to this Constitution, and all Treaties made under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and all Judges shall be bound to consider them as such in their decisions.

7.

The Senate shall have the sole and exclusive power to declare War; and to make Treaties; and to appoint Ambassadors and other Ministers, to Foreign Nations; and Judges of the Supreme Court.

They shall have the exclusive power to regulate the Manner of deciding all disputes and controversies now subsisting or which may arise, between the States, respecting Jurisdiction or territory.

## 8.

The Executive power of the United States shall be <sup>Appendix.</sup> vested in a President of the United States of America, <sup>Pinckney's Draft.</sup> which shall be his Stile; and his title shall be His Excellency. He shall be elected for      years; and shall reeligible.

He shall from time to time give information to the Legislature, of the State of the Union, and recommend to their consideration the measures he may think necessary. He shall take care that the Laws of the United States be duly executed. He shall commission all the officers of the United States; and, except as to Ambassadors, other Ministers, and Judges of the Supreme Court, he shall nominate, and, with the consent of the Senate, appoint, all other officers of the United States. He shall receive publick Ministers from Foreign Nations; and may correspond with the Executives of the different States. He shall have power to grant pardons and reprieves, except in impeachments. He shall be commander in chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States; and shall receive a compensation which shall not be increased or diminished during his continuance in office. At entering on the duties of his office, he shall take an oath faithfully to execute the duties of a President of the United States. He shall be removed from his office on impeachment by the House of Delegates, and conviction in the Supreme Court, of Treason, bribery, or corruption. In case of his removal, Death, resignation, or disability, the President of the Senate shall exercise the duties of his office until another President be chosen, and in case of the Death of the President of the Senate, the Speaker of the House of Delegates shall do so.

## 9.

The Legislature of the United States shall have the power, and it shall be their duty, to establish such Courts of Law, Equity & admiralty, as shall be necessary. The Judges of the Courts shall hold their offices during

Appendix.  
Pinckney's Draft.

good behavior; and receive a compensation which shall not be increased or diminished during their continuance in office. One of these Courts shall be termed the Supreme Court, whose jurisdiction shall extend to all cases arising under the Laws of the United States, or affecting Ambassadors, other publick Ministers and Consuls; to the trial of impeachment of officers of the United States; to all cases of admiralty & Maritime jurisdiction. In cases of impeachment affecting Ambassadors, and other publick Ministers, this jurisdiction shall be original; and in all the other cases appellate.

All Criminal offences (except in cases of impeachment) shall be tried in the State where they shall be committed. The trials shall be open & publick, and be by Jury.

#### 10.

Immediately after the first Census of the people of the United States, the House of Delegates shall apportion the Senate by electing for each State, out of the Citizens resident therein, one Senator for every Members such State shall have in the House of Delegates. Each State shall be entitled to have at least one Member in the Senate.

#### 11.

No State shall grant Letters of Marque & reprisal, or enter into treaty, or alliance, or Confederation; nor grant any title of Nobility; nor, without the consent of the Legislature of the United States, lay any Impost on imports; nor keep Troops or Ships of War in time of Peace; nor enter into compacts with other States or Foreign Powers, or emit Bills of Credit, or make any thing but Gold, Silver or Copper, a tender in payment of debts; nor engage in War, except for self defence when actually invaded, or the danger of invasion is so great as not to admit of a delay, until the Government of the United States can be informed thereof. And to render these prohibitions effectual, the Legislature of the United States shall have the power to revise the Laws of the several States that may be supposed to

infringe the powers exclusively delegated by this Con- Appendix.  
stitution to Congress, and to negative and annul such as Pinckney's Draft.  
do.

## 12.

The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of Citizens in the several States. Any person, charged with crimes in any State, fleeing from justice to another, shall, on demand of the Executive of the State from which he Fled, be delivered up, and removed to the State having jurisdiction of the offence.

## 13.

Full faith shall be given, in each State, to the acts of the Legislature and to the records and judicial proceedings of the Courts and Magistrates of every State.

## 14.

The Legislature shall have power to admit New States into the Union on the same terms with the original States; provided two thirds of the Members present in both Houses agree.

## 15.

On the application of the Legislature of a State, the United States shall protect it against domestick insurrection.

## 16.

If two thirds of the Legislatures of the States apply for the same, the Legislature of the United States shall call a Convention for the purpose of amending the Constitution: Or, Should Congress, with the consent of two thirds of each House, propose to the States amendments to the same, the agreement of two thirds of the Legislatures of the States shall be sufficient to make the said amendments parts of the Constitution.

The Ratification of the Conventions of States shall be sufficient for organizing this Constitution.



## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

## DEPARTMENT OF STATE.

Appendix.

Pinckney's Draft.

*To all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting:*

I certify That the document hereto annexed is a true copy, from the Archives of this Department, of Pinckney's plan of government of May 29, 1787, as furnished by himself for publication under the Resolution of Congress of March 27, 1818, directing the publication and distribution of the Journal and proceedings of the Convention which formed the Constitution of the United States.

In testimony whereof I, William F. Wharton, Acting Secretary of State of the United States, have hereunto subscribed my name and caused the seal of the

[SEAL.] Department of State to be affixed.

Done at the City of Washington, this 12th day of June, A.D., 1891, and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and fifteenth.

WILLIAM F. WHARTON.

# INDEX.

---

## ACCUSED PARTIES

- cannot be tried for a crime not stated in the indictment, 509.
- have a right to be confronted with the witnesses, 509.
- and to compulsory process to secure their attendance, 510.

## ACTIVE, THE

- case of, 42.

## ADMIRALTY AND MARITIME JURISDICTION. [See *Colonial Admiralty Courts: Prize Courts of the Revolution.*]

- early exercise of, more limited than now, 132.
- its extension, 110, 133.
- this extension constitutional, 134.
- extent of it under the Constitution, 326.

## ADMISSION OF NEW STATES, 131.

## ALIENS. [See *Citizenship: Naturalization.*]

## AMBASSADORS. [See *Citizenship.*]

- jurisdiction of the Supreme Court over cases affecting, 325, 361.
- evidence in support of a claim to this right, 362, 426.

## AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION

- the first ten amendments, 91.
- unratified articles, 91 n.
- eleventh amendment, 92 n., 331 n., 368, 379, 423, 653.
- twelfth amendment, 149, 653.
- thirteenth amendment, 406, 653.
- fourteenth amendment, 407, 653.
- fifteenth amendment, 408, 653.
- whether a ratification once given can be withdrawn, 642, 653.

## AMPHICTYONIC COUNCILS

- not a federal government, 78 n.

## ANNAPOLIS, CONVENTION OF

- convened through the action of Virginia, 6.

## APPOINTMENT. [See *Senate.*]

- where the power of appointment is vested, 156.
- the annoyance it caused to Washington, 177.

**APPORTIONMENT**

of representation under the Constitution, 677.

**APPROPRIATION BILL**

distinction between it and a revenue bill, 204.

**ARBITRARY ARRESTS.** [See *Fifth Amendment.*]**ARMS.** [See *Second Amendment.*]**ARMY**

the President the commander-in-chief, 162.

Congress has the power to raise armies, 624.

no appropriation therefor to be longer than for two years, 624.

**ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.** [See *Bancroft, George.*]

how made, 3.

the weakness of Congress under them, 21, 82, 101.

when adopted, 42.

causes which led to a change, 5, 74.

Madison's views concerning them, 75 n., 76 n., 77 n.

**ASSESSMENT**

an assessment is not a contract within the Constitution, 573.

**ATTAINER**

as exercised in England, 105, 584.

neither Federal nor State governments can pass a bill of, 585.

nor can it be effected by judicial sentence beyond the offender's lifetime, 585, 600.

**AUTHOR.** [See *Copyright.*]**BAIL**

excessive shall not be required, 649.

**BANCROFT, GEORGE**

his remarks on the Convention which framed the Constitution, 31.

his plea for the Constitution, 139.

his remarks on the citizenship provision in the Articles of Confederation, 298.  
upon the circulating medium before the Constitution, 525.

account of the Constitutional provision respecting contracts, 527.

**BANK NOTES.** [See *Bills of Credit.*]**BANK OF THE UNITED STATES**

its constitutionality, 389.

its exemption from State taxation, 389.

**BANKRUPTCY**

power to enact uniform laws respecting, 615.

statutes enacted, 616.

**BILLS OF ATTAINDER.** [See *Attainder.*]

**BILLS OF CREDIT.** [See *Legal Tender.*]

defined, 524, 581.

may be emitted by the United States, 583.

but not by the States, 617.

State bank notes are not bills of credit, 583.

**BLAIR, JUSTICE**

his opinion in *Penhallow v. Doane*, 125.

**BREACH OF THE PEACE**

of the United States as distinguished from that of a State, 429.

**BRIDGES.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]

**BRITISH CONSTITUTION**

described by Blackstone as a despotic form of government, 62 n.

powers of the sovereign are curtailed, 65.

Macaulay's view of it, 66 n., 67 n.

**BUDGET, THE**

the English term for a revenue bill, 207, 218.

**BURIAL**

right of decent burial guaranteed by treaties, 53.

**CABINET OFFICERS.** [See *Executive Departments.*]

**CALIFORNIA**

treaty ceding it, 224.

**CHASE, CHIEF JUSTICE**

his opinion in *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 135, 142.

dissenting opinion in *Knox v. Lee*, 136.

**CHASE, JUSTICE**

his opinion in *Calder v. Bull*, 586.

**CHINA.** [See *Fourteenth Amendment.*]

a type of absolute monarchy, 62.

**CHURCH AND STATE**

their amalgamation forbidden by the Constitution, 645.

**CITIZEN.** [See *Citizenship: Naturalization.*]

**CITIZENSHIP.** [See *Fourteenth Amendment: Naturalization.*]

definition of it, 276.

the Fourteenth Amendment defines it, 278.

when children of ambassadors born here are not citizens, 279.

the negro a citizen, but not the Indian, 280.

citizenship is exclusive of sex, 280.

difference between American citizenship and the feudal relation to the head of the State, 297, 298.

how American citizenship differs from Roman citizenship, 298.

**CITIZENSHIP.** — *Continued.*

Articles of Confederation established interstate citizenship, 298.  
right of suffrage not a privilege or immunity of citizenship, 661.  
an Indian not a citizen, 662.

**CIVIL RIGHTS.** [See *Fifteenth Amendment.*]**COINING MONEY, THE POWER OF**

is forbidden to the States, but granted to the United States, 581, 617.

**COLONIAL ADMIRALTY COURTS**

they disappeared with the vanishing of British dominion, 38, 39 n.

**COLONIAL CHARTERS**

they were the earliest constitutions, 67.

**COLONIES**

they never were independent States, 36, 75.

**COLORED PERSONS.** [See *Thirteenth Amendment: Fifteenth Amendment.*]**COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF**

the President is commander-in-chief, 162.

**COMMERCE.** [See *Indian Tribes: Interstate Commerce: Regulation of Commerce.*]

definition of commerce, 446-449.

railroads are an element in it, 448.

transportation upon them between States is commerce, 476.

**COMMERCIAL TREATIES**

have not been regarded with favor by the House of Representatives, 225.  
indications of a change of opinion, 226.

**COMMON CARRIER.** [See *Railroads: Regulation of Commerce.*]**COMMON LAW.** [See *Trial by Jury.*]

extent of Federal jurisdiction in cases at common law, 317.

**COMPACTS BETWEEN STATES**

forbidden by the Constitution, 578.

**COMPENSATION**

of the President not to be increased or diminished during his term, 153.

of Federal judges not to be diminished during their term of office, 154.

**CONCURRENT POWERS.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]**CONFRONTED WITH WITNESSES.** [See *Accused Parties.*]**CONGRESS.** [See *House of Representatives: Senate: Taxation.*]

first assumed national powers in 1775, 36.

became the executive of the new nation, 37.

its construction of its inherent powers, 57.

increases in importance as the country grows, 95.

its organization under the Constitution, 191.

separate powers of each house, 192.

**CONGRESS.** — *Continued.*

- qualifications of members, 192.
- power to compel attendance of members, 194.
- power of each house to make rules, 194.
- power to punish members for disorderly behavior, 195.
- each house required to keep a journal, 196.
- call of the yeas and nays, 197.
- limitation of power of separate adjournment, 197.

**CONQUERED TERRITORY**

- revenue laws suspended in conquered territory of the United States, 264.
- conquered by the United States remains foreign territory for revenue purposes, 264.

**CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.** [*See Construction of the Constitution.*]

- the convention called which framed it, 7.
- proceedings in the convention, 8.
- ratification and adoption of the Constitution, 9.
- the objections urged against it, 12, 90.
- its success, 27.
- the outcome of previous history, 35.
- the best form of government yet devised, 59, 62.
- definition of a constitution, 60, 66, 71.
- de Tocqueville's opinion of it, 68 n.
- previous attempts at written constitutions, 69.
- causes which led to its adoption, 75.
- objections urged against its adoption, 90.
- a knowledge of it essential to a lawyer, 107.
- when a case arises under it, 320.
- it is founded upon English law, 486.
- recognizes the separation between law and equity, 488.
- supremacy of the Constitution, 643.

**CONSTRUCTION OF THE CONSTITUTION**

- federal and States' rights principles of construction, 22, 117.
- an understanding of the causes which led to it a key, 35, 37, 82, 100.
- difficulties of interpretation, 98, 99.
- executive construction, 98.
- judicial construction — how far to be followed, 98 n., 99, 117, 119, 140.
- to be interpreted like a remedial statute, 102.
- and with reference to the nature of the new government, 102.
- doctrine of implied powers, 128, 141, 651.
- the tenth amendment, 651.

**CONTEMPT.** [*See House of Representatives: Trial by Jury.*]**CONTESTED ELECTIONS**

- each house the judge of as to its own members, 193.

## CONTINENTAL CONGRESS

- was both an executive and a legislative body, 37.
- a review of some of its doings, 37-56.

CONTRACTS. [See *Corporation: Impairment of the Obligation of Contracts: Police Power of the States.*]

- municipal power of taxation enters into contracts of a municipality, 273, 567, 568.
- an act of incorporation may be a contract on the part of the State, 391.
- States may contract by legislation, 393.
- existing State laws and remedies enter into contracts, 531, 567.
- obligations of a contract defined, 539, 540.
- what a contract is, 554.
- classification of contracts adjudicated in the Supreme Court, 558.
- what is not a municipal contract, 566.
- a law affixing a salary to a public office constitutes a contract, 568.

## COPYRIGHT

- grant of power to Congress to protect, 620.
- the exercise of that power, 620 n.

CORPORATION. [See *Contract.*]

- its interstate commerce protected from unconstitutional exactions, 476.
- the Dartmouth College decision, 532.
- reservation clauses in charters, 533.
- is a citizen within the meaning of the Fourteenth Amendment, 663.
- a State may impose conditions upon a foreign corporation doing business within it, 669.

## COUNTERFEITING

- the federal power to punish does not prevent a State from punishing, 618.

## COURTS OF THE UNITED STATES

- created for judicial purposes only, 351.

CRIMES. [See *Accused Parties.*]

## CRUEL AND UNUSUAL PUNISHMENTS

- provisions respecting, whence derived, 649.
- execution by electricity not one, 649.

## CUSHING, JUSTICE

- his opinion in *Penhallow v. Doane*, 126.

## DARTMOUTH COLLEGE CASE

- described, 391.
- took the country by surprise, 557.

## DEMOCRACY

- definition of it, 61.
- the United States not a democracy, 84.

DEPARTMENTS OF GOVERNMENT. [See *Executive Departments.*]

DIPLOMATIC PRIVILEGE. [See *Ambassadors*.]

DIRECT TAX

what is and what is not a direct tax, 236.  
legislation respecting, 628, 629.

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

power of Congress to tax, 263.  
relation of the Federal Government to it, 626.

DIVISION OF POWERS OF GOVERNMENT

into legislative, executive, and judicial, 25, 87, 148, 310, 375, 574.  
they are co-ordinate in dignity, 89.

DROIT D'AUBAINE

the right of yielded in several early treaties, 50.

DRUMMER'S LICENSE TAX

when such a tax is unconstitutional, 483.

DUE PROCESS OF LAW

definition of it, 664.  
lands taken by judicial proceedings for overflow by a mill-dam are taken by  
due process of law, 666.  
a law taxing property which affords the owner an opportunity to contest it,  
does not take his property without due process of law, 666.  
the compulsory drainage of swamplands at the common cost of all propri-  
etors does not take the property of objectors without due process, 667.

DUTIES AND IMPOSTS

purposes for which they may be imposed, 231.  
uniformity in, 239, 242, 264.

DUTY ON EXPORTS

what it is, 592.

EIGHTH AMENDMENT. [See *Bail: Cruel and Unusual Punishments: Fines*.]

ELECTION

of President, 149, 152.

ELEVENTH AMENDMENT

caused by the decision in *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 379, 652.

ELIGIBILITY TO OFFICE

of President, 153.

ELLSWORTH, OLIVER

his speech on the adoption of the Constitution, 436.

EMANCIPATION

how brought about, 406.

EQUAL PROTECTION OF THE LAWS. [See *Fourteenth Amendment*.]



**EQUITY.** [See *Local Law.*]

jurisdiction extended by State laws, 317, 357, 521.

**EXECUTIVE**

Congress was the Executive up to 1789, 37.

ministerial duties may be enforced by mandamus, 385, 387, 424.

**EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS**

when the acts of their Heads are the act of the President, 178.

Washington asks the opinions of their Heads, 185.

Grant asks the opinions of their Heads, 186.

**EXECUTIVE POWERS**

opponents of the Constitution thought them too great, 17 n., 93.

this objection disproved by history, 93.

**EXEMPTION FROM EXECUTION.** [See *Impairment of the Obligation of Contracts.*]**EXEMPTION FROM TAXATION.** [See *Taxation.*]**EXPATRIATION.** [See *Naturalization.*]

President Grant asks for Cabinet opinions as to, 186.

the assertion of this right led to the War of 1812, 286.

action of the government in relation to it, 301.

**EX POST FACTO LAWS**

apply only to criminal law and procedure, 536, 585.

**EXTRADITION**

the offence for which he is extradited is the only one for which an offender can be tried, 323.

**EX-TERRITORIALITY.** [See *Inferior Courts.*]**FEDERAL COURTS.** [See *Inferior Courts: Judicial Power: Supreme Court.*]**FEDERAL GOVERNMENT**

wherein it differs from state sovereignty, 103.

**FEDERAL THEORY OF CONSTRUCTION.** [See *Construction of the Constitution.*]**FIELD, JUSTICE**

his dissenting opinion in the Legal Tender Cases, 137.

**FIFTEENTH AMENDMENT**

adopted to secure equal rights to all, slaves included, 407.

is construed in the Slaughter House Cases, 407.

how ratified, 655.

does not confer the right of suffrage, 679.

limitation of the power of Congress to legislate as to, 679.

**FIFTH AMENDMENT.** [See *Infamous Crime.*]

difference between it and Article III, 499.

construed, 647, 648.

**FINES**

excessive fines not to be imposed, 649.

**FIRST AMENDMENT**

provision as to religious liberty, 645.

laws against polygamy do not violate it, 645.

**FOURTEENTH AMENDMENT.** [See *Citizenship: Corporation: Due Process of Law.*]

made necessary by the Civil War, 407, 653.

does not guarantee the right of trial by jury, 498.

how ratified, 653.

subjects to which it relates, 657.

adopted to secure equal rights to all, 658.

is prohibitory on the States only, 659, 664, 666.

not violated by an erroneous judicial decision, 659.

does not limit the police power of the States, 659.

its guarantees extend to all persons in the United States, 660.

it did not affect the relations between the citizen and the State or the United States, 660.

the right to practise law in a State Court not affected by it, 660.

it adds nothing to the rights of one citizen as against another, 661.

a Chinaman entitled to the protection of its provision, 662.

privileges and immunities protected by it, 663.

its limitations upon State powers, 663.

the late decisions on this subject, 663-668.

a tax for the cost of laying out a street no violation of it, 669.

**FOURTH AMENDMENT.** [See *Searches and Seizures.*]**FRAMERS OF THE CONSTITUTION**

their character, 2, 84.

**FRANCE**

consular convention with, 54.

French attempts at constitution-making, 68, 69, 487.

**FRANCHISES.** [See *Corporation.*]**FUGITIVES FROM JUSTICE**

when to be surrendered, 637.

no way to compel it to be done, 638.

**FUGITIVES FROM SERVICE**

the fugitive slave laws a proper exercise of legislative power, 403.

the constitutional provision taken from the ordinance of 1787, 638.

**GALLATIN, ALBERT**

his opinion on the purchase of Louisiana, 129.

**GERMAN ZOLLVEREIN**

account of, 439.

**GHENT, TREATY OF**

what it settled and what it left unsettled, 224.

**GOVERNMENT**

its powers are, as a rule, unlimited, 575.

of the United States was created by the people, 575.

it possesses only the powers given by the Constitution, 575.

limits imposed upon the State governments, 577.

**GRAND JURY**

its organization and functions, 490.

who are subject to martial law, 506.

the constitutional provision as to, jurisdictional, 517.

**GRANT, PRESIDENT**

calls for opinions of Heads of Departments on expatriation, 186.

recommends an amendment authorizing partial veto, 188.

**GRAY, JUSTICE**

his opinion in the *Legal Tender Cases*, 137, 651.

his opinion in *Wilson's Case*, 504.

**GUANO ISLANDS**

how crimes committed on one are to be prosecuted, 372, 623.

**HABEAS CORPUS**

when it may be suspended, 349, 489.

an appropriate remedy in the *Neagle Case*, 429.

**HAMILTON, ALEXANDER**

one of the authors of the *Federalist*, 436.

**HOUSE OF COMMONS**

power of the speaker, 219.

**HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES**

to choose its Speaker, 198.

powers of the Speaker, 199.

organization of the House, 200.

officers of the House, 201.

power of impeachment, 201.

proceedings in case of impeachment, 202.

power to originate revenue bills, 203.

elects the President when there is no election by the people, 208.

cases of contested election, 209, 210.

is not a judicial body, 415.

cannot punish for contempt, 415.

how elected and present number of, 610.

statutes regulating the election of members, 612, 613 n.

the judge of the election and qualifications of its members, 614.

power of expulsion, 614.

to keep a journal of its proceedings, 614.

**IMMIGRATION.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]

**IMPAIRMENT OF THE OBLIGATION OF CONTRACTS.** [See *Contract: Tazation.*]

the prohibition applies both to express and implied contracts, 476.  
 is a limitation upon State power only, 524, 530.  
 and affects only contracts made before the impairing law, 532.  
 a retroactive law not necessarily within the prohibition, 538.  
 taking away the remedy impairs a contract, 541.  
 effect of amalgamating chancery and common law remedies, 522, 542.  
 abolition of imprisonment for debt no impairment, 545.  
 exemption from execution an impairment, 546.  
 redemption laws an impairment, 548.  
 so also appraisement laws, 549.  
 and stay laws, 550.  
 judicial decisions of State courts not within the prohibition, 569.

**IMPEACHMENT.** [See *House of Representatives.*]

not subject to the operation of the pardoning power, 167.  
 how exercised in case of the President, 171.  
 power to impeach lodged in the House, 201.  
 proceedings in a case of, 202.  
 the Senate the court in such cases, 213.  
 difficulties in the way of this proceeding, 217.  
 offences charged may also be prosecuted in the ordinary courts, 501.

**IMPLIED POWERS.** [See *Construction of the Constitution.*]

the doctrine of is now a settled rule of construction, 141-144.

**IMPORTS**

are not taxable by States whether foreign or from another State, 591.

**IMPOSTS.** [See *Duties and Imposts.*]

**IMPRISONMENT FOR DEBT.** [See *Impairment of the Obligation of Contracts.*]

**INDIAN TRIBES**

wards and pupils of the nation, 401.  
 independent of State laws and government, 402.  
 criminal jurisdiction of the United States over, 425.  
 commerce with, 469.

**INDICTMENT.** [See *Accused Parties.*]

must contain a clear statement of the offence, 509.

**INFAMOUS CRIME**

what is within the meaning of the Fifth Amendment, 503-506.  
 that amendment construed, 647.

**INFERIOR COURTS**

A Territorial court is not a constitutional court, 369.  
 nor is a Consular court under grant of ex-territoriality, 370.

**INSOLVENT LAWS**

State power to enact suspended by the enactment of bankrupt laws, 616.

**INTERNATIONAL CLAIMS**

settlement by treaties, 223.

**INTERSTATE COMMERCE.** [See *Regulation of Commerce: Taxation.*]

heavy taxation of during the Confederation, 80.

its growth and importance, 113, 395.

not subject to State taxation, 252, 477.

cases relating to, 80 n., 114 n., 269, 270.

inaction of Congress on the subject, 395.

passage of the Interstate Commerce Act, 396.

when subject to State legislation and when not, 399.

cases respecting it noted, 425 n.

cases relating to it decided since Oct. Term, 1882, 474 n.

cases as to interstate railroad transportation, 479.

**INTOXICATING LIQUORS.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]

State prohibition of their sale constitutional, 482, 483.

unless it amounts to a regulation of commerce, 482, 674.

cases on the subject as affected by the Fourteenth Amendment, 673-677.

**INVENTION.** [See *Patents.*]**INVOLUNTARY SERVITUDE.** [See *Emancipation: Fugitives from Service.*]

The *Dred Scott Case* and its influence on history, 403.

executed contract relating to, before Thirteenth Amendment enforced, 426.

**IREDELL, JUSTICE**

his opinion in *Penhallow v. Doane*, 124.

his opinion in *Chisholm v. Georgia*, 380.

**JAY, CHIEF JUSTICE**

minister to England while Chief Justice, 378, 420.

one of the authors of the *Federalist*, 436.

**JAY'S TREATY**

its importance and what was settled by it, 221.

**JEFFERSON, THOMAS**

his resolution adopted by Congress that the United States is a nation, 53.

his opinion upon the Louisiana purchase, 128.

**JOURNALS OF CONGRESS**

each House required to keep a journal, 196.

**JUDGES**

of Federal Courts hold office during good behavior, 340.

**JUDGMENTS AT COMMON LAW**

how reëxamined, 495.

conclusiveness of, 498.

**JUDICIARY.** [See *Division of Powers of Government.*]

weakness of the Judicial Branch, 96, 341, 417.

it is the Judicial Department of the government, 347.

the Supreme Court is its head, 376.

**JUDICIAL CONSTRUCTION.** [See *Construction of the Constitution: Supreme Court.*]**JUDICIAL POWER**

definition of it, 313, 348.

a case necessary to its exercise, 315.

cases arising under treaties, 321.

cases affecting ambassadors, etc., 325.

admiralty and maritime jurisdiction, 326.

suits to which the United States is a party, 327.

controversies between States, 328.

between a State and citizens of another State, 330.

between citizens of different States, 331.

between citizens of the same State claiming land under grants from different States, 334.

between a State or its citizens and foreign States or citizens, 334.

legislation defining jurisdiction, 336.

a State not suable by one of its own citizens without its consent, 363.

**JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS**

in one State to have full faith and credit in another, 631.

but only so far as they should have them in the former, 631.

late cases concerning reviewed, 631-637.

**JURISDICTION OF FEDERAL COURTS**

statutes defining it, 336.

**JURY.** [See *Grand Jury: Trial by Jury.*]

trial by jury not a part of the system of equity jurisprudence, 319.

its organization and functions, 491.

it takes the law from the court in Federal courts, 501, 517.

the accused has the right to a jury of the vicinage, 502.

who shall be impartial, 508.

definition of trial by jury, 511.

origin of the jury system, 512.

how it grew up in England, 513.

how it came to this country, 515.

**KENT, CHANCELLOR**

his views on the Constitution, 33.

**KOSZTA, MARTIN**

his case, 285, 302.

**LAND AND NAVAL FORCES**

Congress to make rules and regulations for, 624.

**LEE, RICHARD HENRY**

letters from the Federal Farmer, 90 n.

**LEGAL TENDER.** [See *Bancroft, George.*]

review of the decisions respecting, 135-140.

purpose of the provisions respecting, 525.

these acts impaired preëxisting contracts, 530.

States may not make paper money a legal tender, 581.

**LEGISLATIVE BODIES**

their unfitness to exercise judicial powers, 355.

**LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT**

its great growth, 95.

**LETTERS PATENT.** [See *Patents.*]**LIMITATION OF POWERS OF GOVERNMENT.** [See *Government.*]

it is a feature of written Constitutions, 105.

**LIMITATION, STATUTES OF**

when reasonable they do not impair contracts, 271.

**LOCAL LAW**

when a rule of property it generally prevails, 317, 357, 359.

but not when it extends equity jurisdiction over common law actions, 357, 521.

**LOUISIANA, PURCHASE OF**

views of different persons as to its constitutionality, 128-130.

its effect upon the history of the country, 223.

**MACAULAY.** [See *British Constitution.*]**MADISON, JAMES**

his views about the Articles of Confederation, 75 n., 76 n., 77 n.

author of the Virginia resolution about commercial regulations, 435.

one of the authors of the Federalist, 436.

**MAINE**

dispute as to government in, 97 n.

**MANDAMUS**

lies to compel performance of ministerial duty by executive officer, 385, 387, 424.

**MARQUE AND REPRISAL**

what letters of are, 579.

States cannot issue them, 579.

Congress may grant them, 624.

**MARSHAL OF CIRCUIT COURTS.** [See *Habeas Corpus.*]

to protect judges of the Supreme Court on circuits, 429.

not subject to State laws when taking human life while performing this duty, 431.

**MARSHALL, CHIEF JUSTICE**

- his opinion in *Barron v. Baltimore*, 93 n.
- his opinion in *United States v. Peters*, 127.
- his opinion in *McCulloch v. Maryland*, 141, 389.
- Secretary of State while Chief Justice, 378.
- his opinion in *Marbury v. Madison*, 385.
- his opinion in *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 397.
- his opinion in *Craig v. Missouri*, 581.

**MARTIAL LAW.** [See *Grand Jury: Militia.*]**MEASURES.** [See *Weights and Measures.*]**MILITIA**

- when in the service of the United States under martial law, 507.
- Congress may call them out, 624.
- reserved power of the States over, 625.

**MILLDAMS AND MILLS.** [See *Due Process of Law.*]**MILLER, JUSTICE**

- at his death leaves the manuscript of these lectures, v.
- his opinion in the *Slaughter House Cases*, 100 n., 293, 408.
- his views as to the construction of the Constitution, 117.
- his dissenting opinion in *Hepburn v. Griswold*, 136.
- his opinion in *Kilbourn v. Thompson*, 412.
- was a member of the Electoral Commission, 421.
- his opinion in the *Neagle Case*, 427.
- his opinion in the *Clinton Bridge Case*, 447.
- his opinion in *New Jersey v. Yard*, 563.

**MONEY.** [See *Coining Money, the Power of: Counterfeiting: Legal Tender.*]**MONTESQUIEU**

- his doctrine concerning the distribution of governmental powers, 25.
- his opinion of the *droit d'aubaine*, 50.
- his opinion of the British Constitution, 96 n.

**MUNICIPAL CORPORATION.** [See *Taxation.*]**NATION**

- the United States declared to be a, 53.

**NATIONAL BANKS**

- limitation upon state power to tax, 258.

**NATIONAL DEFENCE**

- constitutional provisions as to, 624.

**NATURALIZATION.** [See *Citizenship: Expatriation.*]

- the naturalization treaties, 225, 302.
- definition of naturalization, 275, 292.
- how effected, 281.



**NATURALIZATION.** — *Continued.*

its advantages, 282.

confers the right to inherit realty, 290.

and the right of suffrage, 291.

federal laws on this subject are exclusive, 291.

how those laws have affected other countries, 297.

rights of a naturalized citizen returning to his native land, 283, 300-308.

**NAVIGABLE RIVERS.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]**NAVIGATION.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]**NAVY.** [See *Land and Naval Forces.*]**NEGRO.** [See *Thirteenth Amendment: Fifteenth Amendment.*]**NELSON, JUSTICE**

a member of the Joint High Commission in 1871, 420.

the great value of his services, 420.

**NEUTRALITY**

Washington calls for opinions as to, 185.

**NEW JERSEY**

reasons why it desired the adoption of the Constitution, 79 n.

**NINTH AMENDMENT**

is manifestly just, 650.

**NOBILITY, TITLES OF**

cannot be granted, 577, 589.

probability that they would be sought after, 590.

**NORTH CAROLINA**

reasons why it desired the adoption of the Constitution, 79 n.

**NORTHWEST TERRITORY**

acquired without previous authority from the State, 55.

slavery excluded without such authority, 56.

**OBLIGATION OF CONTRACTS.** [See *Contract: Impairment of the Obligation of Contracts.*]**OFFICE.** [See *Appointment.*]**ORDINANCE OF 1787.** [See *Northwest Territory.*]**PAPER MONEY.** [See *Legal Tender.*]**PARDON**

the power to, entrusted to the executive, 165, 179.

can be exercised before trial, 165.

cannot be taken away by act of Congress, 165.

cannot be exercised in case of impeachment, 167.

**PASSENGERS**

a State cannot tax foreign passengers on landing, 463.

**PATERSON, JUSTICE**

his opinion in *Penhallow v. Doane*, 122.

**PATENTS**

Congress has power to protect inventions, 620.

how it has exercised that power, 621 n.

**PEDLERS.** [See *Taxation.*]

**PILOTAGE.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]

**PIRACY**

Congress may define and punish, 622.

it may be committed in an open road, 623.

**PLACE OF TRIAL.** [See *Jury.*]

may be fixed by Congress after an offence is committed in a Territory, 519.

**POLICE POWER OF THE STATES.** [See *Fourteenth Amendment: Regulation of Commerce.*]

does not extend to regulating the delivery of telegraphic messages without the State, 481.

matters within this power are not subjected to legislative contracts that cannot be abrogated, 567.

the regulation of hours of labor a valid exercise of police power, 659.

**POLYGAMY.** [See *First Amendment.*]

**POST OFFICES AND POST ROADS**

the power of Congress to establish, 618.

**PRESIDENT, THE**

mode of election, 149.

term of office, 151.

salary, 153.

power of appointing to office, 156, 157.

coöperation of the Senate in the execution of this power, 156.

power to fill vacancies during recess of the Senate, 159, 178.

tenure of office law, 161.

is commander-in-chief, 162.

the pardoning power, 164, 179.

the treaty-making power, 167.

is to give information to Congress, 168.

may call extra sessions of Congress, or of the Senate, 170.

how to be impeached, 171.

the veto power, and how it is to be exercised, 173.

he acts through the Heads of Departments, 178.

except when the act is a judicial act, 178.

power to approve an act of Congress after adjournment, 187.

when no election by the people, how elected, 208.

**PRESIDENT, THE. — Continued.**

- coöperates with Congress in making laws, 375.
- who acts in case of his death or disability, 629, 630.
- where the oath of office is usually taken, 630.

**PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES**

- protected by the Fourteenth Amendment, 663.
- how far those lost by participation in the rebellion are restored, 677-678.

**PRIZE COURTS OF THE REVOLUTION**

- colonial prize courts, 38.
- Congress becomes an appellate court, 40.
- decisions of this court, 41.
- the case of *The Active*, 42.
- action of the Philadelphia Court of Admiralty, 43.
- action of Congress, 44.
- creation of the court of appeals in prize cases, 47.
- review of a judgment of that court by the Supreme Court, 131.

**PROHIBITION, WRIT OF. [See *Supreme Court.*]****PUBLIC ACTS AND RECORDS**

- of one State to have full faith and credit in other States, 631.

**PUBLIC AND PRIVATE PURPOSES**

- distinction between them as affecting the power of taxation, 246.

**PUBLIC AND SPEEDY TRIAL**

- in the absence of legislation to be enforced by the courts, 508.

**PUBLIC DEBT**

- constitutional provisions respecting, 642, 643.

**QUARANTINE. [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]****QUARTERING SOLDIERS. [See *Soldiers.*]****QUINCY, JOSIAH**

- his opinion upon the acquisition of Louisiana, 129.

**RACE. [See *Fifteenth Amendment.*]****RAILROADS. [See *Interstate Commerce: Regulation of Commerce.*]**

- the power of Congress to regulate them, 447.
- they are an element of commerce, 447.
- cases in which taxes upon transportation by, held void, 479.
- a railroad franchise conferred by Congress not subject to State taxation, 490.
- exemption from legislative action not recognized unless clearly granted, 570.
- double damages may be imposed for injuries caused by non-fencing, 669.

**REBELLION**

- the States made treaties in violation of the Constitution, 579.

**RECONSTRUCTION**

- the Constitutional Amendments, 406.

RECORDS. [See *Public Acts and Records.*]

REGULATION OF COMMERCE. [See *Interstate Commerce : Taxation.*]  
defined, 476.

importance of this power, 433.

its history, 434.

the Federalist upon the necessity of. 436-439.

New York legislation reviewed in *Gibbons v. Ogden*, 80 n., 397, 442.

Maryland legislation reviewed in *Guy v. Baltimore*, 443.

to regulate it is to regulate its instruments, 450.

legislation respecting steam vessels, 451.

a tax on immigrants is a regulation of commerce, 452, 460.

under its police power a State may sometimes regulate interstate commerce,  
453, 461, 463.

rule governing such an exercise of State power, 454, 458, 475, 477.

States may regulate their systems of pilotage, 455.

and of wharfrage, 456.

may bridge navigable streams within their borders, 457, 478.

they have often enacted unconstitutional laws in these respects, 459-461.

cases in which State laws have been upheld, 461-462.

cases in which they have been held void, 462-469.

a State cannot tax travellers passing through the State, 463.

nor passengers landing from a foreign port, 463.

nor discriminate against pedlars selling goods from another State, 464.

nor prevent importations of cattle by legislation against diseased cattle, 465.

nor tax telegraphic messages from without the State, 466, 481.

nor regulate commerce with the Indians, 469.

the rules governing these cases of interstate commerce, 475.

when goods become the subject of interstate commerce, 476.

instances in which taxation affects interstate commerce, 478.

State quarantine laws are constitutional even if they affect such commerce,  
480.

but not laws against sales of spirituous liquors without assent of Congress,  
483.

when a drummer's license tax is a regulation of commerce, 483.

RELIGIOUS LIBERTY. [See *Church and State.*]

REPRESENTATION. [See *Apportionment.*]

REPUBLICAN FORM OF GOVERNMENT

the guarantee of considered, 640, 641.

RETROACTIVE LAWS. [See *Impairment of the Obligation of Contracts.*]

not forbidden by the Constitution, 539.

REVENUE BILLS

to originate in the House, 203.

contests between the House and the Senate as to, 204.

difference between American and English practice, 205.

**RHODE ISLAND**

reasons for objecting to the Constitution, 79.  
delay in ratifying it, 441.

**RIVERS.** [See *Navigable Rivers.*]**ROUSSEAU**

his idea of society founded on social compact, 26.

**RULE OF PROPERTY**

State decisions binding on Federal Courts when they have become a rule of property, 586.

**RUSSIA**

an absolute monarchy, 62.

**SALARY.** [See *Compensation.*]**SEARCHES AND SEIZURES**

the fourth amendment secures against unreasonable, 646.  
its provisions construed, 647, 648.

**SECOND AMENDMENT**

is a limitation only on the powers of Congress, 645.

**SLAUGHTER HOUSE CASES**

their history and scope, 100 n., 293, 408.

**SENATE.** [See *Congress: Impeachment: Vice-President.*]

equality of State representation in the Senate urged as an objection to the Constitution, 15.

separate powers of the Senate, 211.

usually elects a President *pro tem.*, 212.

is a court for the trial of impeachments, 213.

acts upon treaties, 214, 375.

acts upon executive appointments, 210.

its organization, 611.

statutes regulating the election of its members, 613.

required to keep a journal of its proceedings, 614.

**SEVENTH AMENDMENT.** [See *Trial by Jury.*]**SIXTH AMENDMENT**

difference between it and Article III., 499.

**SLAVE TRADE**

the question caused trouble in the convention, 628.

constitutional settlement of it, 628.

**SLAVERY.** [See *Fugitives from Service: Involuntary Servitude: Thirteenth Amendment.*]**SOLDIERS**

not to be quartered in any house in time of peace, 646.

nor in time of war except as prescribed by law, 646.

## SOVEREIGN POWERS

the Congress of the Confederation claimed and exercised them, 57.  
some such powers never possessed by the States, 36.

## SOVEREIGNTY OF THE PEOPLE

de Tocqueville's views as to, 89 n.

SPEAKER. [See *House of Commons: House of Representatives.*]

SPIRITUOUS LIQUORS. [See *Intoxicating Liquors: Regulation of Commerce.*]

STATES. [See *Sovereign Powers.*]

difference between their government and the Federal government, 103.  
held that they can be sued in Federal courts, 379.  
subsequent proceedings resulting in the Eleventh Amendment, 380-382.  
suits against, under Articles of Confederation, 421-423.  
*Chisholm v. Georgia* overruled, 423.  
limits imposed upon the States, 577.

## STATES' RIGHTS

theory of construction, 28, 117.

STEAM VESSELS. [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]

## STORY, JUSTICE

his opinion in *Martin v. Hunter*, 102 n.  
his opinion in *Parsons v. Bedford*, 497.

## STRONG, JUSTICE

his opinion in *Knox v. Lee*, 136.

SUFFRAGE. [See *Citizenship.*]

extension of, 106.

## SUPREME COURT

its functions in construing the Constitution, 315.  
only one Supreme Court, and it cannot be abolished by Congress, 338.  
its judges hold office during good behavior, 340, 343.  
its original jurisdiction, 344.  
its appellate jurisdiction, 345.  
its history and influence, 374.  
is the head of the Judicial Department, 376.  
its constitutional decisions not binding on the Executive, 377.  
its organization and its chief justices, 378.  
when its justices have been employed on civil duties, 378, 420.  
it may issue a writ of prohibition, 427.  
its justices protected when travelling on circuit, 428.

SURRENDER OF OFFENDERS. [See *Fugitives from Justice.*]

## SUSANNA, THE

the judgment reviewed and sustained, 121.

## SWISS CONFEDERATION

its disadvantages, 87 n.

## TANEY, CHIEF JUSTICE

his opinion in *United States v. Ferreira*, 354.

TAXATION. [See *Bank of the United States: Conquered Territory: Duties and Imposts: Fourteenth Amendment: National Banks: Passengers: Pedlers: Public and Private Purposes: Regulation of Commerce: Tonnage Tax.*]

power of Congress to levy taxes, 104, 227, 263.

extent of this power, 229-236.

capitation tax, 236.

direct tax, 236.

excise tax, 238.

income tax, 238.

uniformity of taxation, 239.

limits of the taxing power, 242.

municipal taxation, 243.

an income tax cannot be imposed on a Federal judge, 247.

limitations upon taxing power of a State, 249.

it cannot tax imports or exports, 250.

nor interstate commerce, 252.

nor impose a tonnage tax, 253.

implied limitations on the taxing power, 256.

income from United States bonds not taxable by a State, 257.

nor salaries of United States officers, 258.

how far a State may tax national banks, 258.

it cannot tax travellers passing through it, 260, 463.

municipal corporations cannot tax for private benefit, 264.

exemptions from taxation looked upon with disfavor, 265.

a State cannot part with its general power to tax, 265.

what are exempt from State taxation, 266.

review of the Virginia coupon cases, 267.

taxation of interstate commerce — recent cases, 269-270.

power of taxation sometimes enters into municipal contracts, 271.

the municipality may then be compelled to exercise it, 273.

a State cannot tax passengers landing from a foreign port, 463.

nor put a discriminating tax on pedlers selling goods from another State, 464.

nor prevent importations of cattle from other States under guise of health laws, 465.

nor tax telegraphic messages from without the State, 466.

corporations are protected against such unconstitutional exactions, 476.

when a license tax on drummers is unconstitutional, 483.

taxes discriminating against productions of other States invalid, 483.

laws for food inspection so discriminating are invalid, 484.

a legislature may not limit the taxing power of its successor, 562.

the law should afford an opportunity to contest a tax, 666, 668.

**TELEGRAPH.** [See *Police Power of the States: Regulation of Commerce: Taxation.*]

**TENURE OF OFFICE LAW**  
an account of it, 160.

**TERRITORIES**  
power of Congress over them general and plenary, 638.

**TERRITORY, ACQUISITION OF NEW**  
is within the constitutional power of the United States, 131.

**TERRITORIAL COURTS.** [See *Inferior Courts.*]

**THIRD AMENDMENT.** [See *Soldiers.*]

**THIRTEENTH AMENDMENT**  
it abolished slavery, 406, 656.  
legislative power conferred by it limited to slavery and its incidents, 656.  
denial of equal accommodations at inns no violation of it, 656.  
limited to matters subsequent to its adoption, 657.

**TITLES OF NOBILITY.** [See *Nobility.*]

**TONNAGE TAX**  
cannot be imposed by a State, 253, 593.  
what a tonnage tax is, 593.

**TRADE-MARK**  
property in it not protected by the copyright clause, 622.  
but is protected by the courts, 622.

**TREASON**  
is a cause for impeachment, 214.

**TREATIES.** [See *President: Senate.*]  
negotiated by the Continental Congress, 48.  
the national powers which they assumed, 49.  
their restraints upon State action, 53.  
consular convention with France, 54.  
treaties providing for payment of money, 181.  
principal treaties reviewed, 220-226.  
when a case arises under a treaty, 321.  
what a treaty is, 321, 323.  
no State can enter into one with a foreign power, 578.  
nor make compacts with other States, 578.

**TREATY-MAKING POWER**  
the consular convention with France a construction of it, 55.  
it is entrusted to the President and Senate, 167.

**TRIAL BY JURY.** [See *Local Law: Public and Speedy Trial.*]  
not a part of the system of equity jurisprudence, 319.  
the right to it extends to the District of Columbia, 360, 518.



**TRIAL BY JURY.** — *Continued.*

- the provision does not apply to crimes against the United States not committed in a State, 361.
- a grand jury, 490.
- a petit jury, 491.
- the provision refers to the common law as understood in England, 492.
- it has no reference to State action, 493, 521.
- nevertheless applies to a verdict in a State court, 493.
- the right in civil cases may be waived, 494, 521.
- the fifth and sixth amendments, 499.
- Article III is peremptory, 500.
- federal judges may always express opinions on the facts, 517.
- these provisions embrace all misdemeanors whose punishment involves deprivation of liberty, 518.
- but not a contempt committed in the presence of the court, 519.

**TWELFTH AMENDMENT**

- its origin, 653.

**UNIFORMITY**

- required in the imposition of duties and excises, 239.
- the uniformity is to be between different places and States, 240, 242.
- the tax should operate with the same effect everywhere, 264.

**UNITED STATES.** [See *Government.*]**UNRATIFIED ARTICLES OF AMENDMENT**

- articles sent out but never ratified, 91 n.

**VACANCIES**

- happening during recess may be filled by the President, 159.
- tenure of office law and its effect, 160.
- an unfilled office created at the session before the vacancy, 178.

**VENICE**

- an aristocratic form of government, 62.

**VETO POWER**

- vested in the President, 173.
- not confined to constitutional objections, 175.
- a partial power recommended by President Grant, 188.

**VICE-PRESIDENT**

- presides over the Senate, 212.
- without a vote except in case of equal division, 212.

**VICINAGE, JURY OF.** [See *Jury: Place of Trial.*]**VIRGINIA.** [See *Madison, James.*]

- action of its legislature leading to the formation of the Constitution, 5.
- its funding act of 1871, 567.

**VOTER.** [See *Citizenship.*]

**WAR**

a state of does not change the relation of the citizen to the government, 626.  
or displace civil authorities outside of the theatre of conflict, 626.

**WASHINGTON**

he advises Congress to establish prize courts, 40.  
the application for appointments trouble him, 177.  
call for opinions upon neutrality, 185.

**WASHINGTON, TREATY OF, 1871**

what was settled by it, 225.

**WEIGHTS AND MEASURES**

Congress may fix their standard, 617.  
what Congress has done under this power, 617.

**WHARFAGE.** [See *Regulation of Commerce.*]**WITNESSES.** [See *Accused Parties.*]**WRITTEN CONSTITUTION**

what is understood by it in America, 66.

**ZOLLVEREIN.** [See *German Zollverein.*]









**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

[illegible]

Form 410

SEP 24 1924



